



**Word of God**

**Proclamations 3630 - 5305**

**Responsible for  
publication of this book**

**Wilhelm Wegers  
Am Alten Bach 89  
41470 Neuss  
Germany**

# **Cosmos ... Changes ... Catastrophe ...**

***B.D. 3630 from December 19th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Whatever takes place in the cosmos is unknown to you, and neither will you ever ascertain the laws of nature in such depth that you will be able to determine when and how changes take place which, according God's eternal plan of Salvation, must take place in order to prepare the work of Earth's redevelopment. The events happening in nature will always take you by surprise, consequently, you will also unexpectedly be confronted by a powerful natural event, which is understandable to someone with spiritual vision but which remains incomprehensible to the majority of people because they fail to recognise the correlation between all happenings, including cosmic ones, with the spiritual development of people and all tangible beings, and because they have no knowledge of the approaching end and the transformation of a work of creation which is only meant to serve spiritual development and has become pointless now due to people's God-opposing will. The preparations in nature proceed imperceptibly and people therefore pay little

attention to them. And yet they would be able to observe many deviations which should make them suspicious if they were vigilant and allowed Creation to communicate with them more. Changes are occurring in the interior of the earth which will lead to eruptions. At first they will only partially break through in order to then, at a specific time, lead to a complete destruction of the earth's surface, so that God's eternal plan of Salvation can take the course His will had determined. Countless spiritual beings in the Earth's interior will liberate themselves and God will give His approval, He will allow them to become active at a specific time, because their activity does not oppose His law of eternity .... And the Earth will tremble when these beings become active .... It will open up in places and thus clear the way for the beings to enter different shapes than before .... And where this activity takes place it will cause great changes on the Earth's surface to the horror of the inhabitants who will be subject to a dreadful natural disaster .... However, this will only be a preliminary event for the subsequent total destruction of Earth; it will be a final wake up call for all those who survive it and an indication of the near end, which will have previously found no credence with people. Nevertheless, God's language will be understandable to everyone who wants to understand it.

Everything that happens in the universe, including every cosmic change, is due to spiritual development, and even if people don't understand it on account of their lack of knowledge they must nevertheless be affected by the

activity of beings which are still constrained in the interior of the Earth and which strive towards liberation for the sake of their higher development. Countless human lives will fall victim to this eruption and enter the spiritual kingdom in a more or less mature state. Yet countless beings will also be released and be able to strive towards ascent in different forms. And so the immense event in nature is simultaneously a process of release after an infinitely long time of constraint within hard matter and a transition for the indwelling spiritual substance into less painful forms, but it also ends the process of development of spiritual beings in the last stage on earth which could have used their free will for their deliverance. No-one can predict this cosmic event in advance unless, in profound faith in God, he is informed of it by the spirit of God, for the divine laws of nature are not perceptible for people, so that the day and hour will always remain hidden until the first tangible manifestations announce themselves, but which will be ignored at first. Yet as soon as the day approaches, great restlessness will come upon all living beings, human beings and animals alike will inwardly feel it, and only spiritually awakened people will be able to explain it and yet not be listened to by the worldly-minded, who will never want to accept a destruction of Earth and thus be taken by complete surprise by the eruption of the natural elements .... And God will repeatedly announce this event, He will not leave people in ignorance as to what they can expect in time to come. Again and again He instructs His messengers to mention the forthcoming

event. For the day will not be long in coming .... Any careful observer will also recognise the changes, and he will look upon it from a spiritual point of view, for the goal of everything that comes according to God's eternal plan of Salvation relates to the spirits' development, which is in danger and which God's love wants to help ....

Amen

**‘Did you not know, that I must be in My Father’s house ....’**

***B.D. 3634 from December 23rd 1945, taken from Book No. 46***

Listen to the voice of the spirit: Every person shall shape himself such that the Father can take abode in him, thus, he himself shall become God’s house in which the Father can be effective. You all carry the divine spiritual spark within you which is therefore My share, hence I lay dormant in you waiting to be awakened through your loving activity and heartfelt bond with Me .... However, as long as you remain inactive you will not feel My presence, even though the spiritual spark rests in you. It can only become effective if you shape yourselves into a receiving vessel for Me Myself, only then will I be active

in My house, then I will be able to dwell in you and instruct you according to absolute truth. Then I will be in My Father's house .... then wisdom will be where love exists .... Then you will have become a house of God yourselves, which shelters the Holiest of all, which God Himself takes as a dwelling place .... I will be with you and never again will you walk alone on earth, but you will always and forever feel My presence and be permeated by My spirit, which will guide you into all truth, which will teach you just as I have taught in My Father's house .... For when I became wisdom through love I had to be constantly active on earth .... Dispensing love and wisdom, I had to give to other people what I Myself had received because I wanted to help them attain beatitude. And thus I had to be in that which belongs to My Father, where I was able to proclaim His Word, where people gathered in order to hear His Word .... Consequently, God's house will always be where His Word is taught .... where it is either externally offered to people or is inwardly perceived .... wherever the Father can be effective, that is, where love makes people receptive for the wisdom from Me .... For I always want to be active in My house, and My house consists of the hearts of people who want to accept Me and thus shape themselves into love so that I Myself, the eternal Love, can unite with them. My house is wherever My spirit can manifest itself .... but without the working of My spirit you will linger in empty halls even if you have chosen a place where you assume you will be able to find Me .... I can only be where My Father is, and the profundity of My

Word can only be heard where love exists .... However, I Myself Am the Word and if you want to hear Me you must shape your hearts to become receptive, you must change yourselves into love and then open the doors for Me so that I can enter into your heart and make your **heart** My dwelling place wherever you may be ....

Amen

## **Significance of the act of Salvation ....**

***B.D. 3635 from December 24th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

And remember the One Who redeemed you from all sins .... His act of Salvation is of such momentous significance that you cannot be exhorted strongly enough to cast your mind back to it. You must always bear in mind that you would be lost for an infinitely long time had Jesus Christ not taken your guilt of sin upon Himself through his crucifixion in order to redeem you. However, you will have to profess Him yourselves if you want to partake of the blessings He acquired for you through His death. You have to believe in Him and consciously place yourselves underneath His cross, you must live with and for Jesus Christ, i.e., in memory of Him accomplish your



every action, be helpful and thus comply with His teaching of love, in order to make yourselves worthy of His gift of grace, to make yourselves worthy of His love, which wanted to protect you from an infinitely long time of torment and suffering in the beyond. The divine Redeemer has mercy upon all sinners .... He carried their guilt and suffered and died for it, He sacrificed Himself as atonement, because He loved people and wanted to lessen their immense spiritual hardship.

And thus He offered people a gift, the magnitude of which they cannot judge on earth, and He only asks for their acknowledgement of His act of love, their acknowledgment of Himself and their conscious avowal of His crucifixion .... He asks them to keep Him in mind at all times .... People should not forget this, they should always remember that without Him they would be lost for an infinitely long time .... Hence He approaches people time and again by reminding them of Him .... time and again He tries to direct their eyes to Him, time and again the person, as a bearer of the cross himself, is admonished to remember Him, and every suffering is intended to draw his attention to the One, Who took all sins upon Himself and constantly helps people to carry their suffering as well if they, in profound faith in the divine Redeemer, burden Him with it and appeal to Him for grace and love .... People don't carry their suffering without merit, Jesus Christ, however, was entirely without sin and took humanity's guilt of sin upon Himself, He therefore carried a far heavier burden upon His

shoulders, a cross which was so immensely heavy that He almost broke down under it, nevertheless, He accomplished the act of Salvation since His love for humanity was great and gave Him the strength until the end ....

Amen

## **Bond of love ... Unification with God ...**

***B.D. 3636 from December 25th 1945, taken from Book No. 46***

An indestructible bond is wound around God and the spiritual being which tries to join Him due to love. It will remain inseparably connected with Him, always coming closer to Him, forever striving towards Him, being seized by Him and in blissful happiness merging with the eternal Love, once the being has become perfect. This bond is the goal of all spiritual beings which once emerged from His strength. God is the eternal centre of Power from Whom everything originates and to Whom everything will return again according to God's eternal order. Only that which has returned to God again is happy, it is perfect, permeated by strength and light and thus able to actively create and shape. This state will never ever be changed

again, insofar as that the being's beatitude will diminish, but it will constantly increase because perfection knows no limits, because God, as the supremely perfect Being, will always and ceaselessly be aspired to for all eternity. To be merged with the eternal Deity signifies participation in the shaping of works of creation, it signifies guidance and care for the spiritual beings which are sheltered in these creations; it signifies redemptive activity on the bound spiritual beings, it signifies bliss and harmonious striving for unification with equally mature beings and revelations of undreamt of splendours which immature beings are incapable of beholding.

Eternal life .... is not a state of weakness and darkness anymore but activity in light and an undreamt of abundance of strength. Jesus Christ promised this eternal life to those who believe in Him and keep His commandments, who, by fulfilling and complying with His teaching of love, establish the connection with God on earth already, the bond, which connects the soul with God ever more closely until it has entirely united with the eternal Love. And thus the human being must inevitably attain faith in Jesus Christ as the Redeemer of the world, otherwise the bond with God can never ever be established, for due to the being's imperfection the distance is too vast and cannot be reduced by the being itself, since the distance from God signifies weakness at the same time. Jesus, however, acquired the strength on behalf of people through His death on the cross .... He descended to Earth in order to deliver people from their

weakness of will and lack of strength and to show them the path which leads them to God while they are still on earth. However, without faith in Him and His act of Salvation the human being will never be able to overcome his lack of strength and weakness of will, he will never be able to lift himself up because God's adversary keeps him down and wants to prevent his life in eternity. But anyone who believes in Jesus Christ shall be saved, he will live up to His commandments, he will make an effort to live a life of love and thereby receive the strength to establish the connection with God, and God will never let him fall again .... He will wind the bond of love around him and not allow it to slacken, instead it will embrace those who strive towards Him ever more tightly until they are inseparably united with Him ....

Amen

## **Two worlds ... Divine law of love ....**

***B.D. 3647 from January 4th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Divine law requires love, consequently everything unloving is ungodly, it is very distant from God, it is His adversary's part which is entirely without love and for this

reason he is God's direct opposite. God and His adversary rule over two worlds which will always stay apart until the law of love is fulfilled and unites both worlds.

Nevertheless, God's power also extends to the world where His law is ignored, because everything in this world emerged from God too, it has merely distanced itself from His sphere of love. And His power shows itself in as much as that He also rules in the kingdom of the heartless, i.e. he directs all events in accordance with His will. In spite of God's adversary having great strength and power at his disposal, it is nevertheless limited and does not extend to the works of divine creative power, it does not extend to the creations in whom heartlessness was constrained in order to change itself into love .... In this state the spirit, which had previously fallen away from God, is isolated from His adversary's power and compelled to fulfil the law of love, although its will does not yet determine its actions. It enables the spirit to cross more easily from the ungodly world into God's world when it is permitted to undergo this test on earth.

But then the power of God's adversary comes into its own and with cunning and force seeks to hold on to the spiritual essence of his world .... He tries to increase its heartlessness, he attempts to make it give up the divine, he endeavours to withhold from it the divine law of love and make it wholly inclined to his wishes .... But God in His merciful love will not leave the spirit to His adversary without a fight. During the last stage as a human being He will repeatedly give him the knowledge of His law of

love, he will constantly approach the person by requesting love and offering him the opportunity to fulfil the divine commandment. He will present His world to him, either in thoughts or through his fellow human beings, and thus will urge him to make a decision for one of both worlds. And if he is willing to carry out the requirements of divine law, if he is willing to apply love, he will also recognise the right path leading to the kingdom of light. He will see the darkness of the realm which belongs to God's opponent, he will see the consequences of heartlessness as he recognises the strength of love, and he will voluntarily submit himself to divine law .... He will shape himself into love and therefore be an applicant to the spiritual kingdom, the world which belongs to God .... He will renounce God's adversary in order to belong to God eternally, Who is love in Himself, because he has become love itself ....

Amen

## **Language of creation ... Essence - Creative power ....**

***B.D. 3648 from January 5th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Learn to understand the language of creation ... God

Himself is speaking to you through creation, He is constantly facing you by revealing Himself in all the work that emerges from His strength of love. And He has given you the ability to perceive His creation, to stimulate your intellect .... and thus it is He Himself Who is mentally instructing you, providing you are willing to accept His instructions when you look at the creation around you, when you ponder its meaning and purpose, its origin and the One Who brought it into existence. Every relevant thought is a question answered by God Himself, providing you truly want it answered .... The eternal creative power cannot be denied if you contemplate the origin of the works of creation .... The eternal creative power has to be acknowledged by every person, but its origin, its source, is frequently disputed by people. They do not always want to acknowledge a perfect Entity as the source of creative power. Creation has not yet spoken to them clearly enough, they have not yet understood its language, and their thoughts first have to aim in the right direction in order to come to the right conclusion ....

Creation exceptionally and distinctly reveals a conformity to law, an orderliness, which cannot be surpassed. Something so orderly is always the result of a strong will, of an Essence Which claims this strong will as its own. Furthermore, order also testifies to the wisdom of the Entity Who produced it .... well thought-out laws which eliminate all imprudence, a wisdom which brought nothing into existence without meaning and purpose and which also allows its meaning and purpose to be known.

Hence the Being, Which would be the originator of the creative power, has to be intelligent and, by virtue of His will and power, be able to let His thoughts take shape. Thus it has to be a supremely perfect Being Who reveals Himself in every work of creation, Who wants to be recognised in His perfection .... Who in turn is using His strength to provide other intelligent beings with proof of His existence, because He is in closest contact with these intelligent beings in as much as they too emerged from Him, that they too are the product of His creative will and His creative power, whom He wants to bring into a state of perfection in order to make them carriers of abundant strength as well, so that they too can be creatively active for their own happiness. The Creator's close link with His living creations has to be recognised, the human being has to become aware of the relationship between himself and the eternal creative power. As a being in his own right he has to acknowledge the Power, Which is infinitely stronger than himself, as an Entity or he will be lost in creation as the only intelligent individual being which is in possession of (free) will and yet incapable of actions for which he lacks strength.

Furthermore, it is absurd to assume that a Power, Which gave rise to everything, would give life to intelligent beings without being intelligent Itself .... The same applies to the human being's inherent will which, however, is being denied to the origin of natural power .... What would creation be without intrinsic inhabitants .... of what purpose would this unsurpassed order be could it



not be recognised by beings, if it did not give testimony of a supreme Being, which wants to be acknowledged .... What would the human being be without intelligence and will .... an imperfect living creation which would not need orderly creation to exist .... The fact that the human being is able to think and has free will is proof of a Creator Who, in utmost perfection, is capable of thought and, in accordance with His will, uses His ability with wisdom and in full possession of strength .... It is also proof that the human being was not created without reason and purpose, and that he was given thought and will in order to recognise the reason and purpose and strive for it .... He has to realise that he does not master earthly life in spite of thought and will, he has to acknowledge a stronger Being above himself Whose will is decisive, and he has to accept Its wisdom and love and bow to It ....

And God speaks to people through creation, He motivates them to contemplate it and willingly offers explanations if these are sincerely wanted, if people, abandoning their knowledge, hand themselves over to the eternal creative power Who has given them their intelligence. Then their thoughts can be guided in the right direction so that they too will live in the order which is intrinsic to every work of creation but which the person can also revoke, because he is in possession of free will. Nevertheless, should he want to live in God's ordained order, then his will shall be observed .... and he will be given knowledge about everything he wants to know ....

Amen

# **Love - Wisdom ... Selfish love - Error - Darkness ...**

***B.D. 3649 from January 6th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

All darkness will leave you, every veil will fall from your eyes, the love of God will reveal itself brightly and clearly to you if you make the effort to live with love, since out of love comes wisdom, the realisation of pure truth, and you become knowledgeable, depending on your attained degree of love. Yet without love you will stay in spiritual darkness, without love you will never become enlightened, you will never be able to distinguish truth from lie and error, you will never understand the depth of the Deity, and His rule and actions will remain hidden to you. And for this reason Jesus taught love on earth ....

For this reason He could only bring the truth to those people who followed His lessons of love, for this reason He was able to teach His disciples and impart on them profound knowledge, because He recognised the love in them and that is why he chose them to become His disciples. People first have to be encouraged to love, otherwise they cannot find the truth. Love is God, truth is God and therefore, whoever is without love is without God and walks in error. However, to live in love means to

be good to other human beings from an innermost urge of heart, to help whenever they need it, when they suffer hardship, yet always without self interest, always at the prompting of the heart, then it is divine love and not selfish love which the human being has to oppose if he wants to please God. Selfish love prevents the human being from acting kindly towards other people, it is therefore the greatest danger to him as it leads him into wrong thinking, into error and into darkness of spirit, because selfishness formerly led to the fall of the spirit ....

The completely enlightened being fell into spiritual darkness due to the wrong kind of love, it could no longer discern the truth and became a subject of the one who fought against the truth, against God. Thus every person who exists without divine love will be a servant to the one who is entirely without love and will be as distant from the truth as he, due to his heartlessness, is distant from God because God, Love and Truth are One. And that is why only the human being who acts kindly himself and who on account of his love is led to wisdom, can live in truth and know God on earth. All veils will fall from him, he will recognise the goal brightly and clearly since God will reveal Himself to him, He will guide him into truth and turn him into a recipient of light and strength, even on earth. This will enable him to work with love for the souls of his fellow human beings and to show them the path which leads to truth and light, so that he can convey to them that only the adherence to Jesus' teachings of love

will result in right thinking, in enlightenment of the spirit, in order that the fellow human being can also know the truth and therefore God Himself as the eternal truth ....

Amen

## **Strength of faith ... Help in every need ...**

***B.D. 3660 from January 18th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

You may ask for My help in every need even though the fulfilment of your request seems impossible to you. Only then will you understand the strength of faith when the remarkable guidance of My will resolves this need as a result. My power and My love copes with what appears impossible to you .... providing your prayer shows Me a strong faith, providing you entrust yourselves unto Me with complete confidence .... Therefore, take refuge in Me with all your needs, tell Me your problems, relinquish your worries and fears, and appeal for My help .... And truly, I won't let you call in vain when your prayer expresses profound faith and you humbly await My help. Hence you need not fear anymore, providing you firmly believe .... The deeply devout human being belongs to Me

eternally, he belongs to My Church, he is one of those whom I will never leave and who therefore always enjoys My protection too.

But now, for the sake of other people and even for yourselves, as a test of faith I send worldly perils time after time that you should prove yourselves, that your fellow human beings should find Me and through you find evidence of strength of faith, that they too should learn to believe and thus reduce their spiritual poverty. And although everything takes place in accordance with My plan of eternity, the faithful human being need not fear anything because My guidance is miraculous, My power is more than great, and My love always finds a solution to every problem for those who belong to Me. Thus, what is unavoidably necessary for the whole of humanity, what it perceives as hardship and misery, can leave someone with complete trust in Me utterly unimpressed; he need not be affected by it even though he stands right in the centre of an event which the entire human race identifies as disastrous because he holds on to My hand and this guides him safely and unharmed through all difficulties. You are able to banish everything with a firm faith, and neither people nor spiritual forces can harm you if you escape to Me with a firm faith, entrust yourselves unto Me and unconditionally abandon yourselves to Me and My mercy.

I, however, know the strength of faith in every single person, and his destiny is arranged in accordance with his faith .... But in order to become perfect the soul has to

struggle for this strong faith, it cannot be given to the soul without its contribution, without its aspiration and sincere prayer. But someone who struggles for deep, steadfast faith will also attain it because his prayer is for spiritual wealth and won't remain unheard. Therefore he is confronted time and again with events which should deepen his prayer, which are intended to strengthen the faith. Hence you may turn to Me with all your needs and ask Me for prevention or help .... And I certainly won't disappoint you, I will always be ready to help, so that you learn to know Me, My love and My omnipotence and your faith becomes ever deeper until you live your earthly life completely carefree, because you know of the strength of faith and at all times put your trust in Me ....

Amen

## **Psychological work ....**

***B.D. 3661 from January 19th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Scrutinize yourselves and recognise your weaknesses .... and then strive to overcome them. This is psychological work, that you try to shape yourselves into human beings who remain within My order, who live in accordance with My will and thus shape themselves to love. Because every weakness, every mistake, every bad habit has its source in

unkindness and selfishness. Gentleness, peacefulness, humility, patience, mercy and justice are signs of love for other people; if you lack any of these signs you are not filled with love and need to actively work on yourselves. But in order to do so you have to recognise your weaknesses and faults yourselves and this requires honest analysis, serious reflection and correction of your relationship with Me and your fellow human beings. You have to acknowledge Me as Father and every man as brother because you are all children of one Father. And you children should love each other, then you will find My favour, because then I Myself will be able to stay with you, My children. However, every bad habit prevents Me from doing so and this is to your disadvantage because without Me, without My presence, you will remain weak and imperfect and will not be able to achieve your goal on earth.

Your goal is to become perfect, to change yourselves into love and to change your nature into the original state that you once abandoned voluntarily. For you are only happy in your original state and as long as you are far-away from it your fate on earth as well as in the spiritual realm will be insufficiency, ignorance and weakness. I, however, want to lead you back to happiness and thus constantly caution you to aspire towards it; that you start the work of transforming your being; that by observing your inner self you learn to become aware of how little your thoughts and actions correspond to My will because you are still selfish. And therefore you have to make an

effort to change this

imperfect state, practicing love wherever and whenever an opportunity presents itself. Because you can only become happy with love, you can only master your faults and bad habits with love.

And if you cannot feel this love within yourselves as yet then use your intellect to shape yourselves into righteously thinking people .... be gentle and peace-loving, humble and patient and try to bring help to your fellow human beings .... and the feeling of love will awaken in you, it will make you happy and encourage you to perform loving deeds. Then you will no longer be moved by your intellect but by your heart, then you will be on the right path. Therefore observe yourselves, meditate and seriously ask yourselves whether you think and act righteously, and your heart will answer you .... And I Myself will come to your aid, providing you genuinely ask yourselves this question, I will give you strength to carry out what you seriously want, and the work on your soul will advance successfully, you will find it satisfying yourselves, submit to My will and continue your ascent as soon as it is your will to become perfect ....

Amen

# **King of kings ....**



## ***B.D. 3665 from January 23rd 1946, taken from Book No. 46***

The King of kings governs His kingdom in wisdom and love and all rulers of the world must fear His power if they do not respect His will, if they are not subject to Him with humility and acknowledge Him as their Lord. For His power directs all destinies according to His judgment, including the destinies of every nation and their rulers, since He governs with wisdom and His activity is determined by profound love. Even if He allows people free will and thereby allows these rulers to act and govern according to their will, He will nevertheless appear as King of kings when the time comes, when the spiritual and earthly adversity on earth requires Him to resolve it by using His power. The time does not seem to have come for the world, because the princes and kings of this world strive for a peaceful solution, nevertheless, they will not succeed. It will fail because the one who is Satan's servant on earth will resist it. Spiritually, however, the time has come which necessitates a radical change, for humanity no longer acknowledges the greatest Ruler and for that reason they shall find out the hard way .... And once Satan's activity consists of instigating strife instead of supporting peace, the time will also have come on earth for the King of kings to appear and oppose the will of the earthly ruling powers with His will .... Then there will certainly be peace among humanity but neither happiness nor prosperity .... Then a different kind of

adversity will start and this, too, must be endured by people in order to prepare themselves for the near end. For a brief period of time the earthly power will be broken, yet it will rise again worse than ever and initiate the final work of destruction .... it will declare war against everything that chooses the King of kings .... it will not accept Him, it wants all people to turn away from Him and profess the authority which is governed by Satan and thus openly fights against God. And then the end will come .... He will only reign for a short time in order to relinquish his dominion for an infinitely long time, for he will be apprehended and deprived of every opportunity to reign .... And only One will govern and this One governs in love and wisdom for the benefit of everyone who lives on earth .... These will acknowledge the King of kings for they became His subjects of their own free will, they have proven this by courageously professing Him and His name before the world, before His adversary, and thus they will be rewarded on the new Earth with a blissful life in paradise.

Amen

**Spiritual creations ....  
Beatitude .... 'Eye hath not  
seen ....'**

## ***B.D. 3670 from January 28th 1946, taken from Book No. 46***

Everything that is visible to you testifies of My might and strength and love. Yet My strength of love also produced invisible creations which will delight you in the spiritual kingdom, but only when you have achieved the degree of maturity which allows for spiritual vision. Then you will indeed marvel at My love's works of wonder, they will enchant your eye, nevertheless they will also be comprehensible to you, for then you will recognise Me Myself as strength and love, then you will already be so pervaded by it that you will be able to understand that it is the primary cause of every creation, and then you will forever glorify the One Who employs His will for constant works of love.

The spiritual creations are inconceivable to people on earth, they are the epitome of proportion, perfection, beauty and versatility, they are exceptionally magnificent formations and their ever changing appearance makes them increasingly more wonderful to behold and they will never tire or oversaturate the onlooker's eye but forever cause immense happiness and gratitude towards Me, the Creator of heaven and earth. Indeed, earthly creations occasionally also appear lovely to a person and let his heart beat faster in the realisation that he is facing the eternal Creator, Who is almighty and full of love. However, the most beautiful creations on earth are but a pale reflection of the spiritual creations which are

incomparable, since it is not possible for My love be so evidently visible on earth because people have not yet changed themselves into love.

But I can bestow the abundance of My love to souls which have become love, My creative love can reveal itself to them and I can show them and bestow on them what I have promised 'Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love Him ....' And the more profoundly a being is able to love the more glorious will the creations become .... Profound love gives them an insight into My reign and activity in the spiritual kingdom, they are no longer opposite Me as imperfect beings, but have become what I Am Myself .... love .... they are full of might and strength themselves, and in highest perfection are able to create and shape in harmony with My will through My strength.

No comparison can be given to people on earth about their activity in the spiritual kingdom since it is subject to completely different laws and spiritual activity has nothing in common with physical activity, with work on earth. Yet it is a blissful activity, an activity which signifies supreme happiness for the being which has become love, which can think, feel and want, which is able to see and hear, which feels like an individual being and yet is extremely happy in unity with other beings because it thereby increases its strength and love and intensifies its ability to be active. The inhabitants of the spiritual world exist in a state of utterly blissful harmony,

a state which is constantly aspired to as soon as the soul has attained realisation on earth or in the spiritual kingdom.

I would like to place all beings into this state because I love them and would like them to behold the glories of My kingdom. For the activity of My love constantly applies to My living creations' happiness, My love is infinite and wants to give and delight, and thus I want to make My living creations worthy of being allowed to stay in spiritual creations; yet they themselves have to want it, they must shape themselves into love of their own free will so that they can be made indescribably happy in the spiritual kingdom for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Antichrist ... End ...**

***B.D. 3672 from January 31th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

The spirit of the Antichrist has been in the world since Jesus Christ accomplished of His act of Salvation. He has constantly attempted to undermine His act, he has always and forever fought Jesus' followers, he has always and forever driven people into heartlessness, thus he has actively opposed Christ's will and teaching on earth, partly by means of spiritually confusing people's

thoughts and partly, in human appearance, clothed in a gown of knowledge and intelligence. The teaching of Jesus Christ was opposed by a human teaching at all times which aimed to weaken it, thus it was antichristian, and this has always been Satan's work, the work of forces from below which intended to cause people's desertion from God or to obstruct their way to Him. And this antichristian activity is steadily on the increase and will be blatantly self-evident before the end .... Satan himself will be active on earth in human form, the Antichrist in person, whose activity will be extremely ominous for the whole of the human race. For he will initiate laws which aim to eradicate spiritually-minded thoughts, which will prevent all spiritual endeavour and intend to entirely secularize people. And this will be the last work of the one who fights against God, for he will be transgressing the limit of his authority, which is relentlessly punished by God .... The change of worldly events will be rapid, extensive worldly changes will occur in short succession and a ruling power will come to the fore by wanting to direct the state of affairs of all nations and, instead of order, will cause utter disorder. For his regulations will first and foremost apply to the suppression of all faith. He will find many supporters on earth, and that will be the sign for the End. For people won't resist it but will almost unanimously profess and celebrate him as a hero and victor whose goal they acknowledge and consequently also support.

And this will be the start of the most difficult time for

believers. It will seem incomprehensible to them what is going on in the world, it will seem incomprehensible to them that God's love and patience allow His most sacred name to be slandered and ridiculed and Jesus Christ's followers to be ostracized and pursued in a most brutal way. Yet they penetrate the truth of the divine Word ever more, which has predicted all this, and thus they also faithfully commit themselves to God's guidance. The Antichrist rages in a most frightening way, he dazzles people by the actions he implements with support of strength from below .... Satan himself works through him as the opposing spirit of the One Who works in the living creations of love and faith, in people, who love God above all else and firmly believe in Him and thus have to suffer great adversities due to God's opponent. People will pay homage to him, they will erect altars, they will proclaim him as the Messiah bringing salvation to them, for he will achieve feats which will impress people, yet they will not be works of love but mere activities of arrogance and craving for power. He will work as a human being, try to explain his strength as human strength and oppose and deny everything that is divine, that points to and testifies of God. And his willpower will be rock hard .... He will give orders, and anyone resisting his command will be destroyed by him .... He will seek to prohibit all teachings of Christ, all knowledge of Him and His act of Salvation, he will try to drag everything through the mud and regally reward those who assist him in his quest against Christ, just as he, full of hatred, will also take actions against His followers ....

The Antichrist's stature will be recognisable by its external good looks, by his physical strength .... for Satan conceals himself so as not to be recognised for who he is. And his extraordinary abilities will draw humanity's attention to him, there will be no end of admiration. He will reside on earth in external splendour and grandeur, in contrast to Jesus Christ Who lived inconspicuously amongst his brothers, devoid of all earthly possessions with a love-filled heart for his fellow human beings. But the Antichrist's heart will be callous and unemotional towards all worldly hardship and yet humanity will jubilantly applaud him, blinded by his external brilliance and strength. He will appear suddenly and unexpected at a time of utmost earthly adversity and, with strong hands, promise relief, seize power and authority without meeting any resistance, because people only pay attention to the harsh conditions on earth and ignore this hero's spirit, who will want to distinguish himself and, with the help of like-minded people, elevate himself as a ruler. And then the end will be near .... For the resulting battle of faith will be the prelude to the entire work of destruction of earth .... It will only last a short time but with such intensity that it will require an extremely strong faith as not to succumb.

Yet once again God Himself will confront His adversary .... For He is in spirit amongst those who fight on His behalf, and the Antichrist runs in vain against the bastion of faith .... And he will fall from his throne into the mire of damnation .... His government will not last long but will



cause unspeakable misery amongst the whole of humanity which will predominantly support him and abandon all faith in God, which will believe his earthly implementations and will thus finally also share the damnation, for it will be subject to God's adversary and therefore also share his fate. And this will be the End .... Jesus Christ will remain victorious and His church will continue to exist for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Call upon Me in times of need ... Depth of faith ...**

***B.D. 3681 from February 9th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 46***

In your hours of need you only have to call Me trustingly and I will be closer to you than ever. All mental contact with Me results in My closeness to you because I Am a spirit Whose smallest element is within yourselves. And if your call to Me comes from the bottom of your heart, the spiritual spark within you, which is inseparable from Me, will strive towards Me, the eternal spirit of the Father, and will thus draw Me to itself. Although I Am, in fact, always close to you, I Am only perceptively close when your will consciously strives towards Me and you request

My presence. You will feel My closeness by an inner calm taking hold of you which is the result of your firm faith in Me and My help. Call upon Me in times of need and I will hear you .... And if you believe that I exist and that I love you, that nothing is impossible for My power and My will, then you will also call upon Me with your heart and await the fulfilment of your request, My help, without any doubt. And you will be helped ....

But every disbelief weakens the strength of faith, you make the working of the spirit within yourselves impossible, you yourselves prevent it from striving towards Me, the Father-Spirit, and it cannot give you the strength which flows from Me to you through the spiritual spark. I truly want believing children to call My Own who utterly trust the Father's Word, who abandon themselves to Him in every adversity and danger, who do not fear and become fainthearted, because they know themselves to be safe in the protection of the loving Father. This depth of faith makes you outstandingly strong in spirit; it banishes every earthly and spiritual adversity because a firm faith allows My unrestricted action and constantly perceptible presence. Then I will also be able to work visibly, I will be able to accomplish what appears to be impossible, because the abundance of strength is the result of profound faith by which the human being himself, or the spiritual strength on his behalf, becomes the master of all his worries.

Have faith and you will always receive help, by your faith let yourselves be filled with My strength and let the spirit

within you give you calmness and certainty. Your increased strength originates from Me, it is an emanation of Myself, and hence I Am in and with you Myself, depending on the intensity of your faith and the sincerity of your call to Me. As long as you are on earth you will never be able to understand that I Myself, the spiritual spark within you, love, strength and light, are One, that I Am therefore always present where the spirit can work in you, where love is practised, and I Am recognisable as strength and light .... If you could understand this you would no longer doubt. But you should try to understand it and should ask the spirit within you to inform you and to shed light on what is yet inexplicable to you, on what you don't understand .... And the spirit within you will teach you .... And again, it is Me Who teaches you, Who wants to draw you to Him and give you truth so that you can find Me, so that your senses are directed towards the spirit and you desire to contact the Father-Spirit. Then your faith will become ever more profound and stronger, you will always and forever know Me, you will feel My constant presence and with complete calm submit yourselves to My guidance, and truly, you will be guided well on this earth, you will take the right path which leads to your eternal home and safely reach your destination ....

Amen

## **Praying with humility ....**

## ***B.D. 3682 from February 10th 1946, taken from Book No. 46***

True prayer requires true humility, only then will it be pleasing to Me, for humility towards Me is **also** proof of love for Me, because love will never want to dominate but only ever be of help .... Anyone who therefore appeals to Me with a feeling of love in his heart will also be able to humbly approach Me and I will respond to his love and grant Him My grace .... However, anyone lacking true humility merely sends a fearful call to Me, Whom he certainly acknowledges in his heart but Whom he does not love because he has not become love himself and, because he does not love his neighbour, cannot receive love and grace from Me either. This is also often the reason why prayers remain unanswered, for I request humility of heart since it is the evidence of love for Me. Humility of heart excludes every arrogant thought, it excludes heartless actions, for love and humility go together and are not in opposition to each other. This is why a humble heart is well-pleasing to Me and which I will provide with grace and love in abundance. Profound humility, however, does not show itself in a person's external demeanour, for this is at all times abhorred by Me .... Humility towards Me only manifests itself in prayer and humility towards another person in helpful neighbourly love. External gestures, however, often feign humility while the heart does not feel it. I, however, look at the soul's motivation .... I won't let Myself be deceived

by appearances, and therefore the sign of My grace will only rarely be found where an outward appearance of humility is given, where fellow human beings are intended to recognise such in gestures, in attitudes or humbly sounding words ....

I only pay attention to the humility of heart and these are the people I consider, although outwardly they assert themselves and don't display any kind of subservience. But anyone who actively engages himself in helpful neighbourly love will not elevate himself, he will always remain a servant of the Lord, for he complies with My commandment, he lives up to what his Lord requested of him, he subordinates himself to My will without having been forced to do so. And if he thus prays to Me his request will likewise be that of a servant to his Lord or that of a child to its Father, to Whom it subordinates itself in love and profoundly humbly entrusts its worries to Him .... it will not demand but request, which is a sign of humility, the acknowledgement of the One Who should grant its prayer .... and its request will not remain unheard .... Pray correctly and your wishes shall always be granted .... request but don't demand .... remain deeply humble in your heart so that My grace can flow into you and know that I will never require an external gesture, that external gestures are never pleasing to Me because they easily become a cover for those who are not profoundly truthful, who want to deceive and whose hearts feel different than it seems. Therefore take no notice of them or copy them, but be of loving service to

your neighbour and you will be graced by true humility of heart which will find My pleasure and which I will be able to reward with grace in abundance ....

Amen

## **Serious scrutiny and will for truth ....**

***B.D. 3686 from February 14th 1946, taken from Book No. 46***

All information must be scrutinised first before a person accepts it as absolute spiritual truth, that is, before it becomes his possession. And the sincere will to possess the truth must form the basis of this scrutiny.

Consequently, he must turn to Me, the eternal Truth Itself, and appeal to Me for enlightenment of his spirit, for turning his thoughts in the right direction and providing him with the intellectual capacity to comprehend and form an opinion. And he will truly not be led astray by Me if he desires the truth .... You must remember that it is always and forever My goal to guide My living creations into truth, and that the human being can be certain of receiving the truth providing his will strives for it. I only need his will in order to convey the truth to him. However, where this will is not sincere,

where it is merely replaced by words and thus his desire for truth is not recognisable by Me, as I Am even able to look into the furthestmost corners of his heart, the human being will hardly be able to carry out a serious examination and therefore not possess the complete truth from Me. All spiritual information is available to him, he does not defend himself against misguided teachings, but neither does he recognise the truth as such; he allows himself to be pushed into a traditional school of thought without actively investigating its value. Nevertheless, one day he will have to justify himself for his thoughts and intentions because he failed to use his gift of intellect and thereby prevented his own spiritual ascent. Nor will he be able to use his conscientious observance of the rules given to him as an excuse, because the right relationship with the eternal Father makes every person also realise his task on earth, and once the human being has established this right relationship with Me, he will consider Me and My will more important than the laws he was given by those whom he regards as My representatives on earth. And he will give greater credence to My Words, because I influence the thoughts of those who want to be My true children in order to lead them into truth. I only require the human being's sincere will .... If it is inclined towards Me, then the human being will soon feel as My child and will willingly accept every gift from the Father's hand with gratitude, he will rather accept what he receives from Me Myself than from those who call themselves My representatives on earth. For the heart of a true child will

always tend towards the Father's heart, it will take the direct path and won't try to attain the Father's love and kindness in a roundabout way. And I will also always cross its path so that it will be able to find Me with ease .... And what better gift could I possibly offer more gladly to My child than the purest truth? .... Those of you who have not yet established direct contact with Me, who still adhere to external formalities too firmly and don't want to relinquish them, should bear in mind that I Am not to be found in the external shell but that I want to be recognised within yourselves in order to then be present for you at all times. Engage your intellect and form a mental opinion about the information you receive from external sources. And call upon Me for assistance .... And I will help you to recognise what is right and true and liberate you from error, for only the pure truth will lead you to Me, only the pure truth will gain you eternal life .... And therefore you should diligently endeavour to know the truth if you want to become blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Battle of light against darkness at the end ...**

***B.D. 3690 from February 18th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***



Understand and pay attention to the information given to you by My spirit: You are approaching a period which reveals both My will and might, My working on earth, as well as My adversary's influence, for the battle between Me and him, the battle between light and darkness, will reach its climax because the end is near. You will be tossed to and fro like a plaything, both in a spiritual as well as an earthly way .... you will be besieged in order to confuse your thoughts and attitude, but at the same time My messengers will bring you tidings from Me .... you will also be plunged into earthly difficulties so that you will feel helpless and abandoned .... Yet one path will always be open to you, you will always be able to call upon the One for help in every spiritual and earthly adversity. And as long as this path is still open to you, you need not fear the forthcoming time. Satan's influence will always be recognised everywhere, but so will My abundantly loving and merciful effect on all people who merely acknowledge Me, who do not forget about Me during the harshest time of battle and who therefore prompt Me to fight by their side, so that they will not be defeated by the enemy of their souls. Yet My adversary works with cunning and force .... He shrouds himself in a garment of the Messiah; he promises people earthly improvements and thereby entices gullible people into this net, who have so far been unable to detach their heart from worldly possessions. And the darkness will spread to a frightening extent, people everywhere will follow the deceptive light, they will bypass the true light and chase after a flame which does not emit light, which does not

signify enlightenment in humanity's spiritual darkness. And the bearers of light will be ignored; indeed, an attempt will even be made to extinguish their flame and, in so doing, to force the bearers of light to remain secret. But then I will provide My messengers with overwhelming strength so that they will nevertheless work freely and need not worry that the light will be extinguished ....

Then I will also obviously come to the fore, bestowing strength and grace when My Own suffer adversity, so that the battle of light against darkness will become clearly recognisable and My Own will know that the end is not far away. For the prospect of the end will allow them to endure everything, since then they will only wait for the fulfilment of My Word to see Me Myself coming in the clouds in order to deliver them from all adversity and to banish My opponent. And My grace and love will ease their earthly fate and make every tribulation bearable, for as soon as they fight for Me I will provide them with great strength on account of which they will be capable of offering Satan resistance and fearlessly put up with earthly threats, for I Myself will always stand by their side and, in certainty of that, they will remain faithful to Me until the end. I will come soon .... Satan will only work for a certain length of time, and I Myself will shorten the days so that My Own will be able to persevere ....

However, because of this Satan will rage in a shocking manner, for he knows that his time of activity is only short .... he knows that he only has little time left .... But don't be afraid, My faithful followers .... I announce this to

you beforehand so that you can find strength of faith and inner peace in the truth of My Word, so that you can draw strength from My Word at any time and make heartfelt contact with Me, Who will not abandon you, neither on earth nor in eternity ....

Amen

## **Earthly precautions against the disaster are futile ....**

***B.D. 3692 from February 20th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You must completely detach yourselves from the world if My strength is to permeate you and you want to become aware of it. And thus even in hours of anxious adversity you will only be full of strength if you are able to ignore all earthly happenings and completely hand yourselves over to Me with your thoughts. And I will take particularly good care of those who try to find this intimate bond during hours of greatest earthly adversity for they demonstrate their faith in Me, which I will never disappoint. You yourselves are unable to avert whatever I send upon you, hence all efforts you make to safeguard your physical well-being will therefore be in vain. You will gain far more by focussing your mind on Me and faithfully

wait for My help, for it will result in certain success, and I will protect your body and soul because you believe in Me. Prior to manifesting Myself through the forces of nature I will still send you unmistakable signs that a disaster is approaching, and then remember My Words .... Collect yourselves in prayer and only pay attention to your spiritual welfare, don't worry about your body, just try to establish heartfelt contact with Me so that I will be able to affect and guide you unhindered without finding resistance through earthly diversion, which weakens the working of My spirit or even makes it impossible. Make no attempt for the maintenance of the body, for that which I want to keep alive will also stay alive, and that which you should lose cannot be protected by your will. I know what you need, just as I know what impedes your souls' further development.

And therefore leave it to Me to care for you, for your earthly possessions and only consider your soul, because you don't know whether it will be your last hour too .... I announce Myself in advance because in My love I still want to give you ample opportunity to make contact with the spiritual kingdom, with Me, Who holds every individual person's destiny in My hand and guides it as is best for you. Anyone who unites with Me has found the safest protection and truly will not need any other earthly protective measures which can become worthless in an instant. For again I want to manifest Myself evidently, I want to make Myself apparent to My Own in order to reinforce their faith, to teach them to become

true labourers for My kingdom, which they shall become afterwards. Don't worry for I will take care of you; only heed My Words of love and let your heart respond to them. And remind your fellow human beings to conduct themselves in the same way, caution them against overzealous precautions for their earthly welfare and also appeal to them to faithfully turn to Me and commend themselves body and soul to Me. And anyone who heeds your Words will be miraculously guided according to his strength of faith. Therefore don't fear anything no matter what happens, even if you are in a most dangerous situation .... My arm extends far and wide to help as well as to destroy .... Whomever I want to keep alive will remain alive, and whomever I want to destroy will be unable to save himself .... he should only make sure that his soul will not fall pray to darkness, then he will be saved for eternity ....

Amen

**The future fate of the soul  
corresponds to its  
desires ....**

***B.D. 3694 from February 22nd 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You shall receive what you desire. I will always give you what you want, more or less perceptible to you, but if your wishes are apparently not granted on earth and you don't abandon them, they will be granted to you in the spiritual realm .... You will even receive material goods but they will torture you until you change and turn your desire towards spiritual wealth or, if you are stubborn, until you are once again constrained in hardest matter; thus serving you as an external form which you had refused to forsake. If, however, I hesitate to fulfil your desire then only due to My profound love for you because you, as My living creations, should overcome that particular desire to achieve happiness. But if your longing takes a spiritual direction, if it applies to eternal values which flow (originate) from and lead you to the spiritual realm I will not hesitate long in giving you what you strive for .... because I always and forever grant spiritual wealth and I Am not prudent with anyone who asks for it. This longing is pleasing to Me and corresponds to the meaning and purpose of earthly life, it is the goal which you should reach on earth .... to strive for My kingdom ....

And thus your determination always prepares its own fate in the beyond; you shall receive what you strive for but you will never remain ignorant of what you should endeavour to achieve: to do justice to My will and to acquire eternal bliss for yourselves. But you have free will. Even the apparent denial of granting your wishes does not compel your will since you nevertheless remain free to uphold your desire or to re-direct it towards

another goal; however, in the end your desire is decisive as to what reward you will receive. Time on earth is short and by refusing to give you what you want I Am only giving you the opportunity to change your mind because My love wants to help you become blessed. And therefore no one will be able to complain on the last day, on the day of Judgment, that he was given what was contrary to his desire .... anyone whose mind is directed towards the spirit and who therefore desires Me as the Highest Spirit of heaven and earth will be accepted into the spiritual realm; anyone who was unable to free himself from the realm of matter because his will rejected Me and thus he was weak will be banished into the realm of matter. Only the will is decisive because the strength to accomplish his will is at everyone's disposal, I will helpfully stand by everyone whenever I notice even the smallest change of will, but no human being shall be guided to a kingdom against his will if it does not correspond to his innermost desire. And thus the meaning and purpose of your earthly life is to change your will, to withdraw it from earthly matter and make it inclined towards spiritual values and I will not refuse any appeal for help, I will give you strength in abundance to liberate yourselves completely and enter the spiritual kingdom unburdened to become blissfully happy ....

Amen

**Violation of eternal law ....**

# Temptations ....

***B.D. 3696 from February 24th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

If you make a very serious effort to live in accordance with My will that has been made known to you, you will always experience a condition of psychological distress if you have done wrong, if you have offended against My commandment of love. And this is your unmistakable sign that you have to return to My eternal order to find inner peace again. My order only comprises actions of love and all unkindness is contrary to it. A loving heart and one that thus fulfils My commandments is not restless or timid because it finds peace in Me and cannot step out of the eternal order, i.e. it cannot act unkindly. But it will not be without temptations either since My adversary always endeavours to bring disorder where order rules, to bring disorder to a peaceful heart and to deprive it of its strength by influencing its volition and thinking. And these temptations have to be obstinately resisted, the tempter must not triumph but the human being should triumph by not allowing himself to be driven to unkind actions, words and thoughts .... This is a difficult fight with the tempter but easily won with My help. The strength of love always has to be stronger, the fortitude of soul always has to come to light where physical weakness is apparent. With a sincere call to Me the human being must hand himself over to Me so that I represent his



cause and he is relieved of all responsibility .... The human being should not forget about Me .... he must remember Me in times of spiritual and worldly distress so that I can take care of everything that disheartens him, that happens to him, and that he therefore need never succumb to the tempter. You, My servants on earth, will often be tried and have to stand firm if you want to progress. You will have to negotiate obstacles and need much strength; however, My strength is at your disposal too if you want, just don't forget about Me. Don't allow the tempter to push Me away because your will is the deciding factor as to who takes possession of you .... don't give him the prerogative but stand next to Me at all times and he will flee from you because he cannot endure My presence. But if you become weak he will have power over you and won't rest until you have committed an offence against the eternal order .... until you have fallen and then need strength again to get up. I Am not angry with you but caution you because a lot of your strength will be lost, which you either didn't ask for or didn't need to return to the previous order but which you could have used to progress had you not fallen. Therefore remain strong in spirit, don't allow the adversary to gain power over you, hold on to Me at all times and I will guide you through all temptations without damage to your soul because if you fight with Me you will win every battle ....

Amen

# **Human commandments ... Neighbourly love ... God's commandment ...**

***B.D. 3697 from February 25th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Human commandments cannot further your soul's maturity because I assess a person's will to live in a way that pleases Me, by applying the commandments which I gave to him in wise recognition of their effectiveness. If human commandments conform to My commandment of love, that is, if they merely aim to inspire the human being to love, so that abiding by them will result in the practice of unselfish love for other people, then they also meet My approval, because the working of My spirit in people who initiated such commandments is evident. However, any other commandment is of no value before Me nor do I take any notice of its fulfilment because you should use the whole flow of life-energy for deeds of love in order to achieve maturity of soul on earth. Your goal should be to become perfect .... But how can you become perfect without love? ....

How can you expect a flow of mercy by observing commandments whose failure of fulfilment is not an offence against love? Your love for your fellow human

beings demonstrates your love for Me, your God and Father of eternity. Anyone lacking love for his fellow human beings also lacks the right kind of love for Me, which would urge him to do neighbourly deeds of love. If you pretend that you, with love for Me, observe the commandments which demand various external actions, I will not acknowledge such love since they are mere formalities which you observe to secure yourselves rewards promised by people .... They are not actions of love by which alone you demonstrate your hearts' love to Me, by which alone you can become blessed. All external formalities, everything recognisable on the surface has not Mine, but human will as its originator .... Only unselfish love for other people pleases Me, although this, too, necessitates external deeds .... I do not expect you to pretend to do something out of love for Me if it is not based on My commandment of love. I only want the fulfilment of this commandment and sincere prayer as the expression of a will devoted to Me .... Only then can you gain privileges of mercy and strength, for there are no other means of grace than prayer and unselfish love .... In that case, however, you will receive in abundance. Your entire life should be an internal one without pretentiousness, yet outwardly you should declare Me; you should confess My teaching, which you must endeavour to follow; you should openly admit to the world your faith in Me, in My name and My act of Salvation, that is, you should speak to your fellow human beings so that they know your thoughts and that your aspirations do not relate to the physical world but to the

spiritual realm ....

You should prove yourselves as my followers, as My rightful children, whose way of life corresponds to the requirements which I have placed upon you and continue to place upon you with My Word, which is transmitted from above to those mediators who shall reveal My will to you .... If you want to live in accordance with My will then your actions have to be continuous labours of love by which I will later judge you in eternity .... and not external gestures and actions which are of no benefit to your soul but which rather make the human being careless in observing the only important commandment .... to love selflessly ....

Amen

## **God's Word reflects the spirit of love ....**

***B.D. 3698 from February 26th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Recognise the spirit of love speaking to you through My Word .... Consider that you are spiritually weak, that you certainly carry Me within yourselves as a very tiny spark but that this spiritual spark will continue to rest dormant in you until you awaken it through acts of love. The

Father-Spirit speaks to you with Words of love in order to awaken love in you, so that you will activate your indwelling spiritual spark and give life to it through love. Once you have gained realisation you will also understand why I constantly remind you to love, yet those of you who are still spiritually blind must first pay attention to the fact that every Word you hear through My servants on earth was given by Me with love and shall motivate you to love. Were you able to say that even one of My Words lacks love, you could be forgiven for not having accepted it. Yet every Word must prove to you the love of the Giver, every Word must testify to Me as the eternal Love Which only wants to regain what it had lost through heartlessness. And I only want to win you back because My love wants to make you blissfully happy for all eternity. Time and again I point your wretchedness out to you, your imperfect state, which cannot make you happy and which I want to resolve. And since only love is able to do so I incessantly preach love to you and remind you with each one of My Words, that you can only shape yourselves through love into blissfully happy creatures which are indescribably happy when they are close to the Father, the eternal Love. As soon as you have gained the conviction that all My Words are given with love, that they merely draw attention to love, you will also have to recognise their origin, you will have to regard My Word as the outpouring of Myself, as a work of love for the sinful human race in order to provide it with help. And if you recognise the spirit in My Word, you will soon also recognise Me, it will no longer be incomprehensible to

you that I speak to you Myself, for love brings forth wisdom. If you allow the Words of love to take effect in you, then you will soon comply with them, and then you will also think correctly, you will become knowledgeable, recognise the immense truth inherent in My Word and thus also learn to recognise and love Me ever more profoundly. But this serious examination has to be conducted by you of your own free will .... you must ask yourselves, if My Word is offered to you, whether the spirit of love speaks through it .... You cannot be forced into asking this question, it must arise of your own free will, for this proves your will for truth, for right understanding. And you will receive an answer, the spirit of love itself will speak inside of you and aim to influence your heart and, providing you are willing, not without success. Truth exists where you can recognise love, for love is divine and can only originate from the eternal Love. Those of you who doubt the truth of My Word should bear this in mind. You may accept without hesitation what is inherent in the spirit of love, and you need never fear to be led astray by this spirit, for God is the source of love, and the goal of love is God .... And you will always reach Me if you allow yourselves to be drawn by My love, which approaches you in the Word time and again, which can be recognised in every one of My Words by anyone who wants to recognise it ....

Amen

# **Belief in the immortality of the soul ... Truth ...**

***B.D. 3699 from February 27th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

The death of the body is not the end of the soul. People fail to realise and believe this and therefore do not evaluate earthly life in accordance with My Will. They more or less only care for the needs of their body but not for their soul .... they behave irresponsibly towards their soul because they are not certain of its existence and of its immortality. For that reason they have to be taught about the immortality of soul first if your efforts to modify their way of life should be successful. But a belief in this also requires their own reflection which requires their own will and which cannot be compelled. The immortality of soul makes the meaning and purpose of earthly life understandable, and only then is it possible for the human being to change himself, to regard the life of the soul more important than the life of the body.

Humanity is confronted by two major dangers .... disbelief in the soul and its immortality, and misguided teachings. The latter are a hindrance to spiritual ascent even to those who believe in the immortality of soul, because they portray a wrong image of the eternal Deity and because people usually neglect to implement one

thing ... to establish a sincere relationship with Me either mentally or by means of the right kind of prayer .... Only this will guarantee their spiritual ascent because then I will be able to become effective Myself. Thus My servants' most important work on earth relates to the eradication of misguided teachings and the awakening of faith in a continuation of life after death .... And people will have to listen to My servants if they want to be successful during the brief time on earth which remains to them before the end. They will only be able to obtain completely truthful explanations where such are sent down from heaven; they can only be taught about the soul's life after death and the teaching of Christ by Myself either directly or indirectly, but then their faith can become a convinced one that will stand firm against all contentions, which ensures spiritual ascent and brings the soul everlasting life in blissful happiness. Otherwise the fate of the soul is unhappiness, because it will never cease to exist and yet it is in a state in eternity which it has voluntarily created for itself due to its disbelief and an earthly life in opposition to My Will.

Anyone who firmly believes in the immortality of the soul will start the work of improving his soul much sooner, but the person who believes that his life will end with the death of his body remains indifferent and lethargic or totally incapable and unwilling. You, My servants, cannot describe to them the soul's continuation of life seriously enough, even though you cannot prove it to them. Yet with serious thought the human being can come to the



inner conviction that you spoke the truth because I Myself will help them to recognise the truth providing they genuinely want it and do not refuse to listen to you. Earthly life takes on an entirely different meaning for the believer; he no longer perceives it as an end in itself but only as a means to an end and reproaches his own way of life which he subsequently tries to improve, depending on his strength of will. And as soon as he is presented with the pure truth his faith will be strengthened while misguided teachings will only destroy him and let him relapse into darkness .... Thus the truth must be spread to bring life to the souls, because misconceptions and lies are the soul's death in the spiritual kingdom but not its passing away, it merely means complete weakness and is therefore a state of severe distress which I would like to avert from the soul by sending My messengers to bring help before it is too late ....

Amen

## **Thought transmission from the spiritual kingdom ...**

***B.D. 3700 from February 28th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

Every idea is a spiritual emanation, it can merely

originate from different sources, i.e. it can be transmitted to you humans from the kingdom of light but also from the kingdom of darkness, it all depends on your will. As expected, the kingdom of light will radiate truth, whereas the kingdom of darkness will transmit entirely earthly, material thoughts to people with the intention to spread them. From an earthly point of view, mental activity is indeed the function of organs, but they actually only receive and process the transmissions from the spiritual kingdom which affect the organs. Because the origin of every thought will always be found in spiritual spheres, since the work of the spiritual kingdom's inhabitants is to influence people mentally, and thus they endeavour to pass on their own ideals to people. And thus valuable but also worthless, even harmful, ideas can flow from this kingdom, and it is up to the human being himself to evaluate the importance of what he receives .... By using his will he can guide his thoughts into the right or the wrong direction, and the beings in the spiritual realm will always eagerly support his will. The human being has to be informed how he can contact the beings of light if he wants to acquire pure truth, if he wants his thoughts to be right, just as he should be informed of the cause of wrong thinking in order to protect himself from it. Hence he has to be taught that the transmission of mental concepts from the spiritual realm is the result of his conduct, which is more or less in accordance with God's will and thus more or less induces the beings of the spiritual kingdom to hand out truth or untruth ....

Just as the human being's will behaves towards God the spiritual beings' behave towards the human being, and this is reflected in the transmission of spiritual knowledge, in thoughts and the intelligence of the human being. Because the beings of light are only able to come into contact with people who give themselves to God, who aspire towards God, or the influence from the kingdom of light against his will would inhibit the human being's will. Whereas the forces of darkness can likewise only get access to those of God-opposing will and who show this in their heartless behaviour, thinking and talking. Because these beings' influence is powerful but only effective if the human being abandons himself to them. However, if his will is turned towards God he can protect himself at any time from these forces by calling upon the beings of light and by requesting God's help. This person's thinking will always be guided right because the beings of light will not meet with opposition as they impart their spiritual knowledge to him.

The forces of darkness usually try to draw people's thoughts towards earthly matters and to prevent their desire for spiritual knowledge, or to distort it and then offer it infiltrated by lies and errors so that they find themselves in complete ignorance and falsehood, because every spiritual being only gives what it has itself ... The kingdom of darkness will never offer the truth since, due to their obstinate will, no light is shining for the beings. These forces will always endeavour to maintain a person's materialistic attitude, and they will

always meet with his approval as long as his will is not turned towards God. People's thinking will only be right and their ideas only correspond to the truth where the beings of light are able to work. And thus God's most important commandment has to be fulfilled first .... the human being has to live with love .... Only then can he also tell his fellow human beings that his mental concepts are true and from the realm of light. Only then will he fulfil the first condition given by God so that he can guide people into truth himself and he need never fear to go astray, i.e. live in error, because he is then under the direct influence of the beings of light who work on behalf of God by transmitting wisdom to those who finally have relinquished their resistance to God ....

Amen

## **God's spiritual and physical care for His Own ....**

***B.D. 3701 from March 1st 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Whatever you require will be given to you by My love, all depending on need and belief .... but first I will consider your souls. Therefore, I will occasionally refuse to give something to your body, so that it will not stop the soul

from receiving spiritual knowledge. For when the body receives little the soul can be more receptive, since it will recognise its human weakness and lack of strength when it does not receive its strength from above. However, an obstinate soul can also ignore the right kind of knowledge, it can descend into a state of total inactivity and only pay attention to the body and its needs, in which case the body's suffering will be in vain. However, My love will use this method as long as there is the slightest chance that the soul will take the right path and turn to Me with its request for help. But a devout person who always places his trust in Me will not be left in worldly hardship, even though it will affect him too for his own and his fellow human being's sake, because his sincerity of prayer to Me should increase, the connection with Me should gradually take place more often, since the need of the time necessitates it, spiritually as well as worldly. I will take care of My Own, and the more they believe in Me, the kinder I will be, but even My Own will at times feel their bodies' distress for their own benefit. Because My often miraculous help, My loving care, will bring them increasingly closer to Me and thus intensify their strength and faith. The approaching time will be hard for humanity and only bearable with firm belief in Me and My constant willingness to help.

But I will not place an intolerable burden on you .... I will help as soon as you yourselves want to be helped and make it known by fulfilling My will. I want to eradicate your selfishness, I want you to become sensitive to your

fellow human beings' plight, and if you endeavour to change in accordance with My will, I shall not let you perish in the distress of your body and soul. For although humanity wants to doubt Me, although it constantly questions My whereabouts because I allow misery and hardship to happen .... I will become evident to My Own and time and again will help them .... Thus every human being should endeavour to belong to My Own, to believe in Me, i.e. acknowledge My love, omnipotence and wisdom, to trust in Me and comply with My commandment of love .... Then he will feel My presence, he will be able to convince himself of My loving guidance, because My love will seize him and I will carry his burden on his behalf and he will live .... worldly, for as long as it is destined for him, and eternally .... Because My Own can never become lost or be without strength. And they will always receive strength and grace, I will fortify them spiritually and worldly and give them what is needed by body and soul. For I gave people My Word that I shall provide for them like a father for his children, and My Word is truth and will remain so for all eternity ....

Amen

**Transmission of truth from  
the realm of light ...**

## ***B.D. 3702 from March 2nd 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

The light shines from above .... The light can never come from below, it can only ever shine into the abyss, and darkness can never be transmitted to earth from the regions above, it can only ever come from the abyss, from the realm of darkness which, in contrast to the realm of light, only harbours dark beings to whom the light has to be sent first. But neither happiness nor bliss will ever be found in darkness, whereas everything in the realm of light is blissfully active and this activity concerns itself solely with the spreading of light. Light, however, is truth, light is the recognition of the eternal Deity, the knowledge of His will, of His work .... Furthermore, light is the knowledge of the correlation between all visible things, of the relationship between the creations with their Creator, light is the knowledge of the meaning and purpose of God's work, the knowledge of the task and goal of all spiritual beings .... Light is the recognition of the eternal truth from God .... And this knowledge can only be sent from above to the beings on earth as well as to the fallen spirits in the beyond from the kingdom that is governed by God, where everything is inspired by love and permeated by God's strength. Here is the origin of truth, of right knowledge, and not in the abyss where, due to lack of strength and light, the spreading of truth is impossible, where the spiritual beings' strength only consists of scattering error and lies, because this strength

emanates from the prince of lies who wants to replace the truth and therefore God.

But where truth is taught it also had to be received from above, it had to originate from the kingdom which is full of light and strength .... The recipient of truth has to aspire to ascend, his thoughts need to be directed towards God, thus towards good, his will and his actions have to show justice, and the right relationship with God has to be established through heart-felt, humble prayer, then light will flow down from the kingdom of light.

Because every person's good will is seized and used for the human being's spiritual progress by the beings whose sole activity consists of releasing the bound spirits, the ignorant and thus those who live in darkness, and this can only happen through the transmission of light, of pure truth from above. Such will is never ignored, but neither can a human being be guided into truth against his will. Due to most people's God-opposing will earth is engulfed in deepest darkness. And yet, lights are flashing everywhere because the beings of light are actively fighting darkness everywhere. Every human heart that sends its questions into eternity with the desire for light, for clarification about God, about meaning and purpose of earthly life, is, by its thoughts, making itself receptive to these beings who can give him complete illumination, who also instantly ignite a tiny light in him, who guide his thoughts into the right direction, who try to influence him into communicating increasingly more with the spiritual kingdom.



And thus rays of light are shining everywhere into the spiritual darkness covering the earth because God, the eternal light, is always willing to transmit it into every heart ready to receive it. Hence it follows that God will also always take care of the distribution of pure truth, because it is His aim to fully enlighten every spiritual essence, to completely dispel the darkness and to carry the light into the realm of darkness in order to bring about a change in the spirits there too, so that they, too, will be able to reach the state of bliss one day, which necessitates pure truth .... the light from heaven .... which disperses all darkness. The light shines from above and only truth can come from above .... And thus the human being inevitably has to strive to ascend in order to receive light in abundance. For although the light shines down to earth it can only touch people who lift their willing hearts to God and, by living their lives in accordance with God's will, shape themselves into a vessel for the reception of His light, the pure truth. Then, however, the Eternal Truth will be working there Himself, It will distribute truth without end, It will permeate the human heart with its light and drive out all spiritual darkness ....

Amen

**Call upon God's help is  
indispensable in the last**

# days ....

## ***B.D. 3703 from March 3rd 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

Henceforth you shall always have to request My help in earthly as well as in spiritual hardship if you don't want to succumb in your struggle for existence. Admittedly, you can also emerge victoriously without appealing for My help, but in that case you are already under the influence of My adversary who is giving you strength to overcome but claims your souls in exchange for payment. To be fortified by this strength in future will cause you immense damage since you will lose yourselves in the kingdom of darkness for an eternity, you will trade this short time of strength with an eternity of weakness during which you will have to suffer enormously due to your failure not to have asked for My help. The approaching time is only endurable with My support, with My contribution of strength and thus without danger for your souls. And yet it is up to you whether you want to call upon Me. The severe hardship should prompt you but I Myself won't compel you to do so, by way of hardship I only want to encourage you to contact Me, since otherwise I cannot transmit strength to you. Life will be difficult and painful for each and everyone who does not carry Me in his heart ....

But you will find relief when you turn to Me for help. My

love shall help you endure, it helps every person who faithfully trusts in Me, because the severe hardship has to affect humanity for its own sake, as the last resort to win them over to Me and My kingdom. I want to make their hearts receptive to My Word, and thus the severe hardship will still accomplish My aim, namely that they hunger for a Word of comfort, for an explanation of their adversity, and that they then seriously consider My Word in their hearts and with good will can recognise Me. For there are many misguided souls who have missed the right path, who shall be led back by My Word, which reveals to them the truth in its fullness. Although the suffering will also close many hearts to My Word and they cannot be opened by force, but blessed be the one who endures without approaching My adversary for help in terms of unkindness towards other people and bad thoughts and speech, because he will be apparently helped by him and provided with all manner of support to win him over completely. Don't try to improve your earthly life with renewed unkindness, accept your fate patiently and humbly, and come to Me .... I shall always help you if only you request My help, if only you find the way to Me and humbly bow before Me and entrust yourselves to My mercy.

I will never send a sincerely pleading person away without help, you all have to acquire this trust if the severe hardship is to be endurable for you. You can always be certain of My loving care when you deliver yourselves to Me, when you acknowledge Me and thus do

not exclude Me from your thoughts .... But anyone who fails to do so is in dire psychological difficulty which only his own will can lessen. Time is short and shall become ever more apparent as the end time because Satan works visibly, he impels human beings into actions of most blatant cruelty, which always results in earthly hardship and suffering, and he poisons people's thoughts where he does not meet resistance with a will that is turned towards Me. And human beings should beware because now the last test of earthly life needs to be won; they should open their eyes to the signs of the time, to the conduct of human beings who are clearly ruled from below, and also observe the work from above .... they should listen to My Word's messengers who can give comprehensive clarification about meaning and purpose of the final severe hardship and about the eternal plan of Salvation, which has to take its course as it is destined and My wisdom has deemed appropriate since eternity .... They should pay heed to their warnings and reminders, and the arduous time will pass by everyone enduringly who is of good will and calls upon Me in need ....

Amen

## **Spiritual rebirth ...**

***B.D. 3704 from March 5th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Spiritual rebirth is the human being's objective on earth, otherwise the soul will also be without life when the body dies, but since it is immortal it cannot entirely fade away. Spiritual rebirth means life for the soul, but life for the soul without spiritual rebirth is impossible. However, the human being will be spiritually reborn when he seeks contact with the spiritual realm of his own accord. The human soul is no longer content with the body's life, but it cannot find fulfilment of its desire in the earthly world either and aspires towards the realm to which it really belongs, and depending on the sincerity of its will the human being will be reborn sooner or later. Kind-hearted activity is absolutely necessary for the attainment of spiritual rebirth, since this revives the person's spirit. Through actions of love the dormant spiritual spark within the soul unites with the eternal Father-Spirit, it becomes active, and activity is life .... If, by his deeds of love, the human being gives the spiritual spark within himself the opportunity to become active, he will have become spiritually reborn and can no longer descend into the state of death. Once the spirit is awakened it will never disregard him, it will constantly influence its surrounding shell, i.e. the spirit will influence the soul and through it also the human being's body, urging him into kind-hearted actions and thereby advancing the soul's higher development. Spiritual rebirth cannot be intellectually achieved, neither will nor words can make it happen, only a will that is put into action results in it, and these actions need to be deeds of unselfish love for other people. A person's spirit will only come alive

through love, it will only move into action through deeds of love, and thus only through love can the soul achieve eternal life, which is the consequence of spiritual rebirth. But anyone who has love also lives in constant contact with the Eternal Love, and thus the eternal Father-Spirit will also constantly influence the spiritual spark in the human being .... Eternal Love will draw to Itself what is striving to shape itself into love .... And then there will be no more death for the soul .... Then there will only be life, i.e. uninterrupted activity in strength and light; then the shackle of death has been removed, then death has been conquered ....

Hence a spiritually reborn person will never fear his body's death because his soul knows the transience of all earthly things as well as the immortality of everything in the spiritual realm, it does not fear its earthly death because its eternal life is guaranteed. It does not merely believe in the soul's life after the death of the body but it has become certain of it, because it is instructed by the revived spirit, because the knowledge it receives from the spirit results in profound conviction .... Hence its faith has become unwavering because it carries the evidence within itself .... the awakened spirit, which is part of the eternal Father-Spirit. A spiritually reborn human being has no further doubt in regards to spiritual knowledge, because the working of the spirit within him also includes ever-increasing understanding, recognition of the eternal Deity and His reign and activity, as well as the knowledge of God's eternal plan of Salvation .... His imparted

knowledge is not mere faith, since the wisdom of what is presented to him is so self-evident in the eyes of the spiritually reborn person that he needs no further evidence but he is fully convinced of its truth, which he can now call his own mental concept because his heart and intellect have absorbed it. Therefore the spiritually reborn person need no longer search, through love he has found what he was looking for. Thus love is the key to wisdom, and wisdom is knowledge which corresponds to truth, which emanates from and leads back to the spiritual kingdom ....

However, a human being can only be reborn in spirit if his soul ignores the body and merely strives to bring the spirit to life who, thus, even if unaware of success, relinquishes what the body desires of his own accord, in order to give it to those who suffer hardship and are in need of spiritual or worldly help. Giving away worldly goods for the sake of selfless love will bring him spiritual wealth. However, distributing spiritual wealth will result in immense growth within himself, because God's spirit can then work in the human being without restriction, He will give truth, which signifies eternal life .... Life, however, is uninterrupted activity .... The spiritually reborn person can no longer be inactive, but will then diligently work for the kingdom of God .... he will take part in Christ's act of Salvation for erring souls on earth, because the spirit in him does not rest, like his eternal Father-Spirit it is always and forever active .... And thus spiritual rebirth will always result in the human being

feeling urged to work for the spiritual kingdom. He will take little notice of worldly life but keep his attention constantly focussed on spiritual life in the knowledge of its importance and in the desire to help where understanding is lacking. Because the spiritually reborn person knows of the darkness on earth, of the lack of strength in people who attach too much importance to worldly life. He knows of the souls' hardship, of their spiritual death even on earth and one day in eternity, where they are far more conscious of their helpless state, where it is an agonising state for them and the soul can no longer be helped if it continues to reject all advice as it had done on earth. The spiritually reborn human being is aware of his mission and will follow it with love and eagerness. He radiates light, and good for him who is not offended by this light .... good for him who takes notice of the person who wants to bring him light, who seeks to awaken him into life too .... Spiritual rebirth can be recognised by everyone who is spiritually orientated, because true wisdom is recognisable by every willing person, because where there is will the spirit's strength gets activated.

Let your spirit come to life and you will have reached the goal on earth which you were given in the beginning. As soon as the soul detaches itself from the body you will enter the spiritual kingdom with a wealth of strength and knowledge, and all you will leave behind is immature matter which has not yet spiritualised itself on earth .... But you yourselves will enter the realm of the blissful



spirits in a free state and nothing will deter you from actively forming and creating, for the love in you will prompt you to do so and cause a state of bliss in you which you are unable to comprehend on earth. Because you will be able to unite with the eternal Father-Spirit Who will draw His children to Himself with burning love to make them eternally happy ....

Amen

## **The disciple's teaching ministry before the end ...**

***B.D. 3705 from March 6th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

If you want to teach you must carry Me in your heart so that I can work through you, so that I can place the Words in your mouth and, in this way, you will always state what is right in My name. Hence you should never proclaim My Word for the sake of earthly success, instead, the love in your heart must impel you to do so, for I Am love Itself, and if you feel love for your fellow human beings and want to help them escape their spiritual adversity you will also carry Me Myself within yourselves. Then your teaching activity will be blessed and you will be more or less successful, depending on your fellow human being's

willingness to love. Once again I Am sending you into the world as My disciples in order to spread the teaching of love .... because people's spiritual as well as worldly happiness depends on observing and complying with it. The commandment of love must therefore be emphatically proclaimed, which therefore requires determined, faithful and utterly devoted servants to Me on earth, who feel that they are My disciples, who have accepted wisdom from Me, who are lovingly active themselves and can therefore work as My tools on earth .... who can proclaim My will wherever their feet take them. They shall teach, i.e., distribute the pure truth, they shall show others the blessing and strength of love and faith, they shall describe to them the consequences of earthly life in the beyond, they shall awaken and strengthen their faith in My act of Salvation and announce the near end which requires their urgent attention, they shall point out the signs and miracles through which God in His love will reveal Himself before the end in order to reinforce people's faith and to make them receptive for the strength from Me. I Myself want to work through My disciples and must therefore be able to take abode in their hearts. Consequently, powerful love for Me and their fellow human beings must move their heart, it must feel the spiritual adversity and want to help, and it will shape itself through love into a receptive vessel for My spirit .... I Myself will be able to dwell in My disciple's heart and work without hindrance .... Then he will teach what I place into his heart and mouth .... And so you need not fear that you are unable to cope with your

task, for if you hand yourselves over to Me and offer yourselves to accomplish a task for Me on earth which is exceedingly significant and urgent, you will no longer work by yourselves; instead, you will only help Me to take effect on earth through your will. You will receive the strength to always be lovingly active and thereby draw Me increasingly more sincerely to you .... Then I can teach through you, My disciples, whom I assigned to this teaching ministry in realisation of your will, just as I had taught on earth. I will certainly educate you for this teaching ministry in advance, because it is My will that you shall be completely permeated by the knowledge you are to advocate. Yet if you are teaching I Am the One Who will speak, Who brings every thought, every Word within you to life, Who therefore makes you think and speak according to My will and, for the sake of other people, always within a natural framework, so that they will hear you if they don't want to hear Me, if they don't want to believe that I express Myself through you. In that case they will accept the Words as your mental knowledge and they will not be compelled into believing. Nevertheless, you will not say anything else than My will allows for, you will be unable to spread error because I, the eternal Truth Itself, will protect you from this. And thus you shall always and forever be active in My name, for there is little time until the end which must be used in every way for the spiritual wellbeing of those who suffer great adversity.

Amen

# Origin of thought ...

***B.D. 3706 from March 7th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You receive your knowledge from the spiritual kingdom .... If you understand this idea you also have faith and therefore accept a mental concept which is not of this world, which would either have to come from the kingdom of infinity or it originated in yourselves, if the former is not acceptable to you. And thus I want to explain to you how your own thoughts relate to the spiritual kingdom ....

Without knowledge you will find it difficult to give an inherent thought the right direction, i.e. truthfully answer a question you raise yourself. You could certainly answer it yourselves, but without any guarantee of truth. And now I ask you where the thoughts which are passing through your brain come from in proportion to your understanding .... Furthermore, I ask you who gave you the gift of thought and what, in principle, is a thought .... You can certainly reply that it is a physical function, an inherent human characteristic that need not have been given to the human being .... Nevertheless, thinking in itself is something tremendous when you take a closer look at the process. It takes place without any observable activity, it is not evident to any other person nor does it

leave any noticeable consequences or results. It is a process which can take place anywhere and at any time without the means to be scrutinised by other people. Thus it could already be considered a spiritual process, in contrast to every other activity for which the human being requires his body in some form or other.

Whatever the human being does, he will use a bodily organ to perform the function designated for this part of the body. And it will also always be noticeable. However, this does not apply to the human being's mind. This can work while the body is completely at rest, although the human being considers the seat of intelligence, the brain, as the organ which also exercises its function. But its function merely consists of receiving thought emanations when it is touched by them. But where is the origin of thought to be found, especially when it does not concern worldly-perceptible but spiritual things, which cannot be grasped by the human being's senses. The human being occasionally experiences thoughts in a flash although he had previously not intellectually concerned himself with them. And every answer to a self-posed question is also a suddenly emerging thought, which thus has to come from a reservoir, if the person believes that a thought originates in himself. This reservoir has to be somewhere within himself from which he draws the mental concepts during his intellectual activity. Consequently, one should also be able to empty and refill this thought container, if it is to be found inside the human being.

Or it has to be recognised as being external to the human

body, it has to be looked for in the spiritual kingdom, which transmits every thought into the human heart in order to be deliberately grasped from there and processed by the thinking organs. The human being's will to make use of the emanations touching him can fluctuate, and in proportion to this is the person's outwardly recognisable ability to explain things and be deemed knowledgeable .... Whether and when the person accepts emanations which correspond to the truth will require further instruction, but that he receives these emanations from the spiritual kingdom is a fact and can, after some consideration, also become a conviction. Because something that is not physically perceptible cannot be created by human will, rather it exists as something that has always existed. It has its origin in the spiritual realm, just as all spiritual substances are emanations of God's strength, which is accessible to the human being in proportion to his will. But thought is, in fact, the evidence that the human being is a carrier of spiritual essence and who, as an earthly constrained being, is able to make mental contact with the spiritual kingdom. He can lift himself in thought into this realm, he can detach himself from earth and mentally reside in spiritual spheres .... And if he believes that such a stay in the spiritual kingdom is a figment of his own imagination, it should be explained that the human being cannot think of or imagine anything that does not exist .... that everything he imagines also exists somewhere, and the thoughts are more or less a reflection of what the person is trying to ascertain by virtue of his will. Only, the images

can be offered to him in a distorted way, but this is also caused by his will. However, the human brain is never the origin of thought, it is merely the device which has to receive mental concepts touching it from the spiritual realm if they are to become perceptible to the person. It is beyond doubt, even for the unbelieving person, that he has to receive wisdom first, that he cannot bring it forth from himself unless it is in him ....

But this requires a stronger faith, because then he also has to acknowledge the Divinity in himself which rests dormant in him and which can also truthfully instruct him from within .... However, in that case he will receive the same explanation, because then he is in direct contact with the spiritual realm, with Me, with the eternal Father-Spirit, Who will instruct him Himself .... and then he will know that all mental concepts are an emanation from Me and that he will receive the absolute truth as soon as he has made contact with Me, the Provider of truth ....

Amen

## **Coming in the clouds ... Last days ....**

***B.D. 3707 from March 8th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

My coming in the clouds will be preceded by a time of the most awful suffering ever seen on earth, as proclaimed in Word and Scripture. I will constantly draw people's attention to this and have done so ever since the start of this era in order to strongly advise those who are not walking the right path to change their mind. For the sake of these humans I used to occasionally let plagues come upon earth to remind them of the approaching end so that they seriously consider their souls and change themselves. But the last days had not yet arrived, the period of redemption had not yet reached the time chosen by Me in accordance with My plan of eternity. The earth was not yet ready for the last work of destruction, neither were people's souls ready for their total downfall, i.e. for their banishment into the creations of a new earth .... But My prophecies would always fulfil themselves in times of greatest spiritual hardship .... when increased affliction and misery came upon earth, so that during each time of such hardship the approaching end had to be dreaded. And it was My intention that the precise time of the last days should always remain hidden from people .... Such times of need were also more or less successful for the people involved as they found their way back to Me and entered into a different relationship with Me than before. But they became ever more persistent, and their distance, their opposition, from Me grew ever larger ....

And thus the time has arrived when no description, no admonition and warning will have an effect, when



humanity remains unimpressed even in the light of utmost worldly suffering, i.e. when the latter does not lead to people recognising Me and entering into the right relationship with Me .... Their will remains opposed to Me, they are purely earthly minded and do not strive for any kind of spiritual progress. No adversity, irrespective of how harsh it is, will be able to change people's thoughts, and thus the time of the end has irrevocably come, as I have known since eternity .... The earth has ceased to be a place of spiritual education for its inhabiting humanity, and as a result it will be dissolved and its creations totally reshaped, so that a new period of redemption can begin .... And thus enormous suffering will come upon earth, so that the last people can still gather who recognise My voice therein. And even My Own will have to experience this suffering, although extraordinarily strengthened by Me but also affected by it so that they longingly anticipate My coming, which I always and forever proclaimed for the end of this earth. And when the hardship gets unbearable, when the believers find themselves in greatest distress and see no earthly way of rescue, I will come Myself ....

And there will be rejoicing amongst My Own when they see Me in all glory, but for their physical eyes still veiled by clouds which soften the intensity of My light, so that My Own, who still belong to the earth, will be able to endure Me. They will be triumphant and shout for joy because My Word has come true .... But the immense hardship, which I have announced time and again through

My seers and prophets, through My servants on earth, will have strengthened their faith. Because everything will come to pass as I have foretold, and thus they will wait for My coming in the clouds with complete confidence .... And yet I will arrive suddenly and unexpected even for My Own .... For I will shorten the days of suffering because they will become intolerable and I do not want My Own to grow faint-hearted in view of the immense difficulties. And thus I will take them into My realm at the right time, and then the end will come .... Because My Word is truth and will come to pass, and the time of the last days has arrived ....

Amen

## **The servants' mission on earth after the natural disaster ....**

***B.D. 3709 from March 10th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Whatever you hear through the inner voice is what you shall tell your fellow human beings when the time has come. For the mission you have to fulfil is to provide people with an explanation when they no longer understand world events and find it difficult to believe in

a Creator of heaven and earth, in a loving Father, Who directs His children's destiny on earth. Then stand up and instruct them, and inform them of My great love ... Don't frighten them with God's wrath and the Judgment, for they are not yet punishments but merely the teaching methods I use in order to save people's souls. I Am not yet passing the final sentence but I won't leave any stone unturned in order to avoid having to condemn the souls on the day of Judgment to eternal damnation ....

And thus you should try to explain to them that the period of Salvation has expired, that there is only little time left until the end and that this time has to be utilized for their return to Me. People will doubt My love, they will doubt My omnipotence when they see the immense misery on earth caused by people's and, in the end, by My will, and anyone not of firm faith and informed as a result of his way of life will be in danger of falling away, that is, of abandoning Me completely, if he does not receive clarification.

Yet the magnitude of misery will also open their hearts and they will listen to you, and your Words will not go unheeded. And thus this time has to be particularly utilized, and you ought to speak as soon as you feel prompted from within to do so, for then it will always be My spirit which impels you to work for Me and My kingdom. And then inform them of the great spiritual hardship, make them aware of the fact that their bodies only live a short time but that souls live forever and thus their soul's fate is paramount; remind them to act with

love, remind them to take less notice of their own hardship and to treat their fellow human beings' hardship with more empathy; inform them of the strength and blessing of neighbourly love, My constant readiness to help, and try to awaken or strengthen their faith. And you will not have to worry what you should say, for I will put all words into your mouth if only you want to work for Me, if you don't refuse to fulfil the task I give you through My Word.

You will hear My voice within yourselves more distinctly than ever and then don't fear any opposition, for I want you to work on My behalf and know how to shield you from those who want to prevent you from doing your work. Speak without worry, and don't question whether your action corresponds to My will, for once the time for your activity comes I will take possession of you, and you shall follow Me without resistance, that is, you shall do whatever your heart tells you to do. And you will clearly feel it in your heart; it will be your own innermost desire to speak to everyone crossing your path and to draw their attention to the impending end which will come just as certainly as My intervention through natural forces, just as everything I have announced through My spirit will fulfil itself ....

Amen

## **Prudence and**

# gentleness ....

## ***B.D. 3712 from March 13th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

Be prudent and gentle .... and you will be very successful if you want to work for Me and My kingdom .... And if you want to give My Word to people you have to pass it on just as I have given it to you, you have to offer it with love .... Love, however, is always the same; it expresses itself in gentleness and patience, in willingness to bestow happiness, in selfless giving. Thus, anyone who offers My Word has to feel the inner aspiration to make other people happy and do so with a joyful heart, and if he urges the other person it has to be in a most gentle manner, he must want to bestow happiness with an innermost sincerity. If he then is eager, his eagerness is commendable, but not if he meets with resistance and prevails and then uses harsh words which are not helpful to My cause. He always has to consider himself My representative and thus always display a loving nature too, and if fervour takes hold of him it has to be a righteous one which does not apply to other people but to falsehood and error, which he fights against and thus seeks to eliminate. The results of satanic work should and can be the object of utter disgust and contempt and also need to be denounced accordingly, but the Gospel from the heavens has to be given to people with gentleness and love or it will be ineffective. And thus you have to

carry out your work with utmost prudence even when other people's spiritual state disgusts you, when their resistance tests your patience considerably. For what you proclaim is taught by love, hence love also has to express itself, and the bearer's loving nature has to be seen. Even so, you should speak on behalf of Me and My teaching with all firmness or the task I require you to do would not be work. You have to work diligently everywhere and with every human being .... You have to encourage them to act kindly and portray this as the only true service to God which is pleasing to Me and results in blessings and grace from above. My Word only teaches love, and when you encourage other people accordingly you are already spreading My Word .... Whether the human being's faithfulness to the offered Word results in a contact with Me entirely depends on his will, but a teaching given with gentleness is not without effect, it is more likely to impress than overzealous upholding of spiritual values which is not yet comprehensible to the other person because he has no love. Gentleness and prudence are important factors when spreading My teaching of love ....

However, if another person's arrogant spirit confronts you then you know that My adversary's spirit speaks through him .... which certainly calls for stronger words .... but in that case I Myself will put the words into your mouth, providing you quietly call upon Me for help to deal with people who carry this spirit in themselves. Because they have to be treated quite differently, they need to be disturbed from their arrogant contentment and guided

into another way of thinking. And gentle speech will be of no use to them. But you will clearly know in your heart if or when there is still a possibility to change such people, and if you work for Me and My kingdom in association with Me you will also be enlightened by My spirit, who will put the words into your mouth enabling you to speak without hesitation as prompted by your heart. Prudence and gentleness and sincere prayer to Me will definitely lead to success, because then I will bless your work for My kingdom on this earth and in eternity ....

Amen

## **Admonition to work for God ... Catastrophe ...**

***B.D. 3713 from March 14th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You will clearly and perceptively hear the inner voice which will call you to work for My kingdom when the hour of your action for Me has come. Then you should not hesitate but follow the voice and let Me take you to those whom you are to teach in My name. The immense adversity will be the best spokesman on My behalf, for it will, if only temporarily, open hearts for Me and you will be listened to more readily than ever before. People

were left without inner resistance by the previous huge natural event which had deprived them of everything that was dear to them. The task you must diligently comply with in order to first provide spiritual help for your fellow human beings is to explain to them the immense adversity by portraying it as My final means of help in order to prevent their souls' total descent. In an earthly way I will guide your thoughts such that you will be able to ease the physical hardship as well and will give to everyone according to his faith. Therefore, you should try to awaken or strengthen your fellow human beings' faith in Me, in My love and omnipotence, so that they can partake in the blessings of a strong faith and be helped with their earthly hardship. For One can and always will help .... you must just believe in Him .... And where earthly strength fails My strength will set in if this is My will, and with My strength you can cope with all situations in life and with My help will also be led through the forthcoming harsh conditions. And thus you, My servants on earth, must purely concentrate on your teaching ministry, on your spiritual activity, on your fellow human beings' souls which are in urgent need of help. You must try to direct their will towards Me by proclaiming Me as a God of love to Whom they must turn in order to receive the strength of love from Him as well. People will suffer so much adversity that they will take hold of any life line, that they will therefore listen more willingly than ever and be grateful to find an explanation for the work of destruction which is facing the survivors and whose souls I still want to gain for Myself. Therefore, each one of you,



My servants, should work within your circle, for you all will have ample opportunity to speak on My behalf and to mention My directly conveyed Word from heaven to earth. Make use of your time of activity, because you will find open hearts which are receptive for what you have to offer impelled by My spirit .... And I Myself will be able to work through you, I will be able to speak to people, and wherever merely the slightest will exists your labour will be successful, the souls will turn to Me which I Myself can then take care of according to their will and their faith. It will not be long until I will noticeably manifest Myself in the repeatedly announced natural disaster .... I will come suddenly and unexpectedly, for even if My Own take it into account every day .... they, too, will be taken by surprise when the first signs become apparent.

Nevertheless, regardless of how distressing it will be, I recognise its urgent necessity and will not divert from it under any circumstances. And thus you must all prepare yourselves for it by accepting Me and My Word in your heart wherever and whenever possible so that you will have an abundance of strength when you are surrounded by great adversity and fear, so that you can grant comfort and strength to all who are close to you, who are led to you by My will so that you will proclaim My Word to them for their souls' salvation. Prepare yourselves for this mission, for it will require all your strength and will, yet if you possess firm faith yourselves, you will, fearlessly and without worry, be wise guides and advisors for your fellow human beings and for the benefit of everyone be able to work for Me and My kingdom ....

Amen

# Prayer for grace and strength ...

***B.D. 3714 from March 15th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

When you approach Me from the bottom of your heart with a request for strength and grace you will certainly receive it, even if it is not instantly recognisable as help, since grace and strength affect the soul more than the body. The human being as such can still be subject to affliction but it will not touch the soul as much, so that the human being remains calm and collected due to his soul's strength, and yet the physical affliction still needs to be overcome. Thus I do not always remove it from the person but I will give him the strength to bear what I inflict on him. He will not experience something as severely as someone without faith who does not desire and request My gift of strength. Not the misfortune itself constitutes its severity but the state of the human being who, being weak, is doubly affected by every hardship. But My grace and strength is always at your disposal and, providing you make use of it, even the most difficult earthly life will be bearable for you and always of benefit for your soul, because as a result of My strength and

grace its shell will be gradually dissolved .... For as soon as the human being joins Me, as soon as he makes contact with Me by praying for strength and grace, I will be able to reveal Myself to him by giving him strength, and depending how much I can develop his soul, his earthly ambition will be reduced accordingly .... The strength of My grace urges the soul towards the spirit within itself and away from material possession. My grace and strength has the effect that a person becomes inwardly strong, that he disassociates himself from the external world and tries to make contact with the spirit in himself, and thus he achieves spiritual progress when he tries to alleviate worldly hardship with My support, with My supply of grace and strength. But such a request will never remain unfulfilled, a person who approaches Me with this appeal will never fail to benefit. And he will also always notice how much stronger he is after a heart-felt prayer to Me, albeit worldly hardship is not yet resolved.

On the one hand this is intended to make the person aware of his weakness and lack of strength and to encourage him to approach the One Who can remedy it, but on the other hand it should also strengthen his faith when he receives such obvious help after his heart-felt appeal to Me. A soul which strives towards Me will always derive spiritual benefit from the body's distress, because it will always take flight to Me and every heart-felt prayer will provide it with strength and grace, which will then take effect in accordance with its state of maturity .... visibly and noticeably for the body too or just perceptible

for the soul, depending on how suitable it is deemed by My wisdom and love. But I will never leave anyone without strength who requests it from Me .... For I will fulfil every appeal for spiritual wealth and, providing it is beneficial to you, also for earthly help. And thus you will be able to feel Me even during utmost adversity, you need not be discouraged and despondent providing you entrust yourselves to My love and grace, providing you want to accept My strength and confirm this in sincere conversation with Me. I know of all your difficulties, your weaknesses and doubts, but I want you to hand them over to Me in prayer so that you know when they are removed by My love, by My supply of strength and grace .... so that you will learn to recognise Me in everything that affects you. I speak to you through hardship just as I reveal Myself to you through help .... And if you stay in close contact with Me you will not fear any hardship, no matter how harsh it appears to be, because all strength and grace is at your disposal due to My love. I will take care of you until the end of your life, physically and spiritually and, providing you believe this without doubt, you will lose all fear of every severe hardship facing you, because you will always be able to overcome it with My grace and My strength ....

Amen

## **Danger of idleness ....**

## ***B.D. 3716 from March 17th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

You should not give yourselves to laziness during the time of the last days, you should not stay inactive and indifferently await the end, but instead you should work tirelessly, spiritually as well as earthly, where necessary. For your soul only benefits from activity and never from a state of rest. Moreover, the end time will necessitate vigorous activity as a result of severe hardship which will force the human being to participate in every kind of work. For only those who betray Me, who have completely deserted Me, will have a good living standard. Those who abide by Me will have to struggle with acute hardship, worldly too; nevertheless, with My help they will be able to overcome it if they work diligently. But I will keep them occupied until the end, I do not want them to stay inactive and wait for My help since I do not want them to run the danger of deserting Me by comparing their life with the life of the atheists and begin to falter in their faith in Me. Diligent activity will protect them from misguided thoughts because activity is life, and as long as a task is performed for the benefit of other people it is also a blessing for the human soul. And the difficulties of the time will necessitate supportive action for other people, My Own will have to be very industrious, and even the representatives of My Word, My servants on earth, are not exempt, and I will bless everyone's efforts and remove their worst hardship although it will seem to the

world as if the human being helps himself .... since My help only shows itself visibly to the world when the strength of faith is intended to become evident.

However, every person will be able to work and aspire spiritually in spite of utmost demands on his physical strength before the end .... If he aspires towards Me, My spiritual strength will carry out the person's work and his thoughts will be able to freely wander into the spiritual realm, he will be able to be in contact with Me at any time, his physical labour will not prevent him from working for the kingdom of God where appropriate. For I will give everyone a place where he will be able to work physically and spiritually in accordance with his abilities. Besides, time appears to pass more quickly to an active person, whereas the inactive human being extends his own time due to his idleness. Idleness does not lead to any kind of success, neither spiritually nor earthly .... the lord of the underworld takes possession of a lazy human being; he tempts him with worldly promises and diverts his attention from his real task on earth. And, because he wants to improve his life, the idle person follows him only too willingly. And I seriously warn My Own against idleness .... I will bless every deed which is not a blatant unkindness, and My blessing will result in constant help during spiritual as well as earthly hardship. Therefore, remain tirelessly active; remember that there is not much time until the end and that any kind of activity is life. Don't end the experience of life before its time, and also use the flow of vitality correctly, then the spiritual

strength will also be increased, you will persevere to the end and need not fear adversities because then you will be living in accordance with My will in this respect too and will always be able to be certain of My protection, My love and My strength ....

Amen

## **Living faith and its strength ....**

***B.D. 3717 from March 18th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Living faith can move mountains .... This is just a phrase to you since you have not yet put the strength of faith to the test and thus don't know its effectiveness, you don't know that the profoundly faithful human being avails himself of My strength and therefore everything is possible for him. However, how deep should this faith be in order to achieve everything the human being wants? .... In order to possess such strength of faith the human being's bond with Me must be so heartfelt that he no longer feels like an individual being but as an inseparable part of Me which is permeated by the strength which originates from Me. He must always and forever feel Me close to him, he must have become so certain of My presence that he

thinks, speaks and behaves in this conviction. And since he acknowledges Me as supreme Love, Wisdom and Omnipotence, since this belief has therefore become his firm conviction he sets no limits to My activity and thus no limits exist for him either, because he feels himself a part of Me Myself and permeated by My strength. Faith like this accomplishes everything and thus also things which lie beyond human ability. Then he will be able to work miracles and yet they are merely the natural processes of a human being who is how he should be on earth, who has reached his goal and placed his soul into a state of maturity which is close to its original state. Such firm faith necessitates total dedication to Me, complete detachment from earthly things, it requires unification with Me through love .... Only a constantly lovingly active person can have such firm and profound faith, for unification with Me must first have taken place before the person will feel so close to Me that My presence guarantees every action according to My will. The strength of love flowing to him due to his loving activity must fortify his faith because it gives evidence of Me and My presence, and anyone who can feel Me in himself and next to him also knows that he will never ever separate from Me again, that he can also avail himself of My strength with impunity because it is My own will that he should take effect instead of Me in order to prove the strength of faith and love to his fellow human beings, in order to testify to My love and omnipotence which thus provides strength to the living creation whose nature changed into love.



Faith will move mountains .... You should all acquire this profound faith and you, too, will be able to achieve anything on this earth .... First shape yourselves into love, then your faith will also increase and become a living faith, that is, it will be able to become active, whilst faith without love remains lifeless faith, a faith only according to the word but which lacks all strength. The words .... I believe .... are not enough to induce My working through you, for you must be able to truly believe in your heart, and this living faith is only possible through constant activity of love through which you receive the strength from Me in order to be effective and even implement the apparently impossible. Profound faith achieves everything .... Nevertheless, it requires My presence and you can only secure this through loving activity .... Hence, love comes first, and if you lack love you also lack faith, no matter how repeatedly you try to assure your faith through words. So now you can understand why I keep preaching love, why I send My disciples into the world in order to spread My teaching of love. It is certainly possible for you to intellectually acquire faith in a Power Which is exceedingly kind, powerful and wise, yet you can only enter into contact with this Power through activity of love, only then will this faith gain significance, for only then will you be able to avail yourselves of My strength and, in strong faith in Me, let it become effective, as I have promised you ....

Amen

# **Constrained souls ... Act of Salvation ...**

***B.D. 3718 from March 19th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Try to put yourselves into the position of a soul which is tied down by evil forces and unable to free itself without help. This is certainly of its own doing but pitiable because of its weakness, because it does not walk the right path, the path to Me as divine Redeemer, Who is able to remedy its weakness of will. It is completely under the influence of these forces who guide its thoughts into the wrong direction in order to keep it from the truth and therefore also from its own salvation. Such a soul is disadvantaged in every way. First of all, due to its misguided thinking it lacks understanding but it is constantly influenced to strive for what will stop it from becoming aware of it. Furthermore, it is encouraged to believe that it is on the right track in order to paralyse its willingness to investigate other avenues .... Hence it has to think and want what My adversary's forces mentally induce, and the soul itself is not strong enough to offer resistance, which is the result of not acknowledging My act of Salvation .... The human being is engaged in a far greater spiritual struggle against the forces of darkness, and he will lose if he does not call on Me Myself for help, to strengthen his will, for salvation from My adversary's

power.

For he has immense power over the souls, over their will, even though the will is free. He intensifies the weakness of will and the soul cannot defend itself against him by itself as he is far stronger than the soul. Hence I came to the world to help humanity in the fight against their souls' enemy. Through My death on the cross I brought them salvation from the constrained state, I acquired strength of resistance for every single person who is willing to accept it from My hands .... who acknowledges Me and believes in My act of Salvation. I cannot endow the human being with this strength of increased will against his will if I want to create a free, perfect being which has found Me voluntarily. Thus free will has to be considered in all situations in life if the last goal is to be achieved .... ultimate perfection, thus Godliness of the being which is living on earth embodied as a human being for the test of its will. This test of will necessitates the adversary's immense power over every individual soul, just as the blessings of My act of Salvation are necessary to overcome this power. Therefore it is My continuous endeavour to make people believe in Me as Redeemer of the world, and by conveying the pure truth I seek to make the act of Salvation, My mission as a human being on earth, comprehensible to them.

However, it is up to every person himself to form his own opinion since I do not force anyone to believe in Me, but he makes it impossible for himself to receive the blessings of the act of Salvation, the reinforcement of his

will against My adversary, if he does not acknowledge Me. And then it is extraordinary difficult for the soul to pull itself away from the enemy. Because it does not recognise the danger it is in, it believes to be on the right path, its understanding is clouded because the adversary's influence also affects the human being's every thought and activity, so that he will not establish the right relationship with Me and will even be prevented from acting with love. Nor will he allow himself to be taught because the adversary's influence is stronger than the influence of fellow human beings who want to help him. Only the right attitude towards Me as the Redeemer of the world .... the right attitude towards Jesus Christ and His teaching .... can bring help to a soul, and an effort has to be made for this. If the person can find the will to penetrate the knowledge of Jesus Christ's mission he will also receive assistance from Me, he will be guided into the right understanding in spite of My adversary's most eager influence, because I will help wherever I feel but the faintest willingness to come close to Me .... Although the human being cannot muster the understanding for My act of Salvation quickly, as soon as he acknowledges Jesus Christ as God's representative, as soon as he accepts that He was given a mission by God, his train of thought will be on the right track and he will continue to be guided correctly, and then the adversary will already have lost his power.

But this has to come first before the soul can withdraw from his influence, only then will it be saved, and only

then will it be open to all other information. The battle of light against darkness is enormous, and where the light shines it has to be guarded so as not to get extinguished .... The prince of darkness also rages against the bearers of light, and that should prompt them into utmost caution, they should not go near his entrapments, they should take flight when his activity becomes evident, but always let the light shine when someone lingering in darkness desires the light. However, they should never allow My adversary the triumph to have darkened the light from the heavens .... thus never give him the opportunity to successfully influence his victims .... because only where I Am acknowledged is it possible to break his power .... And thus those souls should only ever be informed of the significance of My act of Salvation, so that they can liberate themselves of their own accord, so that they learn to differentiate between truth and error, and through truth alone become blessed ....

Amen

## **Activity of intellect and heart ... Truth ...**

***B.D. 3719 from March 20th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

All spiritual knowledge can certainly be processed by the intellect but it first has to be grasped by the heart, whereas worldly knowledge is closer to the intellect than the heart .... And therefore it is understandable that an intellectually very active person would try to ascertain subjects which are closely related to world events, even if he tries to give them a spiritual character .... that he thus would like to investigate My plan of eternity purely because of its worldly outcome, which he believes he can calculate with mathematical certainty .... As long as the human being is still focussing his attention on external events his intellect is more active than his heart .... only when he starts to attend to purely spiritual problems will his heart be active, but then he will take little notice of external life, the unfolding of worldly events, and will only look at these as accompaniment of the actual happening. Only then will he approach the truth, which enters through his heart and wants to be understood by the intellect. It is not possible for a human being to understand My eternal plan of Salvation such that he can establish any intervention by My will. Only when it is revealed through My spirit will it be proclaimed by a prophet in accordance with My will, but I will not disclose the time even to this prophet, as this corresponds to My wisdom. A spiritually aspiring person will also know that it is necessary to keep the date and time of the end secret, consequently he will not ever believe the account of a person who trusts that he can calculate it.

This kind of intellectual activity is a clear indication of an

unenlightened spirit, because a spiritually awakened person lets Me rule and work and only aims to achieve utmost maturity for the soul, and by the signs of the time he will recognise humanity's spiritual low .... He will also know the reason and cause of the spiritual decline, he will know about the correlation of all things and thus also the course (sequence) of events of the earth period in accordance with certain basic laws, he merely finds his knowledge confirmed in the sequence of world events but does not attempt to derive world events themselves from it. World events are indeed also a consequence of spiritual decline, but the latter has to be recognised and heeded first, and thus every single person has to endeavour to first remedy the spiritual hardship, and for this it is essential that the heart is activated first and then the intellect. The serious work on oneself also results in spiritual enlightenment and gives reliable vision for future events, and then the heart is active. However, by using the intellect alone it is not possible to reach the goal of becoming knowledgeable and to understand My plan of eternity .... Because I set a limit to the human being's intellect which he cannot transcend, but I gave the heart unlimited leeway .... Its spirit, which is part of Me and to which nothing remains hidden, can gain unrestricted access. Therefore, if you want to become wise, i.e. acquire knowledge which corresponds to the purest truth, your heart needs to be constantly active .... Love has to guide you into truth .... but you will never reach the goal by just using your intellect, your knowledge will be and remain inaccurate as long as My

spirit cannot become effective in you through the activity of your heart .... through love ....

Amen

## **Detachment from earthly possessions ....**

***B.D. 3723 from March 21st 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Offer everything that is dear to you on earth as a sacrifice to Me and you will receive what My love bestows on you in abundance and what will make you already supremely happy on earth and later in eternity. If you want to receive you have to be willing to give first; but if you cling to earthly possessions, the wealth of the spiritual realm will be unattainable to you. However, earthly possessions include everything that gives you earthly pleasure, that you consider desirable for your physical needs. You have to gladly and voluntarily sacrifice everything you love on earth to Me, those things that cannot follow you into the spiritual kingdom, in order to receive everlasting riches which will follow you into eternity .... Although you will certainly make sacrifices you will nevertheless exchange them for something incomparably better; it is just a temporary pain of



detachment which will soon be followed by a blissful certainty that you will only then own true wealth which is of eternal value.

And if I thus take everything away from you, you should not get disheartened and doubt My love and mercy, My protection, which I nevertheless grant to you even if you don't recognise it. I will only take from you in order to give even more back to you, and if you voluntarily let go of what is dear to you, your body will also receive what it requires. Just your heart should detach itself from everything, for the abundance of My grace needs a place which is devoid of all kinds of earthly longings. Whatever you sacrifice voluntarily need not be taken by Me forcibly, yet the detachment from it has to be carried out if you want to grow in strength and grace, in maturity of soul and spiritual riches, which constitute your wealth in eternity. And thus you will thereby also recognise that I Am only motivated by My love when I take from you, My believers, what belongs to the earth, because I want to make you receptive for My love's spiritual offering; you will learn to understand that I cannot work in you to the fullest extent as long as your love does not belong to Me alone but also applies to the commodities of the world. Consequently it is a blessing when I try to set you free from this love and take from you what you find difficult to give up willingly.

Sacrifice everything to Me, try to detach your hearts from all worldly things, and you will soon feel the blessing of your willingness to make sacrifices, for thereby you will

draw Me to you, Who no longer finds any obstacles to work abundantly in you. For you will no longer have the time to overcome earthly longings slowly; you will have to detach yourselves faster and therefore also more painfully, yet it will always be beneficial for you if you submit to My will, if you humbly accept your fate and don't pine after earthly possessions, for the easier you can detach yourselves from them the more receptive and willing is your heart for spiritual gifts, and these will compensate you a thousand fold. For you will only recognise their true worth in the afterlife, in the spiritual kingdom, and then you will be profusely happy if you enter it with a wealth of spiritual possessions and are able to work with them for your own happiness ....

Amen

## **Willpower ... Strength and might ....**

***B.D. 3724 from March 24th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

I Am the Lord of heaven and earth, and everything has to submit to My will. Everyone who opposes Me rejects strength of his own accord, i.e. he refuses to accept My strength and is therefore imperfect. But everyone who

voluntarily submits himself to My will shall receive My strength without limitation and will be able to work like Me in perfection. Hence the spiritual being's measure of strength depends on My will and its fulfilment, and the human being on earth will therefore be extremely mighty and strong and use his strength to accomplish exceptional feats if he completely adapts himself to My will, thus totally subordinates his will to Mine. Then his every action will correspond to My eternal will, then his share on earth will neither be disorder nor lack of strength, but he will stand in the midst of My emanation of strength and will be able to work without limitation in every direction but only as far as it corresponds to My will. My strength is not at his disposal for dishonourable activity, as it will instantly leave the person who steps outside of My will. However, once the human being has entered into My eternal order, once he has adopted My will as his own, it will not be possible for him to relapse into an erroneous desire again, because once the strength flows through him it will release him from the power which opposes My will and tries to draw every soul to itself. Then it is no longer possible to utilise the strength for actions which oppose My will, because My strength will be holding on to him and he will be permanently connected to Me, he will have reached his earthly as well as his eternal goal. Heaven and earth are subject to My will .... And nothing can change against My will .... but for the duration of his life on earth I shall allow the human will complete freedom, I shall not force it to subordinate itself to Me. But once it has entered into

My eternal order then will have happened entirely voluntarily, uninfluenced and without any compulsion.

And therefore I will, with much love, seize the spirit which subordinated itself to Me and not let it descend into the restraints of bondage again, into the state of disorder, even if My adversary is incessantly active to regain the spirit which had returned to Me. He cannot compel the human being's will, and every other influence will fail due to the strength which the person then calls his own, because then he is working in unison with Me, and the adversary will not be able to repel Me. But the human being does not practise the strength of his will enough .... He could achieve phenomenal results but his faith is not strong enough in order to activate his will, and his weakness of faith does not allow the person's inherent strength to take effect .... Having subordinated his will to Mine he has My strength at his disposal and makes too little use of this strength. He himself does not know or believe how powerful he can be in unity with Me.

Because he is still earthly in as much as his thinking adapts itself to earthly natural law, so that he only carries out what naturally appears to be feasible to him .... He does not cross the boundaries which are set for the imperfect human being, precisely because of his imperfection, which he, however, can ignore. Due to his will's subordination, due to My influx of strength, he has placed himself into a state of perfection which allows him to work outside the framework of natural law but which nevertheless remains natural because it is the

result of a certain maturity of soul which the human being can already achieve on earth. As a result of his inadequate belief he is setting his own limitations, which God has not set for him .... Thus the human being can have utmost strength at his disposal and yet not use it enough, because his human earthly thinking holds him back when he should simply let his spirit speak. Because it will instruct him and try to fortify the profound faith in him, on account of which he then can achieve whatever he wants by using My strength. Then he will also work for the benefit of his fellow human beings, only then will the strength of faith reveal itself, because people will then also acknowledge the source of strength (the strength of the source) which the believer draws from, and they themselves will desire to drink from it too ....

Amen

## **Bearers of light ... God's protection ....**

***B.D. 3725 from March 25th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

The light from the heavens can never be extinguished as long as willing servants can be found to accept it and pass it on in order to penetrate the darkness. These

servants are My tools who take care to spread the light in My name and who I therefore will not let become weak, because it is My will that the light of day shall penetrate the dark night of spirit. And every earthly and spiritual power will fight this will in vain. Only a person's will itself can refuse to accept the light, in that case I will not force it .... but then the light will not go out, it will merely be passed on to where it is willingly accepted, where people do not take flight but desire the light. Light in abundance could be everywhere, the night could be dispelled far and wide if people themselves would not prevent it, but that does not imply that I will let My light go out because it shall send its rays to people who hunger for light, whose hunger I want to satisfy. Consequently the bearers of light themselves cannot be touched, even if they are subjected to the worst threats. They will indeed be prevented from spreading My Word, the light from the heavens, but since they are in My service, since they are working on My behalf, the threats of other people will not frighten them .... They will leave the place where they are prevented to work and continue their mission somewhere else. The shining of the light's rays is far reaching, for wherever I know a human heart longing for the light from the heavens I will send its rays .... My Word will also be taught secretly and far more effectively there than in public, where it is barely noticed. And for as long as I sustain My servant's life on earth he will be able to work for Me, he will enjoy his work and conduct it diligently, for every light bearer is inwardly enlightened and feels its benefit, and for this reason he is also eager to provide

his fellow human beings with the same benefit.

And in spite the world's attempt to extinguish the light from the heavens it will not succeed, for wherever it is kept in check it will forcibly burst through again and shine more brightly than ever. Because I only lead the bearers of light to where the fire of My love finds nourishment, thus where a willing heart allows itself to be seized and before long begins to shine itself .... Then it will enter into contact with the everlasting light and will never again descend into darkness, and yet again a light bearer has been awakened who will pass on My Word, who will say how he really feels because My spirit encourages him to do so. The light will only be accepted by someone whose heart is harbouring a spark of love, and once I stir this spark of love into a brighter glow with My Word a light will flare up which cannot be extinguished. And thus time and again a new small flame is kindled by My Word, by the light from the heavens, which is nourished by every good deed, by every kind thought, so that it grows and becomes a bright flame which can continue to shine again and penetrate the spiritual night, as it is My will. Hence the bearers of light are blessed by Me and I support their actions on earth, so they need never worry that the light from the heavens could ever go out, because they are accomplishing an important mission, they are in My service, and every lord will protect his labourers and servants when they are in serious danger, so that the work, for which he has hired his servants, shall not be harmed. And thus I, too, will always and forever

protect My work as well as My servants on earth, because the battle of light against darkness has to take place .... because the light has to be carried into the night, in order to drive it out ....

Amen

## **Concern for His Own ...**

***B.D. 3726 from March 26th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

My Own can always be recognised by their generosity, by their spiritual attitude and their acknowledgment of My name even before the world. They will not shy away from standing up for Me and My teaching of love once the opposing activity becomes ever more evident and people progressively descend into heartlessness, thus distancing themselves from Me. However, My children know that their fellow human beings are in utmost spiritual danger and in great need of clarification, thus they also come forward and don't hide their attitude towards Me, their God and Father since eternity. Anyone who believes in Me does not fear to confess it before the world; anyone who believes in Me also lives in accordance with My will and always and forever upholds his contact with Me .... Thus he belongs to My Own who will indeed be subjected to severe pressure in the end but who, through their union



with Me, are and remain nevertheless stronger until the last day has arrived. For I will never leave My Own and they will believe this very promise of Mine without hesitation, because their spirit is already awakened, and the spirit in them teaches them the same as I reveal to people through My Word. The more harshly they are confronted by earthly hardship, the more they will be filled with My strength, because I will take particular care of My Own during the last days, as to enable them to stay loyal to Me and to resist the adversary. For this reason My Own need not worry how to survive the approaching time ....

Earthly and spiritually I care for those who have already passed their test of will for Me on earth, and who I therefore need not test anymore but only require for the sake of their fellow human beings, so that the latter can recognise the strength which is inherent in faith in Me, in Jesus Christ, the Son of God and Redeemer of the world. Until the end they shall still have the opportunity to gain this faith, and therefore you, My faithful children, have to provide them with the evidence and persevere until the end. Thus I provide you with immense strength because superhuman things are expected of you which you will be able to accomplish because I Am with you and thus you can use My strength. You can let go of every worry when you belong to My Own, and you are My Own when your heart turns towards Me in its desire for My love, for My grace and for truth .... for eternal life .... Because then you will improve yourselves in accordance with My will during

your earthly life, then you are truly My children which I will not leave, which I will always paternally care for until the end and then bring back to Me, in order to reward your time of suffering on earth with bliss ....

Amen

## **'Whoso eateth My flesh ...'**

***B.D. 3728 from March 28th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Make contact with Me in spirit and you will be able to draw from the source of life, you will be able to satisfy yourselves with the bread of heaven, you will receive strength and need no longer starve despite your earthly hardship, for body and soul will be fortified if you accept My Word, the bread of heaven .... Body and soul will live .... the former as long as I have determined, but the latter in eternity. You only need to nourish the soul, to provide it with the nourishment which ensures its life, since a lifeless soul in an lively body is your downfall as soon as you have to relinquish your life on earth; because a dead soul is without strength, yet not without feeling, and will suffer inconceivable pain in its dead condition. Therefore, create life for it, don't let it enter eternity in a dead state, instead, take care that it will live and be capable of being active in the afterlife, that it will be full

of strength and therefore blissfully happy. The life of the soul requires a constant supply of nourishment, of spiritual food, so that it will become strong and able to work. As the Giver of spiritual sustenance I constantly present it to you and wait for your willingness to receive it, I constantly invite you to take communion with Me in order to offer you My Word, My flesh and My blood, in order to nourish you with food that will assure eternal life for your soul .... And you should follow this call, you should come with a hungry heart and let yourselves be fed and refreshed by Me, you shall be My guests who will receive from Me everything your soul needs to live .... You should not slight My Supper, don't bypass it and leave the food, which is offered by My love, untouched .... you should always look for contact with Me and let Me shower you with gifts, that is, you should desire My gift and gratefully receive it .... For I cannot give you anything if you don't want anything, because My nourishment, the bread from heaven, is delectable indeed and cannot be conveyed to those who don't desire it. Thus your heart must impel you to Me, you must seek contact with Me and appeal to Me for nourishment for your soul, you must come to Me completely consciously and want to receive communion, My Word, which I offer to you with love and is spiritual food and spiritual refreshment which I have blessed with My strength and is therefore life-giving for everyone who enjoys it with a longing for Me and My love .... His desire will be satisfied and yet it will impel him to Me time and again, for anyone who has once tasted My bread from heaven, anyone who has refreshed

himself once at the source of My love, will repeatedly return to it, he can no longer live without food for his soul, he will be a constant guest at My table and I will always and forever be able to offer Communion to him .... And his soul will live, it will have overcome death and can never again descend into the state of death, for My nourishment assures its eternal life, as I have promised with the Words 'Whoso eateth My flesh, and drinketh My blood, hath eternal life ....'

Amen

## **The church of Christ ... Faith - Rock ...**

***B.D. 3729 from March 29th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

The true church of Christ does not include followers of this or that school of thought, of this or that organization, but only the flock of those who have a living faith. Faith alone is God's condition for the human being to be able to deem himself to belong to the church of Christ. Thus, His church can exist everywhere, it extends to wherever there are people who believe in Jesus Christ and because of Him live a life which can be described as a succession of Christ, which corresponds to the will of God, Who

walked on earth in Jesus Christ to make His will known to people through His Word and Who lived His life on earth as a living example of His Word. Anyone who is profoundly faithful also keeps God's commandments, he lives with love and shapes himself into a child of God, he is a follower of the church of Christ and therefore an applicant to His kingdom. Profound faith and therefore a life of love results in the working of God's spirit within the human being, and thus the church of Christ constantly and forever will be permeated by His spirit, it will only be able to speak truthfully and right, it will be able to teach wisdom and live in the full strength of faith, i.e. it will also be able to convince other people, providing they are willing, of its value, of its task to proclaim God's kingdom to the world in accordance to His instructions. But only those of good will are able to understand this, its value remains concealed to others because they don't know the attributes of the Church of Christ .... nor can they distinguish right from wrong.

However, secular organisations who claim to be the church of Christ on earth, as mentioned by Jesus Christ, generally just represent the outward appearance and not its essence .... They indeed teach the Word of Christ, nevertheless only living faith gives God's Word the right meaning and the right value to the human soul. And this living faith can exist in every clerical organisation but it can also be absent from it, however, only the human being who calls this living faith his own is a follower of His church. And living faith initially establishes the right

relationship with God through deeds of love .... This awakens the spirit within the human being who will teach him, and then the human being can clearly and fully understand the essence of the church of Christ .... he can in fact distinguish between God's will and human will under the guise of Christian faith .... Then he will belong to the church of Christ which requires no other name, which has no external attribute but the effectiveness of the strength of spirit, which can also be outwardly recognised by a way of life in love and wisdom. But when the human being is a follower of that church he is also faithful until the end because anyone who has living faith also has the light which shines eternally .... he lives in truth and will now also be able to help others to understand because he is moved by the spirit within himself to do so. His faith is unwavering and therefore like a rock which defies all storms .... and the gates of hell will not be able to do anything against such faith and will never shake the church of Christ .... as Christ has promised .... His church is invincible and will remain so eternally ....

Amen

**Gift of teaching ...**  
**Teaching ministry ...**

## ***B.D. 3730 from March 30th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

You will be granted the gift of teaching once your mission starts .... You will feel imbued by My spirit and consequently also be able to speak with conviction, because I will express Myself through you. I will place the Words in your mouth and yet your intellect will grasp what you say, what you, impelled by My spirit, are conveying to your fellow human beings, because you receive the meaning of My Word from above, from the kingdom of light where the truth originates from. And therefore you will only spread pure truth if you teach in My name. Thoughts will flow to you which your heart and mind will grasp and it will fill you with inner joy that you are allowed to spread exceedingly valuable spiritual knowledge. And thus, impelled by the love of your heart, you will distribute that which makes you happy yourself. For the teacher has an abundance of knowledge and is therefore called by Me for his teaching ministry. Yet he must confront the wrong teachers and prophets in all seriousness and seek to invalidate their doctrine insofar as they do not correspond to the truth. He should not fear that he is not up to the challenge; for once again it is not he himself but My spirit which speaks through him. And My spirit is superior to all human reasoning, it can solve the most difficult problems, expose and refute the greatest error and no opponent on earth can surpass its wisdom. But the opportunity of its working must be given

by your willingness to adopt the teaching ministry even with those people, that is, you must not shirk or allow yourselves to be intimidated if you are confronted by the wisdom of human intellect in order to disarm you or to undermine your teachings. Then you need only enter into heartfelt unity with Me and you will be able to defeat even the greatest speakers, because I Myself will speak through you and, truly, no-one is a match for Me .... Let your spirit carry you along, it will guide you correctly, it will let you act and speak in the right way, it will put your thoughts in order, for anyone who receives a teaching ministry from Me will also receive My help to administer it correctly. For it is My will that the truth shall be spread, that untruth and error shall be denounced and that people's thoughts shall take the right direction, because only through truth can people become blissfully happy. This is why you, My disciples on earth, shall place yourselves at My disposal as bearers of truth wherever and whenever I need you, and My spirit in you will be informed of this, so that you will be absolved from all responsibility of acting wrongly, for I Myself will guide and direct anyone who has offered himself to Me, so that he can fulfil My will ....

Amen

**Teaching activity in times  
of adversity – Last days ....**



## ***B.D. 3731 from March 31th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

A concerted effort must be made by all those whom I have appointed to preach My Word in times of greatest earthly adversity. People will be needed in all places to proclaim Me and educate their fellow human beings, because great adversity will be everywhere, people far and wide will be disheartened and no longer able to understand anything if they lack all knowledge about My reign and activity, about the purpose and reason of what is imposed upon them, for as long as their goal is unknown to them they will not know the means of attaining this goal either. For this reason I will dispatch My servants to places where their efficiency is needed, where I know there are receptive hearts which are willing to listen to My Word. Each one will be able to be effective within his circle, the size of which will vary depending on the teaching ability of My servant on earth, who will then fully consciously take up his office of working for Me and My kingdom. Consequently, no-one should be hasty but, instead, wait patiently until he receives his call, until I Myself instruct him perceptively through his heart .... because everything will first have to take its course according to My will .... My Own certainly need strength of faith in view of the adversity which will be apparent everywhere, which will seem unbearable for many people and which I will nevertheless allow to happen in order to gain their hearts. My Own are aware of

the purpose of the adversity and shall convey this knowledge to their fellow human beings, and thus I also allow the adversity to give My Own the opportunity to influence their fellow human beings through the strength of their faith, which makes everything easier to endure and to overcome. I will support My Own as soon as they call upon Me and therefore their adversity will always be bearable, for time and again there will be a way out where no human help seems possible. But they shall be of service to Me during this time, they shall speak on My behalf and mention My love, wisdom and omnipotence, they shall profess Me before the world and advise their fellow human beings to adopt the right attitude towards Me, which alone will ensure them protection and help .... They shall teach and proclaim My Word wherever possible but especially during the time of great adversity, which will precede My intervention on earth and will continue afterwards. Wherever you see great adversity you will know that your action is needed and your concerted activity will not remain unsuccessful if you are strong in faith yourselves and always and forever carry Me in your hearts. Then the hardship will not frighten you, even though your eyes and ears will witness it daily .... For you will know why I allow it to happen, you will recognise its necessity and the blessing every person can derive from it. And therefore every one of you are needed for spreading My teaching, and every one of you will be able to work according to his ability but always assured of My blessing, because I need robust labourers for My vineyard at the time which will pave the

way to the final end.

Amen

# **Exercise to hear the voice of the spirit ...**

***B.D. 3732 from April 1st 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

You can distinctly hear the voice of the spirit in you providing you want to hear it and mentally make it known to God yourselves, since this mental expression of will enables you to receive thought transmissions from the spiritual kingdom. You cannot receive information unless you yourselves desire to receive it, but God responds to every heartfelt desire and gives to you in accordance with your degree of maturity and will. However, you have to observe the thoughts which approach you in a variety of ways when you ponder spiritual problems. They will affect you differently, appear to be acceptable or unacceptable to you and, providing you had prayed for enlightenment of spirit first, you can safely accept or ignore what you feel is right. Then you can follow your feelings and you will accept what is right but dismiss what is wrong. Thoughts from the spiritual world affect you in proportion to the strength of your desire for truth,

so that a person who genuinely desires truth remains unaffected by wrong thought currents. In that case the influence of misguided forces is no longer sufficient to captivate a person, since the beings of light have free reign and the human being readily opens himself to their thought transmissions.

You have to practise this process of spiritual activity, i.e. you have to pay more attention to your inner life, withdraw into solitude more often, and if you would like clarification about a problem, spend a longer period of time in thought. However, this exercise always needs to be preceded by heartfelt prayer in order to establish a connection with God and thus also with the spiritual forces, who work in accordance with his will and whose actions consist of transmitting utmost truthful spiritual knowledge. This sincere connection protects you from contact with misguided forces who, understandably, endeavour to cloud and confuse your thoughts, because the battle of darkness against light and vice versa forms the basis of everything and will still continue for eternity. But anyone who acknowledges God as the most loving, wise and omnipotent being, who consciously enters into contact with this supremely perfect Being, who constantly strives to fulfil His will and then, having fulfilled these conditions, desires to know the pure truth, will not be left by God to fall prey to the forces of darkness ....

God Himself will instruct him and the human being need only open his heart, listen inwardly and consider his

thoughts, and he will truly be on the right track and receive clarification when he desires it. Because God, the eternal truth, also wants to convey the truth to his living creations, but God, the eternal love, also requires the human beings' will to shape themselves into love too, and anyone who endeavours to do so also aspires after truth, since God, love and truth are unthinkable without each other. And thus every human being who is willing to love and desires the truth is also able to hear the voice of God, Who expresses himself through the spirit in a person .... mentally or, in a state of advanced maturity, also vocally. And a person always receives the same truth, which is totally synonymous with the Word, which is directly transmitted by God's great love to people on earth through awakened servants and prophets, who have voluntarily offered their service to Him in order to help erring souls in utmost spiritual hardship. For there is immense spiritual darkness and people urgently need help if they want to become perfect ....

Amen

## **Cup of suffering ... God's love ....**

***B.D. 3733 from April 2nd 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

The cup of suffering has to be emptied completely if you want your soul to heal, so that it will be able to enter the spiritual kingdom as a recipient of light after your physical death. You don't know the blessing your soul can achieve through suffering, you don't know how it will change within a short time by dissolving the darkest shell, which otherwise would have taken much longer to achieve. Your life span is limited, it will not last much longer, but souls are still far from perfect and yet I want to help them achieve a certain degree of maturity, so that they need not expect a new banishment into matter, for I take pity on the latter and would like to save every single soul from this fate. Your will to achieve maturity of soul is very feeble, and thus you would still need a long time to attain this degree of maturity. But this time is no longer at your disposal, and so I use means of purification which are undeniably very painful but which can be exceedingly beneficial if only you humbly and acceptingly concede to My will, if you do not grumble and complain but allow Me Myself to work on you in ways which promise good results.

I know that you are suffering but I also know how you will rejoice when your earthly time of trial is over and you have passed through it, just as you will thank Me for having used every means to save you from an endless time of new captivity in hard matter. What I spare you now you will have to endure in the kingdom of the beyond, if you have the grace to leave earthly life before the last days. But if you live until the end then you run

the danger of descending even lower if you are unable to detach yourselves from earthly possessions beforehand, if you have not yet reached the conclusion that only spiritual life is valuable and that earthly life is merely the means to an end .... the means to achieve maturity of soul .... Abandon everything you own in order to attain maturity of soul, then you can confidently await your end, then you will have reached your objective on earth, you will have overcome matter and will be ready for the spiritual kingdom. Part from earthly possessions voluntarily in order to receive spiritual wealth in abundance, because they will make you far happier than any earthly possession could ever do. Finish the cup and know that My love belongs to you or I would not let you suffer so, because the suffering is for you, who acknowledge Me, a fire of purification, since I want your souls to enter My kingdom in a crystal clear state, since I want the light and strength of My love to be able to flow through you without meeting the slightest resistance. And do not lose faith in My love .... A sufferer should know himself loved by Me, because by means of suffering I draw him close to Me where he will truly find peace and happiness one day ....

Amen

## **Simple form of prayer ....**

## ***B.D. 3734 from April 3rd 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

The simple form of prayer is pleasing to Me .... Anyone who talks to Me in elaborate words and sentences will not be able to generate the depth of feeling which alone finds its way to My heart. But when a prayer comes from the heart it is like a simple expression of innermost feelings and its simplicity will not fail to have an effect because I will hear that call every time and comply with it. I ask for a child's trusting prayer to its Father, which holds nothing back and is unpretentious and thus pleases the Father; whereas all stilted speech originates more from intellectual thought than from the heart and restricts the relationship of the child towards its Father. A devout prayer is a silent dialogue with Me in all humbleness and love, in trust of My constant assistance, of an affectionate answer .... Such a prayer finds My favour .... But I take no notice of formal prayers because they do not arise from your hearts and therefore cannot be experienced like a personal prayer. And it is not the length of a prayer which increases its effectiveness but only its sincerity ....

You should indeed pray incessantly, however this Word should not be taken to mean that you should linger in the practise of long formal prayers, which are not of the slightest value before Me, rather you should think of Me constantly and communicate with Me. This will give Me pleasure and you can derive endless grace from it,



because your permanent unity of thought with Me makes you receptive to My grace: when you start your day's work with Me, when you consult Me in everything you do and thus allow Me to stay near to you due to your own request which you prove in your thoughts every time you unite with Me in prayer. Your heart has to be involved if I Myself want to work on and within you. But you will not be able to achieve an effect with an empty prayer, even if you spend much time on it, because then I cannot hear the voice of My child, which alone receives from the Father what it requires and requests. And when you feel like My children your prayer will be childlike and simple too, you will not need formal prayers because they will not give you the comfort and strength, they will appear as empty talk to you. Because the right relationship with Me also urges you to use the right words, like a child speaks to its Father, and then your prayer is indeed pleasing to Me ....

Amen

## **Spiritual meaning of the Word ....**

***B.D. 3735 from April 4th 1946, taken  
from Book No. 47***

Every Word I said when I lived on earth incorporates a

profoundly spiritual meaning, even where it concerns earthly issues. You should strive to understand this spiritual meaning and thus receive My Word with the desire to understand it spiritually. For what I said and did on earth happened for the sake of the souls who were supposed to achieve perfection while still on earth. Hence your thinking should be spiritually orientated in order for the soul to derive benefit from My Word. Only then will you recognise the immense value of what I conveyed to you on earth, and only then will you also be able to assess the immense gift of grace which is now conveyed to you through the transmission of My Word, which you receive from Me directly. Each one of My Words cautions you to act kindly. This certainly includes earthly activity too, but if the earthly deed is not inspired by the spirit of love it has lost its value for the soul. Whatever you do on earth can only be considered and valued as an activity of love when the spirit of love is involved, otherwise an action will only be effective in earthly life .... And thus it is the spirit which first gives a person's deed its value for eternity.

And if you look at each one of My Words from this point of view you will realise how diligently a person has to improve himself in order to provide his soul with the benefit of My Word. He has to understand each one of My Words spiritually, only then will he comply with it and fulfil My will. Hence it follows that actions which demand external gestures, externally recognisable deeds, with the exception of compassionate help for a fellow human

being, could never be My will because the correct compliance with My Word is psychological work which need not be visible to any other person, which is only recognisable by its effects but not by external actions. Discover the spiritual meaning in each of My Words and you will have to admit that I do not expect any particular deeds on your part .... when I remind you to be humble, peaceful, compassionate and just .... All this merely requires psychological work, for an externally visible action does not guarantee the spirit of what I ask. Only the effect is recognisable in the person himself, just as the loving deed for one's neighbour is indeed also perceptible to the human being and yet need not incorporate the spirit of love, if the person's mind is not spiritually orientated.

The result of your conduct in life is apparent in the orderliness which necessarily has to result in an inclusion of My will. Consequently, you humans can follow My Word without being spiritually active by leading a way of life as a product of your upbringing which outwardly does not contradict My will, and yet you do not greatly benefit your soul because you do not understand My Word spiritually, you do not ascertain the spiritual meaning of My teaching of love .... And thus you will not be able to completely remain within My order, since I first have to make you aware of the fact that you do not take enough notice of your soul. For this reason heart and intellect have to become active if you want to mature spiritually, you have to accept My Word with your heart and follow it

by being motivated by your heart, otherwise it will remain ineffective in you in spite of your apparent fulfilment of My commandments. Try to understand the spirit of My Word and you will derive the most abundant blessing from it, because what I give to you is intended for eternity and not for your temporal life. Hence you should make an effort to gain eternal life, and therefore you also need to be spiritually very active since it is the spirit which generates life ....

Amen

## **Disclosure of attitude ...**

***B.D. 3736 from April 5th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

People will reveal their innermost attitude when you bring the Gospel to them in times of severe earthly hardship, when you offer them My Word for comfort and help. Many a person will reach for it like a drowning man who grasps the last rescue anchor and draws the strength he needs from My Word in order to overcome earthly hardship. While others will behave indifferently or negatively, ridicule the bearers of light or even threaten them. Because the immense hardship will remove any disguise, and people who previously still pretended to believe will show their true character and then part with

all faith, they will condemn earthly life and curse Me as Creator and Ruler of heaven and earth, if they inwardly still believe in a Power which is strong and yet allows this hardship to happen. And they are the ones who belong to My adversary, who knowingly declare war on everyone who acknowledges Me, because their curse against Me, which they need not voice yet frequently utter in their dark thoughts, will fall back on them and completely drive them into My adversary's hands, who will openly use them for actions against Me. And they, too, need to be forced by harsh conditions to express themselves; they, too, have to openly declare their attitude and become aware of what they believe in. This disclosure of attitude will happen when you preach My Word to them which testifies of My love, which teaches and intends to foster love. The test I expect of people is difficult and yet it cannot be bypassed in view of the end which you are approaching faster than you think.

And anyone who does not prove himself in the days of hardship, who does not find the path to Me, is without faith, even if he says otherwise. The strength of My Word will touch many true believers and ease their distress, but anyone who opposes you when you bring them My Word reveals his inner being, and this is neither receptive nor willing to receive, and thus he will not feel the strength of My Word either. Hence you will be subjected to dreadful persecutions, you will be threatened and then have to stand firm against your enemies .... But I tell you even this in advance so that you will not doubt My Word,

so that you will remain strong even then, because you will know that your work for My kingdom will have completely different results, which always correspond to the inner thoughts of the person to whom you proclaim My Gospel. And if Satan has already taken possession of a human soul he will also show his true nature, he will ridicule and insult Me and you, as My messengers, too .... But then do not fear, as I will be with you whenever you work for Me and My kingdom, and I will protect you even against the worst and most hostile attacks .... But then move on and do not stay with those whom you clearly recognise as My opponents .... Continue to carry the light, My divine teaching of love, to those who need strength and support and who will be grateful to you for offering them My Word. And do not let your enemies deter you because My Word also aims to expose people's inner attitude, so that they will openly express their opinion about My gift and thus also about Me, Who thereby wants to urge them to make a decision before the final end arrives ....

Amen

## **Most difficult conditions of life after the disaster ...**

***B.D. 3737 from April 6th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

In the foreseeable future you will live in different circumstances and have to change your way of life completely if you want to meet the requirements of the new, very difficult conditions and be able to endure them. This change is unavoidable because the last days are entering into their final phase, which is tantamount to a most difficult struggle for existence in order to achieve fastest spiritual advancement. Because the end is near and what this huge earthly hardship cannot achieve now cannot be achieved afterwards on this earth either. But anyone whose life is spared following My last forceful intervention can, with good will, also adjust spiritually, he can associate all events with the eternal Creator's will and derive the greatest benefit for his soul from his attitude. Only entirely unbelieving people shall reject this correlation and try to master their earthly life with their own strength yet using their willpower wrongly, not in accordance with divine will. And they will succeed because they are supported by the God-opposing power.

However, the believers can also overcome the most difficult conditions with God's strength, which they themselves can, in fact, feel but which does not express itself in an externally noticeable manner, in that the human being is surrounded by earthly possessions. Instead of this he will find inner strength to endure even the most difficult circumstances in life. Earthly hardship will be immense and not be easily rectified by normal means because the vast destruction, by divine will, will naturally result in massive chaos and make excessive

demands on everyone's strength. And then every individual will have to draw on God's strength if he wants to survive the worst time. But this is at his disposal in abundance. And therefore God always instructs His servants to point to the forthcoming events, to inform people of the approaching disaster so that they can contact the strength-giving power in advance, Which excludes no one who desires strength. Human beings are not yet able to imagine such an intervention by God and thus dismiss what they find difficult to believe in. And yet they should mentally consider it so that they won't face the event entirely unprepared when the day arrives. Because it will irrevocably come and surprise everyone including the believers, and it will result in enormous changes .... And blessed is he who changes his thought, who corrects his attitude towards God, who finds his way to Him in times of greatest need .... Because that day shall be a blessing for him ....

Amen

**Expediency of creations ....  
God's will ....**

***B.D. 3739 from April 8th 1946, taken  
from Book No. 47***



Divine will is the foundation of all creation, and as it came forth from His hand it is good and serves its purpose. Hence His creations will remain unchanged until they have fulfilled their purpose and this for all eternity, as long as they serve the perfection of the spiritual substances. And one of His works of creation is the human being, whose external form came forth from the Creator's hand just as perfectly, so that his purpose of bringing the spiritual essence within himself to perfection can be fulfilled in every respect, but only on condition that the human being's free will subordinates itself to God's will. For God gave this creation freedom of existence so that it can determine its own fate, and therefore it is also able to act inexpediently, in opposition to God's will. A person's soul is intended to achieve the final goal on earth, and therefore it has to be able to manage its life independently from God's will, independently from fundamental law, so that it can emerge as a completely free spiritual being if it pursues its final goal.

And thus the human being's external shape will in fact always be the same because it is God's creation. However, the human being himself will, due to the awakening of the soul .... due to the spiritual substances' various degrees of development, demonstrate an entirely diverse character, and the opportunity of change is available to him throughout his earthly life so that, at the end of his physical life, he no longer needs to be the same as he was at the beginning of his earthly course of life. His outer

appearance also changes but always in accordance with divine law. But the spiritual being within the person, which gives life to the person in the first place, can shape itself in many different ways and will neither be forced nor prevented by divine will. In addition, the human being also has the opportunity to shape his own creations in accordance with his will .... If his will subordinates itself to divine will these creations will be expedient again and contribute to his higher development, since everything in accordance with divine will leads towards spiritual perfection.

Shaping his own character will progress faster when the human being occupies himself productively and creatively on earth, thus subordinating himself to the great divine law of releasing the bound spiritual substances, even if he is unaware of his achievement .... Throughout the duration of earthly life God also gives the human being the ability to use his inflowing energy of life in order to develop new creations. The divine law rests in every human heart but it can also be deliberately ignored. Nevertheless, subordinating himself to this law understandably has to be beneficial for the human being who is using his strength in accordance with God's will. But he is also responsible for the direction of his will, because he has been given freedom of will and intelligence, and because divine will was placed into his heart, which he thus should recognise and obey if he wants to be able to continue to exist before God when accountability is demanded of him one day. He will be

answerable for the expedient use of his divinely created external form as well as for the creations which he voluntarily brought into being, because everything has to be in accordance with God's will and thus serve the higher development of the spiritual essence or its inexpediency will be in opposition to God's will ....

Amen

## **Do this in remembrance of Me ....' Last Supper ....**

***B.D. 3740 from April 10th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Strength, wisdom and life originate from Me .... And thus I have to be recognised as the source of strength and light, and the connection with Me has to be sought in order to attain life through the receipt of strength and light.

Hence I must be able to find Myself again in you, that is, light and strength or the knowledge of eternal truth and its subsequent abundant strength have to be in you .... My spirit must take effect in you .... and thus I Myself must be able to work in you, only then will you be alive, but you will never ever loose this life again. Then you will be united with Me, and this union is the true Communion .... The union with Me is indispensable or you could neither

receive strength nor light, since the unification with the eternal primary source has to take place first if the flow of My love is to be transmitted across into the human being's heart.

But in order to establish this unification the will to receive something from Me is required first. The will, in turn, necessitates mental activity, thus I have to be recognised by the person's heart and intellect as the source and therefore the provider of what he desires, and he has to mentally endeavour to reach Me .... Only this activates the will and fulfils the conditions which lead to unification with Me. The activated will is equal to an act of love .... But this is essential, and thus My commandment of love can never be bypassed by those who truly want to communicate with Me, who want to unite with Me ....

Distribute gifts, offer food and drink to your neighbour, help him in his spiritual and earthly hardship, give to him as I have given to you, refresh your fellow human being's body and soul, have mercy on the weak and sick, comfort the sad, lift up the discouraged, always and ever alleviate hardship, and always do so with regard to Me Who exemplified the earthly path to you .... Share everything you own with the poor .... Then you will fulfil My commandment of love and thereby the first condition of unification with Me, for **only** when you have shaped your heart to love will I be able to unite with you, otherwise a union with Me will be impossible, regardless of how many external formalities you observe which have no effect on

the state of your heart (your soul).

I want to give you life, give you strength and light in abundance, yet this will never be possible as long as you don't activate your will, as long as you don't practise love .... But I instructed you Myself on how you should practise this love and constantly admonished you to follow Me .... Remember Me and My teaching, then you will conduct yourselves accordingly, and you will truly become vessels for My spirit, thus you will enable the part of Myself to take effect in you .... You will draw Me to yourselves through your actions of love, and thus you will unite yourselves with Me, the primary source of strength and eternal light, and therefore you can also receive unlimited light and strength .... knowledge and might ....

The union with Me has to be accomplished first through actions of love, only then can I be present in you Myself .... even in spirit, and only then can I nourish and refresh you with spiritual sustenance, with flesh and blood, with My body in the spiritual sense .... For I Myself Am the Word, thus I offer you the Last Supper when I convey My Word to you, which is spiritual nourishment for your soul. You can indeed also accept this nourishment without prior activity of love, but then it is not a Communion, not a union with Me, for then it is not yet the Last Supper, but it can lead you to it if you don't just accept the Word with your ears but also with your hearts and live accordingly .... Only the activity of your will, the action of love, establishes the spiritual union with Me. However, these activities of love consist of giving, of

constantly passing on and sharing what you own, of what makes you happy yourselves in order to also please your fellow human being who is in need of it. And if you don't practise this, if you don't try to follow Me in this, you cannot be nourished at My table either, you will not be able to take the Last Supper with Me, because you exclude yourselves as My guests, because then I will remain inaccessible to you until you have changed yourselves to love, which is and eternally will be My fundamental substance.

If you accept the Last Supper in the form chosen by you humans it will always just remain an external act which only has a profound spiritual meaning when your heart is filled by deep love which, however, should not just move you emotionally but has to find its expression in works of unselfish neighbourly love. For whoever remains in love remains in Me and I in him .... This Word of Mine is also the foundation of the Last Supper set up by Me .... You should always bear My way of life on earth in mind and follow My every example .... And as you give you shall receive, spiritually and earthly; you will, providing you are in close unity with Me through love, be nourished and strengthened at all times.

Constantly carrying out works of love in remembrance of Me .... and thereby establishing the certain union with Me, which guarantees you the receipt of My Word, of My flesh and blood .... that is the profound spiritual meaning of the words 'Do this in remembrance of Me ....' which all of you will certainly understand if you have the sincere

determination to ascertain the spiritual meaning of My Words ....

Amen

# **Fulfilment of the predictions ... Proof for unbelievers ...**

***B.D. 3741 from April 11th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

Not one of My predictions will remain unfulfilled, for the present adversity, which is of a greater spiritual nature than a physical one, calls for it. And if you observe humanity's conduct, if you inspect people's thoughts and intentions more closely you will also realise the urgency of a change in all ways of life, for this alone makes it possible for people to change .... And this is why you can count on a speedy change, for the time has expired, the present adversity has remained unsuccessful, and thus only a greater tribulation can offer a last opportunity, and this will irrevocably happen due to My will. For I will reveal Myself and can be recognised by anyone of good will. What human will, human hatred and heartlessness have so far accomplished will still be surpassed by My will, it will also cause annihilation and destruction of the

earthly possessions you still believe yourselves to own. People will have to reach such a low point that they will have to call upon Me for help if they are still to be saved before the end. They must realise that any earthly hope will be in vain, and only then will a few take an interest in spiritual matters, and for the sake of these few I will use the last means before the arrival of the end. Yet the period of time following My final rescue mission will be difficult for everyone, believers and unbelievers alike, except that the believers will constantly receive strength from Me in order to persevere. Many people's faith will start to waver if they don't have a living faith. And that is My intention, so that it will even awaken a dead faith or it will be of no value in eternity. I want to help the unbelievers and those of weak faith with My voice, which will resound loudly and perceptibly. Yet it will cause great apostasy from Me, the final storm will shake down many unsuitable fruit .... But this shall not deter Me from sending the storm across the earth. Anyone who stands firm will prove his worth for eternity.

Consequently, don't doubt My Word, wait for the day which will arrive with certainty and make use of every day until then, for you can still gain much if you diligently work .... at improving your soul. Every day of misery can yield spiritual success for you if only you remember Me, if you understand that nothing can happen without My will or My permission. And calmly cast all your worries upon Me and I will help you carry what I impose on you for the sake of your souls. Time will fly by in a flash, but



regardless of how difficult it is for you, it is a blessing, because you can achieve far greater spiritual progress than during a longer and calmer time, which lets you become half-hearted and lethargic and will not lead you closer to the final objective. Therefore, wait patiently for the fulfilment of My predictions, don't expect an end to the adversity through My intervention but only a change of it, for your souls are not yet mature enough to live in total peace on this earth, you must fight and gain a strong faith, only then will I be able to remove your misery, only then will you be able to experience a time of peace on earth or in the kingdom of the beyond. Yet time and again bear in mind that My Word is truth, that I will not divert by one iota from what I proclaimed a long time ago and that you will witness it yourselves, that you will experience what I proclaim so that you can stand up for My Word before the world. For My last intervention shall be proof for those who so far did not believe My Word, whom I still want to win over for Myself and to whom I will clearly reveal Myself through the natural event .... so that they will believe in My might and in My working through you .... And thus I proclaim to you again that the day will come suddenly and unexpectedly, it will take the place of great earthly adversity yet bring new adversity of a different kind .... However, if you believe in the fact that I Am only motivated by love for you to let you go through suffering then it will also be bearable for you, for sooner or later the end will come along with salvation for all of those who believe in Me and hand themselves over to Me, for all of those who profess Me before the world ....

Amen

# **Spiritual redemption is the only purpose ....**

***B.D. 3743 from April 14th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

The great Spirit of eternity fills infinity, the universe, with all its creations .... and His will truly expediently governs creation with wisdom and love. But the last and only purpose is the redemption of the bound spirits .... The purpose of every action in infinite space is never regression but progression, and therefore everything destined or permitted by God's will is good, i.e. in the final analysis it always serves the advancement of the developing spirit providing human free will does not prevent its spiritual ascent. As long as you bear this in mind you need not do anything but subordinate your will to God's will. You need only ever allow yourselves to be guided without inner resistance and you will reach the goal, you will soon become free and recognise God's infinite love and the wisdom of His government, the expediency of every event during the course of your life. But as long as you have no knowledge of His eternal plan of Salvation you will not be able to muster understanding for the individual's destiny, for people's wretched

existence, for all kind of hardship and afflictions.

Hence let yourselves be taught by those who know .... Accept their explanations; consider them as God's messengers who have the task to bring truth to you, so that you will become aware of the purpose of your life, of your eternal destiny. Then you will also learn to recognise and understand God's reign and work, so that you can trustingly abandon yourselves to Him and enable Him to guide you towards the right goal. The Spirit Who rules infinity takes an interest in the smallest and most insignificant being and directs it in accordance with His will; thus how much more will He take care of the living creations whom He wants to prepare into His image, into Godlikeness, into perfect beings who, like Him, shall one day be creatively active in complete freedom and abundance of strength .... You humans are these living creations and thus you are confronted by a great objective, the attainment of which is constantly supported by God, and His help consists of many different means which all depend on your compliance and degree of maturity. Consider yourselves as His living creations and abandon yourselves, your souls and your bodies, to God as your eternal Creator, and allow yourselves to be shaped in accordance with His will by completely submitting your will to His and just leave everything to Him. Consider yourselves His eternal children which the Father raises into perfection. And have complete confidence in the Father, then His work of instruction will succeed without infringement of your free will. Give

yourselves completely over to God so that He will not meet any resistance and His work of shaping your souls will not take long, and you will be released from all torment of body and soul .... The Father of eternity will draw His children to Himself and you will be happy being close to Him for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Christ's promises ... Conditions - Fulfilment ...**

***B.D. 3744 from April 16th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Hold on to Christ's promises and you will prevail over every struggle for existence .... He assured you of strength and grace, He promised you spiritual and physical care, He guarantees your attainment of the final goal on earth .... eternal life .... You can believe His Word unreservedly, it will come to pass as long as you meet the conditions which He associated with all His promises. His promises depend on the fact that you try to comply with the will of the One Who gave you your life. Earthly life is not just given to you for its own sake, but for the attainment of a purpose .... for attaining utmost possible perfection on earth. Jesus showed you the path on earth

and exemplified the life which will lead you to perfection by giving people explanations in areas where they were still in the dark. He showed them the certain way, as well as its effect, in eternity .... setting conditions and making promises to you .... providing you are truly devoted and meet the conditions in order to shape yourselves into perfection, every promise will take effect. You will live in earthly and spiritual happiness and peace, as well as being constructively active. His conditions, however, consist of uninterrupted actions of love ....

The prerequisite of every promise is loving activity, if it is to come true. If you meet this condition, you can live your earthly life in every way without worry, since then the Father in heaven will physically and spiritually take care of you .... He will not let your soul and body suffer hardship, but will always improve matters in proportion to your will of love .... His Word is truth and will remain so in all eternity. Firm belief in this provides you with inner peace and certainty in regards to everything that happens to you, due to God's will or His permission. And since, in accordance with His Word, nothing can happen to you against His will, you should try to please His will .... love your Father of eternity with all your heart, so that you will gain His love too, and show your love through doing kind deeds to your fellow human beings. God does not expect much from you, but He will not let go of this condition if His promises are to fulfil themselves in you. Each one of His Words teaches you to love, because every one of His promises necessitates love .... a genuine relationship with

God and your neighbour, who is your brother, because you are all children of one Father. You can gain countless gifts of grace through unselfish actions of love and ... if you are lacking the strength for it ... gain strength through sincere prayer. 'Ask and you will receive ...'

First, ask for spiritual values and ignore earthly needs, because God will add these once you strive to fulfil His will and try to shape yourselves into love. Time and again Jesus Christ tries to impress on you in His teachings the importance of striving for the kingdom of God ... He is promising you eternal life and the Father's care for your earthly life, providing you aspire for God's kingdom ... and every Word from His mouth is purest truth, and therefore has to provide you with innermost peace and security, if only you have faith. Every earthly worry is unnecessary as long as you endeavour to live up to divine will, as long as your actions of love will gain you God's love and thus make his will inclined to you. Therefore, do not doubt His Word, do not doubt that His promises will come true, but live in accordance with His sacred Word ... Live in love and in constant connection with the One Who is love Himself ... and then allow yourselves to be guided. Trust in Him, confidently place your destiny into His hands and give yourselves completely to Him, then every hardship will soon be taken from you because you no longer require it if you, in firm faith, purify and shape yourselves through actions of love to enter the kingdom of light after you discard your earthly body. For Jesus did not use His Own Words but God spoke through Him, and

His Word is truth and has to fulfil itself, providing the person complies with His Word, providing he strives for God's kingdom .... for eternal life ....

Amen

## **The spirit of truth ...**

***B.D. 3745 from April 17th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You can never receive lies from the spirit of truth, since the spirit of truth is the spirit which comes from Me .... And this spirit will always work where the human being's will accepts Me, where the person aspires towards good and thus endeavours to integrate with My eternal order. My spirit becomes active in him but varies in its effectiveness according to his soul's degree of maturity. But it is certain that he will never be taught wrongly by My spirit as long as it concerns such matters which are favourable to the attainment of his soul's maturity. My spirit will always draw the human being towards Me if he does not resist Me with his opposing will .... thus My spirit will give him the knowledge which alone will lead to Me .... Such a person's thinking will be guided into the right direction, he will come closer to the truth. If his conduct in life is right, which testifies of his aspiration for good, he will always mentally acknowledge Me as the

Creator and Father of eternity and feel the impulse to practise what he knows to be My will, since he is guided to do so by My spirit, because in the knowledge of his will to ascend I will mentally show him the path to Me.

And thus no person who seeks Me, albeit unconsciously, will be misled if his will aspires towards good, he can only have a greater or lesser degree of knowledge. His intellectual ability can still be poorly developed, depending on his effort to improve his soul, thus consciously shaping his nature in relation to My will. He can be more slack in observing this work but My spirit will always instruct him correctly .... i.e. he will always feel what is right and what is wrong, he will never consider a wrong to be right, thus be unsure about My will. But My spirit can only give him more profound spiritual knowledge after he has achieved a certain maturity of soul, because the soul has to be able to receive and understand such knowledge in order to convey it to the person's mind. And this ability is achieved by the soul through consciously working to improve itself, through constant activity of love .... everything it merely felt - and thus believed - in the first place will then be comprehensibly explained to the soul .... it will penetrate the eternal truth because I Myself can now work in the soul through My spirit. And My spirit will increase the soul's knowledge and delight it, because the truth given to the human being by My spirit is a precious possession, it is everlasting spiritual wealth which assures eternal life for the soul because it leads to Me, Who is eternal truth



Himself ....

Amen

# **Continuation of the act of Salvation ... Mission ...**

***B.D. 3748 from April 21st 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

My mission on earth has to be continued by constantly proclaiming My teaching of love to people of good will, so that they can all partake in the blessings of the act of Salvation, so that they, through their actions of love, learn to understand what the redemption consists of, so that they can be taught by My spirit from within about the meaning and purpose of earthly life and their associated spiritual task. At the time of My life on earth humanity lived in deepest darkness of night, and this was their own fault because they ignored love .... I showed them the path to light and, by My crucifixion, acquired for them the same ability, the willpower, to walk this path .... I taught them to fulfil the commandments of love and thereby guided them to wisdom .... to the knowledge about every single person's goal and destiny and the means to reach this goal. And the door of heaven opened for those who followed Me, they were liberated from the pressure

which had burdened their souls for an infinitely long time. They realised what it means to possess eternal life .... they were delivered from bondage, delivered from lack of knowledge, from weakness .... They came close to Me and could receive My strength of love, which signified abundance of light and strength for the human soul ....

But My act of Salvation was accomplished for all times .... Because the earth will always be inhabited by immature spiritual substance which still languishes in My adversary's bondage, which is still tied to the ground until it removes this restraint of its own free will. However, it needs to be told of its spiritual state, of Satan's bondage, of its original state and the opportunity to regain it .... the immature spirit has to be shown the path, it has to be informed of the act of Salvation, which was accomplished by the immense love of a human being on behalf of all humanity to deliver it from adverse forces. This knowledge has to be conveyed to people .... That is the mission for which I need servants on earth, so that My act of Salvation will be continued as long as the earth exists .... Time and again I will awaken servants and prophets, i.e. people who are devoted to Me, who are willing to do the kind of work I require of them. They shall spread My teaching of love and caution people to always act with love .... Only then can the process of redemption begin, only then can the human being become knowledgeable and make a conscious effort, otherwise he will lack all knowledge, which is characteristic of his bondage, characteristic of the

spiritual night humanity is living in. Light shall be brought into the darkness and bearers of light shall work by spreading My Word on My behalf so that people will be motivated into following Me, so that they believe in Me and My act of Salvation and through this faith utilise the grace of My act of Salvation, so that their will becomes stronger and enables them to travel the path of ascent with My help, with My strength, which is available to everyone who desires it and through actions of love makes himself worthy of the same .... And death will be conquered, the human being will neither feel nor taste death, he will live in eternity as I have promised ....

Amen

## **Irrevocable end ... Divine order and infringement ...**

***B.D. 3749 from April 22nd 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

The time for the end has definitely arrived, and anyone can see that if he so wants. I do not keep My living creations in ignorance, I inform them of this Myself, but anyone who lacks belief in Me and My Word, anyone who does not reflect on the cause of the total decline and is unable to associate it with the spiritual low level, cannot

receive additional information either. Nor can the credibility of My Word be proven to him since he rejects all evidence. The time of the end is making itself noticeably felt, however, anything that is earthly recognisable can also be explained by people in an earthly, i.e. natural, way. And yet there is a spiritual cause for everything which has to be observed first; people have to try to resolve the spiritual cause if the consequences are to be averted. But people do not make this attempt, and thus the time is irrevocably approaching the end, i.e. the earth is experiencing its last days in its present form. I speak to people clearly but they cover their ears, they cannot muster the will nor the strength to accept information which would enable them to discover an orderliness even in the decline, in the immense misery and all events .... they don't want to know about it and don't want to be truthfully instructed either. And time and again I send them My servants and messenger to guide them into the right way of thinking ....

But My plan of eternity is predetermined, My wisdom recognises the necessity of changing the existing state, and My love and My will carry out what is unavoidably needed in order to still save the few which want to be saved. Because humanity's activity has to stay within limits, and once these are exceeded the time of the end will also have arrived. And the fact that people are behaving in opposition to divine order can be easily seen by everyone. Thus, what would be more logical than to restore the order again in accordance with My will?

Nevertheless, it cannot happen in a humanly aspired way but has to take place in keeping with My law of eternity ... A humanly devised change on this earth would not result in any spiritual change, it would not result in any spiritual progress, but this is the only purpose for My living creations' life on earth, and this has to take place; hence the necessary conditions have to be available for it too and consist of entirely new creations for the spiritual substances which still remain opposed to Me.

Thus the old earth will pass away in as much as all creations on it will be destroyed, in order to be inhabited again by completely new creations according to My will, which signifies the start of a new earth period, the start of a new era of redemption in a spiritual sense. It is easy to understand that a change on earth in opposition to My order also has to result in complete disintegration; but anyone who does not acknowledge an eternal Lawmaker will also refuse to acknowledge a violation of My order, since he is not living within My order himself in as far as he values earthly matter more than the spiritual kingdom which, however, should be the purpose and goal of his earthly life. A person who does not stay within My order through actions of love and conscious contact with Me will not have orderly thoughts either, and his knowledge is deceptive knowledge without lasting value. But anyone who opens his eyes and ears will recognise the spiritual decline and also know that the end is near. He will strive to stay within My eternal order and thus not fear the end because it is the beginning of a new life for him, a life of

eternal bliss ....

Amen

# **Strength and grace in the last days ....**

***B.D. 3750 from April 23rd 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

From now on it will depend on My supply of strength and grace as to whether you master your earthly life, whether you are able to endure all difficulties which you have to take upon yourselves for the salvation of your souls. But My strength and grace can only flow to you if you are willing to accept both, and thus you have to unite with Me through prayer and actions of love. This is My constant admonition, My constant instruction, which I send to the immature soul in order to draw it closer to Me, in order to provide it with the opportunity to mature fully, which will eternally remain the same. Only the relationship with Me can accomplish this, and if you humans establish this relationship with Me voluntarily without having been forced by hardship, your earthly life will also be an easy one, you can be spared much distress, the intention of which is to encourage you to develop the right relationship with Me. You will always require strength and

grace for your souls to progress even if the body does not need an extraordinary amount of strength, because the soul's attainment of maturity is the human being's objective on earth which he can only achieve with My strength and grace.

But if people completely ignore this goal they will have to suffer severe physical distress in order to remember the One, Who has might, strength and love in abundance, in order to appeal to Him for help. Then strength and grace will be able to flow to them, and then the soul will also be out of danger. But extreme hardship is necessary during the last days because people have distanced themselves from the source of strength ever more, there is a wide gap between them and Myself, grace and strength is no longer requested and humanity ignores love .... People no longer shape themselves into recipients of My gifts of grace, and strength and grace cannot forcefully be given to them against their will. First they have to establish contact with Me in order to receive what they lack in an earthly and spiritually sense but nevertheless desperately need. And since I respect their free will but, on the other hand, do not want to leave them in their wretched spiritual state I approach them in the form of severe earthly hardship. I come closer to them to make it easier for them to establish the right kind of relationship with Me and to call upon Me, as the Giver of strength and grace, for help.

And thus, in the last days the hardship will become unbearable for all people who are distant from Me but

who are not yet completely controlled by My adversary. Because they can still be saved and immense hardship is intended to achieve this. But do not get annoyed with Me, do not doubt My love and do not lose faith in Me in view of this adversity .... you, who are enlightened, should also enlighten your fellow human beings to the fact that nothing happens on earth without meaning and purpose and that even the greatest suffering can have a healing effect if the human being wants it himself. You could never survive without My supply of strength and grace, you will be physically destroyed too if you do not recognise the hardship as My warning call, for you cannot do anything by yourselves. Hence you need to use the source of strength which is at everyone's disposal, you need to draw from it, you have to want to be considered by the Giver of strength, and consequently you have to contact Him mentally and ask Him for it, or open yourselves through deeds of love so that My strength and grace can flow to you unimpeded .... Then earthly and spiritual hardship will be over, then you will still be able to reach your given goal in the short time before the end, and then the hardship will not have been in vain. And you will thank Me, your Father of eternity Who, by way of hardship, has saved you from an infinitely long captivity, Who, by way of hardship, has helped you to become free ....

Amen



# **Extent of divine love ...**

***B.D. 3751 from April 24th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

Words do not suffice to express the depth of My love for you, My living creations, and neither do you grasp the strength of the spiritual bond which exists between Me and you. As a result I will not abandon you, irrespective of how far you believe you can distance yourselves from Me due to your wrong direction of will. You do not recognise Me but I know what you are, and it is impossible for Me to abandon you since you are the product of My love, you are the creation of My supremely perfect will, hence you are divine in your fundamental substance, you are part of Me Myself. You are living creations which, having been originally called into existence in highest perfection, I must love eternally. And My love for you can never cease nor decrease but only increase in strength the more you try to pull away from Me. Anything that strives to leave Me, will always and forever possess My love, and anything that voluntarily returns to Me again will be permeated by the strength of My love which I will never ever withdraw from him. I will never let any of My living creations fall completely, because My infinite love does not permit it. However, you are independent externalised products of My creative power, and in free will you determine the supply of My strength of love yourselves. But if you find the extent of My love for you inconceivable and try to

imagine it, then peace has to enter your heart, for nothing can happen to a person who knows himself seized and sheltered by My love.

Believe in My love .... and you will already be happy people on earth, because it will certainly fill you with strength and blissful calm .... I Am with each one of My living creations even if it does not call upon Me, but a person with a kindled spark of love in his heart, who strives towards Me as the Eternal Love on his own accord, can always be sure of My presence, he will draw Me to himself and I will never let go of him again .... Believe in My love .... Remember that everything you see around you only came into being as a result of My eternal love for My living creations, and that My love will not rest until My living creations' profound love unites them with Me, because My love refuses to let go of them. The extent of My love cannot be made comprehensible to you as you do not know this love on earth, but I tell you this so that you yourselves realise that you have been loved by your Father, by your Creator and Provider since eternity. And this knowledge shall give you inner calm and the kind of peace that cannot be disturbed as long as you firmly believe in My love. For then I will keep perceptibly close to you, and nothing can happen to you other than what will be helpful for the salvation of your soul, for the final unification with Me ....

Amen

# Struggle for faith not in vain ....

***B.D. 3752 from April 25th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

And I say this to comfort you, that you will not struggle in vain if only you want to reach Me .... Because I value your will and shall support you, even if you do not clearly recognise it. I will draw you to Me, but you also have to apply strength yourselves and request it from Me, otherwise you cannot become perfect. And this is why you occasionally have to find yourselves in a state of weakness and try to overcome it. You have to be active yourselves, and I will bless you. And thus your faith will grow stronger the more often you seem to be in a sorry state and keep getting back on your feet again with My help .... You don't understand that faith has to be subject to upheavals when it ought to stand firm, and that these upheavals are My will or My permission because they are intended to lead the person into maturity of faith .... A strong faith no longer allows itself to become disturbed, and then the human being will have achieved his goal on earth .... But as long as he is still uncertain in times of hardship he is not yet strong enough and needs testing, he requires tests of faith, which he will be able to pass with confidence in Me. Anyone who wants to acquire a profoundly unwavering faith will reach his goal since I

will look after him especially kindly. The earthly hardship will accomplish that the human being will firmly and sincerely unite with Me and thus become conscious of My presence, and then he will totally trust in Me, thus never ever doubt Me, My love and might. Then he will have strong faith which will give him inner calm, he will no longer fear the world, he will not fear earthly hardship, because he will meet everything with My strength which permeates him. He will know that he is not alone and will completely entrust himself to Me and My guidance ....

I want to draw you to Myself if only you would strive towards Me of your own free will .... What would be more natural but to help you in every way, since I Myself consider it utmost bliss for you to become My Own? .... Thus no person's struggle will be in vain, it will lead him to the goal, and every difficulty, every earthly or spiritual hardship is a means for progress, because they increase the heartfelt relationship with Me and thereby My supply of strength is guaranteed.

But a person permeated by My strength will achieve anything .... and anyone who wants to receive strength and grace and verifies this through heartfelt prayer will never leave empty handed, and the effect becomes clearly evident where profound faith shall be made known before the world .... Then the person who persistently endeavoured to strengthen his faith will not waver .... then My flow of strength will also become visibly evident, so that he can provide a living testimony to his fellow human beings of the strength of faith, which

is available to everyone who struggles for a strong faith, whose will applies to Me and whom I therefore draw towards Me because he has been My Own since eternity and shall eternally remain My Own .... The determination to be able to believe firmly and steadfastly is also the guarantee to attain a strong, firm faith, because such will is blessed by Me ....

Amen

## **Most difficult time of hardship before the end ...**

***B.D. 3753 from April 27th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

You, who are now living on earth, have to pass the most difficult tests and endure the greatest suffering because the end is near and you do not have enough time for a slow maturing of your souls. The earthly burden will appear almost insufferable to you, and that shall be your proof that the last days have arrived. For severe hardship will always come to an end, but for the rest of your life you will have to languish with the burden of the most difficult living conditions, because the last work of your soul's development has to be implemented for your salvation. But it is a brief period of time which, in spite of

the harshest conditions, will in fact be bearable for My Own, whom I will care for in the most obvious way. Thus do not get disheartened by this prediction but trustingly raise your eyes to Me, Who looks into your hearts, Who recognises your will and Who will help everyone who is worthy of My help, who humbly calls to Me for help and prays to Me in spirit and in truth. However, those of you who are of weak faith or totally unbelieving should accept being instructed about the cause and purpose of the hardship and believe that you are approaching the end. And depending on your faith you will be helped. But in view of the end I cannot take the rod from you or else it would take even more immature souls by surprise, since due to hardship a few will still find their way back to Me.

And where an apparent improvement of living conditions becomes evident the activity of the opposing force manifests itself .... and that, too, shall be your proof, because My help will express itself differently even though I will take care of My Own earthly and spiritually too, so that their worst suffering is alleviated, but I will always provide them with inner strength and a firm faith and thereby enable them to endure a difficult earthly life. Whereas My adversary will provide people with material possessions and incite them to commit unkind actions, so that you will always recognise the origin of the supply of strength when you closely inspect the behaviour of people. Expect no improvement in living conditions since one hardship will give way to another because the end is near. Therefore prepare yourselves for

the end, do not work in an earthly manner but a spiritual one .... serve each other where needed and thereby make the hard time endurable, because its purpose is to motivate you into loving actions which will bring you ever closer to Me. Don't think of yourselves but think of your fellow human being's distress .... Be helpful and willing to give .... There is not much time and thus it is especially hard, but it can also be exceedingly blessed if you heed My admonitions, if you listen to My Word and try to live by it. The end will come and with it the Last Judgment .... the decision which signifies salvation for My Own but also new banishment for My adversary. And therefore make sure that you belong to My Own, let the hard times be a lesson to you which will guide you to Me, listen to My messengers who instruct you and inform you of My will, who will also always be able to explain the cause and purpose of suffering to you, and it will not be without success for your souls .... And one day you will thank Me that I granted you this last time of grace and through hardship and misery sought to win you over for Me and My kingdom ....

Amen

**The commandment of love  
as life's guiding principle ....**

## ***B.D. 3755 from April 29th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

You are unfailingly doing My will if you learn to love .... Let My commandment of love be your guiding principle for everything you do, think and say .... Then you will gain My favour and will be blessed, spiritually as well as worldly, in a manner that benefits your soul. You should not exclude anyone from your love nor refuse to help those who need your help. Then you, too, will discover the secret of eternal love which forever fills all of infinity with its strength, thus it can fill you to excess too so that you become a likeness of Me, as it is your goal on earth. Love has to be practised and for that reason I allow the great hardship on earth because it motivates people's actions of love, because hardship leaves countless people in need of help and gives other people the opportunity to help with compassion.

Therefore don't let your hearts become hardened, be aware of the hardship surrounding you and help where and as you can. Follow My example, Who eased spiritual and earthly suffering on earth, Who helped the weak and sick, Who lifted and healed their souls and bodies, Whose loving way of life has been an example to you and Who told you to follow it. Be merciful, peaceful, gentle and patient, humble with all your heart and righteous in thought and action. Practice these virtues since they are the result of love in your hearts .... thus you have to make an effort, you have to become aware of your faults and try



to remove them, you have to banish all unkindness from your heart and strive towards the highest perfection. If you lack the strength to do this then you have the prayer at your disposal, the deeply felt connection with Me, which always guarantees you a supply of strength .... because I don't ignore any human being's distress, least of all his spiritual distress, I know every person's will and give his soul strength and help in accordance with this will.

Let My commandment of love be the guiding principle of your thoughts and actions and you shall fulfil My will on earth .... Don't harden your hearts as this is the greatest danger for you since then you will be entirely without strength from Me. But if you ask for My help you won't be asking in vain because My love for you is unchanging and takes hold of everyone who longs for it .... but as I do to you also do to other people, then your way of life will correspond to My will ....

Amen

## **God's will or permission ... Free will ...**

***B.D. 3756 from April 30th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 47***

All events are justified in My will since eternity, but always taking into account people's will during their last stage of development, as not to render it unfree. And thus the consequence of every event is recognised and therefore even permitted by Me if it was caused by the human being's misguided will. Thus I will always and ever participate because nothing can happen without My will or My permission. The human being's free will has to stay inviolable if his spiritual higher development is not to be made impossible. And therefore he can use this will in every direction, he can misuse it, but then he also has to accept the consequences himself. Anyone who acknowledges the freedom of the human will can therefore also understand humanity's serious difficulty, because it is indirectly caused by people who use their will contrary to My eternal order for actions, decrees and attitudes which have a damaging effect on their fellow human beings.

That, as a result, the hardship is also very extensive, that higher development is inhibited and the spiritual state is deteriorating to a minimum, has to be equally comprehensible to a person, considering it is imperative that My eternal order has to be upheld if the human being's soul is to mature, and that every violation of My order signifies a spiritual decline and, at the same time, earthly hardship the means of correcting a deplorable state of affairs which is damaging to the soul. I cannot, by virtue of My will, guide people's thoughts into the right direction and invalidate the human being's free will,

because this in turn would be an offence against My eternal order, which is based on the most profound wisdom and greater than great love for My living creations. Thus I cannot become untrue to Myself by changing in accordance to human will what I once recognised as supremely wise and thereby declare My will to be inconsistent. My will is firm and irreversible, and thus I will also let the human being's will be free, I shall merely use its effect again for each individual person's soul, as My wisdom deems beneficial. And in this context you also have to appreciate every event, even if its effect causes you suffering you should nevertheless recognise My hand and trustingly take hold of it, because I know everyone's will since eternity and therefore also direct each person's fate in accordance with his will.

Nevertheless, you can still live a calm and carefree earthly life as long as you faithfully entrust yourselves to Me, because My will can banish everything, including the effects of evil thought and action of those who intend to harm you .... but without preventing their free will .... I know you since eternity but I also know the people whose will is turned against Me and who abuse their freedom of will .... And My plan is predetermined ever since eternity too .... Hence you, who want to be My Own, need not fear your fellow human beings' will either, as long as you love Me and ask Me for protection against everything that is hostile towards you .... But understand that and why so much misery surrounds you, why I permit it and let humanity's will run its course .... All the same, My will is in

charge of everything that happens because My eternal wisdom recognised what is beneficial for people's souls in the last days ....

Amen

## **Living water ... Source of eternal life ...**

***B.D. 3757 from May 1st 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

Don't study and speculate but live in love .... For what do you achieve by the former if you have no love? .... You will arrive at mere misguided intellectual conclusions which are useless for your souls, only the body occasionally will benefit if your investigations and speculations relate to material things. But even earthly thinking will be blessed if you practise love at the same time, but earthly thinking without love entraps the soul ever deeper in matter, from which it should liberate itself. Study and speculation is really not enough to understand spiritual matters, without love it leads you to misguided results, because then you avoid the Giver of truth, Who is love in Himself, Who transmits the truth to the person who aspires to become like Him. Thus look for the truth where love is evident to you, where kind speech, thinking and actions

give you the guarantee that the Giver of truth Himself is actively spreading it. And from there you should draw and revive yourselves because there you will find the source of eternal life, the spring from whence living water flows, as God has promised. He Himself has made that spring accessible to you, He turned the human being's body and soul into the carrier of His spirit and guaranteed its working as soon as you live in love ....

Indeed, He also gave intellectual ability to everyone but he made correct intellectual activity, correct thinking, dependent on your way of life since only this, providing it corresponds to His will, activates the effect of His divine spirit in the human being. The earthly and spiritual world are two opposing worlds, just as the human being's intellect and his spiritual activity oppose each other as long as the earthly world does not subordinate itself to the spiritual world. Only the fusion of both will result in the same thoughts of intellect and heart, i.e. the spirit within the human being will govern the intellect as soon as the spiritual world has deadened the human being's senses for the material world and permeates his whole being. Then the human being will be living in truth, then he will be permeated by knowledge which is given to Him by the Giver of truth Himself through His spirit. Then he will not need to study and speculate because he will be taught by the Eternal Love Himself since his way of life is an activity of love and this means an overcoming of all matter, thus an absorption into spiritual spheres, a life in God .... Then the human being's body will be a vessel for

the divine spirit from which living water flows eternally, he will be an inexhaustible spring of divine wisdom, a fountain of life which can be used by everyone to revive themselves if they so desire. And anyone who draws from it will live for eternity, as God has promised ....

Amen

## **‘I Am the way, the truth, and the life ...’**

***B.D. 3767 from May 11th 1946, taken  
from Book No. 47***

Only truth can lead to eternal life for you, for I Am the truth Myself and only through Me can you enter the eternal kingdom .... I Am the way, the truth and the life .... if you know the truth you will also take the right path which aims towards eternal life. Pure truth is the result of activity of love and this is the only way of changing the soul's state of death into a state of life. Therefore, since I Am the eternal Love, I Am the way to Myself for My living creations, they must enter this path without fail in order to reach Me, Who alone gives them the eternal life. And in order to follow Me, in order to live a life of love on earth, they must be guided into truth, that is, they must first be taught how to shape their earthly life in order to

then, through their compliance with My teaching, also be able to recognise the pure truth from Me, since without love all knowledge remains dead knowledge, it remains intellectual knowledge but not the knowledge of the heart, which alone gives life. I Am the way, the truth and the life .... I you seek Me you will enter the right path and find the truth and thus also acquire eternal life. I will come close to anyone who desires the truth for the sake of truth and guide him on the path of love, and if he does not resist his spirit will awaken to life and instruct him according to truth .... Then he will have found Me and will never lose Me again, he will be alive and can never die again .... Yet only true love can accomplish this, which is the result of unselfish loving actions .... No misguided teaching will lead to unity with Me, every misguided teaching extends the path of ascent, it feigns another goal to people and only a firm will to reach the right goal averts the great danger of going completely astray. However, without Me you will not find the right way, you must call upon Me, you must accept My instructions, you must take the path which I exemplified on earth, the path of love, in order to attain the truth, the recognition of Me Myself and eternal life. You must live in love because you cannot unite yourselves with Me without love, because I, the eternal Love, Am also the ultimate goal of the path of love and because you are still spiritually dead, that is, entirely without realisation, with no knowledge of divine wisdom, as long as your nature is totally alien to My fundamental nature, and therefore you cannot live as long as you don't unite with Me, which can only take

place through love ....

Amen

# **Christ's Second Coming ...**

***B.D. 3768 from May 12th 1946, taken from Book No. 47***

My birth on earth occurred at a time when people's thoughts were in total disarray, at a time of great heartlessness and profound unbelief, it happened at a time when the human race was incredibly distanced from God .... That is, when I came to earth Myself in order to bring help in spiritual adversity. It was not the serious earthly difficulties of individual people which motivated Me to do so, but purely the spiritual hardship, for this signified certain downfall for an infinitely long time to come. I came to them Myself because their hearts remained unaffected by the written Word, thus I came Myself and brought them the Word through the mouth of Jesus, the man, in Whom I took abode and thus spoke through Him, because no-one can attain bliss without My Word .... And now it is just as it was at the time of My birth on earth, the same immense spiritual hardship prevails, the human race is in a hopeless situation if it does not receive help. Heartlessness is rife, faith is paralysed, the written Word has become meaningless for people, for



they no longer live up to it and therefore cannot release themselves from their adversity either. And therefore I have come to earth again, except that I Am in spirit amongst people, as I have promised that I will stay with My Own until the end of the world .... I Am with them in spirit and reveal Myself to them through the spirit ....

Once again I bring My Word to them, I speak to people, and those who are of good will can also recognise My Word. And what would be more understandable than that I will not leave people without help? How else can they be helped unless I speak to them Myself? And in order to do so I must avail Myself of a person, I can only speak through a human mouth so as not to aggravate people's state, i.e., so as not to deprive them of their freedom of faith, which would exclude any improvement of their spiritual state. My Word needs to be conveyed to people again in all purity as it originates from Me, so that it can also take effect on them. And since I Am the Word Myself I come to you Myself, I Am amongst you spiritually, I have descended to earth again in order to bring you help. And as I speak to you I also inform you of the time you are approaching, since it is My will that you know the great responsibility you have for your souls. This is why I address you, I draw your attention to the end, I admonish and caution you, I advise you and explain everything you need to know. And thus My presence is irrefutable for every thinking human being .... For once a person has recognised Me, once he believes in Me, he will never be able to deny a connection between the Creator with that

which He has created; thus it will also be self-evident for him that I Am close where My presence is not resisted, and he will also believe that I want to prove My presence through My Word, which comes forth from Me directly and thus testifies to Me. I Am with you in the Word, it is My Second Coming, which I predicted would happen prior to the end .... And thus you can also expect this end with certainty, for I Myself told you the signs which precede the final end, and everything I proclaimed in Word and Scripture will come to pass , for My Word is and will remain truth for all eternity ....

Amen

## **God's intervention ...**

***B.D. 3773 from May 17th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

My will shall defeat human will, My intervention shall prevent people's intentions, and before long every power shall be weakened in as much as by itself it is helpless against My will .... For I will show the world that it cannot exclude Me and that I will redirect earthly affairs when human beings are no longer able to do so themselves. I allow events to run their course until it is clearly apparent which power wants to assert itself on earth, but then I won't hesitate any longer and disable this power, if

only temporarily, so that the time shall be fulfilled. I will visibly appear before the end, i.e. I will once more approach all human beings as overwhelming Power which only expresses itself destructively because nothing else but fear can persuade people to call upon Me .... the fear of death from which they cannot be saved without My help. There is no other way to turn their thoughts towards Me. And earthly power will disappear into thin air; it is equally incapable of resisting the forces of nature through which I will speak. A sudden change will occur, all human considerations will become invalid, new problems will have to be solved, new difficulties will appear and much strength will be needed yet again to master the new situation .... And this is My will.

I have compassion for humanity which, in spite of the most severe hardship, cannot find its way to Me, which only takes notice of world events and does not detect therein the effect of its deluded reasoning and extreme distance from God .... which believes that all fault and origin of adversity rests in human will but not in their own spiritual poverty, which is the cause and which every human being should aim to resolve. And thus I will confront people with My will to make them realise that they are also at the mercy of another Power so that they will approach this Power for help .... that they will acknowledge Me .... because only then will I be able to help them. People are in urgent need of help, yet they close themselves to the strength they require. And to make them receptive of this strength I will allow severe

suffering to happen. In just a short time you will hear Me, and the truth of My Word will be proven to you and blessed are those who believe before I provide them with proof, blessed are those who prepare themselves and constantly draw their strength from Me, for they need not fear the hardship, nor will they be harmed by the forces of nature, because this is My will ....

Amen

## **Loving Fatherly Words ....**

***B.D. 3775 from May 19th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

You will remain in My care for the rest of your life, and therefore nothing should frighten you, nothing should make you anxious and seem insurmountable to you once you have gained faith in My strength, love and wisdom. Who should protect you if not the One Who is love in Himself? .... Who has the power to do so and Who wants to draw you close to Himself? And so I will also take your earthly adversity from you once you have gained complete faith. And therefore don't be afraid. Bear everything with patience and in submission to My will and know that it is necessary for your soul's salvation but that I will not burden you with more than you can carry, and I will support you at all times if you can no longer master

your situation on your own. However, the fact that I cannot entirely avert adversity from you is also purely based on My love, for the time until the end is short and I want to make eternal life in all its glory accessible for you, who are My Own, and therefore purify your souls to become suitable for the spiritual kingdom. Always keep My immeasurable love in mind if you suffer, because during your final span of earthly life it wants to help you attain complete liberation .... And you will bear everything more easily and only ever learn to love Me more sincerely because My love is mightily drawing you closer. Even so, I will never abandon you .... Removing the adversity from humanity would signify absolute ruin for an infinitely long time; but I still want to save that which will not shirk from My loving help. And you, too, must experience this adversity, albeit you do not need it to the same extent, yet it will even have a richly blessed result for you and, one day, you will recognise it as a special grace from Me. But if you do not exclude Me from your thoughts, you will be able to endure even the greatest hardship, for My yoke is easy, and My burden is light .... And My Word is truth .... If I Myself promise you My help, if I want to help you carry your cross at all times when you ask Me to do so, you need not be afraid of breaking down under the burden which I have placed upon you for your own sake. Call upon Me in your adversary and I will always be ready to help .... Believe in Me, and the strength of your faith will banish it in an instant .... And realise that you will only suffer if your faith is too weak .... Therefore make an effort and constantly pray for a strong faith and

you will overcome every adversity and your end will be a blessed one ....

Amen

# **Announcement of the catastrophe ....**

***B.D. 3776 from May 20th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

I convey a proclamation to you which is extremely important. You must prepare yourselves for the forthcoming turn of events, for soon I will visibly appear. The time given to you is coming to an end and My Word will fulfil itself, to the joy of a few and the horror of many people who have recognised and shall again recognise Me when I express Myself and demonstrate My will and My power. You are at the final stage in order to then take a path full of deprivations and tribulation, for this is needed for people who shall experience My power in order to reach out and grasp My helping hand. My last teaching method seems to be relentless and cruel to people and yet it is only based on My love, for countless souls will go astray without this final means and I still want to gain a few by using it. Recognise My love in the fact that I have announced and persistently continue to

announce the forthcoming event to you in order to make you believe, if you don't want to believe it beforehand ....

You will all have to experience fearful hours and the survivors must endure most difficult conditions which seem insufferable to them. Yet I promise My strength and help to all who call upon Me in spirit and in truth. I will not take notice of lip prayers but only of the call that rises up to Me from the bottom of your heart .... This will be granted, and every adversity will be lessened and thus become tolerable for people who believe in Me .... News will reach you about worldly plans and measures yet they shall be shattered by My will, you will hear about new danger but should know that a different danger is approaching and that you need not fear the former and should only direct your attention to Me and My kingdom and that you must join Me ever more closely in order to receive more strength for the hours of greatest need .... I say this to you because My love wants to prepare you for that which is inevitable and will happen according to My eternal plan, because you still require much strength and have to receive it through a sincere will, heartfelt prayer and activity of love. Only take care of your souls and let go of all earthly worries, come to Me in every adversity and difficulty so that you will never distance yourselves from Me, so that you will constantly stay in contact with Me and then also feel My presence when I speak to you humans from above with a voice of thunder .... so that you will not be afraid of Me but appeal to Me as your Father of eternity for His protection, which He will surely grant

you ....

Amen

# Sincerity of prayer strengthens faith ...

***B.D. 3778 from May 23rd 1946, taken  
from Book No. 48***

Sincerity of prayer increases the receptivity for My Word, and thus you will always receive strength and grace if you pray to Me in spirit and in truth. And regardless of how often the world wants to come between you and Me, it will be unable to sever your connection to Me, just as it will never be able to stop Me from approaching you in the Word as long as you don't forget to call upon Me for help. Yet I expect your prayer to Me as long as your faith is not strong enough that even the worst worldly danger is no longer capable of destroying your awareness of My presence. Only then will you be indelibly united with Me. Weak faith, however, will loosen the bond; it always will have to be established anew through prayer. Yet I assure you that it will never tear apart, for I know My Own and draw them to Me until they are forever inseparably connected to Me. That which is yet to happen to Earth will be so immense that it will necessitate great strength



of faith if a person wants to survive it without damage to his soul. And every earthly crisis is a preparation for this time which will come to pass without fail according to My proclamation. I certainly place a heavy burden upon humanity, I let great suffering come upon them, yet I also know their results and only ever consider people's salvation of soul, whom I want to help in their spiritual hardship.

However, if you are profoundly faithful you will be calm and peaceful, and even the greatest adversity will neither frighten nor weaken you. Aim to achieve this faith, always and forever try to establish a connection with Me, don't pay too much attention to the world and its requirements but immerse yourselves ever more deeply in My Word, accept strength directly from Me through My Word, let yourselves be nourished and refreshed by Me so that you will be awash with strength and feel no more anxiety, so that you will live in awareness of My presence and commend yourselves to My love and grace without worry. I know of all your problems, I know of your souls' despondency, the anxiety of your hearts, and evaluate everything according to how far your will applies to Me. And correspondingly I will direct all happenings such that they will benefit your souls. Never disregard the sincerity of prayer, always look for Me in every adversity and danger, and I will hear your call and help you. For you ought to become My Own with every fibre of your heart, you ought to seek the most intimate unity with Me so that you faith will gain such strength that you will no longer

fear whatever will come your way ....

Amen

# **God's appointed servants ... Truth ...**

***B.D. 3785 from May 30th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

Anyone who feels called to work for Me and to work on earth in My name always and forever has to let himself be drawn and guided by Me, he has to let Me speak to Him through the voice of His heart, he has to listen to what this voice tells him and comply with the prompting of his heart. Anyone who feels called has to stay in constant contact with Me, he has to subordinate himself unconditionally and without resistance to My will. Only then can I work through him, only then is he My servant in truth, the labourer, who conscientiously carries out the work for His Lord. However, he will feel his appointment by Me in the desire to proclaim My Word, My will .... he will feel urged to inform people about the meaning and purpose of earthly life, he will feel urged to admonish and warn them since he himself, if he has been appointed by Me to work for My kingdom, knows the pure truth and will also always want to spread it. The appointment by Me

is the result of spiritual maturity which enables the human being to accept the pure truth from Me, and thus no person can ever be appointed by Me who was not taught by the spirit within himself first.

Although he is also able to accept knowledge intellectually it does not enable him to spread the truth because he does not completely recognise the truth in the knowledge he received. However, it is necessary to recognise the pure truth first before he can pass it on to his fellow human beings. And this recognition can only be imparted to him by My spirit .... The human being has to be spiritually reborn, only then will he have the right understanding and recognition for pure truth, only then will he have been taught by Me Myself and will be able to work as My servant on earth. The inner desire to serve Me will also result in his calling by Me, because I will accept everyone who offers himself to work for My kingdom on earth and prepare him in accordance with his spiritual maturity. And if he gives himself to Me entirely he will follow the faintest prompting of his heart and thus always comply with My will when I require him to work for Me. For this reason he has to completely detach himself from the world, he has to look at his contact with Me as utmost bliss and as far as possible ignore all worldliness. Then he will hear the spirit within himself ever more brightly and clearly and follow this voice ever more gladly, and then he will be a suitable worker for My kingdom on this earth ....

Amen

# Confessing Jesus and the act of Salvation ...

***B.D. 3787 from June 1st 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

There is a great risk that people will abandon their faith in Jesus Christ, the Son of God and Redeemer of the world, and yet people have to be subjected to this last test of faith, because it is decisive for eternity .... I Myself incarnated on this earth in Jesus Christ, I Myself accepted the crucifixion as a human being in order to open the gate into eternity for humanity .... But people lock this gate themselves, they do not accept My act of Salvation, they do not benefit from it. And therefore the gate will remain closed to them for eternity, a person who does not acknowledge Me cannot be acknowledged by Me to belong to Me either. He is not part of Me as long as he is still subject to My adversary's influence, which remains in tact with those who do not acknowledge Me and My act of Salvation. Hence they separate themselves from Me and aspire towards the one whose will enslaved them and deprived them of all awareness. The end is near and with it the Last Judgment .... And once again I approach humanity as the Redeemer, I try to bring spiritual freedom, light and enlightenment to people and only

want to be acknowledged in order to distribute the blessings of My act of Salvation to the souls, so that they will not perish when Judgment Day comes. I want to redeem them but they have to let themselves be redeemed of their own free will .... Thus they have to confess Me before the world as the One Whose strength and grace enables them to become blessed .... They have to believe that the Deity was in the man Jesus in all fullness, that His greater than great love motivated Him to suffer and die on behalf of His fellow human beings in order to avert eternal death from them, which is the irrevocable fate of everyone who does not believe in Him, who does not acknowledge His act of Salvation and does not claim the blessings He acquired through the crucifixion.

And people will have to confess this faith before the world, they will have to openly bear witness to the love of the God-man Jesus, because by making this testimony they stand by Me completely .... they will show the world that they are My children in truth who, raised by the love of the Father, also fulfil the Father's will .... Thus this decision of faith has to be made, and it will be a difficult time for people who belong to Me and have to publicly acknowledge Me. But whoever has the will to do so also has the strength, which will be given to him in abundance, as I promised .... For I Myself Am with My Own, and My Own are those who strive towards Me, who aim to reach Me, Who call for Me in spirit and in truth, who live with love and endeavour to fulfil My will. And therefore

they should not worry about the approaching battle of faith. It has to happen to people so that they seriously make up their mind about a problem which has found little attention so far .... They have to decide for or against Me, since anyone who acknowledges the Son also acknowledges the Father, and anyone who rejects the Son also rejects the Father. I, however, Am the One Who sacrificed Himself on behalf of humanity .... For I was in the human being Jesus in all fullness, I Myself descended to earth in order to redeem humanity from the sin of guilt and its consequences. Therefore, anyone who believes in Me cannot reject Jesus Christ, for He and I are One, and anyone who bears witness to Him bears witness to Me ....

Amen

## **Rapture ... From all directions ... Gospel ...**

***B.D. 3791 from June 5th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

I will fetch My Own from all directions, from all countries on Earth at the end of days .... For wherever people dwell My Own are represented, who love Me and their neighbour with all their heart and due to this love recognise the true God, the Father of eternity, Who is

love, wisdom and strength in Itself. And wherever people dwell My Own know that the time of the end has arrived, because anyone who lives in love is spiritually awake and therefore enlightened by Me as to what is about to happen. My Word can be heard everywhere, and it is offered to people from the kingdom of light and they receive it according to their ability .... they hear it as a spoken Word in their heart, they receive it mentally, they hear it through mediation by My enlightened servants on earth. And they will always recognise it as truth since they desire it and through their way of life, a way which corresponds to My commandment of love, make themselves worthy of being taught by Me. And thus the Gospel is proclaimed throughout the world, as I promised, for I Myself take care of My Own, I Myself provide them with that which is most needed and the most delectable that can be offered to them on earth.

Yet not one of them can be spared the battle of faith before the end, although it will happen in different ways .... they will have to profess Me to those who are without faith. They may not hide their activity of love, if it is required of them. They will be subject to tribulations for the sake of their faith before the end arrives. And all those who are awakened will be able to work within their circle, for unbelievers everywhere will confront My Own and trying to pull them over to their side shall be the endeavour of those who received the truth from Me, who became My Own through love .... And when hardship and tribulation appear to get intolerable I will come Myself

and fetch My Own into My kingdom .... I will lift them in the flesh from this earth, which will require a complete transformation, and return them to the new earth again once the work of transformation has been accomplished. And people of all nations will praise My power and glory, for I will extend My hand to wherever people dwell to save those who are in utmost danger and reward them for their steadfastness of faith and their faithfulness towards Me .... And then the external shape of the earth will be destroyed before the eyes of all who oppose Me. And a new Earth will arise as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Freedom of will ... Abandonment of development ...**

***B.D. 3794 from June 8th 1946, taken  
from Book No. 48***

I allow the human will its freedom .... You can only understand what this means and why it cannot be otherwise when you are spiritually reborn, when you have knowledge of My eternal plan of Salvation, of the deliverance of the spirit substance which is not free. Not



until then can you accept the necessity that people first have to transform themselves if they want to achieve a change in their circumstances, although I Am the Lord of heaven and earth and everything is only possible with My will or My permission. Depending on the human being's attitude towards My eternal laws, depending on whether he integrates with or revolts against My eternal order, so shall be his fate on earth and in the spiritual kingdom, which he prepares for himself. I will never forcefully violate the human will, but I will try to encourage My living creations by various means to change their own will. And one of these means is the severe hardship visiting earth, although the people themselves initiate it, precisely because of their misguided will. For their own sake I have to let them rage if I don't want to deny them the opportunity as free living creations to use their will in future for the right reason and to become perfect. That which has emerged from My strength was and continues to be divine and can never remain in a state of bondage, even if it has placed itself there of its own free will. But if I take away the human being's free will, the living creature can never become free, it can never return to its original state because it can only regain this of its own volition. Or I have to take away all knowledge of its destiny from My created being and then guide it in accordance with My will .... But in that case it is a directed being which is still very distant from the Divinity. Thus, if it is to approach its original state it has to be given freedom of will and then it has to use its will in the right manner ....

For this purpose I gave him his life as a human being, I gave him the ability to think and to take action, and I will never eliminate his free will before the end of his probationary period on earth. But I have to constrain misused will anew for a long time and only return its freedom when it is again given the mercy to live embodied as a human being on earth and takes its last test of will once more. This has been the law since eternity which I cannot overturn because it would contradict My eternal law and completely deprive the being of its divinity, because whatever originates from Me eternally remains a part of Me, which is given the final objective to attain its original state for which free will is unavoidably necessary. And even if this free will brings forth actions of the most unashamed heartlessness I will not restrain it before its time and only use My will to restore order where the human free will is used to come closer to Me .... However, when the hour has come, which since eternity I have designated to be the end, My will shall terminate progressive or regressive development .... Only then a state of order will be established once more, which necessitates the constraint of the completely wrong will so that the deliverance of the bound spirit can start over again. For I will never cease to care for the spirit which emanated from Me and which apostatized from Me of its own volition, that it should regain its freedom, that it should reach its original state and one day become blessed ....

Amen

# **Satan's bondage ....**

***B.D. 3799 from June 13th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 48***

You are enslaved by Satan as long as you do not resist and fight him yourselves which, however, you are able to do successfully as long as you are willing to free yourselves from his bondage. He is My adversary, he tries to gain what emerged from My strength, what has belonged to Me since eternity. I also fight for this spiritual essence but I leave it to the soul itself whom it wants to acknowledge. I do not prevent the soul from striving towards My adversary, I only ever confront it with My love in order to arouse its desire to turn to Me of its own accord. But whatever wants to be free from him, whatever strives towards Me, will infallibly be seized by and drawn to Me .... And therefore, every fight against My adversary, every will to separate from him will be successful, for now I will fight with the person at the same time, I will stand by his side and the adversary will be defeated, because the person's will has chosen Me. But prior to this the human being is held captive, his soul is oppressed, it complies with Satan's will because he is the lord to whom it willingly succumbs.

Satan's every ambition is contrary to My eternal order. Hence, the human being enslaved by him cannot live in

order either unless he establishes a worldly order to ensure his worldly well-being with help of the strength from below, while his soul lives in darkest disorder, entirely without love and therefore entirely without strength from Me. For as long as the human being still lives on earth Satan will try to tempt him with earthly possessions and also grant him fulfilment as soon as the person complies with his will, as soon as his heartlessness proves his affiliation with Satan. And yet he is a servant of the one who seemingly provides him with earthly favours, for he will pull him into utmost darkness as soon as he leaves his physical cover, and his soul will suffer most bitter distress .... Nevertheless, it is not treated unjustly, given that its very own will on earth could also have made its decision for Me, for time and again I approach the soul warning and reminding it, and try to draw it towards Me. The will, however, is the decisive factor and if it is inclined towards Me I shall give the soul the strength to liberate itself from this force, for My power is great but it requires the human being's will.

And every human being is able to want Me to seize him, every human being is able to use his will in the right way since My adversary cannot compel the will, because I defeated this power through My crucifixion. Consequently, the human being has to acknowledge Me as Redeemer of the world and appeal for My reinforcement of will for the sake of Jesus .... and My adversary has lost his power over Him .... But anyone who rejects Me completely will continue to live in acute

bondage and will find releasing himself from it extremely difficult. However, I will also fight for these souls. Time and again I approach them in the Word and refer them to My act of Salvation, because I want to regain them and will also achieve this one day, albeit it can take an infinite time until the being's will turns to Me of its own accord. However, deliverance from Satan's bondage cannot take place outside of My eternal order, and therefore the human being's will has to desire it of its own accord and choose Me, but then he will receive every assistance .... and he will become free ....

Amen

## **Direction of will determines the influence of spiritual powers ....**

***B.D. 3801 from June 15th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 48***

Any spirit you turn to will have power over you. Your own thoughts and will determine the powers who approach and gain influence over you .... But your thoughts and will are supported by spiritual powers at all times, for you are fought over in the spiritual kingdom, whilst good as well as evil powers attempt to win you over. However, you

yourselves decide who will conquer your souls. And thus you bear a great responsibility for your soul, for your will determines its fate in eternity.

As soon as your will is good and righteous the opposing powers will lose control over you, then the powers of light will stand by your side which will render the former powerless. But if you voluntarily turn to those powers through heartlessness and unjust thoughts and actions, then the beings of light will withdraw from you as they will not be able to influence you against your will, and you will be completely at the mercy of the former, who will push you ever deeper into ruin, confuse your thoughts entirely and impel you into God-opposing actions. And, therefore, take care of your thoughts, stay alert that they do not go astray, coerce your will into the right direction yourselves and know that you shall always find support as soon as you allow even the slightest notion of will for good to arise in you. You are too weak by yourselves and spiritual powers are always willing to assist you. Yet you yourselves have to give them the right to help you because, according to divine law which safeguards freedom of will, they may not act in opposition to your will.

However, the opposing power is likewise unable to force your will into evil actions and thoughts. They, too, can only become effective when you deliver yourselves to them through wrong direction of will. Use your will correctly, only aspire towards good, be just in your thoughts and actions, and turn your will towards God ...

And you will experience a noticeable strengthening of your soul, you will gladly do labours of love, you will affirm what is good and abhor evil, for then you will receive the strength to put your will into practice. Through love you will also grow in awareness, you will acknowledge Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer, as the epitome of love, and you will never turn away from Him again but become strengthened through His mercy, because all good spirits struggle to eternally gain you for God's kingdom .... Just use your will correctly and success will be yours. Remove yourselves from the spiritual powers who want to corrupt you by using your will correctly .... Strive towards God, towards good, and live within love .... And you will also be released from all responsibility, since from the moment of your correct direction of will you will be subject to the influence of radiant spiritual beings and will be able to entrust yourselves to them without worry. Strive for God and you will reach Him, you will find unity with Him on earth or one day in eternity, because your will shall have made its decision for Him in complete freedom ....

Amen

## **Reassuring advice to have faith ....**

## ***B.D. 3802 from June 16th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

You are so timid and fearful and yet could be so strong with firm faith in Me and My willingness to help .... Nothing is impossible, for My power accomplishes everything, and even seemingly impossible help can be granted to you if only you have faith. And therefore you need not be deterred by anything, you need not let hardship nor worry discourage you once you hand them over to Me in firm belief of My love and omnipotence .... Then I will help you and even solve the most difficult earthly problem .... For I will not leave My Own and will be their helper in every adversity and peril. Where else should My love and power express Itself, if not to those who strive towards Me of their own accord, and with the love of a child put their trust in the Father to help them in every hardship? .... Where else should the strength of faith be applied if not to those who are My true children, because they acknowledge and love Me and always try to fulfil My will?

When you speak of God's greater than great love, then it will surely extend to His living creations, for love takes hold of everything and desires unification. And thus, the Father's heart, too, moves towards His children and wants to give them unlimited love in order to please them now and eternally. The Father's love expresses itself in never-ending helpfulness, in keeping every danger at bay, in giving the child profound wisdom and knowledge .... But



the child has to accept its Father's gifts without resistance, then it will mature and hold on to its Father with heartfelt love and be indescribably happy.

Would you then be able to experience any kind of adversity that could not be averted by the Father? Hence you should totally trust in Me and not become fearful when you are approached by hardship due to My permission or My will ....

I want to test and fortify your faith so that it will become increasingly more steadfast, and the less you fail the closer I will be to you, for I will never leave you again once you have found Me. And whatever happens, it will be good for you, for you truly do not recognise the urgency and purpose of your earthly fate. But I know how you can be helped best, and you can unreservedly trust in My guidance, you need not fear for a moment but always just take refuge in My love which will never be withdrawn from you again. Believe firmly and steadfastly that I will help you .... and My help will not fail to materialise, so that you will clearly recognise the strength of faith, so that you will feel Me and My activity, and as My children join Me ever more intimately until nothing will be able to separate you from the Father's heart, no matter what goes on around you .... And therefore you can look forward to every day with complete confidence, and you should even believe firmly when you sense great unrest around you, for you will banish every threatening adversity through your faith, as I have promised, that strength of faith will be able to do everything .... that

nothing is impossible for God ....

Amen

# **Spiritual low level ... The end of a Salvation period ...**

***B.D. 3805 from June 19th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 48***

No spiritual progress can ever be expected if humanity's spiritual level is so low that it no longer recognises and acknowledges God. For then it is completely separate from God and thus also without the flow of strength which guarantees its spiritual progress. A short distance to God can easily be remedied, for then the soul will still move within the cycle of the divine flow of love, the strength of which will infallibly impel it to progress. But if the distance has become so great that the spiritual essence is beyond this cycle then it will also be entirely without strength and no longer able to approach God, since the opposing force will then have greater influence and pull it down to itself. But once humanity has reached this degree of development, that is, once it has regressed to this extent, it will also have forfeited its right to exist on earth as human beings, as this is solely for the purpose of higher development and it will have totally

disregarded this purpose. Thus the developmental period for this human race will then come to an end. The earth will effectively repel all spiritual essence in the stage of higher development as soon as it no longer lives and acts in line with this stage of development. And this is the end of a period of redemption in accordance with divine will .... And every person can know the moment in time himself as long as he pays attention to the whole of humanity's spiritual development.

Once the lowest spiritual point has been reached when the heartlessness becomes plainly evident, the activity of the opposing force can be recognised by the fact that instead of constant progress there will be destruction everywhere .... once people's lives and activities are totally in opposition to God and thus against all divine order, it is no longer to be expected that humanity will voluntarily integrate with divine order again and then, according to eternal law, a disintegration of everything sheltering spiritual substances will have to take place for the purpose of a completely new banishment, so that after an infinitely long time the goal to live voluntarily in the proximity of God can be reached yet again.

There is no other opportunity of ascent for a degenerated human race once it has reached the lowest point when all love has grown cold, since then the strengthening flow of divine love can no longer be effective and this signifies a total obedience to God's opponent. Yet God, in His great mercy, will seize from His adversary what has become

enslaved by him by banishing it into the creations again, which are outside the adversary's influence. Hence, even the return into hardest matter is but a work of divine mercy, since it creates a new opportunity for those spiritual substances furthest away from God to take the path of higher development again, which was no longer possible as a human being.

And one day the hour of salvation will come to him too, if only after an endless time. Yet he will not be treated unjustly by being returned into solid matter, for his will is so hardened towards God that he provides the reason himself for being bound by God for an infinitely long time. For he will not change anymore once the spiritual low level has been reached when people no longer recognise God ....

Amen

## **Time of trouble ...**

***B.D. 3810 from June 24th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 48***

Very soon you will be subject to further hardship, you will experience adversities which will almost seem to crush you; but then you should know that I will be closer to you than ever. Hand yourselves over to My guidance completely and remain true to Me in your hearts, so that

you will recognise and profess Me in spite of all the hardship, then I will truly not leave you and you can utterly believe My Word. Nevertheless, the adversity must happen so that what is written will come true, so that the time of immense affliction is apparent to every person and can also be recognised as the last stage before the end .... The world does not want to regulate the earthly situation amicably, instead, it incites renewed struggles and wars between the nations, thus global events will enter into a new phase for a short period of time. The renewed tension between the nations will result in immense earthly adversity which My will shall bring to an end when the time is right. Yet you, My Own, need not fear this time of adversity, although it will affect you as well in various ways. For you it only signifies a test of faith again which you can pass if you join Me more firmly than ever and confidently hand yourselves over to My guidance and help. That which will happen very shortly will prove My Word to you, and then you should only abide by Me and I will help you in every adversity and danger. For everything can be overcome with My help, nothing is impossible for My strength and power, and no prayer will be left unanswered if you believe in Me and call upon Me from the bottom of your heart. You humans must live through this short phase so that your soul will derive benefit from it, and although it will be brought to a halt through My intervention it will be followed by a different tribulation. It is the time of adversity before the end and good for him who recognises it as the time of the end .... He will draw

comfort and hope from every one of My Words, he will not despair but unite with Me in even more sincerity than ever and endure all earthly adversities and dangers without harm to his soul because I Myself will take him by his hand and guide him, and provide him with strength and light ....

Amen

## **Destiny ... Submission to God's will ....**

***B.D. 3819 from July 7th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

That which is granted to you according to divine will of eternity has to be accepted by you, and its blessing for you depends on how you cope with it. If you submit yourselves to divine will, you will accept your fate without grumbling and complaining, for then you will have faith in God's love and omnipotence and expect His help without doubting. And then God will certainly help you .... If, however, you inwardly rebel against God's divine providence, if you sullenly complain and try to defend yourselves, the weight will burden you even more, or you will receive help from below, you will be supported by the one who wants to gain you for himself in order to

corrupt you. For with those who still carry too much of their own will and do not yet acknowledge God's will, he will be preaching to the converted, he will be listened to and will win over the soul. Every person's destiny is according to his own will, and the reason as to why the same destiny causes more suffering in one person than another is because he lacks submission to God's will. And in order to save the soul which is rebelling against God, the adversity must affect it harder until it realises that a higher will is taking effect and it unconditionally subjects itself to the latter. And thus you humans need never believe that you can make your earthly fate easier for yourselves by taking this or that precaution .... You can certainly alter your course of life by using your own will but never its difficulties, for the gravity of events approaching you depends on how your soul needs it, and you must take your measure of suffering upon yourselves regardless of which path you are taking .... you cannot escape your destiny, because it has been determined for eternity. Only your submission of will shall make it bearable for you, for then it will have served its purpose, and you will no longer need such painful means, instead, you can live an easier life until its end. Therefore, don't rebel against God's will, recognise God's will in everything that comes upon you, don't complain and grumble but humbly bear what you are sent by God and He will take it away from you again as soon as you yield to His will. And firmly believe that He can always help you, and the strength of faith will banish every disaster .... God only wants to win you over to Himself and not lose you to

the one who is His adversary, who has completely turned his will from Him and aims to push His living creations away from Him as well by inciting their will to likewise rebel against God. Therefore, don't fall prey to the one who wants to corrupt you but recognise God as your Lord and submit yourselves to Him .... and even the harshest destiny will be a blessing for you ....

Amen

## **Urgent admonition to detach from matter ....**

***B.D. 3821 from July 9th 1946, taken from Book No. 48***

Recognise the time and adjust your life accordingly .... Anyone who is unable to detach himself from the possessions of the world will find the last days before the end very difficult, for he will lose everything if he does not belong to those who are completely corrupt, who will receive everything so as to completely renounce Me. Then I will have to take that which you are unable to relinquish voluntarily from you by force if I want to save you from entirely falling prey to the one who wants your eternal ruin. For earthly matter belongs to him and must never become the principle of your life, instead you



should use it to cover your most essential physical needs so that you can consider your soul the more abundantly .... For this alone is needed in the coming time, because you only have little time left until the end. But if you spend it by just taking care of your physical well-being then your soul will go short and will have to suffer indescribably if I still want to rescue it before the end. Therefore remove whatever your body does not require and give it to your needy fellow human being, for there will be much hardship with My permission.

Recognise the last days before the end by the fact that a great tribulation will befall the earth which you will be unable to avert by yourselves and which will be made even worse through My will, through My last intervention before the end. Then you all must realise that I only want you to have very little for your body, that I want to direct your mind more towards the soul, towards the spirit, and humbly submit yourselves to My will. Ignore your body and only take care of your soul, then I will take care of your physical well-being and keep you alive until the end, and you will be able to endure your last stage of life because I will help you.

And thus liberate yourselves from all earthly matter, detach your heart from it, and gladly share whatever you own with your needy neighbour. And you will not have to go short despite your externally most modest living conditions, you will be able to live and work because your soul will receive doubly what your body gives up. I must take your earthly possessions away from you if you don't

part from them voluntarily, I must implement a forceful solution if you are too weak to separate yourselves from them. But it is far better if you already detach yourselves from them in your heart before, that you no longer let yourselves be enslaved by matter, but that you leave everything up to Me of your own free will if you sacrifice everything you own to Me .... Then I will return to you what you need and also make your earthly life easier, and you will make proper use of the time until the end for your soul. For if I tell you that you that your life will not last long anymore, why should you still anxiously worry ... ? You will have to leave all earthly possessions behind when your body dies, your soul, however, will remain chained to it even in the spiritual kingdom if it hasn't detached itself on earth already. And I want to help the soul learn to overcome it on earth and free itself from all longing for it .... Detach yourselves from matter .... I let this call resound more urgently than ever, for the care of your soul is paramount in the forthcoming time ....

Amen

## **Good and evil ... Law of eternity ...**

***B.D. 3901 from October 11th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

I also concede to evil but it is never My will, because evil contradicts My eternal law, it is a wrongly directed will which withdraws from Me and strives towards something entirely ungodly .... a condition which completely opposes the original state of My created being .... However, My created being has to have the option of aspiring towards good and evil, thus good and evil have to exist if the being wants to remain perfect or to become it of its own free will. Everything which contradicts My law of eternity is evil, everything which remains within My eternal order is good; but the fact that the being can sense or develop a desire towards either direction within itself is My will, and that it can feel every longing in its heart is My work. My wisdom and My love are the reasons why I have created the being in this way because I want to guide it towards eternal bliss and this necessitates being able to voluntarily aspire towards good. In order to develop strength it has to meet with resistance .... in order to be good the human being also needs to have the option to be evil and to become or remain good of his own accord, or his perfection would be a mere act of My love but would lack the highest degree for which free will is indispensable which, however, first has to be tested.

Evil can never be called good and can never be said to originate from Me although I also allow room for evil, although I concede to it. Evil thoughts, evil talk and evil actions are outside of My divine order .... But if My will prevented the human being from thinking, talking and

doing evil he would not be a free, independent and self-determining living creation but a mere product of My willpower which could never assert its claim to become perfect. But I want to shape perfect living beings for Myself which I can enlighten with My strength of love and, by doing so, make them extremely happy. And for this purpose they need to have passed the test of will to aspire, of their own accord, of their own free will, towards the highest degree of perfection .... This also requires the option of descending into a state of imperfection, the furthest distance from Me. My will is and remains eternally good, and anything which voluntarily submits to My will shall also be and remain good; anything which acts contrary to My will thus prefers evil and I will not prevent it, although it deprives itself of its own perfection, it does not pass its test of will. And even if it has descended into the deepest abyss it inevitably has to ascend again of its own free will, although it needs an infinitely long time to once again achieve a degree of perfection which would allow My proximity. And precisely for that reason its will has to be given some leeway in order that the eternal divine order can be counteracted, but I will never approve of it nor shall it ever be My will. Thus good and evil will continue until every spirit has been redeemed, that is, until everything which has emerged from Me has passed its test of will to voluntarily aspire towards good, the Divine, until it has found Me of its own free will and as a most perfected being will then be able to enjoy all delights of eternal bliss ....

Amen

# **Justice towards fellow human beings ... God's order ...**

***B.D. 3906 from October 17th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

If you demand divine justice, you must also be just in all things yourselves. All your thoughts and actions must correspond to My eternal order, thus they must testify to love for Me and the next person. Whatever you want to happen to you, whatever right you claim for yourselves, you must also grant the next person, you must consider him in the same way as you want to be considered by him, if you are in the same situation; you must be devoid of selfish love if you want to do for and give to your neighbour what you require for yourselves. And you must always bear in mind that I give to you according to your attitude towards your neighbour .... Think and act fairly and you can be assured of My justice, for if you conduct yourselves contrary to My eternal order I must ensure that you recognise the injustice of your thoughts and actions yourselves, that is, you must feel the effects of them yourselves, so that you know that you don't live in

My order and will change yourselves. The world is full of injustice, and yet, I cannot forcibly stop its activity or it would never be able to become aware of its injustice and turn away from it. Nevertheless, one day My justice will show itself .... But then it will be a dreadful judgment for those whose lives did not correspond to My order. For everyone will have to atone for his unfair thoughts and behaviour, be it on earth or in the beyond or in agonising renewed banishment in matter, for since I Am supremely perfect I must also be supremely righteous and punish the sinners once they degenerate into devils on earth and are no longer capable of any earthly improvement.

Yet My justice apparently still remains hidden, apparently I still turn My eyes away from the immense injustice which happens in the world on a mental level and through actions of the most blatant unkindness.

Apparently I don't see them, yet they are recorded in the Book of eternity .... No wrong-doing will remain unatoned if its forgiveness is not very seriously appealed for by a soul willing to improve itself .... And My justice will reveal itself on the Day of Judgment, when all sins reveal themselves to Me too and no-one will be able to hide their thoughts and actions from Me. Then My Own will praise Me for My righteousness and the sinners, which I call to account for their actions, will be afraid .... And even if the human race goes from bad to worse and adds sin to sin .... know, that the Day of Judgment will demand penance for everything and that the day is not far away .... Yet once again I say to you that the measure first has to

be full before My love and mercy steps back and righteousness prevails .... For the time granted to Satan's activity on earth is specified for eternity, but during this time every soul also has the opportunity to find its path to Me and release itself from Satan's control with My support, with My strength .... Every day is a blessing for the imperfect spiritual being, but it also gives the adversary greater opportunity to draw the soul into the abyss for an infinitely long time. However, the Day of Judgment will bring the time of grace to an end and also the time of raging of this power .... And then a righteous judgment will be passed, and there will be howling and gnashing of teeth with the sinners who previously raged with impunity of their own free will and who will therefore be cast into deepest darkness for an infinitely long time ....

Amen

**Blissful spiritual beings  
require process of  
development on earth for  
childship to God ....**

***B.D. 3908 from October 19th 1946,***

## ***taken from Book No. 49***

Even My perfectly created spiritual beings which loyally remained with Me must go through a process of development on earth as freely existing beings if they want to attain the highest degree of perfection, the childship, which elevates them to a complete likeness of God and which I therefore cannot give to them, instead they must acquire it for themselves. These spiritual beings are certainly already extremely happy in the state I created them in and in which they remained of their own free will even though they had the option to also distance themselves from Me and to descend like the other beings I had called into existence. They are most brightly enlightened, they have complete realisation and continuously only comply with My will, which also corresponds to their will. Nevertheless, they are perfect beings created by Me which must first shape themselves into My children, into beings which must first be subjected to every influence, both good and evil, and completely and freely choose the good influence in order to strive towards Me as self-determining spiritual beings and unite with Me. Only after this test of will, which must be taken on this earth, will the being I created have attained the highest degree of perfection .... As My child it will have united itself with the Father forever and attained a supreme abundance of light, strength and power, its love and wisdom will be profound .... it will have become like Me, My image, which is made infinitely happy by My Fatherly love and also fills



My heart with delight because the love for these children of Mine is incomparable .... When a spiritual being, having remained faithful to Me, embodies itself on this earth, its earthly task simultaneously involves a mission that intends to save erring souls from profound spiritual adversity. The earthly paths of these souls are particularly hard to pass through; however, the soul begins its earthly trial in full awareness and accepts any fate once it is willing to thereby attain the degree of childship to God.

Nevertheless, taking the test on earth is not determined by God, instead, even this desire must arise of its own free will and impel the light being revelling in absolute beatitude to exchange this bliss with a short but, on account of its mission unaware soul, incredibly arduous earthly existence .... Although it is granted every conceivable help on earth by the beings of light, they must also observe its freedom of will or it will be impossible for the soul to advance. Such an earthly test requires immense willpower, for worldly temptations will influence this soul especially strongly and it will have to fight many a battle in order to prevail over matter, yet a complete descent into the control by matter need not be feared, because its longing for the kingdom it had left is stronger than the longing for matter, even though on earth it is not aware of its true home. For this reason beings of light can support it constantly and grant it every help to attain its goal on earth. During the last days before the end many beings of light are embodied on

earth, after all, this time is particularly advantageous for their higher development, for taking their test of earthly life, because people require spiritual leaders and they are mainly entrusted with this ministry as their mission. These spiritual beings must absolve a strict school of life, as due to their psychological abilities they carry far more responsibility for their souls, they must equally struggle and fight against all kinds of cravings and their life is full of renunciations and sacrifices. Nevertheless, they do not experience them as painfully once their aspiration for ascent comes to the fore, which can already commence at a very early age but can also only start at an advanced age; for freedom of will determines their path of life until their physical death, which for many active beings of light during the last days on earth coincides with the final end ....

Amen

## **The burden of sin in the beyond ... Atonement or forgiveness ...**

***B.D. 3909 from October 20th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Every sin you commit against other people and thus also

against Me, Who gave you the commandment of love, becomes a burden to you. And your sins will be a heavy burden to you in the beyond if you don't make

Amends for them on earth already. Therefore, do not believe that you are not punished when you sin against other people; do not believe that there is no fair judge because He does not appear to you straight away. And do not believe that you are without guilt because other people do the same to you and disregard My commandment of love .... You dull your conscience but it does not diminish the extent of your guilt since your intellect remains active and knows full well the difference between right and wrong. And your will is not forced to think and behave as you do, thus you are responsible yourselves and you burden yourselves tremendously when you accumulate one sin after another .... when you harm another person, when you pursue him and act with unashamed unkindness, instead of supporting him in his adversity by helping him and thus loving him unselfishly, which alone is pleasing before My eyes. You submit yourselves to the power of Satan who controls your souls in accordance with his will, who pulls you into disaster and who, as reward for your willingness, merely gives you the feeling of a temporary improvement of your earthly living conditions.

But how can this benefit your souls? Do not exceed the amount of your sins because your future remorse will be dreadful .... Believe in a righteous God Who will hold you to account for all your deeds and ask Him for forgiveness

of your guilt, pray to Him for the reinforcement of your will to do good, for the strength to do kind deeds .... muster the will to be good and you will receive help, you will be able to save yourselves from the mire of sin, you will already find forgiveness on earth and mercy before My eyes .... But do not disregard Him Who gave life to you, do not deny Him righteousness, and become aware of your sins, do not offend against the commandment of love which I Myself gave to you for the benefit of your souls. Have mercy on the weak and sick and you will find mercy with Me, ease their suffering and I will always be ready to help when you are in need .... For as you do to others I will do to you on the Day of Judgment, which is close at hand. Do not sin, so that the amount of your sins will not increase, so that the burden of your sins won't push you down and you cannot find mercy anymore on the Day of Judgment. For I know of every injustice, nothing is hidden from My eyes, you will have to give account for every thought and deed and woe unto him who is struck by My Judgment, who will feel My justice when his sins become revealed. His penance will be hard but appropriate to his guilt for I Am a fair judge even if My patience and mercy are without end .... But there is a limit to what you may do, and when you overstep this limit the hour of judgment will have come which will demand justice for all sins as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Selfless service in every walk of life ... Poverty ... Willingness to give ...**

***B.D. 3918 from October 29th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Everything you do you should do in the knowledge that you are carrying out divine will. Therefore you have to entrust all your thoughts, words and actions to Him, you have to request His blessing for this and entirely commend yourselves to His divine guidance .... you have to put His will completely in charge of your daily life, that is, you only need want your way of life to be pleasing to Him and always do your best to attain His love. Then you can neither speak nor do anything which opposes God and your life on earth will not be unsuccessful for your souls. You fulfil God's will when the commandment of love becomes the guiding principle of your life, then you live up to the most important law and God will bless you, spiritually as well as worldly.

Your purpose on earth is to serve unselfishly and you can do so in every situation, irrespective of whether you are poor or wealthy, great or small, respected and powerful or inconspicuously weak .... You can always be of service providing you want to be of service. Every human being is

offered ample opportunity to serve kindly and no one should believe to be in need of receiving help themselves and reduce their own resolve to give because he has nothing to give .... Even the poorest can give .... and if he has no material wealth then he can give love and thereby awaken the love in others .... he can be willing to give and his will is then likened to a good deed.

But at all times God only looks into the heart and no impulse remains hidden from Him therein. An outwardly apparent great act of love can be worthless in the eyes of God if the heart does not feel the love which displays the deed; and even the smallest gift is pleasing to God if it is given with a loving heart. And anyone who honestly wants to give gladly will also give of the little he owns, he won't fearfully question but share instead .... And it will be returned to him many times over because the Lord says 'as you give so you shall receive ....' and His Word is truth. Thus no one should keep his possessions anxiously to himself when he endeavours to live in accordance with God's will, he should give gladly because his action of love will reward him with far greater blessings than his few possessions could ever offer. Because he will receive exceptionally more, both earthly and spiritually .... his soul will mature, he will always be correctly guided because God Himself takes care of those who want to live as it pleases Him, and because His guidance is the guarantee to reach the goal. Only one factor is required of you: that you live with love .... that your thoughts, words and actions will always be guided by the love of

your heart and that you devoutly commend yourselves to Him, Who gave you your life so that your souls can mature .... With His grace and strength you are able to do everything, even during times of greatest physical and spiritual difficulties you can do deeds of kindness providing you unite with the Eternal Love Itself through prayer, which will give you unlimited strength and grace because you want to draw nearer to Him with deeds of love ....

Amen

## **Following Jesus ... A life of love and self-denial ...**

***B.D. 3920 from November 1st 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Anyone who is not as gentle and patient as Me, who does not practise his discipleship by discarding all attributes which conform to My adversary, who does not persistently strive for virtues that are the hallmark of a divine being, will hardly reach the goal of finding unification with the eternal Father Who is pure love Himself and Who can only unite with living creations which, like Him, have become love. My life on earth should serve you as an example, for as a human being I was subject to the same

temptations as you because I had to take the only path which could lead a soul into perfection ....

Like you, I had to fight against all longings of the flesh as well as against all attributes of an ungodly being or My life could not have served you as an example if I had been born without all human flaws and able to bypass the test of My will. I had to experience the depths of earthly life, i.e. I had to have the opportunity to voluntarily refrain from the same physical sins and avoid all incentives for them .... I had to fight against carnal longings and thereby strengthen and prepare the soul in Me to unite with the spirit. The sinfulness in My surroundings often sorely tested My love and patience, yet I wanted to remain gentle and whole-heartedly humble without exalting Myself .... And I took pity on My fellow human beings' weakness for not resisting temptations, and My love intensified .... I wanted to help those on the ground unable to get up by themselves .... For being human Myself I knew a person's weakness, and this knowledge increased My kindness and patience.

Being human Myself I was at all times able to put Myself into the situation of a sinful person's soul even though I Myself was without sin, even though I Myself, by virtue of My will, had remained victorious over all temptations of body and soul. Yet I took the strength to do so from love, and every person practising love will also muster the strength and resolve to fight against his faults and weaknesses, and he will also be victorious, for love itself is strength .... And therefore, every actively loving person



will also practise all virtues which denote a divine being: he will be gentle and patient, merciful, peaceable, humble and just .... For if he meets a fellow human being with love his thoughts are loving too, and he fights all weaknesses and faults with ease. Follow Me .... live a life of love and self-denial like Me and you will release yourselves from all sinful longings, you will not become subject to sin yourselves, you will bring yourselves into line with the nature of eternal love and already find union with it on earth, and the attainment of your goal will be certain for you. Hence, like Me, you too have to take the cross upon yourselves at all times, and you should not become impatient, for if you sincerely appeal for My help I will help you carry it, and the more willingly the soul carries the cross imposed on it by the Father's love for the sake of its full maturity, the sooner it will deliver itself from earthly longings.

Follow Me and take My life on earth as an example, and you will never become subject to sin again, you will release yourselves by virtue of your determination and love, you will become free and infinitely happy beings, equipped with all divine characteristics, you will be full of light and strength in the spiritual kingdom and live blissfully happy in eternity ....

Amen

## **The fulfilment of prayer in**

# **firm belief ... 'Father, Your will be done ...'**

***B.D. 3927 from December 2nd 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

You can obtain everything from Me, if you only believe in Me firmly and steadfastly .... For if you bear My greater than great love for you in mind you will also know that I will not leave any prayer unanswered. However, firm faith in Me also includes absolute trust in Me, it includes the certainty that I, in My wisdom, also recognise everything that is a blessing for you, and that I will not allow you to be harmed by granting you something that will not be beneficial for you. And this is why a profoundly devout human being will hand himself over to Me unconditionally, he will leave it up to Me what I choose to give to him, he will not demand but humbly present his requests to Me, always making My will most important and commending himself to My love and grace. And I will give to him abundantly; I will never let him go short physically and spiritually, for I will never close My ears to My child's prayer. If, however, I deny you the fulfilment of a request then don't doubt My love anyway, for it is precisely My love which wants to protect you from harm. And you, yourselves, are not always able to recognise the effect of a fulfilled request. Therefore, present your wishes to Me trustingly and leave everything else to Me,

and My love will consider you such that your path to Me will run smoothly, so that you will safely reach your goal, so that you will return as My children into the Father's house in order to live a blissful life in eternity. Yet always and forever make use of the strength of prayer, call upon Me in every situation in life, come to Me if you are in difficulty and also think of Me in hours of peace and quiet.

Don't forget Me so that I will not forget you either, and establish contact with Me quite often through heartfelt prayer, and thereby constantly call Me close to you, then strength without measure will flow to you, if you look for Me of your own free will, if your thoughts apply to Me and your heart is urging towards Me. You have to find the way to Me yourselves and therefore enter the bridge which I have established for you from earth to Me .... You have to pray, for in prayer your soul is rising into the spheres of light, in prayer you enter the bridge to Me, in prayer the child steps in front of the Father, it establishes the relationship of a child to its Father, as it is My will. And if I Am called upon as Father when a childlike heart is beating for Me I will answer every beseeching request, for I will not disappoint My children who come to Me in complete trust. And My love will express itself to them, My love will hand out gifts in abundance, My love will take care of the child spiritually and earthly, and it will never ever again have to suffer adversity if its appeal to Me is truly childlike, that is, if it sends its prayer to Me in spirit and in truth.

You all should make use of the grace of prayer, for you are able to achieve everything in firm, living faith in Me and My love .... Yet don't demand and complain or grumble if I seemingly won't grant your prayer, for then My Fatherly love knows that the fulfilment of your prayer will only cause you harm, and in order to protect you from this it will deny itself .... Yet anyone who always submits his will to Mine will never be disappointed, for his is the true prayer which is pleasing to Me if he adds to all his requests 'Father, Your will be done ....'

Amen

## **God's will to help is greater than the adversity ...**

***B.D. 3936 from December 15th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

The adversity will never be greater than God's will to help .... He knows why He inflicts it on you, and as soon as it has served its purpose of having motivated you to enter into most heartfelt contact with Him, He will also remove it and clearly come to your aid. For His might is infinitely great, and His love is supreme .... And if you believe that He does not want to let you to suffer without reason, that He thereby only intends to benefit your souls, you only

need to commend yourselves to Him and His grace and He will help you in every danger and distress. Yet you must always consider the fate of your souls first, you must always aim to mature psychologically, i.e., to fulfil God's will, for you are only on this world in order to shape yourselves in accordance with God's will. If you disregard His will then you will have to be moved by suffering to change your mind; but if you voluntarily comply with His will then the suffering will always be bearable for you, even if you have to endure it for your own and your fellow human beings' sake. For at a time of a low spiritual level, when the whole of humanity is neglectful in fulfilling the divine commandments, when it no longer lives according to divine will, suffering and adversity will also have to strike the whole of humanity to a greater extent if it is to change and accomplish its purpose of earthly life.

So it is to be expected that it will also affect the people who at all times make divine will the guiding principle for their way of life, yet their adversity will always be endurable, God's help for them will always be clearly recognisable, He will always let them feel His love and support them by virtue of His omnipotence and His love, which will constantly express themselves with His Own. For He wants to strengthen their faith, He wants to reveal Himself as an ever helpful and kind Father, Who will not leave His children in adversity if they call upon Him for help. And every earthly and spiritual crisis shall induce people to call upon Him in their hearts, in spirit and in truth .... For through his heartfelt appeal to God the

human being unites himself with Him and is able to receive the necessary strength from Him to become fully mature in his soul. And God will time and again clearly reveal Himself to His Own, and anyone who pays attention to it will be able to convince Himself of His love and care every hour of every day, and He will glorify and praise Him in his heart and give thanks to Him .... For no adversity is greater than the might and love of the One Who sends it .... He always knows a solution, even if the earthly peril seems insurmountable .... Therefore believe in Him and don't doubt His love, for it takes hold of you and will never ever leave you, so that you shall recognise Him and become and remain His Own for all eternity ....

Amen

## **God's messengers' task before the end ....**

***B.D. 3942 from December 24th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Proclaim My Word to those who are sent to you by Me .... This is My will, for time is pressing towards the end. Therefore you always will have to take the paths I predetermined for you from the start, and you will always recognise My wisdom and love in My guidance, you will

learn to understand that you also need difficult circumstances in order to mature, for the more highly developed you are the more successful your activity will be before the end, for then you will be active representatives of My Word. But My Word must be made accessible to people, they should become aware of the great responsibility they have towards their soul. Only I Myself can give them the right information, and this has to happen through you, for a human mouth has to proclaim what originates from Me and testifies to Me. I want to speak to all people through a human mouth and you shall be My mouthpiece through which I proclaim My will. This important task is extremely beneficial for yourselves as well as for your fellow human beings and you will indeed gladly comply with this task, you will feel happy if you work in My name and eagerly strive to use every opportunity. Yet you must completely hand yourselves over to My guidance; you must take the direction I show you, and what I tell you to do through the voice of the spirit you must accomplish without reluctance and therefore constantly listen to the voice within, and you will act according to My will.

Countless souls suffer hardship for they do not know the truth, and every misconception is a danger for the soul. To bring them truth is an act of neighbourly love, for truth alone sets people free, it ends hardship, and only truth leads to Me, Who is eternal Truth Himself. Hence anyone who wants to reach Me should not take wrong paths, he needs to be shown the right path and he has to

travel it .... He has to comply with the Word which directly comes from Me and is conveyed to earth through My messengers and distributed .... And therefore I Myself will guide those people to My servants who desire clarification, who live in error, and they will be able to succeed in all places, they will find good ground which they can plant on and cultivate, so that I can gather a rich harvest on the Day of Judgment. I will send My messengers to all places where spiritual hardship exists, so that they will bring people the pure Gospel, as I Myself proclaimed to them. For the time is approaching its end, and great spiritual hardship can be controlled if you are willing servants for Me, if you stand up for My Word and appeal to Me for My blessing and My grace. For you are My pillars during the last days before the end, you are the labourers I hired to work in My vineyard, you are My servants and the great task awaiting you is to cultivate countless fields .... Countless souls need to be guided into truth, and if you contribute towards it, the immense spiritual hardship can be controlled and every soul helped by you will be eternally grateful to you ....

Amen

**God's creative will ....  
Spiritual and earthly  
creations ....**



## ***B.D. 3943 from December 25th 1946, taken from Book No. 49***

The Spirit which controls infinity is incessantly active, for His emanation of strength never diminishes, just as He never tires of using the strength for creating and shaping. And thus new creations constantly emerge, both in a spiritual and earthly sense .... He causes His thoughts to take on a shape for the redemption of the as yet bound spiritual substances, but He also lets spiritual works of wonder arise to delight the beings of light to which all splendours of heaven are revealed. His creative spirit and His creative will are supreme and never ending and always guided by His boundless love which wants to make everything which has emerged from His strength happy. And even if eternities should pass, there will be no end to new creations because His strength has to take effect in order to increase within itself. Therefore the spiritual being which animates earthly .... thus material .... creations is in constant contact with the centre of strength and, by receiving strength, is able to enter into the circuit of God's flow of love again from which it once distanced itself of its own free will.. Thus it increases its own strength just as it furthers the process of redemption of the spiritual beings which still exist outside of the circuit of God's flow of love. All material creations are a means to redeem the spirits; however, spiritual creations are the ultimate object, that is, indescribable pleasure of the redeemed spirits.

And God's creative will never diminishes because His love is never-ending. But He also causes creations to vanish, and that happens if they no longer fulfil their purpose .... if the inherent spiritual being lacks the impetus towards advance, if it opposes God's will and averts its own will from Him .... Then He will dissolve what He created, so that the spiritual substance can reach the goal in a different form. Yet this dissolution of His creations is only planned to happen periodically, just as His wisdom has recognised from the beginning to be necessary for the constrained spirits within the creations. In contrast, spiritual creations are everlasting, they merely change all the time and ever more glorious formations arise, which no human intellect can possibly imagine and no human heart ever dream of. Yet in every new period of time there will also be even more glorious creations which differ from the previous ones and testify to God's love, omnipotence and wisdom, Who reveals Himself in all creations. His strength is invincible and therefore He will never cease to be creatively active, yet the soul will only be able to recognise its extent when it has attained a specific state of maturity which enables it to behold spiritual and earthly creations. Only then will it be filled with reverence and love for its Creator Whose love created it too, in order to make it blissfully happy for all eternity ....

Amen

# Unification of different schools of thought during the battle of faith ...

***B.D. 3947 from December 29th 1946,  
taken from Book No. 49***

The various schools of thought will, due to their deviation from each other, always quietly fight each other in as much as each will try to lay claim to the truth and will therefore not want to accept the other. Yet, in the last days, they will all walk together, provided Jesus Christ's teaching is their basic principle and they confess His name. Then, all other differences will disappear into the background because every spiritual aspiration will be fought and every spiritual aspirant will therefore seek to meet other people of like mind. Thus, the teaching of Christ will emerge from every school of thought and their followers will belong to God's parish, to His church, which He Himself founded .... They will belong to this church because of their faith in Jesus Christ in spite of belonging to different schools of thought. Each one will discard external practices and customs and only pursue the inner connection with Jesus Christ, and each one will foster love, teach love and practise love.

The battle against all schools of thought will be carried

out particularly brutally so that half-hearted people of little faith will fall away if they do not have a profoundly living faith because they will not be able to offer resistance, they will falter under the burden imposed on them by the world. The cause of their failure will rest in the error which can be found in every school of thought, when serious action against them forces them to think about it. Any person who lives within truth due to his loving actions and correct instruction by God's chosen servants will also muster the strength of faith and not waver during any hardship, because the truth will give him strength as well as perception. Thus, he will know of the approaching end and the salvation from utmost adversity by God Himself. However, he will not be able to find this perception through misguided teachings and his faith will falter and desert him when he is confronted by the serious choice to either confess Jesus Christ before the world or to deny Him. Then the person, whose works of love have made him receptive to God's truth, will be strong, he will offer resistance and need not fear any worldly measures because he will expect God's help which he will receive whenever his body or soul experiences hardship.

Then the church of Christ will only be small and followers of every school of thought will seek refuge in it, and every hatchet will be buried just as all outward appearances and ceremonial actions will fall by the wayside in view of the immense persecution which all followers will have to fear. For the individual's

psychological development it is also beneficial for him to only take notice of the core, to recognise the Christian teaching of love as the core and thus his faith will be strengthened the more he abides by this teaching. The group of believers will get smaller, it will only be a small flock but they will live in the truth, in the right knowledge, and they will survive the hardest trials of the last days and emerge as victors, because the church of Christ will be victorious and embrace all who live in love and faith, who acknowledge Him before the world and are filled by His spirit as a result of their continuous actions of love .... The defenders of Christ will join together from all schools of thought and face up to their last battle, and God Himself will be their commander-in-chief. God Himself will protect them, the shield of faith will cover them and make them invincible .... they will fight in the name of Christ and victory will be on their side ....

Amen

**Reference to a natural  
disaster ... Urgent  
admonition to prepare ...**

***B.D. 3949 from January 1st 1947,***

## ***taken from Book No. 49***

My call goes to all those of you who receive My Word: Prepare yourselves for the coming time which will considerably change your circumstances of life, which will confront you with immense spiritual and earthly tasks and which you therefore cannot take seriously enough if you don't want to damage to your soul. For you must already draw strength in advance because overwhelming requirements will be demanded of you, both spiritually as well as earthly. Earthly life will burden you so heavily that you will only be able to endure it with Me and My help, and therefore you must first of all remain in contact with Me, you must not waver in your faith and think that I have forsaken you, for you can only find comfort and strength in your faith in Me, then you will come to Me and I will help you. And although many people around you will lose faith in view of the immense adversity which will irrevocably occur .... remain steadfast and devoted to Me in your heart and you will feel Me and My presence, you will always find the help which I had promised you. As yet you are unable to believe that which I have proclaimed to you time and again, as yet it still seems questionable to you that I Myself will visibly appear .... Nevertheless, the hour comes constantly closer and with it a complete change of your normal living conditions .... And you should prepare yourselves for this already by detaching yourselves from all material things in advance, by leaving your further lifestyle entirely up to Me and in complete faith in Me only take care of your soul. For regardless of

how much care you take you will be unable to keep earthly things if I consider it more helpful for you to lose them .... Yet whatever I want you to keep will not be touched by the forces of nature through which I will manifest Myself.

Believe that I direct everyone's fate according to My love and wisdom and that any anxious worry by you is unfounded. I Myself look after My Own such that they will still be able to achieve as much maturity of soul as possible on Earth.

The time until the end is but short and for many people it will also signify a shortened life on earth; they should and would indeed be able to reach the goal, even in a shorter time, because My love makes every opportunity available to them. Therefore, take My Words seriously, count on a speedy end and on the natural disaster beforehand, and expect it daily, for it will come suddenly, even for My Own. And utterly entrust yourselves to Me .... I will never ever leave you if only you remember Me, and if you call upon Me in your heart I will hear you. Yet make full use of the time before, let go of all earthly striving and only try to gain spiritual benefits. And remain faithful to Me even in times of greatest adversity and you will have Me as a constant helper by your side, you will evidently experience My often miraculous help, for I have promised you this and My Word is and remains eternal truth. Believe in this and also in the forthcoming great time of adversity and prepare yourselves for it by constantly drawing strength from My Word, by seeking Me more

sincerely then ever and by remaining in constant contact with Me through prayer and actions of love, for you will need much strength so as not to falter when I manifest Myself through the forces of nature .... However, don't fear anything regardless of what will happen, for I will protect My Own so that they will be strong supporters for Me during the last days before the end, who shall help to spread My Word in order that souls of good will shall still be saved ....

Amen

## **Reason and forces of earth's disintegration ... (Nuclear energy)**

***B.D. 3950 from January 2nd 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

All conditions for the creation of a new earth have to be in place before the old earth will be disintegrated, that is, before a total change of its outer shape can take place. The earth effectively has to go through a disintegration process which releases all spiritual substances bound therein so that they can take on new forms in creations which enable their continued development. Thus the process of final devastation has to be so powerful that



one can speak of a total disintegration of matter. This cannot just apply to individual stretches of land, but eruptions have to take place within the earth's core which will spread into all directions, so that the whole of the earth's surface will be affected, that therefore nothing will remain of what previously existed but that everything will be dissolved into their smallest components.

And this will be caused by people themselves .... they will become embroiled in a scientific area which is beyond their intellectual capacity. They don't know the natural laws and their effects to enable their investigation of such an area and thus they will activate forces which they themselves will be unable to control. However, I will not stop them, for even this human will underlies My eternal plan of Salvation, because the period of time the souls were granted for their salvation will then also have expired.

Thus the process of the final destruction will indeed be triggered by human will, yet it also corresponds to My will in so far as that it will guarantee an assured progress for the spirits which are still bound in hard forms and long to become active, or I could let the experiments fail in order to divert people's plans. Hence the tests will take place locally yet they will have no boundary because the released power can no longer be stemmed and thus its elementary effect will spread into all directions. For the earth is a limited region, whereas the activated force knows no boundary and everything affected by it will fall prey to it.

The consequences of this process are not conceivable to you humans, besides, it will happen within a space of time which will rob you of all thoughts, unless you belong to the small flock of My Own who observe the last work of destruction, because it is My will that they shall witness the end of this earth. But you can get a faint idea if you imagine an explosion taking place which leaves nothing that is assembled in existence, which thus totally destroys everything and dissolves it into smallest atoms. Yet preceding this process, which only takes a few moments, are tremors and outbreaks of fire which completely suffice to throw people into utter panic because they are facing certain death. And now it can also be understood that nothing can stay behind, that no creation will continue to exist, but that only matter dissolved into smallest atoms will remain which will be shaped again by My will and My might into unimaginable creations in which the spirits' process of development will continue.

And again there will be creations in various degrees of solidity, yet the hardest matter will shelter the spiritual essence which had populated the old earth and completely ignored its spiritual development. For these souls cannot expect a continued development in the spiritual kingdom, they will have to take the path through the whole of creation again, and thus will begin a new era of development as soon as the time is fulfilled, as soon as human will insistently wants to release forces which require a different degree of spiritual maturity than the

people at the end of this period of Salvation possess, and who therefore will never express themselves constructively but only destructively ....

Amen

# **The souls' state of darkness in the beyond and help by beings of light ....**

***B.D. 3952 from January 4th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

And your share will be light or darkness. You will stay in the light if you had allowed the light to enter you, if you had let it flow into your hearts and thereby dispelled the darkness you lived in until you were touched by the light from the heavens. However, if you avoid the light darkness will be your fate .... And spiritual darkness means wandering about lonely, it means being all alone in darkest surroundings without goal and without hope for a change in your situation. Hence a soul staying in darkness in the beyond suffers indescribably, since previously it had physical eyesight enabling it to recognise everything surrounding it, but now it will require spiritual vision in order to behold spiritual things, however, the soul will be spiritually completely blind.

And thus it will stay in a dismally barren region, and if it encounters other souls it will be unable to recognise them and thus will have to depend on other soul's help for guidance, for providing it with an occasional glimmer of light to recognise its environment.

The enlightened souls, however, will take care of such poor souls, yet their help is limited according to God's will, for they are not allowed to give light to them against their will. As long as the soul does not miss the light it has to languish in darkness, no matter how long it will last. It has to long for light, its condition has to become intolerable, and it must demand a change of its situation, only then will the bearers of light approach and provide it with a small glimmer of their light .... they will offer a few explanations and, depending on its willingness to listen and to accept them, the light will then take effect on the soul.

Its insufferable situation can awaken or enhance the soul's willingness to help as soon as it encounters other suffering souls. It will clearly recognise the suffering even though it is unable to recognise much, and as soon as the suffering of these souls stimulates its will to help it will become brighter within and the opportunity to help a suffering soul will present itself. Then it will feel an influx of strength, and it will use this strength to render assistance and in turn will be assisted itself by the beings of light, which will never leave such a soul again. It will receive because it gives, because love will have awakened within and every activity of love on earth as

well as in the beyond results in receiving strength; strength and love, however, are always together ... its will becomes stronger and its realisation will grow ... The darkness is penetrated, and for the time being it will give way to a twilight which is followed by a golden dawn ... when the sun of the spirit has risen, that is, when the soul receives knowledge on every subject from the beings of light, which delights the soul and will impel it into constant actions of love, that is, into giving of what it owns itself, to souls which still languish in utter darkness.

Every soul is able to escape the darkness; every soul is able to deliver itself, yet the reason for imparting light must always be a loving thought, for without it the beings of light are not allowed to distribute gifts, because free will has to strive for light or eternal night will continue to engulf the soul and the consequence can be a descent into the deepest abyss. Light, however, belongs to beatitude, and once the soul has developed spiritual vision it will recognise its task and behold splendours and never again descend into darkness ....

Amen

**Instruction by God  
Himself ... Audible Word ...  
Jesus' disciples ...**

## ***B.D. 3955 from January 11th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

Your knowledge can be increased in all directions if you entrust yourselves unto Me as a student and want to be instructed by Me. In that case you can ask any question and you will receive an answer. However, you will have to listen within or you will be unable to hear the answer. How this listening has to take place is not known to you because you don't practise it and therefore you don't hear My voice, although it speaks to you. First you have to withdraw into seclusion, that is, you must detach yourselves from the world such that your thoughts can unimpededly consider the problem you want to solve. In addition, you must make contact with Me through heartfelt prayer so that I Am present with you, so that you can therefore communicate with Me and speak to Me like a child to its father, like a brother to a brother or a friend to a friend without any inhibition. And then you will need to think about the problem that bothers you ... And a light will shine within you, you will have thoughts which seem acceptable to you, which you are inwardly convinced are right and which are indeed right because you have entered into union with Me and thereby entitled Me to direct your thoughts onto the right path.

However, you can also hear My voice directly within you, but this process needs to be practised, for it requires patience and complete seclusion from the environment, i.e., your thoughts must be able to completely detach

themselves from everything around you. Then you will be able to hear gently spoken Words, mentally or even audibly, depending on your degree of maturity and receptivity. The audible Word puts an end to every doubt, and once you have reached this state of audibly hearing My voice in you, you will be the happiest people on earth, for then no more question will exist for you which would remain unanswered for you, then you will be able to speak to Me and receive the answer no matter where you are, then My voice will be louder than the voice of the world and will always and forever drown it out. And this audible Word was heard by My disciples on earth, and thus I was able to instruct them personally and answer their every question after My ascension to heaven. I was with them in spirit and will also be with you humans in spirit until the end. And therefore you should endeavour to reach a state of maturity of soul on earth, so that you will be able to perceive My voice audibly in you, and you should practise receiving My Word, you should mentally remain in constant contact with Me and leave the answer to all questions to Me, you should listen within and you will receive an answer, the eternal Teacher Himself will instruct you as He has promised, that He will guide you into all truth ....

Amen

## **Satan's raging during the**

# last days ... Apostasy from faith ...

***B.D. 3958 from January 20th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

During the end time the number of unbelievers will increase and almost threaten to overwhelm the small flock of believers. And, with the apostasy from faith, Satan's raging will also become progressively more evident, for people will lose their last sense of responsibility towards a righteous Judge because they don't believe in Him. This is why God will noticeably manifest Himself in order to first strengthen the faith of His Own so that they will not waver in the face of the unbeliever's ungodliness and their worldly accomplishments. But He also wants to give them the opportunity of taking stock of themselves, and thus he so obviously takes care of His Own that even an atheist would be able to recognise God's strength and, with even the tiniest effort, regain his lost faith. God will perform many signs and miracles through His instruments on Earth .... Hence His servants on earth will apparently accomplish extraordinary things, yet it is God Who will be expressing Himself through them, Who will manifest Himself and even visibly dwell among His Own as a sign that the end is near, yet He will only be recognised by those who love Him with all their heart and keep His



commandments .... who have shaped themselves into love on earth and work exceedingly diligently for His kingdom. They will also possess extraordinary strength, because God Himself will be able to take abode in their hearts and permeate them with His strength of love. The unbelievers will be able to convince themselves of this strength, they will have to admit that a higher Power is at work, providing they are willing to think about the extraordinary phenomena which the last days before the end entail. However, they are far too worldly minded and pay no attention to the former; they despise and pursue the believers and inflict serious difficulties and hardship on them through which only God's obvious support helps them to persevere. For God's working among His Own will be so evident that they will firmly unite and offer resistance to all worldly onslaughts; stronger in faith than ever they will completely hand themselves over to God and His guidance, so that they will neither fear earthly adversity nor death and therefore also find it easier to bear the pressures of the last days. Where God has manifested Himself once no target will exist for God's adversary anymore, for their faith can no longer be shaken. And God will be close to His Own, just as He has promised .... He will provide them with comfort and strength; He will educate them and promise His impending arrival, He will impel them into increased activity of love, for His presence, whether in an earthly or spiritual sense, will fill them with love for Him and their fellow human beings and therefore also with strength .... But the time of the end will necessitate God's evident

working for this, too, will contribute towards the separation of the spirits. It will provide those who are still half-hearted and undecided with the opportunity to decide which camp they want to belong to, since they will still be given a final impetus for this. They will be able to convince themselves of the strength of faith which will master even the greatest earthly adversity and thereby change their attitude towards God by establishing the right relationship with Him. Where God visibly manifests Himself there will be peace and hope despite all the misery, and since the believers' fate is an extraordinarily difficult one, this will surprise the unbelievers. Anyone who pays attention to His Word, who listens to His servants on earth, will change his will and then every willing soul will be seized and helped by God in His love and mercy and will be saved from eternal darkness .... He will revive their hitherto weak faith and give them strength to persevere until the end, until He will come in the clouds and fetch the flock of His devout followers to Himself ....

Amen

**Redemptive work greatest  
act of neighbourly love ....**

***B.D. 3960 from January 24th 1947,***

## ***taken from Book No. 49***

Redemptive work on earth is the greatest act of neighbourly love and therefore pleasing to God. This work applies both to a fellow human being's body as well as to his soul. For the more diligently the soul is worked upon, the more the body's adversity will abate. Redemptive work, however, is everything that helps the soul to gain freedom; everything that can serve its liberation from Satan's control and its further development, everything that assists its perfection. Anyone can accomplish this redemptive work and thereby practise extremely richly blessed neighbourly love, especially during the last days before the end when countless souls suffering spiritual adversity should be helped, because their souls will be hopelessly lost without help, given that they no longer have the strength to release themselves. If you humans bear in mind that a totally weak soul is in urgent need of help, then it should be your heartfelt decision to help, providing you feel a spark of love in yourselves, because the weakness of this soul is not a temporary condition but continues forever until it receives external help. Although in its human stage the soul is capable of releasing itself if it subordinates itself to God's will and keeps His commandments. Yet since it failed to do so it is devoid of all strength and can only be helped by fellow human beings, because its wrongly inclined will has made it impossible for God's direct action. Hence love is necessary in order to take part in the redemptive work on

earth, and every person who practises this neighbourly love, will be blessed by God as this love is truly unselfish. Redemptive work can only be accomplished by those who deny themselves, who have overcome their inclination towards the world and who are therefore actually already labourers in the vineyard of the Lord, who offered to carry out work which does not result in earthly achievements but solely concerns a fellow human being's spiritual wellbeing. And this kind of neighbourly love must be successful, it will not remain ineffective, the work of helping a neighbour's soul will not be done in vain providing his will is not entirely opposed to God and thus also opposes his fellow human beings' efforts .... In that case his soul will be lost for eternity, for its spiritual adversity is too great to be remedied on earth during the short time which is still available for the redemption of people's souls. Then the soul's fate will be a renewed banishment, a process through the new creations on earth, which will last an infinitely long time again ....

Amen

**Prediction of a swiftly  
approaching end ... Weak  
faith therein ....**

## ***B.D. 3964 from January 29th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

You know that you cannot expect a long life on earth anymore and that every day is a grace enabling you to mature fully if you make correct use of the time. You know this from My Word but your faith is not yet profound enough to be spurred into utmost striving, you doubt the truth of My Word as far as it relates to the approaching end. Nevertheless, you should eagerly work at improving yourselves, for the end is at hand .... Time and again I approach you with this admonition and warn you of half-hearted thoughtless living; time and again I call to you: Pay attention to My Word, engross yourselves in it and live accordingly.

You won't know when your last hour has come, you don't know how much time you have left until the end, hence you should live as if every day is your last. I always send you My obedient spirits to convey illuminating thoughts to you, to direct your mind to the spiritual kingdom, I send you My messengers on earth to inform you of the approaching end, to draw your attention to the signs of the last days and to awaken firm faith in you by imparting My Word to you which was transmitted directly to earth. And thus I constantly try to explain to you the gravity of the situation in order to enable you a blissful end, yet none of you take My Words seriously enough, your faith is still too weak to live appropriately even though your will is turned to My direction. And therefore I admonish you

time after time: .... Engross yourselves in My Word, let the thought of a near end come alive in you, prepare yourselves for it, and place less importance on earthly things in view of the end, in view of the immense spiritual hardship which will even increase the closer it is to the end.

Use all available strength in order to grow spiritually, and fully entrust the care of your body to Me. Make use of the short time until the end, be constantly active with love, always draw strength from My Word, admonish and teach your fellow human beings to do the same and thus help each other to reach the goal on earth which I had given you, help each other to become perfect, for there is only little time left until the end ....

Amen

Revelation 8, 6-12

And the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound.

The first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up.

And the second angel sounded, and as it were a great mountain burning with fire was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood;

And the third part of the creatures which were in the sea, and had life, died; and the third part of the ships were

destroyed.

And the third angel sounded, and there fell a great star from heaven, burning as it were a lamp, and it fell upon the third part of the rivers, and upon the fountains of waters;

And the name of the star is called Wormwood: and the third part of the waters became wormwood; and many men died of the waters, because they were made bitter.

And the fourth angel sounded, and the third part of the sun was smitten, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars; so as the third part of them was darkened, and the day shone not for a third part of it, and the night likewise.

(The Holy Bible, King James Version)

**Turning inwards ...  
Detachment from the  
world and its matter ...  
Achievement of truth ...**

***B.D. 3968 from February 5th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

The greater a person's desire for truth the more deeply he will penetrate it. To God, as the Giver of truth, nothing is hidden, and therefore He also knows and answers every question moving a person's heart; and thus you humans can easily increase your knowledge if only you let God, the Eternal Truth, speak to you, that is, if you attentively listen to your inner voice, which will always instruct you correctly. You have to look for the answer within yourselves, you should not expect it to come from outside, then you will be instructed directly, and you can be certain that it will be utter truth. Hence you should take notice of what He says to you:

Do you want to serve Me or the world .... do you want to gain My favour or do you want to attain other people's admiration? Your will alone determines your actions and innermost thoughts, and therefore a spiritual rebirth will only ever be possible when you are moved by the utmost desire to be in contact with Me, when you look for Me and completely withdraw from the world in order to unite with Me.

But how can you detach yourselves from the world since, after all, you have to live in it and see yourselves faced by earthly obligations which you should not neglect? How can you establish the heartfelt relationship with Me while you constantly live amongst your fellow human beings and are thus time and again required by them?

Only through turning inwards, through a withdrawal into seclusion which, however, can take place everywhere and



at any time depending on your will, and which will proceed more sincerely and unhindered the less external impressions a person receives. A most intimate contact with Me requires detachment from all matter, for I Myself, as pure eternal Spirit, exist outside of matter, even though matter itself is My emanated solidified strength, yet it is always situated at a certain distance from Me.

Anyone who wants to look for and find Me first has to turn his will away from matter, but since he nevertheless still lives within matter, since he has a physical body, he has to withdraw into his innermost being .... Then he will find Me, and the complete detachment from matter will take place when the physical eye is shielded from every external impression, when it is closed and no longer receives physical images, for they are reflected in a person's soul and disturb its silent contemplation and union with its spirit. Spirit and matter are opposite concepts and will always remain in opposition to each other, and since I Myself as a pure Spirit want to be active within you, you first will have to achieve this inner separation from matter and then you will come closer to Me, but you will never be able to establish a close contact with Me as long as your eyes and senses are held captive by external impressions ....

I want that you only desire My presence, that you have no space for anything else in your hearts, and that you muster the will to relinquish all earthly things for My sake and the sake of My presence, that you mentally detach

yourselves from everything opposing Me .... And all matter is spirit in opposition to Me .... I also want human customs to be avoided where possible, for they distract from an inner composure if they are not thoughtlessly observed, or they will be automatically performed and are then equally worthless. Anyone who sincerely looks for Me first has to sever his contact with the world, and everything that is not spiritual belongs to the world, that is related to earthly matter, that is taken in by the human being's physical senses, thus everything that keeps the soul captive, that prevents it from uniting with the spirit within itself. Only when this detachment is accomplished it is able to talk to Me as it is My will, so that I Myself can work in the human being's heart with My love and grace.

And I truly favour the silent, profound worship; it can never be replaced by external customs and actions which automatically affect the human being's thoughts, which have to distract him from what is essential, from the purely spiritual contact with Me. I look into every person's heart and truly don't require any external evidence of your love for Me, and depending how you approach Me you will be considered by My love and grace, and you yourselves determine the extent. Although you will not act wrongly by performing external ceremonies, by observing human customs, but you harm yourselves by reducing the flow of My love and grace yourselves as long as any other thought but Myself still finds room in your heart. You should approach Me in spirit and in truth, then My eyes will look upon you favourably .... and then

you will feel the blessing of such intimate contact in yourselves, then you will feel My presence and be happy .... And yet you will remain profoundly humble in your happiness, because you will be aware of the extraordinary grace that is bestowed upon you by the fact that I take abode in your hearts, and humility will increase the amount of grace ....

Amen

## **Fate in eternity corresponds to will ... Love of matter is wrong ...**

***B.D. 3969 from February 6th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Whatever the human being strives for he shall receive, for his will alone determines his fate in eternity. If you strive for the kingdom of God you will also acquire it and become joint ruler of all worlds .... yet if you strive for the world, for fulfilment of all earthly wishes and longings, then the world, that is, worldly commodities, will not leave you even though you will have entered the beyond, for your wishes also create your soul's environment. The possession of these goods, however, will not make you happy, for soon you will realise that they are unreal, thus

your cravings can no longer be satisfied yet you continue to crave, and this longing will torment you, consequently, you already ought to endeavour on earth to let go of such cravings, you ought to desire spiritual possessions if you want to be blessed one day.

Whatever you strive for will be your share .... And thus every human being creates his own fate and should therefore be conscious of his great responsibility, for he is facing eternities ahead of him, eternities which he can either spend in beatitude or experience in wretchedness. For eternities can pass by until he has overcome earthly matter, in view of the fact that the temptations in the spiritual realm are far worse since he offers them little resistance, whereas he can easily detach himself on earth if he seriously wants to do so.

A soul which has risen above matter and enters the kingdom of the beyond in a free state is indescribably happy, since the pleasures awaiting it are far more magnificent than people on earth can possibly imagine. This soul, too, will desire, yet it will find constant fulfilment, for it desires spiritual possessions, it is God's emanation of love which beatifies it without end, for which it constantly yearns and which it will constantly receive. And this emanation of love spiritualises its whole being, it will bring itself ever more into line with the eternal love and will constantly feel attracted by it, it will incessantly desire the presence of God in order to be united with Him for all eternity and thus to be indescribably blessed. People on earth demand earthly

joys, physical pleasures and only ever strive for material possessions .... And all that will come to an end with the death of the body .... They will be unable to take anything along into the spiritual kingdom if they have failed to gather spiritual possessions which, however, can only be gained by neglecting earthly wishes. If they are still able to detach themselves from the world before their physical death, if they still recognise its worthlessness before and ponder thoughts of the hereafter they can be considered blessed, for then their path of ascent in the spiritual kingdom will no longer be closed to them, even though inexpressibly difficult to climb, but then they will no longer strive for earthly possessions and no longer have to fear the awful temptations which weaken the soul and render it incapable of resistance. Then they will soon find support from the beings of light which will help them by handing out spiritual possessions, if only within certain limits, until the soul makes its own effort to increase them, until it has recognised its task in the spiritual kingdom and strives to comply with it. What it wants it will receive .... Only its will is decisive, and in order for the will to make the right decision God constantly instructs people of His will, yet they won't listen to Him, they will continue to desire the world and thereby seriously endanger their souls.

Therefore God has mercy on them, and He clearly shows to them the value of earthly matter by allowing people to lose it, by time after time taking away what they own and what is dear to their heart without realising that they

harbour the wrong kind of love within them .... He takes away what they don't want to give voluntarily, in order to show them on earth already that it can be overcome, in order to help them become free from their longing for it, to content themselves with less and to turn their love to spiritual possessions which are incomparably more valuable and everlasting.

Every earthly loss affecting the human being is God's help; it is a gentle admonition to turn away from it and an indication of the fleeting nature of worldly things .... And anyone looking around with open eyes will be able to recognise God's activity everywhere, Who wants to help people become spiritually minded, so that they will still learn to despise matter before the death of their body and only strive for spiritual wealth .... so that they will create for themselves a blissful fate in the afterlife .... so that they will become blessed because it is their will ....

Amen

## **Changed living conditions ... Worldly-minded people ...**

***B.D. 3975 from February 13th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Entirely worldly orientated thinking will hardly adapt to the changing situations of life and will only continue to attend to its physical improvement, and this will stop the human being from working at improving his soul. Anyone who allows matter to become his master will never be able to overcome it, and anyone who does not use the loss of material possessions as an aid in overcoming them will strive with increased eagerness to increase them again, and if he is to be helped again it can only happen through renewed loss, so that he will learn to recognise the fleeting nature of matter and derive psychological benefit from it. However, all faith will also fall prey to increased earthly striving, and for this reason alone different camps will develop which are externally recognisable. Faithful people accept their difficult earthly situation as a Godsend and are therefore not interested in increasing their earthly goods, whereas a person striving for possessions has lost faith in a Power that wants to reveal Itself through events which cause him material loss. His desire for the world dominates and thus he does not recognise God nor arrange his life in accordance with His will.

And thus a very busy time of activity will commence when people will want to improve their situation which has become extraordinarily difficult due to God's will. And then a person's way of thinking will become evident .... the loving person will help his fellow human being by making his life bearable, yet the heartless person will only want to rearrange his own life, he will do anything to

provide himself with a good living standard again and not shy away from accomplishing it at his neighbour's expense. And it will soon become clearly apparent with whose support he works, who provides him with the energy for earthly activity and has taken possession of his soul in return. The believer, however, will also find help in every adversity, it just will not be externally visible, but God's strength will inundate him, he will also master every situation in life and always remain in contact with God, his faith will deepen, his love for matter diminish, and this means far greater progress than the increased earthly wealth of the former. For anyone who sells his soul for the sake of earthly life only takes the short time on earth into consideration, which can be over for him at any time. And he fails to think of eternity which will be incredibly painful for him because he will be bound by matter in the same way as on earth. And therefore the human being should try to detach himself from all desire for it, he should accept the difficult time in submission to God's will and join God even more closely the more helpless he is in an earthly respect .... For God will help him and reveal Himself to him through often miraculous help .... And the time of affliction will only be short for him, but infinitely long will be his life in the spiritual kingdom where he, liberated from all matter, will be indescribably happy because he had already become a conqueror of matter on earth ....

Amen



# **Beings of light are people's spiritual guardians ...**

***B.D. 3981 from February 20th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

The beings which are surrounded by light in the spiritual kingdom are in closest contact with Me and therefore also share the same will, and they have a tremendous amount of strength at their disposal to implement their will. And thus they are effectively the executives of My will, they are My servants, My authorised representatives, whose actions comply with My plan of Salvation since eternity. They take care of countless beings on earth as well as in the beyond .... Everything that is alive, thus having a certain degree of maturity, also has to be cared for such that it achieves its goal, because without help it would never take the right path; it has to be constantly guided, and this guidance and care is the responsibility of all beings who are permeated by light and strength, whose love for Me and for the unredeemed is so profound that they will always do that which complies with My will .... to release the imperfect spirit. Countless beings of light are close to Me and tirelessly active .... thus countless people on earth are also able to enjoy their care, and every single fate, every event can be directed for the human being in such a way that he can fully mature, as is his destiny.

But even these beings of light will not infringe on the freedom of will, so that, in spite of greatest and utmost loving care, a descent into darkness is not impossible if the being itself resists the will and care of the light beings, thus when it does not acknowledge Me Myself and does not desire strength or light .... In that case the care of the spiritual beings of light will also cease until the person turns to Me himself and thereby also gives the beings of light the freedom to influence him.

But no human being on earth needs to do without the light beings' help and love, no human being will be poorly considered or neglected by Me, but every person's fate corresponds to his own will and this determines the amount of help and strength for his salvation. And since the beings of light are the executives of My will their guidance and care is the same as Mine. Consequently, one can only ever speak of My work and My help, because the beings of light belong to Me as part of Myself, even though they experience the happiness of My permeating them with strength and light and the bliss of constant activity for Me as individual beings. This activity, however, consists purely of executing what My love and wisdom deems to be good and beneficial for the individual souls. Thus the entire universe can be full of souls in need of help, not one soul will have to do without divine care because the kingdom of light is infinite and the bliss of the souls therein consists of accepting tasks from Me and surpassing each other in fulfilling them.

The soul that has become My Own through shaping itself

into love is also in direct contact with Me, and My will, My strength and My wisdom permeate this loving being so that it will not part from Me again for all eternity. It then lovingly devotes itself to the souls which cannot share this bliss due to their imperfection, and which the being of light feels impelled to release. It feels the same love for the unredeemed as I Myself, from Whose strength of love everything emerged. Thus it will also look after My living creations, take care of them and direct their state of affairs, so that every human being on earth has a spiritual guardian who, in turn, being completely connected to Me, cannot want and think other than I Myself. I stand above everything surrounded by a host of blissful spirits, but even the smallest and most insignificant being enjoys My care, My protection, and will not be forgotten by Me, even if this is incomprehensible to people because their knowledge and strength is limited and they assume that I have the same restrictions too, as long as they are imperfect themselves and have no idea about the power and light of the Perfect ....

Amen

**God's presence during  
spiritual conversations ....**

## ***B.D. 3983 from February 22nd 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

Every spiritual conversation attracts My presence if it is earnestly conducted and therefore people's own approval, but not their rejection, is recognisable. I participate in every conversation by straightening out each individual person's thoughts according to his nature, by allowing My spirit to become active in them so that it will instruct them from within. For this reason, spiritual conversations always meet My approval, even if they are conducted in a fighting mood when different opinions are upheld. Then I Myself will speak through the person who tries to adapt himself to My nature, who has so shaped himself through love that he can hear My voice within or who is able to voice clear thoughts which seem acceptable to every thinking human being. For I very happily stay where spiritual questions are discussed, they are, after all, the evidence that truth is sought and that I Myself Am the centre of every spiritual debate.

Consequently, I try to convey the truth to them, to organise their thoughts and guide them such that they will take the right direction and provide absolute clarity for people. However, the will for truth must be present, people should not merely argue in order to impose their own opinions but for the sake of truth itself, for this guarantees My presence, just as I will definitely keep My distance if a spiritual conversation is motivated by purely earthly interests, where thus, in the opposite instance,

the debaters' ultimate purpose is to displace Me, to shake people's faith and to prove to them that there is no connection between heaven and earth, between people and their Creator .... and, therefore, where spiritual things are also discussed but only in My adversary's sense. That is where he will be present and confuse people's thoughts, so that they will lose all clarity in their thinking and never be able to find the truth. Where I Am acknowledged that is where I stay, where I Am rejected that is where My adversary stays, and the results of a spiritual conversation run accordingly. Yet people will greatly benefit if a person devoted to Me participates in an opposing conversation, whom I Myself can subsequently support and through whom I Myself can speak in order to instruct people and divert them from their wrong thoughts. In that case My presence is necessary, as well as possible, because a receiving vessel exists into which I can let My spirit flow .... Then a spiritual battle will ensue, a battle of light against darkness in which people participate, and the success of such a conversation depends on the will for truth. However, I will bless all those who allow their thoughts to wander into the spiritual kingdom, for only they will be able to realise the truth if they seriously desire it ....

Amen

## **God as Mentor ... He allows**

# Himself to be found ....

***B.D. 3987 from February 28th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

I draw close to anyone who looks for Me and participate in his thinking, that is, the strength of My spirit makes contact with the spiritual spark in the human being and thus the association with Me is established for the duration of his mental activity regarding Me. And then people's thinking will be correct because My spirit will put it into order and guide it. And thus all kinds of questions can be raised mentally, whether the person desires an answer for himself or for conversations with other people .... he will receive the right answer because I Myself stay as a Mentor with those who are looking for Me. But I truly know best to what extent people strive towards Me and therefore I consider every person differently, depending on his desire and the compliance with the conditions which enable the working of My spirit .... And it will often seem as if I treat people unfairly if the effort of one person is not outwardly noticeable to his fellow human beings .... Yet someone who withdraws into solitude need not display his striving, however, it will be easier for him to make contact with Me and he can therefore be a diligent student of Mine, whereas his fellow human being is incapable of looking inwards due to lack of practice and is therefore not able to hear My gentle voice. In that case his connection with the world is

still too strong and this obstacle has to be removed first if someone wants to find Me and hear My voice. The spirit within the person is not interested in the world, it only seeks contact with the Father-Spirit. For this reason I draw close to anyone whose heart desires Me, and I allow Myself to be found by anyone who looks for Me .... for love is in everyone who seeks Me, and therefore he longs for Me, the primary source of love .... He will indeed reach his goal of being eternally united with Me, for anyone who lives in love is in Me and I Am in him. And he will feel My presence because I allow Myself to be found by someone who looks for Me. Thus he will also be aware of My presence and therefore already be happy on earth ....

From this time on the world has nothing to offer him anymore because he desires different goods, gifts offered to him by My love in the form of Words which he either perceives mentally or audibly and which are the most precious gift he can receive on earth because they originate from the spiritual kingdom, because it is My voice he hears, the voice of the Father Who speaks to His child. Anyone who lives a life of love on earth is indeed a most blessed creature since he will never ever need to miss Me again for I will permeate him with My strength of love and he will receive knowledge in abundance. Then the spirit in him will be able to express itself and indeed be listened to and understood, his soul will merge with the spirit and subordinate the body so that its substances can also spiritualise themselves as long as it is the soul's shell on earth. But I draw everything to Me which adapts

itself to Me by shaping itself into love. There will be no more separation, no gulf between the person and Me once he lives a life of love. Then I will be close to him and accessible to him at all times, then he will always and forever be able to hear My Word, he can communicate with Me by withdrawing into his closet .... by looking inwards and listening to My voice .... He will no longer need to look for Me for he has found Me and will not distance himself from Me again because My proximity makes him happy, because My Word is the greatest bliss for him and because an abundance of strength and light pour into him and testify to My presence. Seek, and ye shall find .... knock, and it shall be opened unto you .... Communicate with Me mentally and you will hear My answer, you will mature and safely reach the goal of blissful union with Me ....

Amen

## **Communism ....**

***B.D. 3995 from March 10th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

From the communist point of view there should to be no differences in external life conditions nor in the life-style of the individual. Yet this does not correspond to God's will Who Himself takes into account the manifold



differences of human beings' destinies. People should certainly strive to allow their neighbour the same of what they themselves possess and what makes them happy, but it must always be left to the individual to interpret the commandment of neighbourly love. He must not be compelled to share his property, nor, on the other hand, must his property be taken away from him if he has lawfully acquired it. There will always be and remain differences in the size of property as long as people's work capacity and their willingness to work varies, and these can never become the same, the free development of the individual should not be prevented.

It would be a monotonous world if God had not been diverse in His creation and if He had not given the human being the ability to fashion his life according to his own will and strength. Since both must find application, this is the purpose and goal of life on earth. The will of the human being may manifest itself in numerous ways, the life energy flowing to the human being can be variously applied. Just as God has also distributed it in various ways, consequently people's activity must be different too and therefore, understandably, also their earthly success. Differing living conditions develop from this, because they depend on human existence. Everyone should, of course, strive to see justice done in all things to other people but this does not signify absolute equality.

Indeed the difference in success is an incentive to increase activity and activity is always beneficial, while

the urge to be active is instantly diminished if success doesn't flow from it. Unused life energy is also an indication of standstill or even regression, for the human being himself as well as for the development of the spirit bound in matter. Uninterrupted activity guarantees uninterrupted upward development. God, therefore, allows for destinies to have different effects in order to heighten the individual's drive towards activity .... just as He also generally provides people differently with earthly possessions, with abilities and earthly success. Because communal life should also awaken the thought of love for other people and inspire activity. But as soon as people attempt to equalise the conditions of life by taking from one person and giving it to another, as soon as people strive to remove all differences, the urge for zealous activity is also suppressed, just as righteous thought and action is put into question too. Because then people are no longer assessed on their merit but the person who has lost his value, due to his attitude or laziness, receives in equal measure.

There have to be differences, there must be elevated and downcast human beings so that the service of love for other people can unfold .... there has to be wealth and poverty or mankind would lack all striving and the will to be active would be reduced to a minimum. Individual hardship and misery of the individual can only be alleviated with love and never by an action that extends to many people for the purpose of parity and egalitarianism of life's conditions, which would never be

a blessing for humanity. Moreover, this would be tantamount to wanting to interfere with divine plans of destiny, wherein people shall never succeed, because even where compensation on a worldly basis is achieved, God increases His demands on the human being or His will ruins what people's will attempts to implement, if it does not correspond to divine will ....

Amen

## **Harassing the bearers of truth through God's adversary ... God's help ...**

***B.D. 3996 from March 10th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

To accomplish a spiritual task requires an exceptionally strong will, for God's adversary will make a special effort to influence this will in order to prevent the human being from speaking on behalf of the pure truth, which is the task of a person who has offered his service to God. There will always be two movements amongst people, followers and representatives of the pure truth and those who adhere to error, and the light will always have to fight against the darkness, because the prince of lies constantly attempts to undermine the truth and to

replace it with error. The prince of darkness fights against God, the lie against the truth, the darkness against the light .... And this battle will continue for as long as the earth exists as a place of education for the spiritual beings which are intended to redeem themselves. This battle will particularly clearly come to light when the truth is manifestly conveyed from above to earth. Then the adversary will make use of all conceivable means in order to displace it, and then he will also appear as a figure of light in order to treacherously sneak in and take root where too little resistance is offered to him. And first he tries to put the bearers of truth out of action by using every opportunity to break their will, by seeking to influence them to abandon their work for God and to find a substitute for it in the pleasures of the world. If he does not succeed in tempting a servant of God with the world, he will take more severe action and try to undermine their success with fellow human beings by influencing the latter's attitude in a negative sense and thereby complicating the mission of the distributors of light on earth in every way.

And so it requires a strong will to carry out the task on earth despite these countermeasures, it requires an exceedingly strong faith and devoted love to God to remain a loyal labourer for Him on earth, to recognise the adversary and to abhor him and to carry out the work on fellow human beings with perseverance and enthusiasm and to finally face him victoriously when the last battle is won. Yet God leaves no servant and labourer of His on

earth without strength, He will always help him if he threatens to become weak, if his will is subjected to severe upheavals through the continuous influence by the enemy of truth. Then He will also manifest Himself, and the adversary must retreat from Him .... The truth will always displace the error, unless people don't defend themselves and prefer error to truth .... Then God lets them have their will and gives to them what they themselves desire. In that case, God's adversary will certainly be victorious yet he will not delight in it for long, for he only wins what has already belonged to him for a long time but not what strives towards God and what will therefore be seized by God and can never ever go astray again. But the will of God's representative on earth receives strength at all times through the influx of light from above. And his will can no longer be weakened to the extent that he will forfeit the truth or not stand up for it. For he takes pleasure in his service and eagerly fulfils a task which God Himself commissioned him to do and which therefore is blessed by God. His blessing, however, signifies constant help, influx of strength and the continuous transmission of His Word which, as a constant source of strength, will also result in his soul's maturity and will completely release him from the control of darkness and entirely exclude him from the influence of dark forces. And he will be full of strength and stand up for God and the eternal truth; he will be a capable labourer on earth in the vineyard of the Lord ....

Amen

# **Bible message is teaching of love ... Jesus' explanation ... Transcripts ...**

***B.D. 4000 from March 16th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

You must be taught by the spirit within you or you will remain without knowledge. But it can only become active if you live a life of love .... And therefore My mission as a human being on earth initially consisted of conveying the divine teaching of love, for the human being's compliance with it first had to change him such that it enabled the spirit within him to become active and only then were further spiritual instructions possible.

However, at the time of My life on earth people had so much diverged from love that they had to be informed time and again and in ever greater detail of the consequences of their heartlessness and the commandment of love had to be constantly preached to them, and I was only able to initiate a few into profound knowledge. Yet it would not have been wise on My part to impart this knowledge to people in general, because without love it remains dead knowledge without result.

And therefore it was My will that My disciples' transcripts were preserved in such a form that they indeed lack profound knowledge but nevertheless contain the teaching of love, and anyone who follows it will also penetrate into deeper knowledge if he seriously desires it.

I Myself have certainly shared an abundance of knowledge on earth, yet I also knew My listeners' hearts, I was aware of their degree of love, their will and their realisation of My Personality which made them accept the knowledge they were offered as the only truth. I also instructed My disciples and through pouring out My spirit after My ascension I enabled them to impart to their fellow human beings the same information they received through the spirit, and thus people who were brought the Gospel by My disciples were well taken care of, but since a life of love is always a prerequisite in order to understand profound spiritual knowledge and derive the blessing from it, the commandment of love was intended to be passed on to future generations and was therefore written down by My disciples on My instructions, so that it would be preserved as I had taught it on earth. And My way of life, which was meant to serve as an example to all people, was also a subject of the transcripts which, as My disciples' legacy, were left to humanity but which are missing more profound knowledge because this is My will. For anyone who wants to draw the knowledge from the Scriptures, which indeed include My Word, but who is without love would not know what to do with it, because

spiritual knowledge is the light which is only kindled through love, which can only burst into full radiance when the human being's spirit awakens and then enlightens the person from within. Academically imparted knowledge is only valuable if it can be examined and assimilated in order to become intellectual property, but this is only ever possible with the spirit's assistance, which therefore makes love indispensable.

What is therefore more understandable than that I Myself on earth as well as in the transcripts, which came about according to My will, only ever taught love and that the commandment of love must only ever be presented to people first and foremost? What is more understandable than that the human being cannot be admonished often enough to comply with this commandment in order to attain psychological maturity? All further knowledge is just the result of a life of love and will be imparted to each individual person as is beneficial to him. For as soon as his spirit has become active he can receive unlimited knowledge, since the degree of wisdom he wants is determined by himself, and then he will no longer need to accept it from books but it will be offered to him directly from the spiritual kingdom which, however, can only be understood by a person who has awakened the spirit within himself through complying with My commandment of love, which will never be comprehensible to those who live without love and try to gain their knowledge from books. This is just dead



knowledge, only the spirit will give life .... only love will grant complete understanding ....

Amen

# **Prediction ... Apparent burying of the hatchet ... Last phase ...**

***B.D. 4001 from March 17th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

World affairs are determined by higher laws, even though human will plays a large part in it. The eternal Lawgiver Himself directs and rules everything and His eternal plan takes the consequences of human will into account. And thus the hatchet will apparently be buried but the fire is not yet extinguished, it continues to smoulder, only to suddenly flare into a mighty blaze with devastating effects.

And it will come to pass what was foretold by the voice of the spirit. A new chapter of life is dawning for humanity, and good for those who do not regard earthly life too highly, good for those who have recognised the world of appearances and are not its slaves; good for those who know the meaning and purpose of life, who have set

themselves a higher goal than the mere fulfilment of worldly lusts and pleasures .... They will take up the struggle for existence which the ensuing time entails .... They will be and remain victorious.

Humanity will enter into a new phase, a difficult struggle will arise for the individual, he will have to endure severe worldly adversities and will spiritually survive the greatest battle, the final conflict of faith, which will precede the last days. This will irrevocably come to pass as it is told, because time has run out, and the spiritual low level dictates a halt. Judgment day will stop the development of all spiritual substance on earth in order to enable its continuation on the new earth.

Humanity will soon enter this last phase, and the well-informed, the spiritually knowledgeable person will recognise its beginning by the progress of world events. Because world events first have to take their course, the fire has to be aroused anew for hardship to reach its highest pitch in order to justify God's intervention .... in order for God Himself to rebuke the fighters by seizing their weapons from their hands and causing an immense disaster to come upon all, so that all people will turn their eyes towards the nations where God has clearly spoken. Because He will identify Himself, He will speak a language which can be understood by everyone who wants to understand. He will also reveal Himself to the believers, He will be with people in spirit, He will be working with them and give strength to those who are full of faith. For they will need His presence, they will need

His help, because the time of hardship will affect them too and the fight against all believers will intensify as the end draws near.

The last phase will only be of brief duration but it will be a great burden to people and only bearable with God's help. Yet everyone who lives in and with God, who loves Him and keeps His commandments, will survive the battle because he will never be alone. He will sense God's presence and always be able to draw strength from His Word, which He, in His love, will convey to the people so that they remain faithful to God and persevere to the end ....

Amen

## **Divine revelation is the greatest source of grace ....**

***B.D. 4015 from April 4th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

No person should ignore a divine revelation for it is an invaluable source of grace; where God is expressing Himself He intends to help people advance in their development and wants to guide them onto the right path because they have gone astray; and God only reveals Himself in times of spiritual adversity when people are at

risk of falling away from Him or are entertaining the wrong thoughts. In that case He tries to convey the truth to them, and the truth can only be conveyed to earth by God Himself.

Indeed, is there anything more powerful than to be directly taught by God Himself? Is there anything more delectable than to be nourished by Him directly with food for the soul which provides strength in abundance? Can there be, in fact, a substitute which even remotely would have the same effect? Is the Word of God not the most precious gift of grace which a human being on earth can receive?

His Word, the direct emanation of Himself, can be heard by a person and passed on to other people so that they can likewise come into possession of this precious gift of grace. Since God Himself speaks to people they should also have a greater impetus to comply with His Word, it should motivate the will to become active, just as the human being's will should, in fact, be urged by the Word into the right direction. Yet this will only ever be the case if people believe that the Word comes from above, that it is a direct communication of divine truth, for only this belief will encourage the human being to live a way of life which corresponds to the Word. And this belief can be gained by a person if he seriously examines it and appeals to God to enlighten his thinking. Then he will indeed feel in his heart what gift of grace he is receiving ....

Then the possession of the divine Word will make him very happy, then he will never again want to miss it and will always allow himself to be nourished with the bread of heaven by God Himself, with the nourishment which guarantees the soul's life and which therefore is so extremely valuable and delectable. You shall hunger for it, then you will also experience the strength flowing to you by accepting the heavenly manna, and you will never again want to be without it, since such a valuable gift of grace cannot be replaced by anything else on earth. Your desire for it will grow ever stronger and also lead you to God without fail, for God is Truth, and God is the Word of eternity ....

Amen

## **What is faith? ...**

***B.D. 4017 from April 6th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

The human being shall become blessed through his faith .... But what is faith? When can a human being rightly claim that he believes? If spiritual doctrines are presented to him he will never be able to demand or produce the evidence for them, for spiritual matters are beyond his intellectual activity and can never be verified. Hence the human being, if he believes, must deem

something to be true which cannot be proven. And yet, if he wants to become blessed, more is expected of him than blind faith, which consists of the fact that the human being will not argue against it, that he thus seemingly accepts the doctrines he is offered .... It is demanded of him that he unreservedly affirms it inwardly, that he accepts a teaching because he is inwardly convinced of it even without proof. This inner conviction, however, will always be the product of mental activity, the forming of an opinion about that which he is expected to believe. And this forming of opinion must be initiated by him without external coercion, a doctrine must, in a manner of speaking, keep him occupied, he must consider the pros and cons, until he has finally reached a point of view, but then he will also be able to uphold it if a statement is requested of him. The religious doctrine needs to be thought through before it can become actual mental knowledge, otherwise one has to speak of mere blind faith, which is completely worthless before God. The result of his deliberation depends on his will for truth and his desire for God, which unconsciously also impels him into action of love. God will truly not leave a serious seeker of truth in error if through his conduct in life he makes himself worthy of receiving the truth. However, since error is spread all over the world, since the prince of lies tries to spread darkness everywhere and would like to extinguish all light, it is understandable that erroneous belief has become established among the human race, since God respects every person's free will and even His sacred Word, which guarantees purest truth, is at the

mercy of people's free will; consequently, it must also be left up to the human being's will to believe or not to believe, if he scrutinises the individual doctrines and forms an opinion about them ....

But in order to be convinced of the latter it is imperative that he scrutinises them, i.e., he must spend thought on them, and if his desire is serious and he fulfils the conditions set by God in order to bestow spiritual knowledge he will become intellectually enlightened, and it will be clear and plausible to him what his heart affirms. And then he can also convincingly say without proof: I believe .... How else would it be possible to recognise misguided teaching, and how could God demand accountability from people if it were His will that people should exclude mental activity and replace it with unconditional blind faith? In that case people would not be responsible apart from the few who try to spread this teaching and want to prevent all opposition by demanding blind faith. Yet this is not God's will, after all, the psychological work only starts after the mental activity which, in the former case, usually remains ignored. Only mental activity establishes the connection with the spiritual kingdom, then the beings of light will be able to step into action and start their actual work of teaching, this, however, is impossible if the human being believes blindly. And he will assuredly come to a satisfactory conclusion if he is serious regarding the true knowledge, regarding his opinion about God and about his soul. For God will not leave those in darkness who

seek the light, and a person will always find the mental conclusion satisfactory if he gained it after faithful prayer to God Who alone can enlighten him as to whether and when he thinks correctly. If you believe in a God of love, wisdom and omnipotence then it will fully suffice to gain a convinced faith through teachings which originated from God as well as to recognise human additions and to what extent they correspond to the truth. For God, the eternal Truth, will always help the person and straighten his thinking, He will give him power of judgment if only he is willing to recognise what is right and to stand up for what he recognises as truth towards his fellow human beings .... for it is God's will that the truth shall be spread, because only truth leads to ascent and blissful happiness ....

Amen

## **Doubting God's Revelations ... Elements of nature ....**

***B.D. 4020 from April 9th 1947, taken  
from Book No. 49***

You so urgently need to receive My Word and yet hardly ever believe it .... You constantly allow yourselves to be



beset by doubts as to whether My servants convey the truth to you. You reject that which seems unacceptable to you and which is nevertheless inevitable according to eternal decree. I introduce you, whose spirit is awakened, into My plan of Salvation so that you shall recognise the time of the end and can also draw your fellow human beings' attention to the end. I indicate the signs to you and ever since the start of this period of Salvation have also predicted the consequences of the low spiritual level in order to give you the opportunity to prepare yourselves so that the end will be a blissful one for you.

Yet My announcements are not taken seriously, thus I keep revealing Myself time and again, and not just through the Word which comes forth from Me and testifies of Me, but I also want to be recognisable to those who won't give credence to My Word, who do not let themselves be instructed through My servants on earth and who therefore also view my predictions with utter disbelief. I want to approach them in a different way, I want to reveal Myself to them as Lord of Creation Whom no human will can bear up against .... I want to confront them with the Power which human will cannot break or defeat .... I want to talk to them in a language which is loud and clear, I want to speak with a voice of thunder and the elements of nature will obey Me and testify to Me. And this will be the last Word of admonition I speak in order to then let events take their course until the end. And this last expression of My might and strength will be a blessing for all of humanity, yet it will

only be effective for a small number of people, since anyone who does not acknowledge Me will see nothing unusual in the huge natural disaster but merely look at it as an act of nature even if he agrees that he has no control over this act. And yet, I will not deviate from My plan of eternity and will continue to announce time and again that I will reveal Myself through a natural disaster of an extent which the world has never before experienced. Why will I do this?

Time is pressing towards the end, people live life half-heartedly and are lethargic .... they don't realise the gravity of the time and shall therefore be woken up, I Myself want to approach them, for in their acute physical distress when they are facing death the thought of the Creator will nevertheless arise and a few will still find and take the path to Me .... And for the sake of these few what is proclaimed in Word and Scripture will be fulfilled. Countless people will indeed lose their lives and enter the kingdom of the beyond in an imperfect state, yet I will be a merciful Judge to them and value the last sacrifice they offer Me with their early death by providing them with the greatest opportunities to achieve maturity in the spiritual kingdom and granting them support in every way. Nevertheless, I will speak through nature without fail, and all of you will bear witness to it and be able to convince yourselves of the truth of My Word which comes pure and plain from above, because it is My will that you shall not experience something so powerful that it would have to shock everyone's way of thinking if

they just have a little faith in a Creator and Preserver of heaven and earth. But anyone who is united with Me should not doubt My Word, for I express Myself through My servants on earth and want My Word to be passed on and accepted as pure truth and all doubt to be banished from the hearts of My Own, because I Myself speak to you and will never allow My Word to be passed on interspersed with error to people of good will .... who want to be of service to Me and are therefore hired by Me as labourers in My vineyard during the last days before the end ....

Amen

## **Certain sign of the end is the small flock of fighters for God ....**

***B.D. 4027 from April 21st 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

That the time has now come to an end is demonstrated by the fact that My fighters can only be found here and there, people who are so engrossed in their love for Me, in their love for truth and for good, that they are no longer firmly attached to the world but remain in constant contact with Me, both mentally or through kind-

hearted activity .... People who stand up for their faith and feel the need to win their fellow men's souls over for My kingdom and My doctrine .... who therefore fight with the sword of their mouths .... who are constantly imbued by My spirit and in whom I Myself can therefore work. Not many of these will be found and wherever they stay, they walk along unnoticed or are treated with hostility. It is a certain sign of the end that My Own only form a small flock, but I Am a good shepherd Who keeps His lambs together, Who guards them well so that none will lose its way or be lost. Not one of My Own will be left out by Me, they will find each other and form a small community among each other and they will find their greatest satisfaction in the fact that I have accepted them into My service, that I entrust them with the mission of supporting Me during the last days before the end. Those who are good and true are My fighters, for good will and a desire for absolute truth characterises My fighters, who will indeed win the final battle because I will never leave those again who won't leave Me but look upon Me as the loving Father Who will not let His children be harmed, even if they experience earthly adversity as a result of their steadfastness. Those who regard Me as their Father of eternity will also be looked after in a Fatherly way, once this time is over. They will stay in paradise as My true children, they will experience the blissful and peaceful time on the new earth, which will take the place of the final battle on the old earth, as has been intended for eternity. I will gather My Own on the Last Day, the few people who remained faithful to Me during the preceding

time of battle, who recognised Me and therefore can never abandon Me again. And I will fetch them to Me, as I proclaimed. Consequently, you humans can expect the near end with certainty when you look around you and find only a few who so deeply carry Me in their heart that they constantly talk about Me, about spiritual subjects, for which their fellow human beings have little sympathy. But where I Am mentioned in conversations I Myself Am present, and I try to attract the souls who are distant from Me in order to slightly increase the number of My Own before the time has come which brings the final end ... the destruction of the old earth and finally the Judgment, as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ...

Amen

## **The church of Christ ... Peter, the rock ... Worldly organisations ...**

***B.D. 4028 from April 22nd 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

Those who belong to My church will find each other and form a close bond, and they will always want to know the truth, to live with love and to be of service to Me for time and eternity. For they carry My spirit within themselves,

they have awakened the spiritual spark, which is My share, into life and thereby became a member of My church which I founded Myself. And I will bless them evermore. Anyone who knows the truth, that is, who is educated by My spirit within him, also knows that love and faith are the foundation of My church; he also knows how I want My Word to be understood 'Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church ....' He further knows that it is not to be understood as an organisation formed by people but that My church comprises all people who have established the right kind of relationship with Me as a result of their will and their love for Me and their neighbour. I only require people's fulfilment of My commandment of love and strong faith and have promised eternal bliss, eternal life, to those who believe in Me .... but to believe in Me means to accept My teaching as being divine and to live accordingly .... And to them I promised eternal life. Consequently they must also belong to My church, to the community of believers whom I call My church. But does that mean that they require a worldly union which is established by joining an organisation which has a worldly origin? This question is of such great significance that it needs to be considered in-depth. No organisation exists which could boast to have been founded by Me, however, each one can fully and completely affiliate itself to the church founded by Me. Hence, their members would be able to consider themselves as belonging to My church if they shaped themselves into a rock of faith .... The character of My church first must prevail in an organisation, their

followers must be imbued by profound faith in Me, then the worldly founded church will include My believers and they, in turn, can regard themselves in every organisation as aspirants of My kingdom, for they belong to My church which I Myself founded on earth. My Words have to be understood purely spiritually, i.e., they only contain the request for unshakeable faith, and on this alone depends the working of the spirit, which is the most certain characteristic of My church, for anyone who has true faith also has love, because true faith is only alive through activity of love. And the sign of life is the expression of My spirit in the human being. Anyone who thus is taught by My spirit, who is permeated by its truth, can rightfully claim to belong to My church, he belongs to My Own, and he will also stand up for My teaching with conviction, for he has absorbed it himself with heart and mind, it has fortified his belief and made him free and happy, and he is driven by love to want to give the same to his fellow human beings ....

However, a worldly-religious organisation is by no means necessary to first shape people into aspirants of the spiritual kingdom, for again, I only look at the person's heart, his will and his thoughts. If they strive towards Me then he will already have found Me .... if they digress from pure spirituality then an ecclesiastical organisation will not achieve a change, for whatever takes place under compulsion is of no value before My eyes. But desire for Me can only be aroused in every person through the announcement of My Word. This is why I don't condemn

the worldly-religious organisations but support them insofar as that I support the teachers working in them where feasible, providing their life corresponds to My commandments at the same time. And if one of them belongs to the church founded by Me, so that he therefore firmly and steadfastly believes in My love, might and wisdom, then I will also permeate him with My spirit, enabling him to successfully influence the flock of his small congregation so that they, too, will desire the Word which alone makes it possible for them to mature fully. Nevertheless it is of far greater merit if the person struggles and searches of his own accord, if he pays attention to his inner voice which will always advise him of what is right and encourage him to be lovingly active. If he complies with this voice he will come closer to Me considerably earlier, he will have a living understanding of My Word, he accepts it in his heart and will also live accordingly .... he will belong in truth to the church of Christ, which is insurmountable and will stand firm against even the staunchest onslaughts still waged by infernal forces before the end. For I also gave people the promise that the gates of hell shall not prevail against it, because My church is unchangeable and will continue to exist until the end .... It will also become the basis of all spiritual striving on the new earth. Everyone will belong to My church because only profoundly faithful people who love Me above all else will inhabit this new earth, whereas all others will fall away if they are mere members of worldly-religious organisations who are without inner life ....



Amen

# **Antichrist - A saviour? ... Anti-spiritual activism ...**

***B.D. 4029 from April 24th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

The spirit of the Antichrist is such that he will approach people in the disguise of a saviour although his will utterly opposes God in as much as he does not acknowledge a God of love, just as he, in fact, will reject all spirituality as supernatural and therefore unverifiable, thus non-existent. Even the nature of Christ will be so unfamiliar to him that he will be unable to believe in His act of Salvation and His mission on earth, and thus he will try to portray Him as a mere figment of imagination, making every effort to displace this illusion from people's hearts. His own nature is not the same as Christ's, and therefore it is understandable that he will regard and fight Him as a spiritual enemy.

The forthcoming Antichrist's personality will exceed the natural framework; he will be an extraordinarily gifted human being whose particular strength rests in his worldly self-confidence, in his conduct with those who are responsible for the well-being of the nation. And

therefore he will be successful, he will be granted his aspired supreme control, it will be assumed that extensive reforms for the benefit of the general public can be expected through him. Everyone will accept him; he will exploit this superiority for all kinds of measures. But he will especially intervene against the supernatural spirit, against all religious groups as well as churches or spiritual movements which are based on Jesus Christ and His teaching, because he will depict neighbourly love as a state of weakness which has to be fought at all costs. And anyone who joins his endeavours is also regarded as an antichrist; he is considered God-opposing and will prove to be unkind to his neighbour and thus also live in spiritual blindness, since he belongs to Satan's realm. But as ruler over many the Antichrist will cause tremendous chaos with his measures, which will be devoid of all human kindness and only designed to bring hatred and discord amongst humanity, to stifle love and to descend it into utmost spiritual hardship. And then God's countermeasures will become of utmost importance, which will be explained by God's obvious activity through His servants on earth, because He, too, has to be recognisable on earth to those who belong to His side. He has to manifest Himself equally extraordinarily so that He cannot be rejected but has to be acknowledged by people who are willing to walk the right path, who either consciously or unconsciously approach the Creator of heaven and earth by asking for His help in times of spiritual suffering. And then the struggle between good and evil will become particularly intense, since the last

hour is moving ever closer and the parting of the spirits has to take place by Judgment Day ....

This separation can only occur when people are seriously confronted by the choice to either acknowledge or deny God. This question will force their decision and in order to bring it about, the adversary will emerge openly by influencing his representatives on earth to take and enforce measures which exhibit hostile thinking towards God. And thus the last battle on earth will begin .... the battle of faith, the battle against Christ, with the result that people will finally decide for or against Him. And then comes the Judgment .... because they will turn for or against God of their own free will, and this free will they have to answer for. This conflict is inevitable as it distinctly highlights the Antichrist's nature, and all of humanity will then be able to assess the thoughts and actions of the one who appears in the disguise of a saviour in order to realise his shameful plans; who openly fights against God and therefore will be banished into the earth again for a long time, from where he cannot release himself until he is once again helped by people whose wrong love for matter will loosen Satan's chains. But it will never be possible to displace Jesus Christ, He will remain victorious on Judgment Day, and His teaching will fill all hearts. His followers will take it along at their rapture, and thus it will also be held in high esteem as spiritual knowledge on the new earth, it will be exemplified and people will live in utmost realisation and become aglow with the most profound love for God. And

God's adversary will never be able to displace it because all power will have been taken from him for a long time ....

Amen

# **Hour of death ....**

## **Explanation of suffering ....**

***B.D. 4033 from April 30th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 49***

You never know how your end will happen, and therefore you should call upon God's mercy every day that you might receive it in the hour of your death. Even if you live in accordance with God's will your end can be difficult if it is to serve you to completely purify and liberate yourselves forever. God's wisdom and love is yours until your last hour on this earth, and as long as your souls are still able to change you will be given the opportunity even at the hour of death. For this reason devoted people often have to suffer in the flesh and cannot find an explanation for it because they are unable to detect God's love therein. And yet, divine love causes this suffering because it is the best means for the soul to acquire a degree of maturity within a short period of time which allows the light to permeate the soul in the

beyond, and the soul will thank its Creator once it is free and recognises God's great love and mercy. Thus all suffering has to be seen as evidence of God's love, and even the end is blessed if it is accompanied by suffering, although it does not appear to the human being that way. The soul indeed separates itself from the body with pain, but immediately lifts itself into the kingdom of the blessed spirits. It not only leaves earth physically but also spiritually and also takes the body's fully matured substances along, because every degree of suffering dissolves the cover which still encloses the soul. And the person who is still able to free himself completely from immature substances on earth will be blessed .... he will have used his earthly life for his deliverance and will no longer revolt against God's will either.

In the hour of death he will certainly struggle for the peace of his soul but he will never consider his physical suffering to be unjustified, for his soul will know that the end is near, that his physical suffering will also come to an end and that the soul will derive benefit from it even if it is no longer able to convey this realisation to the body. The body, however, will separate itself from the soul as soon as it senses its perfection, because then it will have fulfilled its task of having served as an abode for this soul. The hour of death can be difficult for all of you but it can also be a blissful falling asleep in order to awaken in the kingdom of light if the soul needs no further suffering, if it has already found the union with God on earth and He then brings it home into His kingdom, into

your Father's house, in order to make you blissfully happy. But you do not know how your end will happen, and therefore pray to God for mercy, ask Him for His grace and strength if God still needs to afflict you, and you will also endure the hour of death. The body will suffer but the soul will joyfully leave the body and lift itself into the spheres of light ....

Amen

## **Announcements through seers and prophets ....**

***B.D. 4034 from May 2nd 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

What I proclaim to you humans through seers and prophets must be taken seriously .... Such is My will, and if you want to comply with My will then you should not half-heartedly and indifferently accept what My love gives to you. But you are indifferent if you indeed listen to My Word yet fail to arrange your life in line with My predictions, if you do not seriously strive for a change in your character and fulfil My commandment of love. With My announcements I want to warn you not to waste your life, I want to admonish you to still make use of the time remaining to you until the end, I want to stimulate your

spiritual aspiration and guide all your thoughts so that you fully mature while you still live on earth. But if you do not take My Word, My prophecies, seriously, you will let all these instructions pass your ears by unheeded and My admonitions and cautions will have been futile. And when the hour comes that you are called away you will only be able to claim a poor testimony, for you will have failed on earth by not taking hold of My loving Fatherly hand when it was offered to you. If you have a spiritual guardian you must also unconditionally entrust yourselves to him for he will surely guide you in the right direction. But now, during the time of the end, I Myself want to be your Leader and Guardian, and if you only grant Me a little trust you truly need no longer take care of yourselves, neither bodily nor spiritually, for I Myself will take care of you, you only have to make sure that you constantly accept strength from Me which guarantees you the path towards ascent. And you can only receive this strength in the form of My Word. So if I give you the knowledge about the forthcoming event it is a very great blessing for you, for then you will have the opportunity to gain My affection with your right way of life, to such an extent that I will never leave you again, that I will take hold of you and pull you up to the pinnacle.

However, I now make it a matter of specific urgency, because you don't have much more time left to change your souls. And this is why I come close to and call you with every revelation, with every proclamation, and if you recognise the Father's voice you will also respond to it,

like little lost sheep you will pay attention to the voice of the good shepherd, you will follow His call and it will be to your greatest advantage. But anyone who does not take notice of My voice will hardly find contact with Me, and once the hour of the end has come he will be weak and not turn his eyes heavenwards because he will still be far too earthbound. And this is what I want to avert from you, I want to help you and therefore repeatedly send to you My Word from above and with it also the reason for My Word, so that you take it ever more seriously, so that you listen to and read it whenever the opportunity presents itself. Believe My Word, believe that you won't have much time left until the end, so that you very seriously start your psychological task, so that you still receive many blessings from it, for the time is gravely serious and it is urgently necessary for you to try to imagine that the end will take you by surprise and you will not have time anymore for your actual earthly task. Listen to Me and believe My Word and it will always and forever fill you with strength, I Myself will be able to take care of you as soon as you look for Me in thought. And you will be able to master all difficulties because it is My will that much strength shall be sent to those who keep their faith in My might and love, and I will help them to progress spiritually ....

Amen

## **Satan's disguise ... Figure**



# of light ....

## ***B.D. 4037 from May 9th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

God's adversary also disguises himself where he intends to make people fall and to persuade them to turn away from God. He likewise appears as a figure of light and dazzles people, so that they will no longer be able to recognise what is right and cannot see through his deceitful game. He is always to be found amid gullible people, i.e. those who thoughtlessly accept what is offered to them as truth, and who therefore don't spend any thought on it when dark forces express themselves through the deceptive light of piety. Yet even this game of deceit can clearly be seen by someone who seriously looks for and desires the truth. Only a few, however, so value the truth that they scrutinise everything and only accept what seems credible to them. And thus these dark forces will eagerly endeavour during the last days to confuse people's thinking by joining forces and working in unison in order to achieve phenomena which intend to simulate angels of light and yet are forces of darkness. They try to influence gullible people by imparting error to them and leading them on wrong paths and are also generally successful with them, because they don't try to obtain clarity regarding important issues, because they allowed themselves to be instructed by uneducated teachers and thus accepted misguided teachings which

lead away from God, Who is the eternal Truth Himself. People by and large lack the power of judgment, they are unable to distinguish error from truth, and thus they accept everything unconditionally without spending thought on it in order to discover and recognise the error with good will for truth. These figures of light can nevertheless be exposed by profoundly faithful people with an awakened spirit, which enables a person to see and hear clearly .... The knowledge of truth, which was imparted to him through the voice of the spirit, enables him to recognise every error as such, and thus he will reject both the error as well as the giver of it, whom he unmistakably recognises as a dark power, despite the fact that he conceals himself under the mask of a bearer of light, for the spirit of God teaches differently, and anything that does not concur with this spiritual knowledge can safely be dismissed and branded as a lie. Besides, these apparent figures of light will not be able to prove themselves before those who are filled by the spirit of God, for they will very quickly be seen through, since they speak without love, instead their intention is to turn people towards the world, if they are already on the spiritual path, and to prevent the others from recognising the right path, which necessitates a life of love.

Therefore pay attention to how such figures of light express themselves, pay attention whether they point to God Himself, whether they further direct communication with God or whether they exclude God, whether they want to see earthly actions to be achieved which do not

contribute towards obtaining maturity of soul; pay attention to this and you will recognise and reject all spiritual beings which do not come from the kingdom of light, for anyone with the will for truth also infallibly recognises everything which opposes the truth, and he will acquire a bright and sharp vision, so that he can offer resistance and also lead his fellow human beings into the pure truth, if they are willing. Nevertheless, God's adversary will have great power over gullible people, and those people who know the truth and recognise the dark forces will have to spend much effort to convince the former of the error. And this explains why phenomena, which do not originate from God, will be on the increase during the last days but which many people regard as divine revelations, where the adversary tries to win people over as an angel of light and thereby places them into profound darkness. For his followers don't want to let go of the error, they resist if it is explained to them, and although it does not directly damage their souls, they are nevertheless unapproachable for the pure truth. And this is so extremely important, because truth alone leads to God and because every manifestation from the spiritual realm will be interpreted exactly as it is intended by God's adversary, for his thoughts are based on people's attitude, and he will always spread the error under the cover of piety and yet never draw attention to the end, so that people are prevented from preparing themselves for the end according to God's will. And thus diligent effort should be made to fight against it since it is, after all, important to rescue the many people, who still live in

darkness, from Satan's claws ....

Amen

# **A loving person will never be lost ....**

***B.D. 4042 from May 17th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

People who make love the guiding principle of their daily life will never get lost even if they are mentally still on the wrong track and reject the pure truth. They are influenced by forces which fight especially hard for such souls, and since their will has not yet made a clear decision, because the person does not fully consciously aspire towards God, these forces try to influence him mentally. And they succeed to the extent that the person's intellectual activity is now less active in regards to discovering the truth, that the person has little will to come closer to the truth. Nevertheless, love protects him from being led astray. Due to his actions of unselfish neighbourly love he has already given himself to God, Who will never let him fall again. Love is the greatest power and is fought in vain by all lesser forces. If, therefore, a person lives in love, the struggle for the soul by those forces is in vain because God keeps hold of the

soul due to His large claim to it. He is certain to recognise the truth as soon as he accepts the advice to form a mental opinion about the spiritual information offered to him.

When a loving person thinks about it he will also come to the right conclusion, and he will be able to separate error from truth and consciously strive towards the latter. Therefore a loving person can never go astray because he is protected by love, because he is united with God through love and will not deny Him. And thus God also manifests Himself to him by making Himself perceptible in a way which stimulates the person's thoughts and he awakens from spiritual lethargy. A loving person's spirit wants to be active; it awakened to life through love but is not yet allowed to work as long as the human being's will is still undecided, as long as the person resists contemplating questions concerning the spiritual domain. But with the slightest change of will the person's spirit starts to function and puts the human being's thinking into order, it gives him explanations from within, it gives him power of perception, and thus first draws the soul and then the body to itself, and its influence will truly not be negligible. A loving person is never lost because God holds on to him and does not leave him to His adversary. However, the human being must have the will to take the path to God ... And this path will be shown to him. God truly guides the fate of every individual person so that he will always have the opportunity to enter the right path. He will meet him so obviously,

because due to his life of love God is very close to the person, that He can always be recognised, and anyone who genuinely seeks Him will find Him. He will recognise truth as such and earnestly desire it, and his soul will be saved for eternity ....

Amen

## **Forerunner of the Lord ...**

***B.D. 4048 from May 24th 1947, taken from Book No. 49***

God's grace and evidence of love during the last days can fully compensate people for the distress and suffering of this time, for their rapid ascent will be certain if they make good use of the gifts of grace and strive for the maturing of their soul. It will be the time of which is written, that God will be with His Own in spirit until the end; it will be the time when people will see Him coming in the clouds, when the connection between heaven and earth will become evident, not just in people's imagination, but beings of light will be active on earth and spread light in daily life, and men will be taught from above, when God Himself descends to earth in the Word, handing the bread from heaven to His Own, when people will constantly be able to draw from the source of life, since God Himself will offer them the drink of life to

strengthen them ....

During this time someone will become known who is destined to be the last messenger before the coming of the Lord, who, as His forerunner, will announce Him and fearlessly tell people the truth, although he will be in danger of being seized. But he no longer cares about the world and will gladly exchange his mortal life for eternal life. Therefore he will not fear the world, for he knows that the end is near and what is about to happen to people who do not believe it .... His emergence, too, is an exceptional grace, because he will constantly remind people of the approaching end and encourage them to improve their souls, thus directing their attention towards eternity. He will also possess extraordinary strength so that he will be able to heal the sick and help where help is needed even though it appears impossible to people, because he will lead an exemplary life of love and be filled by the spirit of God. God Himself will work through him, and anyone who listens to him will hear God Himself. He will hear God's Word through a human mouth, but just as it has come from Him .... And this time has arrived, the final time of grace, which can bring much success to people who strive for perfection. And even if they have to endure untold earthly suffering they will benefit as long as they make use of the blessings; for then they will know that the end is near, because they will recognise in him the forerunner of the Lord and will joyfully expect the Lord Himself. And He will soon appear to save His Own from utmost hardship and lead them to a

land of peace, as He has promised ....

Amen

# **Passing on the divine Word to the new earth ....**

***B.D. 4054 from June 2nd 1947, taken  
from Book No. 50***

Just a small flock will await My coming before Judgment Day; there will only be a few people whom I can call My Own, who remain strong in faith and confess Me before the world, and who will therefore be persecuted in every way and would have to fear for their lives if they had no spiritual vision and were not spiritually minded. But this small congregation will know about the end, it will expect Me with profound faith and therefore will devotedly endure the extreme time of hardship. It will confess Jesus as Son of God before the world and thus I will lift them up to Me and provide them with a heavenly place to stay until they may return to the restructured earth .... This small flock has the task to pass My Word on to their descendants, so that it will be offered again just as unadulterated as I conveyed it to people and remain the fundamental teaching of Christianity on the new earth. For I will continue to take care of My Own, which



include all who accept My will, who aspire to reach Me and therefore act with love, since their desire for Me is already a manifestation of their feeling of love which also expresses itself towards their neighbour. Thus they will fulfil My commandments, and they will also receive My Word from Me, either directly or indirectly.

My Word comprises the teaching that Jesus Christ preached on earth because He was permeated by My spirit of love, since the human being Jesus had already found union with Me on earth. And in order for people to achieve the complete union with Me on the new earth they have to be informed of Christ's teaching. Thus the pure truth, which is presently offered to you humans from the heavens, has to be taken along as My Word onto the new earth, where its utmost profoundness and wisdom will be recognised as a message from above, as a direct instruction from God. For that reason it will remain the fundamental teaching for a long time, until people become more materially minded again and make corrections and changes to My Word once again. This is already the next cause of digression from their knowledge and will darken their state of mind, which determines Me to send My Word to earth once more. But for the time being it will remain pure and reach many people. Every Word will be acknowledged as My gift and people will love and serve Me, they will love each other and be happy on earth. For they will live in constant contact with Me and are therefore also recipients of light and strength, because My proximity will result in making

them strong and wise, as I promised ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words to His servants on Earth ...**

***B.D. 4055 from June 3rd 1947, taken  
from Book No. 50***

All your worries will become invalid if you consider how close it is to the end. Anyone who has decided to work for the spiritual kingdom should always remember his assigned task and how much determination he will need if he wants to accomplish this task fully. And so he should only ever strive to receive greater willpower, he should turn to Me and request it and I will truly not fail to answer his prayer, I will influence his thoughts, guide his will in the right direction and thus show him the path to Me which he will take because he will be drawn by My love .... Having handed himself over to Me he will have become My possession, and once I possess something I will never release it again, I will ever more powerfully draw it higher, and since I constantly walk by its side I will not let it go astray, supporting and holding it when it is at risk of falling. That which is My Own can confidently walk every step on earth, for I will spread My hands under its feet

and carry it across all cliffs of life. On account of its will it will have become part of Me, and that which is My Own cannot go astray again. For this reason you must accept all changes in your circumstances, you must recognise My will in everything that comes upon you and know that My love takes special care of you and determines My intervention if the world wants to push itself into the foreground with the intention of captivating you. Travel your path without worry and don't forget that I will always walk with you, that I will guide you along flowery paths because My love also wants to grant you joy on earth, but that you will have to walk across thorns and thistles as well because My wisdom knows that it will benefit your soul. And thus always let Me be your constant guide and companion, call upon Me if you come to a crossroad and don't know which way to go, and you will clearly feel that I stand next to you and gently push you on the path you should pursue until the end ... which will lead you to Me, into the spiritual kingdom where you can expect the bliss and peace you will never ever find on earth ....

Amen

**Difficult living  
conditions ... God's  
guidance and help ...**

## ***B.D. 4058 from June 7th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Entirely different living conditions will also necessitate an entirely different way of life and people will find themselves faced by tasks which seem impossible for them to accomplish and yet they have to be solved because they are vital for their survival. And this is when My Own will have to prove themselves, that is, they will have to test the strength of faith and utterly trustingly wait for My help, and they will be helped. This is the time when profoundly faithful people will bear witness to the unbelievers as to what the devout human being can achieve if he trusts in God's help, if he hands himself over to Me with profound faith and confides his severe adversity to Me in prayer. They will receive help and life will become bearable for them, although still very difficult. Yet I also gave them the promise which I want to remind you of now: that I will shorten the days for My Own's sake. And thus the hour comes ever closer when I will come in the clouds, and this second coming of Mine will signify true salvation for My Own who will find themselves in grave difficulties and require My obvious help .... As long as they still live on earth they will also be exposed to suffering, i.e., they will not be entirely insensitive as yet to harassments and threats from the world. Yet the strength of their faith will let them bear all suffering more easily, even if now and then it will affect them quite severely.

And thus people will divide themselves into two camps, those who do not believe and therefore have little contact with the spiritual world, and those whose contact with Me means everything to them and who will not start anything without first appealing for My blessing and who therefore will also clearly recognise My guidance, since due to their love for Me they also sense My presence within them and My presence always signifies strength and thus makes it easier to overcome that which is a far greater burden for people without My strength. And then My Own will recognise each other by their strength of faith, they will unite and console each other with the coming of the Lord .... Full of hope they will anticipate Me and yearn for Me in their love, they will firmly believe in My coming, and I will not disappoint their faith and help them where help is necessary, and I will come to fetch them when the adversity becomes unbearable, so that they will not fall away from Me, so that they will remain steadfast until the end and be able to enter the paradise of the new earth, because they remained loyal to Me even in their greatest adversity ....

Amen

**The work of God's servants  
concerning formal  
believers ... The church of**

# Christ ...

## ***B.D. 4061 from June 11th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Your particular task is to influence the many believers who feel affiliated to the church and yet cannot be regarded as belonging to My church, for they no longer stand on the foundation of faith. They have built their church on sand, which will give way under their feet if their faith is to be tested. They deem themselves devout and also profess with their lips what the church tells them to believe. Nevertheless, they are not deeply convinced of any religious doctrine, they would be unable to completely agree with any one if they seriously had to form an opinion of it. And this conventional faith, which was merely accepted and will not be abandoned for the sake of the outside world is almost worse than unbelief, for an unbelieving person can be provided with explanations in form of discussions, even disputes, whereas the former offers little opportunity of informing him because he will only profess everything again with his lips and yet is far removed from becoming a convinced representative of that which he acknowledges with his mouth. And he will belong to those who fall away when the decision of faith is demanded of him. For only then will he give his opinion about controversial issues and, not having any knowledge and consequently no realisation of the significance and value of a true faith,

he will totally ignorantly relinquish that which is most valuable, the faith in Me as Creator of heaven and earth, the faith in Jesus Christ as Redeemer of the world and the faith in the continuation of life after death, which would motivate him to live an appropriately responsible life on earth, which he owes to Me as Father and Judge of eternity. But they will find no mercy before My eyes, for many times they are offered the opportunity to penetrate religious truths and to acquire a living faith, yet they accept no instructions and neither do they openly declare their opposing points of view but only ever leave their fellow human beings under the impression that they belong to the church which I founded on earth as a human being.

I summed up the faithful congregation with the Word 'My church' and will only ever consider those people as belonging to My church who call a living faith their own, for My church is not a worldly organisation, it cannot be externally recognised but is merely the union of believing people on earth, it is My congregation which, although it is small, is extremely dear to Me. The formal believers, however, stand outside the circuit of My flow of love, nevertheless, they can join My congregation at any time when that which they believe themselves to be has become reality, when they own a living faith and are very happy with possessing it. And a sign of a living faith is the fact that they gladly speak about divine matters, that they look for and enthusiastically hold spiritual conversations and that they provide clarifications where

their fellow human beings are still in the dark. For once someone belongs to My church he will also appreciate My treasures, he will know about the significance of the time and the approaching end. He will remain loyal to My church for there is nothing left on earth that would be desirable for him. The living faith has opened this knowledge up for him, and he knows the alarming ramifications of a conventional faith, of the soul's fate in the beyond, subsequently he will do whatever it takes to draw people's attention to the danger they are in; he will try to make them understand it so that they will still be able to gain a living faith in the last hour. But whether it is successful entirely depends on the human being's will, the freedom of which shall not be curtailed if the soul is to ascend. And yet it is your task to influence the formal believers as much as possible since they are, after all, in greatest danger and are therefore in need of help because they lack realisation, and wherever help is necessary it shall be given, so that no-one can say that the blessings of divine mercy had bypassed him .... I want to help **all** people, but whether My help is accepted is determined by people themselves, and I let them keep their freedom ....

Amen

**Pre-ordained course of life  
- Destiny corresponding to**



# will ....

## ***B.D. 4065 from June 18th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Every path is pre-ordained even though you believe to have chosen it yourselves. Although you apparently determine your course of life yourselves because you can, at times, plan it in accordance with your will, but I have known of this will since eternity and have taken it into account, and therefore your destiny corresponds to your will; which means, that your life develops in a way that your will can turn towards Me and has ample opportunity to acknowledge Me. However, how your will decides is entirely up to you, I won't compel it or you would not need to live your life in the first place if I wanted perfect entities by means of force. My only goal is to enable the spirit to achieve the highest possible maturity of soul on earth but meet with all-round resistance.

Yet human beings cannot alter the course of their life and thus have to submit to everything if they want to achieve spiritual benefit. Every resistance, every complaint and grumble reduces your psychological success because it testifies of a will that is still in opposition to Me or has very little perception of Him, Who gave you your life. If you would know Me as the Eternal Love you would also know that I would not let you

suffer unless it is necessary for the salvation of your soul.

This is why you should suffer and endure and place your earthly life into My hands, live each day without worry but do not exclude Me from your thoughts, then I will guide you and, truly, your life shall not be in vain. One day you will thank Me even for the difficult hours and days since they benefit your soul far more than quiet, carefree days. I know this, I know your soul's degree of maturity, I know your will, your weaknesses and your faith, and I let everything happen so that no day needs to be lived unsuccessfully, that you can mature in a short time and reach your goal while you are still on earth ....

Amen

## **Doubting God's existence in the end time ....**

***B.D. 4069 from June 25th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

It requires an exceptionally keen intellect to scientifically prove that God's existence can be doubted or denied. And the attempt will be made to solve this biggest problem by scientific means .... the question: Does God exist? .... That humanity is deliberating this most important question is also a sign of the end time,

but far more in a negative sense, since people are willing to partake in this controversial issue and its line of argument because their faith, if it exists at all, is very weak and the slightest reason suffices to shake it ....

Does God exist? ....

No question is more important, and providing it is asked seriously by seeking people I Am prepared to enlighten them so that the seeker will be truly satisfied with the knowledge he receives and which he now also confidently upholds. However, if the question is not raised by seekers but by people who think they know better, who only accept the answer which suits them, and who do not want to prove that I Am but that I Am not, they will never arrive at a truthful result, in spite of sound evidence. They already belong to the opposing power which wants to take over the reign itself and push Me aside .... And this is the beginning of the end, because according to the law of eternity I will strip My adversary of his power as soon as he oversteps his legitimate limit, which will be the case when he attempts to displace Me entirely from people's thoughts ....

The battle for Me will be harsh, impressive words intend to convince My Own that they are chasing after a figment of imagination, all religious dogmas and doctrines will be pulled to pieces and not entirely steadfast people will gradually suffer defeat, because the adversary knows how to use his words effectively. And since the majority of people lack knowledge, since they are spiritually blind

themselves, they cannot detect the adversary's inaccuracy, but they cannot look for and find the truth within themselves either. And they will falter and fall if they do not join Me in the last hour, if they do not (in the last hour) ask Me for clarification which I very gladly grant to anyone who asks, providing he is of good will and wants what is right and truthful. But anyone who trusts in himself, who wants to solve this most important problem intellectually as well, will get lost in the darkness because he is chasing a deceptive light, he believes the convincing words of worldly scholars and admires their keen intellect and conclusions, and he will abandon Me .... and condemn himself ....

And because I know of this conflict since eternity, because I want to help the weak as well as those who are looking for Me, I Am bringing them the truth in advance. And anyone who applies this truth, who becomes worthy to receive it and voluntarily aspires for it will outshine the keen intellect of worldly scholars, he will become knowledgeable, he will receive the ability to reason, his spirit will become enlightened, and nothing will be able to take away his faith, his conviction, because he is taught by Me Myself and has the evidence that I Am and that I want to win all My living creations for eternity .... And he will remain loyal to Me until the end ....

Amen

# **Luminous appearance in the sky ... The cross of Jesus Christ ...**

***B.D. 4073 from June 30th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Pay heed to the occurrences of the last days. And thus you will soon become aware of changes in nature; you will be able to observe a peculiar power-play, a phenomenon which will make you think, if you regard it with the right attitude towards Me, the Creator, Who also causes these appearances to take place in order to turn all people's attention to Himself. And you will notice that only few people have the right attitude towards Me, that most try to explain everything in a worldly sense and are not especially impressed by extraordinary manifestations. This luminous sign will show itself during the day, it will be visible in the sky without prior warning and will not permit any other interpretation than a reference to Christ's act of Salvation, because it is in the shape of a cross with the unmistakable face of the Redeemer. And this luminous phenomenon will give rise to much debate, and now My servants should prepare themselves since this manifestation will be the beginning, it is more or less intended for all people, because it can be seen by all. But how differently it will be regarded and how little it will

be understood ....

I will cause a visible sign to appear in the sky and yet find very little attention; I will place the work of Salvation before their eyes that they may believe in Jesus Christ and become blessed, but their faith in Him will be as good as gone and will no longer be found or strengthened either, in spite of this luminous appearance. Because humanity has become too worldly minded and does not want to believe, because they would like to evade all responsibility which they could not do if they had faith in Christ. And thus, this luminous appearance will again be a sign from heaven, a sign of the last days, for only a few people. Although many will indeed be seized by inner unrest it will soon give way to tense attention which, however, is only due to the appearance as such. They will not believe that it is related to the forthcoming end and will merely mock the believers, who will proclaim these predictions to their fellow human beings so that they can prepare themselves for the end. They will find little belief and yet may not slow down in their work for My kingdom, because such opportunities are a special grace for people on earth to reflect and consider the thought of possible intercession by supernatural forces through extraordinary natural phenomena, that the appearance will have been planned by Me to remind people of the end. Science will provide an explanation which will also be accepted, but anyone with spiritual aspiration will recognise Me therein and will cheer and rejoice in view of the imminent end.

Because the world will have nothing more to offer him yet his heart will be full of hope for life after death, and he will long for the last hour which will release him from earthly hardship, as I promised, that I will come in the clouds to take My Own home into My kingdom. He will know that the hour has arrived when earthly tribulations increase and no more worldly help can be expected. Then I will shorten the days so that My Own will remain faithful and endure to the end ....

Amen

**‘With God nothing is impossible ...’**

***B.D. 4082 from July 11th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Where all earthly help fails God's love is often clearly revealed, which makes even the seemingly impossible happen so that people will learn to believe in Him and love Him above all else. There is no limit to God's power, what He wants will happen. Thus there is nothing that would be unattainable because with God everything is possible. And so people frequently suffer unnecessarily throughout their earthly life, for if they want to be able to achieve extraordinary things they need only ask God

for help. He can always help, and He will always help. But they can only acquire this faith by practising neighbourly love, because every good deed establishes the connection with Him thereby ensuring the acceptance of strength which, being God's emanation, also has to lead back to Him again. And thus a person must learn to believe, and he will be able to do so if he genuinely strives to ascend.

In the last days before the end the most amazing things will happen which seem to be supernatural but are merely the result of a person's will and his strength of faith. In this rests the whole explanation for everything that seems incomprehensible to you but which is, in fact, only the result of a right way of life before God. Hence it is not enough that people formally call themselves Christians, that they profess the church they belong to, if they don't exemplify their Christianity and, by their way of life, demonstrate that they belong to the community of believers who represent the true church of Christ. Living faith and active neighbourly love is required in order to activate the strength of the spirit. But then the human being has extraordinary strength at his disposal, because he is permeated by God's strength which has no limitation. Therefore a person can accomplish exceptional things with God's strength, just as God can also manifest Himself by providing the kind of help which appears to be supernatural, because it frequently happens when no further hope for help exists. With God nothing is impossible ....



Time and again a person should remind himself of this in every difficult situation, then his faith will become so strong that there will be no more hardship for him. Through his attitude towards God, through his profoundly firm faith in His help, he will banish every adversity and thus calmly face every difficulty. And then God will certainly help him since he will never let a strong faith be destroyed. With God nothing is impossible .... He can accomplish whatever He wants, and He will accomplish everything if His children call upon Him as their loving Father and trust in Him without reservation. Then He will provide for all their needs and help them in all earthly troubles and difficult situations. For He is a God of love, and love will always give help because it wants to bestow happiness ....

Amen

## **Serious admonitions about Christian neighbourly love ....**

***B.D. 4096 from August 3rd 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Recognise your weaknesses and try to resolve them ....  
don't become impatient when you should put yourselves

into another person's position, and be lenient .... don't hurt his feelings, and take the commandment of love seriously when your neighbour needs your active help or encouraging words .... Don't provide any reason for argument but kind-heartedly try to find agreement, take My example, I Who approached all people with a loving heart to win them over. And thus you, too, should always try to win the other person's heart; you should leave nothing undone that could awaken love, for full understanding of the other person's weaknesses can only manifest itself in love. And thus each one of you should do this to the other, leave no opportunity unused to please with a kind word or a loving action, for if you avoid hurting your neighbour, if you give him inner peace, you will do a truly Christian deed of neighbourly love which will benefit you, for you will thereby strengthen him physically and spiritually. He will be placed into a state of love himself, he will feel love in return, and he will not fail to put his love into action. He will lessen his selfish love ....

Be patient and gentle, meek and humble, and your life will become easier, for love is the best weapon against animosity, and love forgives and endures, it gives and makes happy, it unites hearts, it heals wounds and will never be without understanding of the other person's weaknesses and faults and will finally triumph nevertheless, for love is strength which achieves whatever it wants ....

Amen

# God's will - voice of the heart ... Inner urging ...

***B.D. 4104 from August 13th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

I will place the feeling as to what you should and shouldn't do into the heart of those of you whom I love because you strive towards Me. And if you entrust yourselves to Me in prayer, if you confide your worries or thoughts to Me, you will feel it in your heart and whatever you then feel urged or desire to do, that is what you should do and it will be right before My eyes. If you commend yourselves to Me in prayer you will no longer be able to sin, for then I will no longer let you become sinful. If you appeal to Me for My protection I will grant it to you, and then you can confidently rely on the voice of your heart, that is, you can do what your heart desires. I Am your Father, I want you to come to Me with complete trust, and I truly want to provide for you like a loving father does, I want to give to you what makes you happy, providing it does not cause you damage. And since you yourselves are unable to judge what is beneficial for you and detrimental to the soul, you should come to Me and totally hand yourselves over to Me, tell Me your problems, be they of a spiritual or earthly nature, and I

shall answer you, that is, I shall place My will into your heart so that you will want to do what is right and also be able to accomplish it. And thus you can come to Me with all concerns, you will never be left without an answer, for I will place it into your heart. You just have to pay attention to the voice in your heart, you ought to know that every inner urging is always the influence of forces which want to persuade you to accomplish something or to leave it. Forces of darkness will want to tempt you into committing a sin, forces of light into actions which are pleasing to Me. Let the forces of light gain influence over you, then you will never be able to sin. And hand yourselves over to these forces whenever you seek to make contact with Me in prayer, whenever you communicate with Me and always consult Me with all your problems. I love My living creations and My only goal is their salvation of soul. And where there is no danger of this I will grant them everything, even earthly pleasures, if they do not detract from spiritual striving. Yet I always want to be your Mentor, you should always leave the decision to Me and, after heartfelt prayer, ask your heart and it will truly guide you correctly ....

Amen

**Selfish love ... Love your  
neighbour as yourself ...**

## ***B.D. 4105 from August 14th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

God instructed you to love each other; He gave you a commandment you must fulfil if you want to be saved. And this commandment requires nothing else but love for Him and your neighbour .... Yet it includes the entire work of improving your soul, which should attain perfection while you still live on earth. Your every thought, word and action should correspond to this commandment of love, it must express itself in your will to give and to please, to help, comfort, encourage and protect .... the human being must do to other people what would please himself were he in need of the same degree of help. Love your neighbour as yourself .... Hence, God has granted the human being a degree of selfish love by which he can always judge how far he fulfils the commandment of neighbourly love. If a person loves himself very much, he also has a duty to give a greater measure to his fellow human being if he wants to comply with God's will. In that case he must also accomplish more kind-hearted deeds .... If a person's selfish love is small and he wants to fulfil God's will, his neighbourly love will exceed the degree of selfish love, and he will find this easier because he will easily be able to let go of earthly possessions and give them to his fellow human beings. But you humans are always expected to practise unselfish neighbourly love, consequently, you must also be able to go without, you must be able to make sacrifices in favour

of pleasing a fellow human being. And the more you love a fellow human being, the easier you can do this. But in order to awaken the feeling of love for a fellow human being you must bear in mind that all of you are children of a Father, that all of you came forth from the same strength and therefore all of you are creatures of God's love .... Then you will learn to regard your fellow human being as your brother, you will treat him with love, you will want to help him if he suffers adversity, and your willingness to help will make you happy, because it is blissful in itself and results in spiritual knowledge .... If you give to your neighbour what you desire yourselves, then God will give you what belongs to Him .... He will give you the truth, He will give you light and strength and grace .... He will please you and likewise will only give you possessions which originate from His kingdom, which cannot be offered to you in an earthly way. But He will also bless your possessions in an earthly way by increasing what you sacrifice if it benefits your soul's salvation. If you therefore give because of love for your neighbour, you will not need to starve, for God's love will give you in kind if you are in need, and He is not prudent with His Own but distributes His gifts without measure .... providing you also sacrifice without anxiously calculating what you can do without. If you are impelled to give by love, you will not hesitate or give very little and therefore also receive in abundance from the eternal Love. And if you are incapable of the feeling of love, then you must train yourselves to accomplish unselfish deeds of love, you must look around yourselves and actively intervene

with helpful support when you come across hardship. This is God's will, and you should adopt this will as your own, then your kind-hearted activity for your neighbour will make you happy in every way .... you will kindle love in yourselves until it grows into a bright flame which takes hold of everything that enters its vicinity. For love is divine, it comes forth from God and leads back to God again, this is why the commandment of love for God and one's neighbour is the most important commandment which must be fulfilled on earth as well as in the beyond in order to unite with the eternal Love and to attain eternal bliss ....

Amen

**'He that keepeth My  
commandments ... to him I  
will come and manifest  
Myself ...'**

***B.D. 4107 from August 19th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Let Me speak to you in all places, at all times and in all situations of life, in joy and in suffering, in hardship and worry of body and soul by turning your thoughts to Me

and desiring to hear My voice .... And I will speak to you, and everyone who expects My communication shall hear Me. For I have promised you that I will manifest Myself to the one who loves Me and keeps My commandments, who thus strives towards Me and lives a life of love .... Anyone who fulfils My commandment will also recognise My Word, he will accept My revelations and be joyful in the knowledge that I Am talking to him. The awareness of hearing Words of love from Me will make him happy, he will strive towards Me even more sincerely and ever more longingly listen to My Word in silence, he will open his heart to Me and I Myself will enter him, I will take abode in his heart, I will unite with him and remain in constant communication with him. This is the state every person on earth should strive for, to be in constant contact with Me, to mentally establish this bond and, in blissful unity with Me, to relish My flesh and My blood, that is, to accept the strength of My Word. Once you have reached this state on earth you can confidently consider yourselves as My children, you can come with every concern like a child to its father, you may know yourselves loved by Me and need not be afraid or feel abandoned in any earthly adversity for then I will constantly be with you, I will safeguard every step you take, I will guide and protect you and grant every wish you request of Me in spirit and in truth.

I will hear your call, regardless of how secretly it is being sent up to Me .... For I love those of you who have the will to come to Me. And since I Am connected to you by



greater than great love I will not allow you to go astray if, faced by a crucial decision, you don't know which way to turn. I will very gently push you towards the right path, I will take you by your hand so that you will not stumble, I will illuminate the path if it gets dark and you are no longer able to recognise it properly. And time and again you may be permitted to hear My voice which intends to give you the assurance that I Myself Am with you. You should only look upon the earth as a stage of transition in order to achieve on it the degree which allows for My presence. However, once you have achieved this you no longer need to fear anything of an earthly nature, for then you will be earmarked as aspirants for the spiritual kingdom and they will infallibly attain their goal. Consequently, don't be afraid of that which will still be imposed upon you in an earthly way, because it is only temporary and will just last a very short period of time, which you will no longer have to go through on your own but in constant company with Me you will also be protected from all harm. The hearts in which I have taken abode belong to Me without fail, and I will never again let go of that which has become My possession, and this assurance should make your life easier to bear, you should believe it and always consider yourselves as My children who will safely return to their Father's house under My guidance ....

Amen

# Reference to events .... Chaos ... Speedy arrival ...

***B.D. 4108 from August 21st 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Expect My speedy arrival, for there is not much time until the end .... You will shortly experience things which will confirm what My love has made known to you long in advance .... namely, that the final phase before the end has already started. You will wonder why I allow such disasters to happen, why I let such immense adversity come upon humankind and I can only ever give you the answer that it is necessary for those people who have as yet not recognised Me and only ever look upon each event from an earthly point of view but never associate people's spiritual development with it. These are irrevocably the final pangs, and the end will follow soon without fail. Time and again I call your attention to the fact that you should not go through earthly life in a secular-minded way, as it only lasts for a short time and it can still be of greatest significance for you if you consider your purpose and make appropriate use of life. However, you humans are half-hearted and complacent regarding My admonitions and warnings, for you don't believe in My Word. And I can't give you further proof about the truth of My Word, because you must take the right path without influence, you must feel impelled

from within to comply with My will, otherwise your souls cannot mature. Yet you can draw visible proof from the forthcoming event, for thereby I will come extraordinarily close to you, revealing Myself to those who know about My gifts of grace and confirming these to them so that they will be able to recognise Me. And those of you who want to be of service to Me should know that you do not have a long lifetime ahead of you and that the mission incumbent upon you allows for no further delay, and that you, for the sake of this mission, should first convince yourselves of the truth of My Word so that you can spread it without inhibition. And thus you will see that everything I have proclaimed to you in Word and Scripture will come true. You will learn to despise the world and examine the spiritual kingdom more thoroughly, for your own advantage, for the transformation of your soul. Countless beings of light are at My disposal, and through these I influence you humans time and again by constantly steering your thoughts to the forthcoming event, by allowing you to go through so much adversity and misery until you yourselves will yearn for the downfall of Earth in order to escape from the harsh pressures inflicted upon you by fellow human beings. Then you will gradually prepare yourselves for the end, for then you will believe in it and make an effort to live on earth to please Me. This time will be followed by incredible chaos, during which you should trustingly expect My help from utmost adversity, for I assured you of this and will not disappoint your faith. And thus these Words of Mine are your best guarantee that no harm will

come to you even though you will be put under pressure from all directions. However, you must give your love to Me, and if you love Me you will long for Me, and for that reason I will come to fetch you from the place of perdition into My kingdom, where you will never ever be persecuted again, where only I Am in charge and evil is not allowed to enter. And all hardship will have come to an end for the believers, but for the others the adversity will have just started, as I have proclaimed .... they will be condemned into darkness .... they will be banished on the new Earth into creations which are beyond your imagination until you populate the new Earth yourselves ....

Amen

## **God as a Father, friend and brother seeks to attract love ....**

***B.D. 4109 from August 22nd 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

I want to be a loving Father to you, a wise guide and advisor, a faithful friend and brother, I want to give you everything you need on earth both psychologically and physically, I constantly want to care for you and you shall

never feel abandoned by Me; I want to stand by your side in every adversity and protect you from all onslaughts by your enemies, be they spiritual or earthly, I want to shower you with an abundance of gifts of grace and you shall always recognise My love which I have felt for you since the very beginning and which will not diminish in all eternity .... Nevertheless, I expect you to entrust yourselves unto Me, to strive towards Me, to love Me like a child loves its father. If this love belongs to Me, then I can take hold of you with My strength of love and completely gain you forever. And I ceaselessly seek to attract this love. This is why I will try to guide you into truth, into recognising Me Myself and My eternal plan of salvation, for you first need to know that you are My living creations and the relationship you have as My living creations with Me, the eternal Creator. You must be aware of the great responsibility towards Me and live accordingly, so that you will find grace before My eyes. Your heart must impel you to do so, only then will I recognise your love and then you will belong to My Own whom I have promised My kingdom, for then you will look for Me and when you have found Me never let go of Me again; you will seek the union with Me and appeal to Me for strength because you recognise Me as your Lord and Creator. And you will humbly approach Me, and you will be as it is pleasing to Me, full of love and truth, portraying your problems to the Father with a childlike quality. And I will grant your prayers, I will fulfil your every request because My love for you manifests itself such that I want to make you happy while you are still on

earth and one day in eternity .... Therefore you must listen to My Word, for you learn to recognise Me through My Word as soon as you accept My Word in your heart, think about it and subsequently live as it pleases Me. Then you will love Me as well and see your bliss in being in possession of My love for you. In that case I can come to you Myself, I can make you happy through My presence now and forever .... I can provide you with spiritual gifts depending on your worthiness; I can receive you in My kingdom once you have finished your life on earth, and make you blissfully happy for all eternity ....

Amen

**'Take this and eat ... this is My flesh and My blood ...'**

***B.D. 4115 from September 1st 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

I call to My Own: Prepare yourselves and consider that you will soon be called back and need to proceed with the work for which I have hired you. The days are counted and only a few are still granted to you. Then the truth of My Word will be proven to you and you will become strong in faith. However, until then you will still be subject to many different internal as well as external

problems, so that you will join Me increasingly more sincerely and I can grant you the strength which will enable you to stand up to all opposition and become willing labourers for Me. I persistently urge you to work diligently at improving your soul, for I know how important it is that you don't become half-hearted. I Myself Am with you and, time and again, direct your thoughts to the spiritual kingdom, I motivate you to seek contact with it and send messengers from the kingdom of light to meet you, who will always instruct you according to your understanding. And I Myself will enlighten you about anything you desire to know. It is not My will that you should be troubled by doubts, hence I want to dispel them by conveying the pure truth to you; so once you are enlightened and convinced that you possess the truth, it will be easy to work for Me, for then you will also advocate what I teach through My spirit within the person. And this speaks in you as I Myself would speak to you were I among you. Consequently, you can always ask Me questions and the right answer will come to you. For as soon as you are called, you must defer your earthly task and first comply with My request through the inner voice. First of all, I want to remove any doubt that still burdens you and that you shall discard. I want to answer your questions even if you don't ask them out loud, for I Am aware of your most secret thoughts, of your strength of will and your faith:

Firstly, keep to My Word which is offered to you from above. This Word comes from Me directly or is offered to

you through beings of light, which only comply with My will and educate you according to My instructions. The man Jesus taught in the same way on earth, for He was also a being of light and spoke to people on My behalf, thus likewise according to My will. Hence, His Word was the same Word that came forth from Me and therefore He could rightfully say 'Anyone who hears Me hears the Father, for the Father and I are One ....' My voice sounded in Him, My strength was active in Him and My spirit completely filled the man Jesus, Who, thus permeated by Me, was completely united with Me. And this complete unity was the result of an exemplary life of love, a life of selfless neighbourly love, as I demand of all people who want to become perfect. A life of love therefore results in total unity with Me and this, in turn, the mediation of My Word, the emanation of Myself .... I Am the Word, therefore the Word is God .... Receiving and accepting the Word is spiritual nourishment .... It is the bread from heaven which is offered by Me Myself to someone who is hungry and thirsty for it. And when I offer people the bread from heaven I say 'Take this and eat, that is My flesh and My blood', after all, I Myself Am the Word .... flesh and blood in the spiritual sense .... On the occasion of a physical meal, the Supper with My disciples, I tried to explain to them the spiritual meal; I wanted to encourage them to accept spiritual nourishment more often, to enjoy My flesh and My blood in remembrance of Me, since then they would always be able to unite with Me and be full of strength. The fact that I broke the earthly bread and drank actual wine with My disciples at the



same time was of no great importance, for My disciples understood My meaning because they were spiritually awakened, they lived a life of love and therefore also understood My figurative comparison. Besides, they were meant to take Me as an example .... they were meant to share all possessions with fellow human beings in need of them .... to feed them physically and spiritually, and I linked it to the promise of giving Myself to them .... they should find unity with Me through distributing everything they possessed and their neighbour lacked in order to receive My Word, through which I reveal Myself to all those who are united with Me through works of love. I did not prevent people from using My Words to create a process which can only be regarded as a purely external one, which can only be said to have been metaphorically carried out if a person has secured My presence first through a life of love, nor will I ever prevent it, so as not to curtail your freedom of will; however, I will always provide people with the right explanation through other spiritually enlightened people, who therefore have the right understanding of My Words and will pass them on. However, without the right understanding they will merely be an insignificant formality which only gains in value if the spiritual meaning is observed, if people hunger and thirst for accepting My Word, if they thus let themselves be nourished by Me with the bread from heaven, with My flesh and My blood, in order to be and forever remain united with Me ....

Amen

# **The destruction of the old earth ... Experience in the flesh ... Warning ...**

***B.D. 4116 from September 5th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

I told you that you will witness the destruction of the old earth while still in the flesh and I say it again so that you will believe it. Your faith is weak, and inwardly you refuse to accept the fact that you live in the last days. But My spirit repeatedly tells you that the time of the end is close at hand .... Why don't you want to believe this? Since, on the other hand, you cannot deny the truth of My revelations? And why do you hope for and expect progress, an improvement of earthly conditions? Why does the thought of an end in combination with a total destruction of the old earth seem unbelievable and unacceptable to you? Because you would gladly continue to live, because you are not yet prepared and do not sufficiently contemplate My Word, which very clearly explains to you the necessity of a total transformation of the old earth and will guide you into profound faith if you, with your will towards Me, absorb and accept every Word as coming from heaven and live accordingly ....

Even you, who should spread My Word, allow yourselves to be troubled by doubt, and therefore do not represent My Word convincingly enough, you allow yourselves to be undermined by objections to the contrary. Your faith is not strong enough, in spite of your good will to serve Me. The reality of life affects you and you find it impossible to reconcile it with the human being's spiritual destiny. Consequently you don't support My revelations about the forthcoming time diligently enough. You do not take My Word seriously enough yourselves, hence I always have to give you the same urgent warning of the approaching end again .... You will experience it while you are still in the flesh .... Does that not tell you enough? Do you know what age you will reach? Could it be that you will only live a short time? Only I know which day will be the last and I will keep it a secret, but I will tell you that it is not far away and that you will serve Me until the end .... Consequently you will have to experience the day and should believe it!

You will be good labourers for Me because a convinced faith also lets you speak convincingly. I need servants like you on earth who will strongly urge and vividly describe to people the need for My working on earth and the spiritual hardship humanity will experience if it does not receive help. You receive My Word and are therefore already advanced in knowledge .... and yet you do not want to believe although you will not reject or oppose it ....

For this reason I speak to you all the more insistently,

because profound faith is necessary if your words are to make an impact on your fellow human beings. When you yourselves are convinced that what you hear through the voice of the spirit is the absolute truth, then you are true representatives of My Word on earth, and then you lend Me your mouth so that I can speak through it Myself. Your task during the approaching time is to be My mouthpiece because I cannot reveal Myself to people in any other way, but it is absolutely necessary that they should hear Me Myself, although they are not always able to recognise My voice. The extreme difficulties of the last days will come upon people with such severity that they would have to despair without My help, without My Word. But if I speak to them Myself they will be strong and able to resist even the greatest adversity because My Words will have given them strength. Hence you should render your services, because people have to be influenced without force, and because I Myself will always be present when you, as mediators, engage people in spiritual conversations and thus establish the connection between Me and the people who are to be instructed, who urgently need My Word if they want to endure until the end. And the end is coming soon .... I call to you time and time again; you should believe My Words and with complete trust approach the future, which will unfold as I told you well in advance in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Much suffering - Much grace ....**

***B.D. 4117 from September 7th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Excessive suffering is an exceptional grace, even if you find this incomprehensible; for My love does not want to let you humans slide into the delirium of the world and confronts some of you with hours of starkest adversity in order to bring you back to your senses, or the soul would remain empty-handed and not progress in its spiritual development. Suffering must always be considered as a means to render the human being helpless and make him aware of his weakness, and as soon as the suffering has contributed towards the fact that the soul turns to Me, that it appeals to Me for help and humbly entrusts itself to Me, it is a great blessing and should therefore be viewed as a gift of grace. For suffering leads to Me, whereas the joys of the world as well as all earthly pleasures will achieve the opposite. Suffering motivates people to pray, without prayer it is impossible to make contact with Me. Without prayer you cannot be given the gift of grace, because prayer expresses the will and the longing for Me and thus enables Me to meet the human being and, as fulfilment of his prayer, give to him what he needs.

If, however, the human being is spared suffering, the body will continue to reject the spirit when it wants to communicate with the soul in order to give the person the right guidance and instruction. But it is absolutely essential for spiritual progress, for reaching a high degree of maturity, that the soul be instructed by the spirit and that the soul will thus unite with the spirit. For this purpose I must absolutely grant help to the soul with My strength and therefore must first be asked for it, because the human being's will is decisive and suffering impels its decision. Suffering can also harden a human heart, in which case the person will drift away and no longer strive for ascent, and then there is no other means that would be more successful. But as a rule suffering leads to Me, generally a human being perfects himself through suffering and then it has fulfilled its purpose. Subsequently, you should be grateful for it and also acknowledge it as a grace; for earthly suffering is not a permanent condition and extremely beneficial, providing you want to mature. Then you will be eternally thankful to Me, and in the state of realisation earthly life will be easier for you to understand and you will also be able to cope during the time of great need, for then you will not live your life alone but with Me, because you will open yourselves to Me in prayer and thus receive strength which you, in turn, can use after your own will and with certainty will use for your spiritual ascent, as you are destined to do ....

Amen

# **Last Judgment ...**

## **Spiritualization of earth ...**

***B.D. 4125 from September 16th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

A strict judgment will be held at the end of times, that is, there will come a time when the composition of earth can no longer be called earthly matter, but when all material substances will have spiritualised themselves, so that even the earth will have become a spiritual creation like many others in the universe, each of which, however, lays claim to be a place of education for the spirit. And earth will remain such a place of education for the spirit, only that its creations as well as its inhabitants can be called spiritualised, that the living beings' life will proceed under different conditions and even their task cannot be compared to their present one. Earth, too, will have to go through such an era after an endlessly long period of time, and it is this era Jesus spoke about to His listeners on earth.

Every material creation has to take this path of development, that is, it is only condemned matter in the beginning and, after an infinitely long time, after eternities which people will never be able to assess, it elevates itself to a completely different level; it

increasingly spiritualises itself and can finally only be referred to as a spiritual creation. Yet these are immeasurably long periods of time, because all banished spirits first have to take this earthly material path so that matter will then have been completely overcome. Consequently, an endlessly long time will still have to pass until the complete spiritualization of earth has occurred. And this duration of time is comprised of individual phases of development again; each one on its own will be regarded as an eternity by as yet unenlightened people, because many generations will have to accomplish their full maturity during one such phase in order to attain a specific degree of maturity which then is comparable to the spiritualization on earth. Every stage begins with spiritually highly mature people and ends with people whose inclination to the abyss is so strong that it will be fulfilled, that they will be banished again into the creations of the succeeding new earth. These phases of development are in fact by human standards also infinitely long but they will always come to an end one day, and time and again an era of development will start anew. Yet at the end of times the spiritualization of the once material creation will proceed ever faster, and the tests of will, which happen in every period, can become increasingly less, because all living creations will then feel the same .... they will all desire to behold the countenance of God and therefore strive ever more sincerely towards God, or they have already been too far removed from God by the adverse power as to be able to return to God. And this is why they



later, in spiritual creations, have to stay as spirits in places to which they are drawn and this is the harshest punishment which can come upon God opposing spirits since it is, after all, a state of complete blindness, a state of servitude, where helping only takes place against the servant's will, yet the person is unable to take any other path but to be of constant service until he surrenders his resistance.

This, too, is a divine law, that every occurrence takes place on a small scale and then repeats itself in infinitely diverse variations .... Jesus foresaw the end of this time, but you humans are only able to look forward to times which allow for humanly possible events .... All of you only take **one** Judgment Day into account .... But this will keep repeating itself as long as periods of Salvation find their conclusion in accordance with divine will .... Every judgment will end with the condemnation of the adversary's adherents and an admission into the spheres of light of those who remained faithful to God even in utmost adversity. And thus the Last Judgment will also result in the total destruction of all matter, but a completely spiritual new earth will arise, if only after such an endlessly long time that it need not be mentioned so as not to give people a false sense of security by proclaiming a new period of development in which they, in their opinion, would be able to make up for their neglect.

The judgment which separates one period of Salvation from the succeeding one will come irrevocably soon ....

This shall be proclaimed by seers and prophets who are called by God and whom He informs Himself through His spirit, for it is necessary for the whole of humanity to face up to the approaching end, to change their way of life and to improve their souls, for the time left to humanity as a final gift of grace will pass quickly .... Soon the final hour will arrive and with it the Judgment which will carry out a complete separation of the pure from the impure ....

Amen

# **Calm before the storm ... Visible appearance of the Lord ...**

***B.D. 4126 from September 19th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

A time of anxious misery and suffering lies before you and you can regard the time prior to this, the time in which you presently live, as the calm before the storm, during which you can still live your life within the scope of tradition, during which you can still speak of a certain extent of prosperity compared to the poverty and the deprivation which await you afterwards. And yet it will be a time of grace, a time when I will be clearly recognisable, when life will only be bearable if you

deeply unite yourselves with Me in your thoughts, since then you will never be alone but will always be able to have Me as your protection. And I will also manifestly reveal Myself to you, I will approach individual people in the shape of the One Who harboured Me in all fullness within Himself. And I will be recognised wherever people's love for Me is strong, even if I dwell as a human being amongst people, for My eyes will tell them who I AM, and their hearts will come aglow with such burning love for Me as they would never be able to offer to a fellow human being. I will come to meet them with ardent love, I will illuminate them where they lack knowledge and comfort them in hours of distress and they will be able to overcome the most difficult situations and not despair, for they will sense My help, and wherever I visibly approach them they will be full of strength and profound faith. And once this fills a human heart no oppressive adversity will be able to exist anymore, for then they will only utterly rely on Me and I will truly not disappoint their faith. Yet anyone who lives without Me will hardly be able to endure this time. I cannot leave him in his spiritual adversity and will therefore have to sorely strike him with earthly adversity until his opposition against Me slackens, until he starts to believe and expects help from Me ....

Thus all of you will be subjected to anxious distress and suffering through which I want to win you over completely. Nevertheless, you also have abundant strength and grace at your disposal which will help you to

gain Me. I only want your love and once I own it I will come to meet you .... in the last days even visibly in order to strengthen your and other people's faith, because you are in need of extraordinary strengthening and consolation. Consequently, you won't need to fear the difficult time ahead of you either, for you will survive it with My help. Nevertheless, it will remain a time of grace, and the yoke I impose upon you will be an easy one if only you make correct use of the gift of grace. To be allowed to behold Me with your physical eyes is truly worth the cross you will have to bear until the end. Yet I will also offer Myself as a bearer of the cross to those who take refuge in Me and appeal to Me for My help .... And for their sake I will shorten the days until the end. I know every individual person's problems, and those who are faithful to Me are My true children who will really not call upon Me in vain for help. Therefore don't let My announcement frighten you, approach the coming events determinedly and calmly, detach yourselves from the world and wait for Me .... And I will come .... at first appearing to individual people, in order to then fetch My Own into My kingdom .... in order to lead them away from the place of perdition into to the kingdom of peace, where their life will be as blissful as in paradise ....

Amen

**"Only he who remains in**

# love remains in Me, and I in him ...."

***B.D. 4128 from September 22nd  
1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Love has to come alight in you if you want to be united with Me. Only he who remains in love remains in Me and I in him. And thus you must feel impelled by your heart to give love to your fellow human being, to make him happy and gain his affection, you have to be in constant harmony with him, you have to be a friend and brother to your neighbour, you have to share joy and suffering with him and always endeavour to ease his fate on earth, and you must always be willing to guide him correctly in spiritual matters, because the most important and most pleasing activity of love is to save or benefit his soul. If you are impelled by love, that is, if you feel urged from deep within yourselves to carry out works of love, I Am closely united with you, for the feeling of love already shows that I Am taking possession of you, it is an overflowing of My strength of love to you, which is the result of your will turning towards good, thus an unconscious turning towards Me.

I can certainly draw all of you to My heart, I can instantly kindle love in you and in that case win all of you over for Myself, if I wanted to do so .... however, in that case I

would have no living creations as My image but only judged beings without free will as a sign of their divinity. But I want to work and create with perfect beings, I want to give them ultimate happiness because My love for them is infinitely profound, and I can only do so if they have reached a particular degree which people should and can reach on earth. And this is why I must constantly admonish you to be eagerly active in love, because I want to be united with you in order to be able to work in all fullness within you and thus increase the strength of your love, so that you become divine beings yourselves, as was your destiny in the very beginning.

I want to be as one with you yet you must accomplish this merger of your own free will .... And this is why you have to practise love yourselves, you must constantly make an effort to do good works, you must change your feelings if they have not yet come alight as love within you, you must want to be good then you will also be able to become it, for I will bless such a will and give you strength to implement it. You must want to be united with Me and I will come to you and take possession of you with the intention of never letting go of you or allowing you to separate yourselves from Me again. For My love is so profound that it will not rest until total unification has taken place, because this was the original state, because My living creations came forth from Me, because they are strength from Me which inevitably has to return to Me again ....

Amen

# **Justice ... Equal rights ... Mutual love ...**

***B.D. 4131 from September 29th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Even the sense of justice is subject to a law. It can certainly be increased many times over, nevertheless, in cases relating to equal rights it has to be limited. For it always has to be taken into consideration that both giving as well as taking are first subject to the commandment of love. Giving is determined by love, insofar that love has to be the driving force of giving, and thus every gift has to awaken love in the recipient. For love is the fundamental substance of everything that is visible to the human being, just as it must incessantly flow to all works of creation if they are to continue to exist. Consequently, it requires the strength of love if the offering is to awaken love in return and increase the strength in itself. Giving is the evidence of love, but the receiving can take place without love, in which case it will remain appropriately ineffective unless the recipient is voluntarily partaking of the spiritual gifts from above which lead upwards again. Earthly gifts can only have an earthly effect, that is, the giving part has to take into account that his gift will indeed be accepted yet not valued differently than a

matter of fact and therefore awakens little or no love in return, which would be classed as a spiritual failure. In that case, only the giver's will is of importance but not the act itself. The degree of love which urges a person to give is always the decisive factor, this is why giving cannot be generalised, since the degree of love is not always and towards all people the same; rather, the human being has to exercise firm self-criticism, otherwise he will regard actions as deeds of love which are merely the results of education or habits and thus lack the driving force of love for another person. The latter conduct of people is doubtlessly commendable and therefore should not stop; nevertheless, every act carried out by love has eternal value, because it results in the soul's higher maturity. Actions of love increase humanity's spiritual state on earth, actions of justice can certainly go hand in hand with love yet are generally only driven by the feeling of formal thoughtfulness, which can be automatically carried out without the heart being involved and therefore does not follow the person as a deed of love into eternity.

Just thinking and just conduct is expected of people, for the contrary has detrimental effects on fellow human beings and is therefore unkindness; it is a violation of the commandment of love. Consequently, just thinking and just conduct can be regarded as the fulfilment of the commandment of love .... But justice should not always be understood as equal rights .... because a demand for absolute equality cannot always and by all people be



made .... For even here, laws apply which are subject to divine will. The human being should certainly take care not to value himself too highly either way, thus he should not lay claim to more than he is willing to give, he should give to another person what he himself deems desirable, yet this will has to remain free, it must not be forcibly aimed in one direction which, however, is the case when the reason for giving is an acquired formality that a person complies with. Hence you should seriously examine which feeling prompts you to put your will to give into practise. Don't be satisfied with a correct act which lacks all warmth but follow the urging of your heart, then you will be governed by love and every thought, intention and action will be good. However, in cases of emergency you should act fairly, when not just one person relies on your help but when it is needed everywhere. Don't deny it to one person while you give it to the other but make an effort to distribute and judge fairly. Give pleasure where you can and don't try to keep an anxious limit, for this stifles love, it does not awaken mutual love, and where love is lacking there is no spiritual progress, even if you have effectively created earthly order, yet divine order must be fulfilled first, and according to divine law love comes first. Where it is observed all other good qualities will follow, and this includes justice as well ....

Amen

# **The Lord's messenger before His coming ... Help desperately needed ...**

***B.D. 4136 from October 6th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Remarkable gifts of grace can be offered to people and they walk past them as if they were everyday occurrences. They can't be troubled to examine them earnestly, and although they hear what is offered to them as a most precious gift of grace they do not apply it to themselves and, therefore, do not perfect themselves according to My Will. And thus the time of grace will pass without much benefit to them. The end is near. I will make Myself known in every possible way, I will use every means to open their hearts so that I may enter and teach them Myself. Consequently there will be twice as much work in the forthcoming time and My servants should take their task seriously and not deceive themselves by believing that their job is done. This short time before the end requires exceptional assistance on My part and particularly keen activity on the part of My servants on earth, if the souls are to be saved which are in extreme distress. Although it seems that you will not be very successful, since many will reject you, your work will not have been in vain.

Someone will come and speak the same words to people that you have received from Me. And people will compare and be surprised because they will recognise that the content corresponds to what they have already received through Word and Scripture. And again people will be offered a great opportunity to change their way of life and to shape themselves in accordance with My will. Because the messages from above will be so obviously consistent with the Gospel preached by him, who is My forerunner before My last coming. Only a few will recognise the extraordinary light and know that the time has come. The majority, however, will disregard a gift of grace which My love repeatedly offers to them. They cannot be helped anymore because it is their own free will as to whether they accept or reject it and which I will never compel. But the time of grace will be over soon, soon the hour will have passed and the last bell will toll. And anyone who has not found his way back to Me by then will remain distant from God for eternity and thus in a miserable state, which My love constantly attempts to prevent .... but success is up to you humans yourselves ....

Amen

**Process of imparting the  
divine Word ... Spirit - Soul -  
Body ....**

## ***B.D. 4143 from October 14th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

Once the soul has united with its spirit the body will have lost its entitlement to the soul, i.e., the soul will reject physical desires because they contradict the spirit's wishes. For this reason a union between soul and spirit can only take place at those times when the body is not occupied with earthly activities during which all thoughts and feelings, hence the soul, are focussed on this activity. Although a human being's activity may well correspond to divine will, the spirit's effectiveness nevertheless depends on the soul's complete surrender to the spirit, consequently it requires a person's withdrawal into seclusion for the spirit to make itself heard by the soul, especially if the conveyed spiritual knowledge is also intended for fellow human beings, hence if it needs to be written down. This is why proclamations from the spiritual kingdom, thus the Father-Spirit's emanations to the spiritual spark, can only be received in seclusion, when the soul can unreservedly hand itself over to the spirit. Then a complete connection between soul and spirit will be possible, so that God Himself will be able to express Himself through the spirit, so that the soul will spiritualise itself and during moments of contact with the eternal Father-Spirit receive, understand and subsequently inform those people of His Word who desire to know the outcome of the retreat. Only then will the soul establish contact with the body and inform the latter

of what it has received from the spiritual kingdom ....

Amen

# Relationship of a child with its Father..

***B.D. 4153 from October 26th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

You shall become My Own and never separate yourselves from Me again, you shall enter into unity with Me, hand yourselves over to Me and desire no more than My love, and if you have reached this stage of renouncing all earthly things, you can relinquish your life without qualms, for then you will have passed your final test on earth and will be ready for the spiritual realm. But what do you need to achieve this degree of love for Me which will make you blissfully happy forever? You must have the relationship of a child to its father, then you will not desire anything else but to be united with Me, for the child only desires to be with the father because it feels his paternal love and knows that it is well protected by it. The child is weak and requires protection and support; it requires gifts which only the father's love can bestow upon it, so it trustingly comes to him and asks him full of childlike humility, and the father will not deny the child

anything because he loves it. You must all feel like My children and have this confidence in Me so that you can present all your worries, hardships and afflictions to Me and faithfully wait for Me to take them from you, to remove them and let your fate on earth be bearable for you. And thus you forge a bond with Me, your Father of eternity, you entrust yourselves unto Me, and therefore feel so close to Me that you speak to Me without inhibition and also make an effort to gain My pleasure and thereby My love again, and you will be aware that you, as My children, possess My love and this awareness will give you inner peace and strength in abundance. And yet you will not become arrogant, you will remain profoundly faithful and be showered with My grace .... Then I will be able to take effect in you, I will be able to speak to you through My spirit and you will be able to hear Me .... the connection with Me will lead to an abundance of blessings, for then you will belong to Me and I will never ever let you leave Me again. The union will have taken place which should be all peoples' goal on earth so that they will be able to enter the kingdom of peace when their life on earth is over ....

Amen

**Battle of faith ....**  
**Breakdown of human**

# **work ... Church of Christ ...**

***B.D. 4167 from November 14th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

The last days before the end will show the strength of resistance people will muster who belong to the true Church of Christ, in contrast to those who pay more homage to the human structure which they will see disintegrate in view of the battle of faith. For it will be a time when no compromises will be made, when everyone will have to make a clear decision, when religious doctrines will be unravelled down to the last detail and will therefore also necessitate thinking about and when everything of an external nature cannot stand up to serious criticism and will therefore be condemned or rejected. Only then will people realise how worthless it was and how much grace and strength rests in true faith and the heartfelt bond with Me which lacks all formality. People will see something fall apart which they portray as permanent and they will have to realise that those without enforced commandments have a far stronger faith and are far closer to Me through their way of life and their will, which looks for and strives towards Me constantly. All ecclesiastical performances will become subject to the measures of those who fight against spiritual issues, and only someone who longs for Me from the bottom of his heart, who receives My Word and with My Word also My strength, will prove himself .... Then

much will be abolished which seems important to people now, and they will have to relinquish it and content themselves with silent contemplation without external actions, without pomp and glamour and without teachers who were not enlightened by Me and therefore unsuitable for the office of a minister. And they will have to acknowledge that I Myself have chosen My servants on earth and given them the task to instruct their fellow human beings and to convey the truth to them .... And blessed are those who will then accept the truth, who will make an effort to live according to My will and who use the short time until the end for their soul's development, for they will bear up and persevere until the end ....

Amen

## **Divine revelations can be accepted without scrutiny .... Love ....**

***B.D. 4169 from November 17th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

A divine revelation should and must be taken seriously, otherwise the recipient is not worthy of it. Various possibilities to solve earthly problems certainly exist, earthly things can be viewed from various angles, an



earthly problem can be answered in different ways, depending on the human being's attitude, however, in a spiritual respect there is only one truth, there is only one solution, and this solution is given by God Himself to those who desire it and are worthy of it. And despite the worthiness, the transmission of truth through revelations of the spirit is a very special grace which must be acknowledged, just as that which God imparts to people through revelations is beyond all doubt and may therefore be accepted without any examination. And, indeed, as soon as God Himself is acknowledged as the source of spiritual revelations his communications are no longer doubted. Yet it is precisely the source of spiritual revelation that is frequently questioned, and then the human being will not be entirely convinced that the content corresponds to the truth. However, the Word speaks for itself, and it speaks in a language which can certainly be understood by all those who live a life of love .... Kind-hearted people, who develop increasingly higher, can also affirm the content of the proclamations, for they grasp the truth and are on the right track with their thoughts, nothing will seem implausible to them, instead, they accept every Word and arrange their life accordingly. Yet a person who lacks love will find it more difficult to believe unconditionally. God's working is incomprehensible to them, and neither can they completely appreciate the content, for love is the key to truth, love is indispensable if the human being wants to penetrate the truth through his acceptance of divine revelations. They can only be advised to practise acting

with love, for only through this they will understand everything and disperse every doubt. Through love he will make contact with God and can subsequently also be instructed by God Himself. Then he will know the truth, he will be allowed to receive profound knowledge, it will be easy for him to believe, since the truth speaks for itself, and the Word of God will always be pure and unadulterated truth, because it originates from the One Who is the eternal Truth Himself ....

Amen

## **God's call within your heart ....**

***B.D. 4170 from November 19th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

You have to heed the need of the moment, i.e. you have to hold yourselves in readiness, so when you hear My call within your heart you will be able to serve Me without hesitation, for the hour of taking up your post is near. And the sign and evidence of My Word's truthfulness rests upon the fact that worldly obligations no longer seem important to you once you have heard My voice, which clearly instructs you what to do. You will have no further desire for this world but only find joy in your spiritual

work, and you will receive help in accomplishing it because it is My will. This time will be preceded by a spiritual drought, a time when you will hunger for My Word, for lively activity in the spiritual field, and when you will lack every opportunity for spiritual debate. Although you will receive My Word, and My love will always take care of you, you will find yourselves isolated amidst a world with a zest for life which is unable to give you anything. You will get little sympathy from other people and therefore feel down-hearted but move ever closer to Me, and thus your hunger for My nourishment for your soul will increase, until you suddenly hear Me inside yourselves .... And then the hour will have come for your mission to begin .... And I will make sure that you will be able to start your work, that you will lose all shyness, that all reservation and fear will leave you.

You will only speak, think and act in accordance with My will, you will represent Me Myself on earth, that is, you will speak what you receive through My spirit, you will be living witnesses of My Word. You will go amongst people as My disciples again and proclaim to them My Word, with the addition that the end is near and that I will come Myself to fetch My Own when the time has arrived which I have determined since eternity. And, in order for you to speak freely and unimpeded, I will place people by your side who will provide you with worldly support, who will accompany you as faithful followers, who will protect and shield you from the world, although you will always enjoy My protection and I will not leave you until the end. But I

will also take care of you in an earthly way and you should fulfil your task without concern, because your mission will completely drain your strength, and therefore you shall be free from all earthly worries. But I ask of you to pass on the gifts you receive from Me and thus make them accessible to other people; to carry My Word into the world verbally as well as in print, to spread the truth and thus inform your fellow human beings of My working, so that their thoughts are directed to the spiritual kingdom. And I will bless your service to Me, I will give you strength until the end and one day will reward your work in eternity ....

Amen

## **Working for God and His kingdom ....**

***B.D. 4171 from November 20th 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

And thus a new phase will start for you, a time full of activity for Me and My kingdom .... and you will not regret having offered your services to Me, since you will feel the blessing of the work, you will multiply My church, the flock of believers around you will expand and you will be able to teach, and My spirit will constantly manifest itself

through you. You will always be certain of My presence and this awareness will make you confident amongst people of hostile mind. For it will remain a battle of truth against lies and error, because humanity is already too deeply entangled in the latter. Nevertheless, people will, at first, be willing to listen to you, and the time following the natural disaster should be used since you will be able to speak freely, unimpeded by worldly power. Therefore I will need faithful labourers during this time and always seek to invite them, since help needs to be brought to those whose hearts were hardened by their destiny, and who will be looking far and wide for an explanation of the cause and purpose for this natural event. They will still possess a modest faith in divine justice, and then it will be particularly important to provide people with what they long for: light and strength, fullest understanding and a living faith in Me Myself, Who will speak to them through you in order to draw them close to Me and gladden them with My presence.

You will have to achieve a great task and thus will be guided in a worldly way such that you can fully devote yourselves to this task. Therefore you should be ready and wait for My call, and not hesitate to comply with it when you hear it within yourselves. Because I will guide your fate such that you can be at My disposal at any time, because time demands urgent action. You, however, shall receive clear vision and perception and will therefore always know where your work is needed and where it can be successful. I will lead the people to you whom I want

to help through you and who are willing to believe .... For I will take care of all people who are not entirely subject to My adversary and who are of good will. I will approach them with My Word, I want to speak to them through you, and I want to win them over for Me and My kingdom, so that they will be eternally blessed.

Amen

## **Seeming contradictions in God's Word ....**

***B.D. 4172 from November 22nd 1947,  
taken from Book No. 50***

Don't take exception to the contradictions which seem to exist in My Word but consider the fact that your intellect cannot grasp everything My spirit imparts to you. Accept in good faith in Me and My love, wisdom and omnipotence that everything offered to you from above is not comparable to earthly wisdom; that even that which seems impossible to you is possible in the kingdom of the free spirits. Two worlds exist, the spiritual and the earthly world, and both stand in opposition to each other. However, it is My goal to spiritualise the earthly world, to educate it such that it can join the spiritual world in order to finally be a spiritual world itself. And on this earth,

amid the earthly world, a spiritual world can also be established through the unification of those people who are in contact with the spiritual kingdom, who receive spiritual knowledge, strive spiritually and are thus averted to the earthly world and only still accomplish the work which has been assigned to them for their earthly life. They will likewise be in opposition to worldly-minded people who belong to the earthly world, and their thinking will also seemingly be in contradiction to the thoughts of the general public, for a spiritually directed eye sees things differently, the ear hears differently, and the soul feels differently than is otherwise the norm, and the earthly-minded person will not understand him. Then two worlds exist side by side and their inhabitants can be at various distances from Me even though they are together. One of them can understand that which he hears from Me, for the other it is and will remain inaudible or strange if it is passed on to him.

And this is what you have to accept if you want to judge My gifts from above. Whatever I give to one person corresponds to his maturity of soul, and it need not be wrong by any means if it seems incomprehensible to someone else. In that case it is not the gift itself which should be questioned but the person's degree of maturity which is therefore insufficient to grasp spiritual knowledge. In that case it concerns information which goes above and beyond earthly knowledge, not commandments or proclamations intended to clarify My will to people but more profound wisdoms touching upon

subjects beyond human knowledge. Then My Word will have to be the guarantee for truth, for neither examinations nor your own findings can provide you with proof. However, enlightened people will be able to believe it, that is, accept it as truth with complete inner conviction because they let their heart speak more than their intellect. For the heart is in contact with Me, the human being feels the truth, he does not make use of his intellect in order to seek the evidence of what is an inner conviction for him. Strive towards the spiritual world and your thoughts will be spiritually inclined, i.e., you will also be able to grasp spiritual concepts. Create the world that is your actual goal on earth already .... Detach yourselves from the earthly world by not desiring it any longer, instead only seek to carry out your earthly task .... to shape yourselves into beings whose greatest aspiration rests in their love for Me and their fellow human beings and thus approach Me, which aim to bring their nature into line with Mine by doing deeds of unselfish neighbourly love .... And you will become brightly enlightened and capable of understanding the most profound wisdom which, however, will never originate from the earthly but only from the spiritual world and be exceedingly valuable. And nothing you are offered from above will seem contradictory to you, you will be able to believe, i.e., be fully convinced, you will know the truth ....

Amen



# Call to work ... The mission of God's servants ...

***B.D. 4174 from November 24th 1947, taken from Book No. 50***

How you will hear My call to work for Me and My kingdom depends on each of My servants' state of maturity on earth, because I need many labourers in My vineyard and everyone who is ready will be given the task he can meet in accordance with his ability, which again depends on his soul's maturity. One person will feel an inner urge to speak about spiritual things, to attract people to Me and lead his fellow human beings into faith, he will be called by Me through an inner desire. I will effectively place this task into his feeling and he will accept this feeling and comply with the inner desire.

Another person will hear the inner voice; he will follow an inwardly prompted train of thought. He will be unable to detach himself from ideas which will motivate him so much that he will have to discuss them, and I will bring him into contact with people to whom he can talk about his thoughts and enter into spiritual conversations which inspire the fellow human being to dwell on it, and thus he will likewise be invited to My kingdom.

But I will also make Myself audibly heard to My servants, whose particularly advanced state of maturity allows for

it. I will tell them clearly and understandably how they should work for Me, where they should go and what they should teach. And they will have a very special mission .... they will, encouraged by My spirit within themselves, preach My Word where My adversary is openly active .... where misguided teachings are spread by people who also call themselves My servants but who have not yet received the pure truth from Me because they refuse to accept it.

This mission requires a special ability .... it requires the gift of oratory, which My servant need not have but which will be given to him during his time of working for Me because he will have attained a certain degree of maturity allowing the working of My spirit through him. But at the same time the person has to intellectually grasp what he, prompted by My spirit, is saying. He has to be able to cope with hostile attacks and disprove any contention of My Word. Although he indeed merely has the task to spread My Word, the pure truth from Me, he will also have to speak freely since debates will arise which make intellectual activity indispensable.

Furthermore, the comprehensively informed challengers have to acknowledge My servant's spiritual superiority if they are to pay attention to what they will be told, as they will argue about important and profound problems which can only be handled by an awakened and spiritually enlightened human being with Me Myself as a teacher, and therefore also presents himself confidently and is not afraid to contradict those who pride themselves in

being intelligent and knowledgeable.

These servants will receive a special call; they will audibly hear My voice within themselves so that they will be completely certain of My will and then totally subordinate themselves to it. If they win one of these teachers over for Me and My doctrine, for the absolute truth, which they can only receive from Me Myself through you, it will be a great spiritual success because he, in turn, will then likewise campaign for the truth again and teach a larger circle, and thereby make My Word available to many people in its purest form and for the benefit of everyone.

Anyone ordained for this mission can call himself a servant of God with full conviction because he will speak on My behalf, he will only do My will, he will be guided by Me and take every step in My company, he will only be My mouthpiece so that I can manifest Myself to people without infringing their freedom of faith or will. For this reason I need such servants devoted to Me during the last days before the end because work has to be done everywhere and constantly in order to make My pure Word accessible to people, which is blessed with My strength but which also comes directly from Me and is sent to earth in order to liberate people from misconceptions ....

Amen

# Dogma ....

## ***B.D. 4294 from May 9th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

It is not a spiritual violation if a person from a certain school of thought is introduced to another one, if he is offered information which contradicts his knowledge, as long as he is able to accept or reject it of his own free will. However, if he is forced into acceptance by law, if he is placed into a punishable state, i.e. if, through threat of punishment, his thoughts and actions become constrained, then it is a violation which can never have good results for his soul. Therefore, My Word should always be preached, but never forcefully imposed on people. For this reason the transmission of pure truth from above is an act of purest freedom of will which always allows an unenlightened person the option to look at it as human fabrication, if the listener's will of rejection is stronger. Every human being is able to recognise the divine origin if he is genuinely interested in the pure truth and the continued progress of his soul. In that case he will certainly also be given the ability by Me to recognise the truth as such, because it is My will that the human being's thoughts should be within the realm of truth and I will provide him with every opportunity to recognise what is right.

But I, for My part, will never forcibly influence the will of

a person, therefore I also disapprove of people being spiritually forced by other people by teachings which, in the form of dogma, oblige their acceptance or else they are regarded as sinful. The human being has to be answerable for every offence against My commandment of love but I will never call him to account if his inner feeling prevents him from accepting a religious doctrine, even if it corresponds to the truth. Even then he will still not burden himself with sin, his longing for truth is just not sufficiently deep yet to allow him to recognise the truth as such. However, the acceptance of religious dogma without scrutiny and inner conviction is completely worthless for the development of the soul. Dogma is always unfavourable for the soul because the human being is being stopped from forming an opinion about a religious doctrine, yet without deep thought no conviction of faith can ever be gained.

People certainly need leaders if they do not endeavour their soul's spiritualisation of their own accord; nevertheless, wise guides should only teach and thus try to stimulate the heart and intellect because the connection to Me, to the spiritual kingdom, has to be established by every individual person himself. And the path to this end should be shown by My representatives on earth by the spreading of My Word. They should always allow Me to speak and never add their own words, decree commandments or impose commitments on people as if they were demanded by Me .... I allow every person to keep his freedom, and I Am only concerned with the

uninterrupted transmission and spreading of truth. Anyone who is searching for it is searching for Me and, truly, I will let Myself be found by him; but anyone who does not sincerely strive for truth will not derive any benefit from the acceptance of religious doctrines either, which are presented to him as dogma and therefore he believes that he may not reject them.

Every dogmatic instruction is a restriction of the freedom of will which was given by Me to people, hence it is a spiritual violation which does not correspond to My will and which My representatives on earth should fight against on My behalf. And I will bless every bearer of truth, I will give him the opportunity to spread the truth even though it will meet with opposition. Yet anyone who seriously wants it will recognise it and become thoughtful, and I will help him, I will illuminate his spirit and bless his will ....

Amen

**The good Shepherd ... 'My Own recognise My voice ...'**

***B.D. 4295 from May 10th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

I know My Own and My Own know Me ... And if I call

them, they will abide by Me, for they recognise the voice of the Father Who loves them and Whom they want to obey. But soon My call will go out to you, My Own, and I tell you so in advance because you feel safe, because you do not believe that the end is near. However, I need you and therefore I inform you of the fact that you will soon hear My voice, the voice of the good shepherd, who calls His sheep .... I need faithful guards for My flock, leaders who will guide My Own upwards across stony paths and cliffs, who will constantly look after My Own and draw their attention to the near end. These guides and guards will receive the truth from Me directly and convey it to you, they will emerge from the ranks of My Own and impart My Word from above to people; they will be in direct contact with Me, thus they belong to My Own themselves, so when they hear the call, they will know that the hour of their work for Me and My kingdom has come. Then they will establish such heartfelt contact with Me that regression can no longer be possible for a soul which serves Me, that it will never be left without strength, that within a very short time it will be able to speak from Me Myself and then it will fulfil its mission on earth, which is its purpose and goal of earthly life. Then it will only work for Me and gladly spread and advocate My Word, because it will be fully convinced that I Myself speak to it and therefore attach utmost significance to every Word. And the human being will receive strength in abundance. All feeling of weakness will fall away, every spiritual gift will be fully utilised and employed, and his work amongst people will be successful and richly

blessed. And this activity of yours will start shortly. I Am aware of your will and your weakness of faith, but I also know the change that will occur to you shortly, I know about the adversity and the suffering of the forthcoming time, but I also know your willingness of having faith and the strength of your faith. And, accordingly, I will provide you with strength and never leave you on your own, regardless of what might happen. Therefore, always abide by My Word, draw from it the strength with which I blessed it, become My children in truth who trustingly hand themselves over to the Father and believe that He will assuredly save you if you suffer adversity. For anyone who recognises My voice is My child and his life is My concern; anyone who believes in Me will also be able to hear My voice; yet anyone who questions the sound of My voice is not My child even if he believes that he is united with Me. The sheep recognise the voice of their shepherd and will follow him when he calls them. I, however, Am the good Shepherd who will not rest until He has found His sheep.

Amen

**Destiny ... 'Father, Your will  
be done ...'**

***B.D. 4296 from May 11th 1948, taken***



## ***from Book No. 51***

Every individual person's course of life is predetermined and has to be taken without grumbling and complaining if it is to have a favourable effect on the soul. But strong trust in God has to be present too, then every destiny can easily be endured, for it is shaped by God alone according to His will, only He is able to change every situation in life, He is able to change joy into grief but also suffering into joy if he is approached in heartfelt prayer, and He will do so if the human being in childlike trust tells Him of his problems and commends himself to His grace.

A long path has to be travelled from the abyss to the pinnacle, and this path cannot always be even or it would not lead to ascent. Obstacles have to be overcome, mountains have to be climbed, for the goal is up above and every progress is arduous without the assistance of the right guide. And as long as you humans walk with God Himself by your side as your guide, as long as you entrust yourselves to His guidance, you will not travel the path in vain, He will lead you upwards, and with His help you will be able to overcome every obstacle. And the steeper the path the shorter it will be and the higher you can climb; but when you have reached the pinnacle you will be able to look back and be grateful to your Guide Who enabled you to reach the goal, and every adversity will be over.

The more difficult a destiny, the higher the goals set for you and the brighter the light will shine, and all abysmal darkness will be defeated. God, however, is able to make

even the steepest path of ascent seem smooth to you if you hand yourselves over to Him as His children, if you accept every sorrowful event, if you always pray 'Father, Your will be done ....' Then He will not let you suffer, even in greatest adversity He will calm your soul and give you peace, He will powerfully work in you Himself and nothing will seem difficult and yet you continue to progress, for your will, your submission to His will, lets you partake of His strength, you will not consider anything a burden to you and always gladly and cheerfully cover your earthly path until the loving Father's hand takes hold of you and takes you into the Father's house, until you have reached the goal and return to the eternal home, into the land of light where no sorrow, no suffering nor adversity exist but only eternal blissfulness ....

Amen

## **Triumphant church ... One flock and one shepherd ...**

***B.D. 4304 from May 18th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

Those of you who follow Me, who desire Me, shall be of like mind in your thinking, speaking and actions. Then you

will form a strong congregation although it is small in numbers. Then My spirit will take effect in you and, being permeated by My spirit, you will be able to speak for Me and My kingdom. And your words will ignite, for you give evidence of them yourselves with your actions which express your thoughts and your will. Unity shall reign in My congregation because all are living in the same truth and all must be united with Me by love and therefore form a great soul which I call My church. I will always be present in this congregation, and when My Word is preached it is I Who speaks through the speaker. And this is the church against which even the gates of hell shall not prevail, for if I Am present in it Myself the adversary's activity will remain unsuccessful. This is the church which will triumph at the end of the days, for it embraces the flock whose shepherd I Am .... It will only be one flock and one shepherd. It will comprise people of all denominations who have liberated themselves from all external appearances and who, due to their eagerness of living to please Me, are in intimate contact with Me. And I will graze My sheep .... in evergreen pastures, where no cliffs, no thorns and no pits exist anymore, I will be in the midst of My Own in the paradise of the new earth, for then there will be no separation between us anymore, My sheep will not flee from Me any longer, they will not leave their shepherd, for they love Me and don't want to be without Me again.

You only have a little time left and should strive to enlarge your congregation, My true church, and therefore

you should exemplify the right way of life to them, you shall give love and through love try to gain the children of the world who are oblivious of the strength of love .... give them much love, so that it will kindle the flame in their hearts, so that they will get to know the pleasure of giving and of happiness, so that they will join you and thus also seek to make contact with Me. Be a good example to them and try to motivate them into doing the same in order to test the strength of love and of faith. Show them the path to Me, draw their attention to the right relationship with Me, explain to them that they must see their Father in Me to Whom they must submit like children in order to be elevated to true children who shall come into the Father's inheritance. And even if you can only gain a few it will nevertheless be a great merit to you, since the good shepherd delights in every sheep that once was lost and comes back to him, and thus I will also bless everyone who helps Me to increase My congregation before the final end has come ....

Amen

## **Prayer for poor souls ....**

***B.D. 4305 from May 19th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

Souls in darkness suffer terribly. Their strength is

depleted; it is a state of utter hopelessness as long as they don't know about the strength of love, which can lighten their fate. They wander around, their will is lethargic, and they will remain in this agonising state for an extremely long time if they do not receive help through prayer. You humans on earth are able to help them if you lovingly remember such poor souls and would like to ease their plight. For only love will give them strength. A prayer without love is worthless; it is a mere formality without effect. Only the degree of love determines the amount of strength they will receive. And thus you have to visualise the fate of these poor souls and know that they will beseech you to give them strength once they have felt the strength of love. They depend on your help as long as they are still in the abyss, as long as they cannot increase their strength themselves through knowledge, which, in the beyond, consists of loving actions for other needy souls.

Every kind, compassionate thought for those souls eases their plight, they feel this and then remain close to you. They ask for your loving intercession by pushing themselves into your thoughts. Don't forget them, don't turn your thoughts away from them. Give them a loving prayer and thereby help them to ascend. Alleviate their torment and, most of all, demonstrate the power of love to them, so that their love for other distressed souls arises and, by helping these souls, that they can liberate themselves from their own hardship. Their surroundings correspond to the state of their soul, dark and desolate,

and when a prayer for these souls rises up to God a faint state of twilight occurs which gives the soul a glimmer of recognition and benefits the soul after the constant darkness. The degree of love in the intercession determines the brightness of light emanated into the darkness, and the soul turns towards the ray of light always expecting and pleading for more rays. Grant them their wish, don't leave them alone in their need, and give them the help which you are still able to give to them. But also bring the Gospel to them in thought, remind them that they should lovingly consider others in their environment and help them to receive a blessing of light as well by giving to them in turn what they received from you. You can alleviate immeasurable amounts of suffering, you can participate in the redemption of these souls because the gift of strength through your prayer affects their will which then becomes active in the right way. The soul uses the strength it receives to lovingly help other poor souls, and it begins its ascent for which it will be eternally grateful to you ....

Amen

## **The light beings' intervention in destiny ...**

***B.D. 4306 from May 19th 1948, taken***

## ***from Book No. 51***

Everything has to be called divine providence, for everything, even the smallest happening, has been predetermined since the start. It is God's will that you should fully mature on earth. And therefore everything has been arranged very prudently so that time and again you will have the opportunity to develop further. Your will is also decisive for the shaping of your earthly life, for God foresaw your will an eternity ago and accordingly laid out every individual person's course of life. The inhabitants of the spiritual kingdom of light are God's spiritual assistants and take care of people in accordance with their degree of maturity, and thus they are God's representatives and serve every individual person as spiritual guardians according to God's will. They intervene in earthly life with their teaching methods, they give to and deny people as is most beneficial to them. Thus they have authority from God to please people with gifts just as they might lead people to maturity through failures. Although this, too, always happens according to God's will they are nevertheless allowed freedom of activity as soon as the human being trustingly appeals to them for help. They are able to grant this request or deny it, and their great love for people will always get it right, since they are as one with divine will. Nevertheless, calling upon the beings of light is an assured means of help, for the beings of light are exceedingly tolerant in their love for people, they rarely deny people a request if the aim of their request is not

obvious wrong-doing. And God will give His approval, regardless of how the beings of light decide, for they always share the same will with God. However, if it endangers the human soul the light beings will be adamant, for the danger to the soul must first be over before they can become receptive to a person's request and intervene helpfully. But then the light beings' activity will be evident, then the human being will be able to undertake anything, he need not fear any failure and earthly life will become easy and bearable for him, because his guardian angels grant him support and he can entrust himself to them in every way but without ever excluding God, instead, heartfelt dialogue with Him should precede every appeal to the beings of light, so that the will of the latter is always God's will and the help is always recognisable ....

Amen

**'Blessed are they that have not seen and yet have believed ...'**

***B.D. 4310 from May 22nd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

'Blessed are they that have not seen and yet have



believed.' These Words of Mine do not demand blind faith but stand for faith without proof, which I also expected of My disciples yet did not find. 'Because thou hast seen me, thou hast believed: blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed ....' I Myself stood before their eyes, My miracles convinced them, they recognised My wisdom, and thus they believed that I was God's Son and they followed Me. Their faith was indeed a convinced one, the inner voice told them who I was and their life of love, which was the reason why I chose them as My disciples, also gave them the power of realisation, and yet they often doubted Me; time and again these doubts surfaced and in order to strengthen them I revealed Myself to them many times, I showed Myself to them in My divinity, I illuminated their spirit, I opened their inner eye so that they were able to see the host of angels being of service to Me and thereby lose all doubt concerning My divinity. And yet their faith was weak .... I showed Myself with full strength, and they repeatedly wavered, so that I always had to reveal Myself anew, because they were intended to work as My disciples, because they were intended to advocate My teaching and bring the Gospel to people and therefore their faith needed to be deep. And because they saw Me, they believed .... But I call those blessed who do not see and yet believe .... For their faith is a far greater credit to them, as it cannot be proven, it can only be gained in the heart through activity of love, prayer and deliberation .... Although I also reveal Myself to them but in a way that only faith can recognise the manifestation as such and that without faith it can be

rejected. I call him blessed if he acquires his faith, if he has no need of proof, if he only accepts the working of the spirit as proof, which can certainly also be doubted but which is recognised by a person who lives a life of love and who therefore will become blessed one day ....

Amen

## **Audible Word ....**

***B.D. 4313 from May 26th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

The most sublime moment in earthly life happens when a person audibly hears the Word, when he hears the expression of My love in his heart like a spoken Word. For then he will perceive My closeness like a flood of light which permeates his heart and is also perceptible by the person's senses. The human being's maturity of soul influences how the inner voice can be heard. He can freely enjoy the blissful sensation if his soul is already far advanced, but in a low degree of maturity he might still have fight against inner obstacles. Nevertheless, he must have attained a certain degree of psychological maturity, otherwise he would never be able to receive the grace of the audible Word .... Hence it is a process of a direct transmission of light and strength, the person is in such intimate contact with Me that I Am able to manifest

Myself to him and be understood, which will never be the case with immature souls. But I must always stem My strength of love if the human being is to remain suitable for earthly life and not lose all earthly attachment due to his overwhelming happiness. And therefore I will only ever audibly manifest Myself for short periods of time until the end of the person's course of life who is so close to Me that I will credit him with My speech.

However, during the time of the end I will need servants on Earth who will diligently work for Me, and I will reward their enthusiasm by revealing Myself to them such that they are no longer able to harbour doubts in their hearts because they are faithful to Me, because they believe without being able to see and work for Me in this belief. I want to stimulate them into working ever more diligently for Me but I will only be able to express Myself audibly if their faith has already become so firm that they unconditionally believe in My activity, that they had previously already heard the voice of the spirit and recognised it as My voice, for the audible Word must never compel them into believing since it is the culmination of a strong faith and, in earthly life, the most desirable state to strive for because it makes a person indescribably happy and the thought of it can render him insensitive to suffering and distress of an earthly nature. His happiness and his convinced faith also offer his fellow human being the possibility to gain a stronger faith, so that his activity amongst people is extremely richly blessed and that every work he tackles will be

accomplished by him. His fellow human beings can certainly doubt him but anyone who audibly hears My Word within himself will no longer be able to doubt. And thus I reward the love and loyalty of My servant who stands up for Me and grant him the kind of happiness on Earth which the world cannot offer him ....

Amen

## **Spiritual debates are necessary for clarification ....**

***B.D. 4315 from May 27th 1948, taken  
from Book No. 51***

Do not let any opportunity pass you by when you can be active for Me and My kingdom, when you can speak about that which My spirit reveals to you. Questions will be raised which only you will be able to answer, and a multitude of opinions will be voiced, but you will be able to uphold only the right ones with conviction, for only you know the truth, only you are taught by Me and therefore need not fear any objection to the contrary since, on account of your knowledge, you will recognise every wrong point of view. However, your task consists of providing the impetus for spiritual debates, of not being

afraid to speak, of always regarding yourselves as My servants who avidly work for their Lord, and of always being mindful of your mission. If you are inwardly impelled you should give in and do what your heart tells you to do, and if you desire to speak, then speak, for then I Myself will urge you to do your spiritual work. It will always be My will that you should mention My Word from above, it will always be My will that people should exchange their thoughts regarding spiritual questions, and I Myself will always give you the impulse for this and pave the way for you, that is, I will direct people's thoughts to problems which I Am willing to explain. Thus you may always be certain that I Am present during all spiritual conversations and that I will guide your thoughts in the right direction and enable your mouth to speak and provide your intellect with the correct power of judgment. Therefore you can talk freely and you will always speak according to My will, for you are merely My tools through which I express Myself. But don't be hesitant and remain silent when it is necessary to talk. And you will be successful; your discussions will greatly contribute towards clarification and encourage people to voice their opinions which will always result in My light beings' intervention by trying to exert their influence. Then you will have ploughed the field first and distributed the seed which is to yield good fruits.

Amen

# **The Lord will come at a time of greatest adversity ...**

***B.D. 4319 from May 31th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

I will come to fetch you from utmost distress, as I have promised. There will be great adversity, and anyone following your destiny will recognise that only your strength of faith keeps you going, otherwise you would be too weak to bear up to the threats and violent actions by your enemies against whom you are completely defenceless. Yet only defenceless on the part of people, however, I will stand by your side as protection and this certainty must render you immune to all hostilities. This great adversity will only last for a short time, then I will come personally in order to fetch My Own into My kingdom and prepare them for life in the paradise on the new Earth. If you are strong in faith, if you attach significance to every one of My Words, then the final adversity will come to an end for you and, in the hope of My speedy arrival, you will stoically endure everything and wait for Me. And I will definitely come .... I will not leave My Own in distress, I will come when no earthly way out can be seen anymore; I will appear suddenly, only visible to My Own, and all My faithful followers will call

out to Me. Rejoicing and cheering My Own will blissfully and happily rush towards Me and raise their hands to Me. Whoever believes will be saved, for he will persevere even if the world is full of devils .... he knows that the hour of deliverance will come, he knows that I will not leave him and that all devils are powerless against Me. He will wait for Me and I will reward his profound faith with the greatest prize, with a new life in the paradise on this Earth. Why won't I take him to Me into the spiritual kingdom? Anyone who passes this final test of faith and recognises Me will be suitable to form the root of a new human race and a new generation will come forth from him, for the Earth shall be populated again with spiritually highly advanced people who will live their life for Me and with Me. And I Myself want to rear these people .... All people's degree of maturity is known to Me but especially of those who in the end will fight for Me against Satan. Such people are required by Me as progenitors for the new Earth. I will bless them, both physically and spiritually, and the new Earth will become a paradise-like abode for them, children and children's children will be in heartfelt contact with Me and the human race will be full of love. A new period of development will start again with spiritual beings embodied as human beings who are close to maturity and longingly strive towards Me and rapidly achieve final maturity of soul on earth. For the last days on the old earth will very quickly have matured the spiritual substance which was shortly due to be embodied as a human being, because it had fought the battle between

light and darkness and the final destruction of the old earth had temporarily released it. Since it had not yet attained the maturity to be free, it experienced this as pain, so that it will find the new form comforting and eagerly strive upwards, even though during the preliminary stage it will be unconscious of this success. For this reason, people will live in most wonderful harmony with all creations in their environment; the mineral, plant and animal world will entirely fit in with people's needs, profound peace will reign in nature as well as in the human heart, people's joyful togetherness with Me will make them the most blissful beings, My love will smooth their every path and their hearts will beat for Me with ardent love and all adversity will be forgotten .... And this time is not far away, soon I will come and fetch My community of brides, the great adversity will soon be over, for My promise must fulfil itself .... I will return in the clouds to fetch My Own and to judge the living and the dead ....

Amen

**The present time will lead  
to the end ....**

***B.D. 4320 from June 1st 1948, taken  
from Book No. 51***



And time and again I say to you: You will experience the end .... It is an urgent wake-up call which I send to people who presently inhabit the earth, it is a call which I will still intensify because you need to let go of your conviction that you still have much time left, because you need to spend thought on a sudden end and try to come close to Me. You have only little time left and very soon will be startled out of your calm, fear will enter your hearts which you can only banish by calling upon Me, by faithful prayer, which will provide you with strength and composure. The time is fulfilled, and even if you resist this thought .... you must prepare yourselves for whatever the end entails. It is you who will experience the last battle, who ought to win it; it is you who will experience the last Judgment, who will either see My coming in the clouds and the homecoming of the righteous or the final act of destruction take place, depending on your attitude towards Me, depending on your will and your love. It is you who must make a decision since you will not be able to enter the kingdom of the beyond after your death if you side with the adversary, but you will have to repeat the process through the creation of the new earth according to My eternal counsel. Do not expect the end in the future, get used to the idea that the present time will lead to the end, that you will be affected and that everything will come upon you as seers and prophets predicted according to My will. I can only ever draw your attention to it and as confirmation of My Word speak to you from above, and I will implement it shortly because there is not much time until the end.

I will inform you, whose will to serve Me made you My Own, once again of this just before the end, so that you will not experience the day unprepared, for even though you believe that My Word is truth you are still not taking My prediction seriously enough, you are still counting on a reprieve and not on My speedy arrival which, however, is about to happen to you. Yet you will yearn for My arrival when the time of the battle of faith comes and you enter the last stage of this earthly period. Then you will have learned to despise the world, you will have no further desire for earthly possessions, you will only yearn for My Word, and I will also always be with you in the Word and comfort you until the day when I will appear in the clouds, when your adversity has reached huge proportions and help can only come from Me. You must take it for granted that you will experience this time if I won't recall this or that servant of Mine prematurely, according to wise judgment. You will all be surprised as to how quickly events will unfold, which I predicted long in advance through the voice of the spirit. And once I appear the end will come upon you with giant strides. Anyone who is profoundly faithful will inwardly rejoice despite hardship and suffering, for he will know that he will be compensated one day, that sooner or later all adversity will have an end and that a new era will start again with the paradise, as I have promised ....

Amen

# **Significance of the spirit's voice ... Close to the goal ....**

***B.D. 4325 from June 7th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

You are hearing the voice of the spirit .... do you know what that means? It means that you are removed from the weight of earthly matters if you accept My Word, be it directly or through mediators, that you are in contact with the spiritual world which is beyond all matter. Do you know that you are already close to the goal, that you have almost overcome matter if My Word penetrates your heart and does not merely bypass your ear? Do you know that My Word is a ray from the kingdom of light which you may be permitted to enter after the death of your body, that you are therefore being honoured to be in the spiritual kingdom while your body is still earthbound? Do you know that you, if you receive My Word, are in connection with Me, your God and Father of eternity, your Creator and Preserver? That the connection is the final goal of every human being and that you therefore have reached the final goal already if you not merely intellectually accept My Word but allow it to affect your heart. And you may already consider yourselves incredibly fortunate on Earth, for you accept My

emanation of love noticeably and demonstrably, for I give Myself to you, I give you My flesh and My blood, as I have promised .... I take supper with you because you allowed Me to enter when I knocked at the door of your heart. And thus you are My exceedingly beloved and precious guests to whom I will only serve that which brings you joy, I will endow you with spiritual possessions, with everlasting treasures which you may take into eternity with you; I want to provide you with everything you desire, yet you will only request that which will be spiritually beneficial to you and make you happy. And all My angels and beings of light will be at your disposal, they will enlighten you if you desire such and your knowledge will increase, your fear will dwindle, you will be conscious of being in most intimate union with Me when you accept My Word, for My Word demonstrates My love for you ....

My Word is the greatest gift of grace, for I Myself dwell amongst you in My Word; hence you do not just accept it as an expression of Myself but you accept Me Myself in your hearts when I speak to you. Then I will have taken abode within you, as I have promised. Would you then still be lonely and forsaken? Can anyone on earth replace My closeness? And would you then still want to be fearful and sad, timid and of little faith? Just take care that every Word of Mine takes root in you, that it comes alive, that you don't just read or hear it but that you let it penetrate your heart; live your life such that I can work within you, that you will also soon hear the audible Word which will suppress all doubt, all anxiety and make you blissfully

happy. Then you will be willing to sacrifice everything, then your faith will be firm and steadfast too, then anything can confront you and you will not waver, for you will feel Me, you will know that you are protected in My proximity and are full of love for Me. My Word is a gift of grace for which you cannot be thankful enough, and you ought to demonstrate your gratitude by passing it on in the world, you should tirelessly work to spread it, you should inform your fellow human beings of My activity of love in you and through you in all people. Speak wherever the opportunity presents itself, for people need comfort and help in their spiritual distress, they need you, who receive My Word either directly or through mediators, as knowledgeable, experienced and on the path; don't be half-hearted and complacent in your work for Me; live up to My Word by being lovingly active and by providing earthly help wherever it is needed. Work in cooperation with Me and, in so doing, thank Me for My love for you, which manifests itself in My Word ....

Amen

## **Harmony of body and soul ....**

***B.D. 4326 from June 9th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

The body, too, should be well cared-for in order to maintain its strength and keep it in shape for its task .... to help the soul attain higher development. The body should not be entirely neglected because orderliness is My law as well, and orderliness includes everything which results in a supportive and progressive outcome. It is indeed the human being's task to detach himself from matter, to rise above it by liberating his heart from it and thus no longer be controlled by earthly material things. Nevertheless, the body also has to be in harmony with the soul, it has to provide the soul with inner calm which it can always achieve once it has calmed itself down, i.e., once its needs are met and it can attend to the soul's requirements.

The body can indeed make demands which betray materialistic thinking that by no means corresponds to My law of order, in that case it is not in harmony with the soul, and if the soul is already enlightened it will resist and refuse to give in to the body's desire even if it continues to persist in its demands. Then soul and body are silently fighting each other, then the body will be poorly endowed from all directions until it is content with being granted minor wishes, until it has accepted the soul's requirements. At that point it has entered the right order again and will also feel comfortable in that state since it then considers itself as the soul's supporter. Subsequently it can also be granted bigger wishes again since there is no more risk that the body will overrule the soul by getting so involved with the material world that it

totally neglects the soul.

The body must never control the soul, the material world must never be given priority, the soul must be the determining factor and supported in its desires and aspirations by the body, then the body can also be granted relief and fulfilment of its desires, for then the body will never make demands which are detrimental to the soul, and the soul will mature anyway, since it constantly endeavours to live in harmony with Me, to attain My pleasure and to come close to Me, and can obviously bypass the pleasures of the world. I want to give joy to people on earth too once these joys are no longer a danger for the soul; but only I can judge when this will be the case, and so I quite often let the body go short, just as I also provide people who are faithfully devoted to Me with private joys in order to demonstrate My love for them, which always wants to please ....

Amen

## **Community of 'Saints' ... Intercession pointless ...**

***B.D. 4328 from June 10th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

You humans need considerable support from the spiritual

world if you want to survive the last battle on earth, and this help is at your full disposal in every way by just asking for it. For this reason it should be explained to you what kind of help will be given to you and how you can request it. There exists, as you humans call it, the community of Saints, which helps you; but it is necessary to explain the term 'Saints' to you if you are to be truthfully taught and free from wrong notions. The beings of light are people's most faithful guides and helpers who are always ready as soon as they are called. But their assignment to people is determined by God in His wisdom, just as He, corresponding to their degree of perfection, also permeates the spiritual beings with light and strength. People, however, are unable to assess another person's degree of maturity and therefore have neither the right nor the ability to elevate him to sainthood, because only God knows the quality of his soul when he, having been liberated by physical death, enters the spiritual kingdom. Only God knows the relationship the person has had with Him on earth and to what extent he acted with love.

Loving activity is the decisive factor and could have given him light and strength in abundance while still on earth, enabling him to do extraordinary things on earth if he wanted to. But in the beyond God reserves the right to guide mature souls to the sphere of activity which corresponds to their degree of maturity. He allocates to them the activity in the spiritual kingdom, just as He determines what kind of help should be given to people on earth. The beings of light have abundant strength,



they can achieve anything because they work with God and in accordance with His will since they are constantly permeated by His strength. But the being of light moves entirely within God's will too, i.e. it cannot want anything but God's will since it has already established the union with God and is therefore totally absorbed in His will. However, since it possesses great wisdom it also recognises the inexpediency of many people's petitions and therefore also has to refuse when a fulfilment would be detrimental for the soul.

Helping people is a state of happiness for the beings of light, for this reason God allows people to request help from them. But it is not right to call upon specific Saints, because their activity and task could be entirely different and people, in their ignorance, might appeal to a being which is still far from perfect and then, due to their petition, become subject to and get unfavourably influenced by it. Because those who are called will appear, they immediately seek to get close to the caller and try to impose their thoughts on him, which might not correspond to the truth. Besides, the canonisation by people is mainly dependent on a way of life conforming to a church community, i.e. where piety is a prerequisite, although never demanded by God it is insisted upon by that church, and in accordance with the latter the canonisation takes place, which can never be the will of God. Consequently, not everyone canonised may be a being of light, whereas there are many beings of light in the spiritual kingdom whose way of life in fact

corresponded to God's will but did not conform to the rules of an ecclesiastical community. All beings of light possess God's strength which they want to use, thus people were entrusted into their care whom they should and can help to reach perfection, providing human will is not opposed to it. Appealing to the beings of light will never be in vain, whereas calling upon specific beings may be good but could also be harmful even though help is expected from them. However, the idea to gain intercession by the beings of light is misguided ....

Prayer is an appeal to God. It establishes the relationship between the human being and God, which is requested by God Himself because the appeal demonstrates that the person's will is directed towards Him. Thus in people's opinion, the beings of light, which are already in closest union with Him, are supposed to establish this relationship with God. This would relieve the person from establishing the relationship himself which, however, is purpose and goal of his earthly life, because only the contact with God provides the influx of strength without which the soul is unable to mature fully. But the being of light cannot convey strength to the person, because even in the spiritual kingdom are laws which have to be observed by its inhabitants in the knowledge that they were given by God's love and wisdom. The beings are willing to help in every instance and in accordance with God's will, consequently the human being has to please God's will first in order to be considered by Him directly or through the beings of light, which truly will never

leave anyone without help if God's will approves. Hence the appeal for help to the beings of light will never be in vain, but an appeal for intercession is futile. Because the child itself should trustingly approach the Father so that the Father's love can give Itself to the child, and because this intimate relationship will never be established if the human being believes that he can also reach the goal through intercession. God is a God of love. He does not want people frightened to come to Him, He wants to be the Father of His children and not a strict judge and ruler. People try to please the latter through intercession but approach the former trustingly, and God asks for this trust from His living creations, because His infinite love belongs to them and He will also fulfil their every prayer ....

Amen

## **Psychic beings ... 'Deliver us from evil ...'**

***B.D. 4341 from June 18th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

Direct communication with the spiritual kingdom can only take place when spiritual forces are called upon in thought or in prayer. This is why the transfer of spiritual

information is always an act of free will if beneficial forces are to be effective, whereas harmful forces aim to deactivate the human being's will in order to impose their inclination of will on him, which happens when a person surrenders his will, thus when he, in an unconscious state, hands himself over to beings which are far removed from the truth. Hence, it is advisable for a person who is afflicted by dark forces to commend himself in a conscious state to God's love and grace, to appeal to Him for His protection and support against the beings pestering him and to call upon the spirits of light to take special care of him and to stay close to him. This call for the benign beings entitles them to help him, which will subsequently leave the dark forces powerless. Human will is too weak to offer resistance in the case of psychically inclined people, i.e., those who open themselves to the world of the beyond and its influences, who therefore feel themselves attracted to invisible beings. The forces of darkness particularly exert their influence on the body, taking possession of it as soon as the human being's will relinquishes its resistance. However, the body's appropriation results in the fact that the human being's thinking ability slows down, that the person finds himself in a dream state and instead of voicing his own thoughts he expresses those of the occupying force corresponding to this spiritual being's way of speaking. Thus, a different soul has effectively taken over the body, whilst the person's own soul sleeps and even afterwards, in a conscious state, cannot remember anything that the person had said or done.

Since the spiritual forces are stronger than him, the person will not be held to account during this time, nevertheless he should protect himself from this exploitation by dark forces by handing himself over to benevolent beings as well as to God Himself, by constantly praying 'Deliver us from evil ....' For it is evil if a human being is controlled by those spiritual forces so that his thoughts and actions are no longer his own but are transferred onto him by a strong-willed power. Wicked forces must always be resisted, for they are constantly close and trying to make the most of every opportunity, which presents itself when the human being, mentally seeking the spiritual kingdom, has not established a bond with God first and thus is without protection if he is harassed by the forces of darkness. Calling upon Jesus Christ against the enemy of the souls must always precede every spiritual contact, then a person need not be afraid of falling into the hands of evil forces, for countless beings of light hear the call and come quickly in order to protect and teach. This prevents the approach by evil forces, because the name of Jesus Christ will banish all beings opposed to Him, just as He will give increased strength to those who are in favour of Him and voice His name with deep devotion.

Amen

## **Inner life ... Withdrawing**

# into seclusion ...

***B.D. 4343 from June 20th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

Go into seclusion and allow Me to speak to you, and you will hear an abundance of wonderful things, a world of ideas will be revealed to you which otherwise would remain unknown to you, for I Myself will guide you into regions which are new to you and yet seem appealing to you once you have entered them. Spiritual instruction is extremely valuable because you will keep it forever; it is truly far more beneficial for you than any increase of earthly knowledge, for all this will fall away or be forgotten the moment you physically die, spiritual knowledge, however, shines like a bright light and casts a gentle gleam which attracts entirely uninformed souls because it affects them beneficially. Thus you may accept spiritual knowledge from My hand if you withdraw into seclusion, if you enter into silent communication with Me in your closet. You should seek seclusion, that is, leave the world behind you, live an inner life in frequent union with Me .... And I will always be a willing Teacher for you Who will convey the knowledge you need, which you are missing and which makes you happy. As long as you are attracted to the world, you will find it difficult to make spiritual contact with Me, for I stand outside the world, yet I Am at all times within reach for you if you turn away from the world. I Am always available, but

whether you have time for Me remains up to you, nevertheless, every minute you think of Me is a blessing for you.

Therefore gather spiritual wealth, it is extremely precious, and make good use of your time, be aware of the fact that it will never be wasted if you enter into contact with Me, if you withdraw from the world, and remember that you merely acquire illusive possessions with every service the world demands of you. Only love for other people has the same value, because it equally results in a connection with Me and enables My working in you .... So you should often talk to Me if you want to gather eternal treasures for yourselves. I will always assign the right task for you, I will guide you to where you can be lovingly active, I will send people to you whom you can inspire into discussions which direct their thoughts to Me again, as your Teacher I will provide you with the knowledge which you should pass on to them, and I will always be with you, because every connection from earth to Me is beneficial and will help you to ascend. For this is My promise to you 'I remain with you until the end ....' Understand these Words and realise that you yourselves have to enable Me to be present with you through your will, that you must withdraw into solitude and lift your thoughts up to Me .... Then I will be and remain with you for all eternity ....

Amen

# **Earth rotations ... Earthly tremors ...**

***B.D. 4348 from June 23rd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

For a considerable period of time already the earth has been rotating around its own axis with extraordinary speed. Admittedly, the constant rotations are by no means noticeable to the human being, but only because he is on earth and they can only be observed from outside the earth. Nevertheless, changes in the cosmos are perceptible which are caused by this phenomenon. It is like a regular trembling which can be felt more or less faintly when the body is in a resting position and susceptible to the slightest movement. This phenomenon will lead to the total dissolution of Earth after an incredibly long period of time but will be hastened through human intervention on account of which the conclusion of this epoch can be traced back to human influence, even though it has been included from the start in the divine plan. The earth would actually have an inconceivably long lifespan, i.e. its existence would be guaranteed for an infinitely long time, yet God's will allows itself to be determined by human will, God allows people to accomplish what will cause them even the greatest harm. In His plan of eternity all changes in the cosmos are established according to His wisdom and love.



But the scientifically educated human race does not want to know anything about a change with inconceivable consequences, and yet it constantly takes place.

This change .... an excessively fast rotation of Earth .... will also trigger the natural disaster which has been proclaimed by seers and prophets since the beginning of the period of Salvation and which is now revealed again through the spirit of God. This process is humanly not easily explainable, however, simply said, the rotations will increase and stop for seconds, which will manifest itself as earthly tremors of such tremendous effect that people will believe that the end of the earth has come. No equivalent to it can be found on earth, for it is an expression of power which comes from the universe and is unknown to earthly science. The consistency of the stars activates such forces, and the interior of the earth will be affected by them and to a certain extent therefore be moved beyond the law, which always manifests itself in a destructive manner, yet is sporadically allowed by God for the purpose of dissolving even the hardest matter in order to release the constrained spiritual substances within. And this act is approaching soon but will only be the spectacle of a few seconds, yet with preceding signs which by themselves can already be called catastrophic because they generate indescribable panic amongst people and therefore will have to be considered as being within the timeframe of the catastrophe. Nevertheless, everything is eternally predetermined and God's plan will come to

pass, as it is written ....

Amen

# **Unity with God ... School of suffering ...**

***B.D. 4352 from June 25th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

You cannot grasp how much I yearn for unity with My living creations which motivates Me to constantly let you go through a school which shall result in your soul's maturity, for unity cannot take place without a specific degree of maturity. My love is truly only concerned for your well-being, yet the fact that I use means which let you doubt My love is due to your own will, albeit unconsciously, for your attitude towards Me provokes this use because you won't conform to the laws of order which promote your maturity of soul without suffering .... because you won't live up to the law of order, which cannot be avoided if you want to mature fully. And thus My teaching methods will become increasingly harsher the further you distance yourselves from love .... But now the time of learning has come to an end and every human being will have to take the test. Anyone who passes it will become blissfully happy in unity with Me, however,

anyone who fails cannot be spared repeating the school, which he will have to attend under harder conditions if he wants to reach the goal one day. I won't let My living creations fall, and sooner or later the final union must and will take place, nevertheless, it can still take infinitely long periods of time in view of the fact that the human being determines the time of his redemption himself, for he voluntarily has to enter into unity with Me, I can only ever support him but will never force him.

Let Me tell you that I love all My living creations and that My love will never cease, but I will nevertheless bring My eternal plan to fruition even if you humans cannot discover any love therein. But it concerns you, your spiritual ascent, it concerns your eternal life .... At the moment you, who live on earth, are still spiritually dead with the exception of a few who are spiritually reborn. As yet you don't feel the life within you, and if you finish your earthly life in this state you will descend into a weakness which is the equivalent of death for you, you will be in utter darkness and completely without control and strength but conscious of the fact that you exist .... This state is so agonising that My love wants to save you from it, and this is why I try to motivate you into coming alive on earth already, I try to enlighten you so that you will strive towards the state of life of your own free will. All obstacles in your life shall help you become active, and activity is life. Earthly activity comes to an end at the moment of physical death, but you shall be active in the spiritual kingdom and for this you must have passed the

school of the spirit successfully which also has to be a school of suffering for you or you will not reach full maturity. Nevertheless, you have My assurance that I love you and that every event which causes you sorrow is only based on My love. I want to bring you up to become My children because My Fatherly love does not want to lose you and because it is My will that you, My living creations, should not live far-away from Me but unite with Me and become blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Disintegration ... Work of destruction ... Renewed banishment ...**

***B.D. 4353 from June 25th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

Spiritual progress can never be achieved in a world of hatred and unkindness, and therefore the earth is failing in its real purpose of helping the spiritual substances embodied in it to attain higher development. Therefore the time has come for the manifold creations, which are intended to accomplish this purpose, to be dissolved and to release the spirits for the purpose of receiving new forms. For humanity, however, this disintegration signifies

a fall from its already achieved advancement into the deepest abyss; it signifies a return into hardest matter and a repeated process through all works of creation on the new earth. But due to their lack of love people are completely ignorant and have neither time nor will to dwell on what lies ahead of them if the information is presented to them. They do not concern themselves with spiritual problems and this, too, is a sign that the time of the disintegration of the old earth has come. They are not open to any relevant clarification, they only live for their earthly interests and refuse all spiritual conversations. Consequently, admonitions and warnings are fruitless.

If, however, there is no further likelihood for a spiritual change to take place on earth, if a spiritual forward motion is completely out of the question, then only a complete decline can be expected; but God will not allow this to happen, instead He will transform the earth prior to it. This certainly involves a complete work of destruction yet it is intended in the plan of eternity in order to provide the completely degenerated human race, that is, the bound souls within, with the possibility of higher development again, because God's infinite love will never let anything fall completely, even if it is still totally opposed to Him. Earth's final destruction is therefore an act of supreme compassion at the same time, yet it will come to pass without fail in order to prevent an even further decline of people who, due to their heartlessness, have already severed every connection with God and widened the gulf between Him

and themselves and thus lack all strength for higher development. And this is why God will come to their assistance, He will deprive them of their external cover and confine the spirits again, so that the infinitely wide chasm, which was established by people's free will, shall become less again in the state of compulsion, so that the spiritual substance will come closer to God again in the constrained state and once again receive the opportunity to use its freedom of will correctly in order to attain God, if only after an infinitely long time ....

Amen

## **Supplement and explanation regarding no. 4348 ....**

***B.D. 4355 from June 27th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

Explain the process to yourselves like this: The faster the earth moves, the shorter the period of time it takes for one rotation, and the stronger becomes the atmospheric pressure that is caused by its movement. Normally this atmospheric pressure should be felt on the earth's surface, but this is not the case. Hence this is already a scientifically unexplainable deviation from the natural

laws, therefore it follows that the natural laws applicable to earth lose their validity outside of it.

Nevertheless, this fast rotation affects the earth's surface insofar as a crust is being formed which is a suitable growth medium for vegetation, therefore a continuous habitation of the earth's surface is only possible due to its perpetual rotation, due to the generation of a force which affects the ground, that is, which does not spread outward and dissipates but works from the outside towards the interior of the earth. This force is life-giving but cannot be explained by human intellect, precisely because it arises and is effective beyond the law. Were the earth to stop its velocity all life on it would solidify, on the other hand, however, an increased velocity would encourage abnormal growth but also penetrate and affect the interior of the earth and bring about eruptions which would endanger the earth's core and jeopardise its continuation. Such increased velocity is currently happening and its effects will also soon become apparent. If the final result is to be avoided the excessive energy has to find a sphere of activity .... it has to have an explosive effect in places, which consequently takes the form of a natural disaster. This will slightly reduce the speed of the rotations, the newly generated energy will find new soil which it can animate with plants and animals and the continued existence of earth will be guaranteed for a brief period of time again, until human determination once again triggers forces which have not been completely ascertained as yet and which have an

all-destructive effect, because they can effectively be described as adverse forces, i.e., they work from within towards the outside and the opposing actions of both forces signifies total destruction, which can certainly be explained to but not understood by people .... Spiritually advanced scientists will easily be able to understand this process, for they no longer look at the activity of natural forces beyond the law with so much disbelief, because they know that the sphere beyond earth is an area which cannot be fathomed with earthly reasoning power, because they are subject to other natural laws than those applicable to earth.

Every celestial body is a world unto itself, and in every celestial body the will of God's love has expressed itself differently, because His countless thoughts are implemented by His might and strength and every thought testifies to most profound wisdom. According to human opinion such manifold diversity of God's creations cannot exist, since the power of imagination is limited, but God's thinking is not limited and no obstacles exist for His creativity. The fact that the human being, the inhabitant of one of God's countless creations, would be able to completely ascertain God's reign and activity is entirely out of the question, for he instantly rejects what appears to be impossible but what is always possible for God. Thus, the timing of the movements of earth, its path and its composition can certainly be calculated and explored, yet only ever as far as the earth's applicable natural laws which are known to people form the basis of



it. Anything over and above this is beyond his knowledge and intellect. But an 'over and above' does exist, or earthly science would be able to accurately determine when and in which form as well as for what reason the final destruction of earth will happen. It is incapable of establishing this, however, it is not proof that the destruction of earth will not take place. Here faith is placed in opposition to science .... anyone who values science more negates what faith affirms .... God proclaims the end of this earthly period; He proclaims a total change of the earth's surface along with the disappearance of all life on, in and above the earth .... This process is completely unknown to science .... hence it is an indication that a supernatural activity caused by God will happen; although not beyond natural law from His point of view yet for people who do not know all natural laws, all forces to the point that they can indicate and calculate such an event, but that investigations also have to be conducted on the basis of faith if they are to produce truthful results. Only then will the researcher also receive access to the area which otherwise remains closed to people, then he will be assisted and enlightened by spiritual co-workers, then he will also be able to have an insight into God's plan of Salvation, and much will be comprehensible and acceptable to him which his intellect would otherwise have discarded ....

Amen

# **Marriage ... In the presence of God and before the world ...**

***B.D. 4357 from June 29th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

You have to find each other in love otherwise a union is not blessed by Me. Marriage is togetherness; it is a living together in most heart-felt harmony. Marriage is a state which cannot be lawfully created but its prerequisite is always profoundly unselfish love which, once it is kindled within the heart, can never be extinguished again.

Because the right kind of love unites the hearts, it is not a physical love which looks for fulfilment in the intoxication of senses, it is not a demanding love. Ever-giving and happiness-imparting love is the foundation of a marriage which is blessed by Me.

Marriage is a sincere community of two people whose hearts feel pure love for each other .... A marriage like that cannot be undone because true love can never cease. And this marriage will take place as soon as two people commend themselves to Me for the blessing of their bond. Then they are husband and wife before Me and they shall remain together until death separates them. Anyone who gets married in this way will always

have a sense of belonging to the other person even if external circumstances separate them. My blessing will rest upon them because the most sacred feeling, having its source in Me, was the cause of the relationship, which is the primary condition for a marriage intended by Me ... But pure love is rarely to be found on earth these days, although marital bonds are nevertheless still formed. This is not against My will because humanity should reproduce itself, given that countless souls are awaiting their embodiment in order to cover their last stage of development in the world of matter. Hence the marriage between two people has to be given an externally recognisable form, a structure which incorporates certain laws, obligations and rights. Without them people would contravene My necessary order too easily and thereby jeopardise their children's correct education which, however, is of utmost significance for their spiritual development. The legal form of the marriage ceremony is therefore in accordance with My will, but whether My particular blessing rests on it depends on the degree of mutual love between both husband and wife, whereas it depends on My blessing whether a wedding ceremony is being conducted before people or in My presence.

If a marriage ceremony is conducted for other reasons without deep mutual love, then the relationship will certainly be valid before the world, and I would not withhold My support if it is requested, but it is not a marriage in the true sense of the word which is pleasing to Me, it is not the state of union wanted by Me which,

due to love, becomes an act of happiness that will be blessed by Me. Because the giving principle will always be predominant in the presence of pure love, consequently I, Who Am love Itself, will never be excluded from a marriage like that, and My spirit will govern the people and work in those who step before Me as husband and wife and ask for My blessing ....

Amen

## **Luminous phenomenon before the catastrophe ...**

***B.D. 4359 from July 1st 1948, taken  
from Book No. 51***

My intervention will be preceded by a major spiritual campaign, which will be intended to fortify the faith of My Own and will be a final indication of the forthcoming natural event. My heavenly messengers will be instructed to show themselves to My Own in the shape of luminous phenomena which clearly and distinctly can be seen in the firmament so that all self-deception is excluded, and My Own will detect the same phenomenon whereas unbelievers will see nothing and ridicule all references to them as fantasies.

And this will be the last sign .... Then you will be able to

safely prepare yourselves for the hour of My manifestation through the elements of nature. Then let go of all earthly things and just take care of your souls .... Then receive My Word with complete devotion, let Me speak to you in the Word and form a deep and heartfelt bond with Me so that I can be present with you in utmost hardship which will befall you very soon afterwards. Then just take care of those around you who fearfully observe the changes in nature, briefly explain it to them and refer them to Me, speak of Me as a God of love Who looks after every person and excludes no-one who calls to Him for help ....

And then wait for Me, don't be afraid when My voice resounds with such force that people will tremble .... Stay calm and collected and know that nothing will happen to you if it is not My will, and that I have promised you My protection if you unite with Me in prayer. Then I will be present with you and you will distinctly feel My closeness .... And then that which I have proclaimed to you through My spirit will be fulfilled .... For My Word is and remains eternal truth ....

Amen

# **Parable of the good shepherd ....**

## ***B.D. 4360 from July 2nd 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

I want to give you a parable, and you should learn from this how I want My Word to be understood: My earthly children are like a flock of scattered sheep which an enemy's ill will had chased from the shepherd's view into all directions. And the shepherd, who loves his sheep, goes in search for them. He looks for them in the most hidden places, he scales mountains and clammers down gorges, he calls and cajoles and does not rest until his flock is rounded up again. He helps the lambs that lost their way and cannot return by themselves, he follows the long tracks where they already went too far, he takes the tired lambs and carries them back on his shoulders, he leaves none to their fate, to his enemy, who might rob him of it and add it to his own flock. Because he knows his sheep, and his sheep know him and follow his voice .... And the good shepherd's heart rejoices when he has found all his sheep again, when his full flock is in his stable, when every lost lamb has found its way home ....

You all are My sheep, you belong to My flock, which nevertheless has free run and therefore can also go astray if it strives for another goal but Me. The hostile shepherd is My adversary who tries to turn you away from Me. And he will often succeed .... My sheep stray from the path I take with My flock, they seek to scale the heights .... You humans seek honour and riches and for their sake leave the path. You fall into ravines and pits,

vices and lusts capture you, step by step you descend into the abyss and can be grateful if you get caught by hedges and undergrowth .... if second thoughts arise in you which you don't ignore and are thus spared the deepest fall until your Saviour arrives.

Still others graze in strange pastures; they go astray and don't find their way back to their stable .... These are the people who thoughtlessly wander through earthly life, who are beneficiaries of actions which do not correspond to My will but give them great earthly advantage. They do not deem themselves bad, they are half-hearted, neither for nor against Me, they wander through the earthly valley oblivious of their earthly task, they have to be startled and chased back, so that they take refuge in My arms again Who, as a good shepherd, is ready to receive them at anytime.

I have to search for My lost lambs everywhere .... My call has to be heard everywhere and thus My voice has to sound time and again .... time and again I have to approach people in My Word and call them back into the Father's house. My Word is the call of the good shepherd, My Word is conveyed to human beings with love, My Word penetrates into all corners, wherever it finds entry into people's hearts. And anyone who does not follow My call will stray ever more or descend ever deeper .... And yet, the arm of the good shepherd will reach him one day, even if it takes ages .... Even the person who has resisted Me for a long time will return to Me one day .... one day he will tire of his wrong path and allow Me to lift him

onto My shoulders, one day he, too, will willingly follow the good shepherd, the sound of His voice will entice him .... He will recognise it as the Father's voice and follow Me, and I will guide him into the Father's house and prepare a feast for joy for him of finding again what had been lost ....

Amen

## **Free will ... Destiny ...**

***B.D. 4365 from July 6th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

Nothing happens in human life that doesn't affect eternity. Every action, every omission, every thought, every direction of will has an effect on the soul's development, and therefore everything that occurs in human life belongs within the scope of destiny. The human being has free will and the use of this will is decisive for eternity. Every deed or omission, every thought, is first preceded by will, and its decision determines his course of life. For although he is unable to control every event in an earthly way, since God has reserved the right for Himself to direct his course of life according to wise judgment, his will has nevertheless already been taken into account and forms the basis of his destiny. The human being's free will is being doubted



because it cannot always carry out its intention, yet the intention cannot be denied the human being even if the opportunity to implement it has been removed from him. The direction the will takes determines the soul's development, the failure of a once prepared plan does not revoke the will, and for this will the human being has to be answerable one day, even if the implementation did not come about. Changing a wrongly orientated will into the right direction is the purpose and task in life. And this is why even the slightest happening benefits this change of will and is God's will or permission, regardless of whether it is the result of a wrongly or correctly used will. And thus it should be understandable to you humans that you will have to accept every stroke of fate as being predetermined a long time ago and only conducive to your higher development. You must therefore ask yourselves to what extent it was encouraged by your will and whether this will was right or wrong, to what extent it corresponded to divine will and thus you must try to derive a benefit from even the smallest experience, so that your destiny will truly affect you in an educational way and, if it is arduous, will also be successful for your life in the beyond. You are always in God's hands, that is, He takes care of your course of life, after all, He wants to draw you close to Him and win you for eternity. If you accept everything from His hand, always remembering that they are educational means which are used by a loving Father for His children, then you will always want, think, speak and act according to His will, and your earthly life will not be lived in vain, for then you submit

yourselves to God's will and can't help yourselves but use your free will correctly ... as your task in life requires ...

Amen

## **Transformation of earth ... Change ... Disintegration ...**

***B.D. 4368 from July 8th 1948, taken  
from Book No. 51***

You must always remember that nothing on this earth can last forever, and therefore even earth itself will not last, thus it has to change if it will not completely disintegrate in its fundamental substance. The latter will occur after an infinitely long time, but a transformation of earth will take place shortly. Just as earthly matter achieves its higher development through the dissolution of an existing form in order to rise again in a new form, so the earth as such is also subject to temporary changes, and all creations on earth will enter a new stage of development. Not just the constrained spirits within every work of creation strive to ascend but matter itself has to undergo this path of higher development by becoming increasingly softer, thus sheltering the spirit which, due to its maturity, is able to escape its form faster. Consequently hard matter, which has already

existed for a very long time, has to be dissolved eventually too. Its development has to be continued in softer matter and new hard matter needs to be produced to shelter the spiritual substance which, in the stage of knowledge .... as a human being .... had failed and joined God's adversary.

Such total transformations of earth's external forms only take place within certain periods of time and are therefore unbelievable to people, because each such transformation happened so long ago that the truth can no longer be ascertained and upheld. Although a developmental period is infinitely long it will nevertheless come to an end one day.

People cannot verify or calculate the time when the end can be expected and neither can they deny it, but God wants people to believe in it because He Himself has revealed it to people through His Word and, through seers and prophets, has pointed it out time and again. That the destruction of earth, i.e. its total change, is only a matter of faith is due to the fact that the human being has to bring about the change of his soul in utmost freedom of will, and this would be instantly restricted if the timing of the end could be calculated. The beginning and end of an earth period are so far apart because the human being has to decide to believe it or reject it completely, without being forced into either. But as soon as he thinks about it and observes the growth and decay in nature he can see the process of disintegration and transformation repeat themselves so often that he will

also apply this change to the creation 'earth' and find it easy to believe in an end. But he will never be told when it will happen because such knowledge would be detrimental to the soul. God, however, reveals that the end of this earth is approaching soon and good for him who believes His Word and prepares himself. The day will not come unexpectedly for him; the thought of the end will no longer terrify him in view of the blissful state God has promised His Own after the transformation of this earth ....

Amen

## **Signs before the catastrophe (Anxiety of people and animals) ....**

***B.D. 4371 from July 11th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

People will be seized by immense anxiety shortly before I appear through the forces of nature. The event will announce itself such that people and animals will feel nervous and inwardly sense that something is about to happen in nature. Strange behaviour amongst animals will be particularly apparent, they will attempt to flee in a certain direction and suddenly turn back as if driven by

an invisible power. And this behaviour will cause apprehension in people who realise that imminent danger is approaching against which they cannot defend themselves.

And thus everyone will worriedly wait for what is to come. And you, My servants on earth, should make good use of this time for it will be a short reprieve when people will still listen to your words because they will be looking for an explanation for the unusual sensations experienced by people and beasts. Then draw their attention to My Word, prepare them for My appearance and refer them to Me so that they will take refuge with Me when the hour has come that I will speak. At the same time you should unite with Me in thought so that you may be strong and able to support those who are unbelieving or of little faith.

You have to prove yourselves and will be able to do so if you call to Me in advance and in the hours of greatest need. I will draw your attention to the signs in advance and give you the opportunity to observe your environment so that you will see that everything I told you will come to pass, that an oppressive feeling and restlessness will burden people, the cause of which you know and thus you will be able to speak effectively where necessary. And once again you will experience a situation where the person who lives in love will believe you, whereas the heartless person, although listening to you, will derive no benefit from it. Until the hour comes when I will speak from above .... And there will be raging and gusting in the air, no one will take notice of the other any

longer but only be concerned for his own life. Every person will try to escape but hear the same raging and gusting from all directions and, depending on his attitude to Me, he will be affected by the event .... he will stay alive or be killed by the natural disaster, as My wisdom has recognised and determined since eternity ....

Even though it is seemingly calm and there are no recognisable signs as yet .... do not believe that you are safe because the day of the natural event will come without fail, and the unbeliever will be able to see it for himself, if he still has time to think about it .... I have spoken and revealed it to you through My spirit, and I will speak through nature with a voice which can be heard by everyone. Anyone who does not believe the first voice will have to hear My voice from above .... But even then he will be at liberty to witness it as a mere play of nature or remember My predictions and believe that I want to reveal Myself so that you, who do not acknowledge the voice of the spirit, should hear Me. And blessed is he whose life is spared as he will still have a short time of grace at his disposal which he will be able to use to make up for what he has neglected up to then, in order to prepare himself for the end, which will soon follow the event in nature ....

Amen

**The right prayer .... 'Father,**

# **Your will be done ....'**

***B.D. 4372 from July 11th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

No prayer rising up to Me in complete trust of My help is in vain. For this trust testifies to faith in My love and My might. And through such prayer a person has also established the right relationship with Me .... he approaches Me like a child to its father. A father, however, will never deny himself to his child unless the child appeals to him for something completely unwholesome in which case the father will protect it but also instruct it accordingly so that the child's trust will not be disappointed. This instruction happens in a way that second thoughts will arise in a person as to whether his prayer was appropriate, that he doubts his right to make such a request, and then a true child will always add to its request 'Father, Your will be done ....' And I will grant what is good for him and satisfy his wish in a different way, for My love wants to give and please if I Am called upon in the right way. This is why you should always try to increase your strength of faith, for then the fulfilment of every wish will be granted to you. Greater strength of faith will always be accompanied by ever more activity of love, more activity of love assures you increased knowledge, and thus a person who is knowledgeable and lives in truth will not appeal for something which is harmful to him and therefore always find fulfilment

because he believes. You should know that you cannot but think correctly if you gained the right faith through love and, in this state, send a prayer up to Me. Remember My promise 'Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you ....' And thus you may at all times present your wishes to Me as true children and I will never disappoint your faith ....

Amen

## **The Flood ... Last days ... Worldly progress ....**

***B.D. 4374 from July 13th 1948, taken  
from Book No. 51***

Shortly before the end it will be just like it was at the time of the Flood. People will have a great liking for all worldly pleasures, they will indulge their physical longings and vices, they will lead an immoral and unethical way of life and send no thought to the One above, Who is Lord over heaven and earth. For they will have no more faith .... The spiritual level will be the lowest ever since the beginning of this developmental period. Mocking and blaspheming they will confront the few believers with hostility, pursue them and deny them everything they need for living. They themselves,



however, will feast and gorge themselves, they will live and love .... but their love will be

false and their way of life wrong, for the devil's servants will populate the earth in the last days, and the disintegration of earth will merely end a state which no longer allows people's higher development.

It will be a time of sinfulness which will go beyond all imagination. God will be completely displaced and those who believe in Him will be in danger of being killed .... And God Himself will put an end to this period, the last day will arrive suddenly and unexpectedly amid the ecstasy of the world in which the people of the last days constantly live .... Hence, prior to this an apparent progress will be noticeable, everything of a worldly nature will be offered to people, their demand for worldly things will be extreme and everyone will unscrupulously grant himself whatever his mind desires; the strong will fight the weak and the winner will be the one who heartlessly acquires what he doesn't deserve, because he is supported by Satan himself who bestows material favours on him and incites him to increased enjoyment of life.

Sin will escalate to an alarming extent and Judgment will come to pass when no-one expects it. For once people have reached this level of development they will have to be devoured by the earth, as they will have become true servants of the devil and completely deny God. And then the hour of accountability will come to all sinners, the

day of God's Justice will arrive, the Day of Judgment will come to all who belong to God's adversary and the day of Recompense for the few who are faithful to God, who persevere and don't fall prey to the temptations of the world .... as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture .... A salvation period will come to an end because humanity will be ready for its downfall.

Amen

## **Inner voice difficult to hear ... Turmoil - silence ...**

***B.D. 4378 from July 17th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

You will always hear My voice if you hand yourselves over to Me and, with a desire to hear My Word, attentively listen within. I have always given you this assurance and will never withhold with My gift of grace if you sincerely desire it. Yet as long as My voice is not audibly heard by you but only affects you mentally and thus requires full attention and seclusion from the world it will depend on yourselves as to whether you will hear it. This is why I draw your attention to the forthcoming time which will make such great demands on you that only the strongest resolve will be able to manage to withdraw itself and

listen to My voice in seclusion. The adversity of the forthcoming time will often deprive you of your inner tranquillity, even though I will help every labourer to fulfil his task if he is willing to serve. I Am always close to you and if you, despite utmost distress, stay aware of My presence, you will always hear My voice too, for then your faith will be stronger than your earthly hardship, which you will banish anytime. Yet I want to draw your attention to the fact that you can expect considerable turmoil which will restrain your every thought with the effect that it will be difficult for you to make contact with Me .... But then read My Word, draw strength from My Word, and you will noticeably feel that I Am close to you ....

Keep trying to retreat within yourselves and, in seclusion, listen to the voice of your heart, and you will succeed if your will and your desire for Me is powerful. But first draw strength from My Word, use the time, don't become half-hearted and indifferent but believe that great danger lies in wait for you, that you will be shaken out of your worldly tranquillity and that a large world event is in the making. Always rely on My help and you will never call to Me in vain, for I will answer you who, as My children, call upon the Father in your time of need ....

Amen

## **Last Supper ... Spiritual**

# meaning ... Flesh - blood ...

***B.D. 4379 from July 18th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

The constant desire for nourishment at the table of the Lord assures you His love .... And thus I repeatedly invite you to take communion with Me, as often as you desire it. My table is always set for all who are hungry and thirsty and want to be refreshed, and they will be able to satisfy themselves with the bread of life, with the manna that comes from heaven. Every nourishment at My table is communion, it is the unification with Me without which the offering of My flesh and My blood ... of My Word and its strength ... cannot take place. Thus you, who receive My Word directly or through My messengers, are communing when you desire to accept My Word in your heart. Then My spirit will unite with the spiritual spark within you, then marriage will take place, the union, the spiritual communion. Then I will give you the bread of heaven Myself, I will give you food and drink, I will take supper with you .... you will experience the same event as My disciples, for whom I broke the bread and offered the wine with the Words: Take and eat, this is my body, take and drink, this is my blood ....

Do you now understand the meaning I attached to these Words? How immensely important it is that you take communion at My table, because My flesh and My blood

will give you the strength to reach eternal life. You have to be nourished with food for the soul so that it matures, so that it safeguards its eternal life ... it constantly has to receive strength which it can only receive from Me directly and which I will give every time it unites with Me. Then I will break the bread and offer it to the soul, and when it thus eats My flesh .... My Word .... it is permeated by strength .... the blood .... with which I have blessed My Word. No one who longs for food for the soul, who wants to be My guest, need ever starve and go without .... I will come to him Myself and invite him, I will stand before his door and knock and if he opens it for Me I will enter and take supper with him .... I will feed him at My table and he will be truly satisfied and never need to go without ....

And thus, everything I said on earth should be understood in a spiritual sense. I taught My disciples and they understood Me and carried My Word into the world. And since people were taught correctly they understood and lived in accordance with My will, in accordance with My Word in complete understanding of it. Consequently, My church, the community of believers, was established entirely in My spirit at first.

But later this was no longer enough for the overzealous representatives of My Word, they wanted to excel before the world. And thus events, which were only intended for the soul, were visually presented to people and associated with external actions, which at first could not be condemned since they were carried by the spirit, since people took My will and its fulfilment seriously. But

people changed and with them changed the characteristics of My church .... What was meant to be a profound inner experience became an external action which was placed at the fore and the deeper spiritual meaning became lost .... until the simple process of spiritual communion, of union with Me and the direct acceptance of My Word, was no longer understood by people. So now they no longer believe that a direct transmission of My Word is possible, although I Myself clearly and comprehensively promised them My direct working through My spirit, although I Myself .... the Word that had become flesh .... referred to the sustenance with the bread of life, with the manna from heaven .... People no longer understand the simple meaning of My Word and in their blindness don't want to accept the simple explanation either. But anyone who wants to hear and understand will realise it, and the truth will be plausible to him, he will strive to establish a connection with Me Myself, he will be My guest, and I will take supper with him and he with Me ....

Amen

## **Personal Words ....**

***B.D. 4387 from July 27th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

The spirit imparts My Word to you, and this is what you should listen to. I will always speak to you providing you first speak to Me in spirit and in truth. Thus I do not reply to mere words spoken by your mouth, but what you feel and think in your heart will find its way to Me and give rise to a response. If you ask Me in this manner you will mentally receive My answer. Then you can confidently believe that your thoughts originated from Me and take them to heart. I want you to understand everything and not start to doubt .... Therefore I also want you to know what kind of relationship you should have towards one another. I want to give you a Word of advice which you should seriously consider so that you then can make a free decision.

I want you to establish the most heartfelt harmony of souls between yourselves, I want you to establish a pure relationship which is supported by mutual love, a relationship in which each one of you is willing to give to the other and every requirement is excluded. I want you to stay together until you are parted by death, because your earthly path is only brief. You aspired towards a mutual goal and should also try to reach this goal .... spiritual marriage, which survives everything, which signifies union in the spiritual kingdom, which consists of mutual activity and the same consciousness of strength. However, this union requires the same degree of maturity and thus the same emanation of light, consequently also the same love and the same knowledge .... And for this reason two people's endeavour on earth, who want to

work together in the spiritual kingdom, must enable the direct transmission of light and strength, of spiritual knowledge. My spirit has to be able to be effective in them and to teach them, i.e. they have to receive My Word through the voice of the spirit. And it is certain that only through actions of love will you awaken the spirit within yourselves, who then will teach you.

People who are joined together by true, pure love open the door of their hearts to the spirit within themselves, which is part of Me. They shape themselves into receiving vessels for My spirit and can be constantly taught. And thus you are destined to travel the path of ascent together, because by living in emotional harmony you will be very receptive for the strength of spirit, for My emanation, for My Word, that will then be conveyed to you directly. Anyone who receives My Word directly has to pass it on, and the more he loves his fellow human being the more eagerly he will do so. Moreover, the lovingly offered Word will be accepted where love has been aroused again. And love should be practised because it is strength in itself, thus increasing love also means increasing strength.

Your course of life is but short, and therefore every day should be used by you to work together on behalf of Me and My kingdom. But mutual activity also necessitates complete conviction in regards to spiritual questions, to the deliberation, comprehension and assessment of what is presented to you as truth through the spirit. However, correct thinking always requires the working of the spirit,



and My spirit can only work in the presence of love. Hence you should never allow love to become unrequited, because the partner will lack understanding for spiritual truth when he stands outside of love. For love of Me you should make an effort to show love to other people, hence you have to practise giving, joyful love, and when it is thus returned it will cause an exchange of strength with earthly and spiritual results. And this is what you should achieve by reminding each other to love, by being sincerely affectionate to each other, by strengthening the feeling of togetherness to a point that you can no longer imagine life without each other .... Then you will experience the greatest miracle on earth, you will both hear the sound of the Word at the same time .... Then there will be no more separation for you, then My spirit will be constantly working in you, then every doubt will have come to an end, the truth of My Word will be shining so brightly for you that you will be completely filled by it and you will joyfully work together for Me and My kingdom.

Therefore you should submit yourselves entirely to My guidance, you should not wilfully do anything but what you are urged to do from within yourselves, you should only ever let yourselves be guided by your feeling, because I place My will into your heart and the prompting of your heart is the expression of My will. If you comply with this you will submit yourselves to My will, if you oppose it then your will is stronger. I would like to caution you about this, for My will always leads to the goal,

whereas yours will always leads away from the goal or lengthen the path such that you will waste time, because the end is coming soon ....

Amen

## **Spiritual decline ... Signs of the end ...**

***B.D. 4390 from July 30th 1948, taken from Book No. 51***

Spiritual decline is increasingly more noticeable and this alone ought to explain to you the earthly adversity, for the latter is the only means which could wake people up and prompt them into changing their way of thinking. People only strive towards acquiring earthly possessions and allow themselves to be controlled by matter rather than the other way round so that they would win in their battle against matter. Hence I constantly bring the foolishness of their endeavours home to them by showing them the transience of earthly things. Yet less significant happenings are to no avail, the individual person won't change his thinking and ignores the life of his soul, for he only takes his earthly existence into account and has completely lost faith in an afterlife. Humanity is descending ever further, faith is becoming increasingly

more superficial and a bond with Me, their God and Creator of eternity, ever more seldom. And this will become particularly evident in a short time. The day of a complete change in living conditions, the day when everything will experience a transformation, is coming ever closer because My will is clearly moving into action. People will be unable to protect anything unless I protect it for them, and they will be defenseless in the face of My might and experience serious difficulties.

But blessed is the difficulty if it only has an earthly effect on a person, if his soul is not in jeopardy ... if the person has faith .... Then he need not fear this earthly tribulation, then he will only be able to gain despite his earthly losses. But this will be the start of a trying time for unbelievers, for their loss of earthly possessions will cause them indescribable suffering and they will have to give up all hope of regaining them. Spiritual possessions will be no substitute for them, for they don't strive for but reject them when they are offered to them. But this suffering has to befall earth, it is inevitable and only the prelude to the final event, to the complete destruction of the old earth which will be experienced by all of you if I don't end your life prematurely because I consider it favorable for your soul. The believer will see and recognise all signs of the end, the unbeliever will pass them by, he will only take notice of the earthly hardship and its effect on earthly life and increasingly turn away from God. And thus, there will soon be a separation between spiritually aspiring and utterly worldly-minded

people and this, too, will be so obvious that the spiritually awakened person will recognise the last days by this alone. The end is approaching with giant steps and you will experience the end ....

Amen

## **Different schools of thought ... Christ's teaching ...**

***B.D. 4395 from August 5th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

The absolute truth cannot be represented by any school of thought as long as it cannot show that the origin of its dogma is based on the Word from above, although not everything taught by each spiritual movement can be called an error. Their followers will always be sincere people if they abandon ecclesiastical organisations and turn to such a school of thought. And therefore they are repeatedly offered the opportunity to come closer to the truth, because once they have recognised it as such they will hold on to it and hence be more faithful members of spiritual groups than the followers of the church which is officially made out to be My institution, but who are for the most part mere supporters or formal believers, never

desiring to delve deeper into eternal truth, into My teaching of love, which I describe as the core of the church founded by Me. Only the Word from above is pure truth and this Word was received and spread by Jesus on earth, consequently His is the only true teaching and will remain so for all eternity. Hence the person who preaches Christ's teaching is My representative on earth and will be able to inform every school of thought to what extent they have the truth and which opinions are misguided. However, during the last days the real advocates of My teaching need not concern themselves with other denominations or religious groups because they will all be fought against by earthly authorities and will lose their supporters with certainty, too. My servants shall merely gather the deserters and try to win them over for Me and My kingdom; they shall impart the pure truth to them and take every opportunity to enlighten misguided people ....

(05.08.1948) And I will provide them with the opportunity to do so, I will send them to those who can still be won over, who are still undecided and only need the truth in order to take the right path. The truth speaks for itself and no one will be able to undermine it, but where misguided teachings have occurred people can always be expected to leave when they are confronted by hardship, which they can avoid through devotion of faith. Because in the last days great hardship will only be suffered by those believers who want to remain faithful to Me and will thus be treated with hostility by the world. The world

will demand the complete rejection of faith in a God and Creator of eternity Who governs the fate of every human being, and the hardship of anyone relinquishing his faith will be resolved. People who endure will have to suffer in remarkable ways. But anyone who has true faith, who lives within the truth he has received from Me Myself, will also stay faithful to Me because he will know that such hardship won't last forever and will then give way to a joyful state of bliss. He will know that the earth is experiencing its end and so will the people who relinquish their faith for the sake of worldliness. The truth received from Me has given him the knowledge of things to come and this knowledge will give him the strength to endure to the end.

Only truth gives strength, only the person who lives within truth will endure, and for this reason it is so urgently necessary to impart the truth to people because this alone will enable them to understand everything that will happen. Anyone who does not know the absolute truth will become unsure, he will doubt everything and prefer the world and its pleasures to his doubtful knowledge. But I want to give people the pure truth in order to help them survive the final end by firmly believing in Me, in My wisdom and love which wants to prepare a paradise for My Own after the destruction of this earth .... Anyone instructed by My Word of My eternal plan of Salvation will understand everything, always keeping his eyes on Me he will be able to glance into the spiritual realm and receive strength and grace to endure

until the end ....

Amen

# **Abundance of grace .... Unchanging Fatherly love ....**

***B.D. 4399 from August 7th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

You receive an abundance of grace for as long as you receive My Word directly from Me. You cannot value this grace, for as human beings you lack the right concept of the infinite love which is reflected in this gift, nor would you be able to endure the magnitude of My love on earth, were you capable of assessing its profundity. I speak to you .... a miracle is happening to you, an obvious disclosure of My love, omnipotence and wisdom, which is even noticeable to your fellow human beings .... You humans, being surrounded by earthly matter and, in fact, only capable of understanding material things, can enter into conversation with the greatest spirit of eternity; you can accept instructions which will stick with you even when you are completely in the material world again .... they have become your possessions, they are spiritual treasures which will never fade away. If you thus receive

My Word you are embraced by the most faithful Fatherly love, it leans down to you, it gives itself to you and makes you indescribably wealthy, for to possess My love is the most desirable goal for My living creations, even if they cannot understand it as human beings. You hear Me and therefore I Am present to you. And if I Am with you, you can get everything from Me, I hear every plea, every call, and I will not deny you anything because I love you and prove this love to you by speaking to you, by being with you in the Word. Which father who loves his children would not grant their requests? Which child would not be happy being close to the father who loves it? I shower My children with an abundance of grace if they listen to Me and want to receive Words of love from Me. And I will not leave your side, I will always and forever remain close to you, for I will not abandon My children but strive for ever more heartfelt contact until they are inseparably united with Me forever. The happiness of love is unknown to you, for you cannot endure it on earth. But this much you should know: there is nothing more blissful than fulfilled love, love which gives itself, which does not deny itself and which strives for heartfelt unity .... I give this love to you, and although you cannot feel it, you nevertheless possess it if you receive My Word, if you attentively listen to what I say to you through the voice of the spirit. Then you will be embraced by the love of the Father, and it will never let go of you, for you came forth from My love and My love for you will not diminish in eternity, it will not change, it will remain as it was in the beginning, unchangeable, and it is yours for all eternity ....



Amen

# **‘No-one can serve two masters ....’**

***B.D. 4408 from August 18th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

No-one can serve two masters .... Anyone who wants to make contact with Me will never be able to look towards the world, for I can only be found beyond the world, and if I should allow Myself to be found then the desire for the world must be put aside, it must be completely ignored, for the world belongs to My adversary, it is his domain where he has free reign. And he really does not aspire to lead people to Me by way of the world, instead, he seeks to displace Me, he constantly tries to place special emphasis on the world so that I should be forgotten. So if anyone amongst you is serious about his higher development he cannot possibly still pay tribute to the world .... even though he is still in the midst of the world which makes great demands on him which he has to comply with, yet there is indeed a difference between duty and personal worldly longing. The former is entirely according to My will, for on earth you are given a task, but apart from that you can also fully accomplish your spiritual task, the maturing of your soul, if the desire for

the world does not prevail, which happens when earthly pleasures and cravings predominate the desire for spiritual possessions, so that thereby the human being forgets about Me and, indeed, even the thought of Me is uncomfortable leading to his dismissal of Me. Anyone who strives to create an excessive sense of well-being for himself, i.e. for his body, be it through satisfying physical cravings, sensory and carnal desires or through an accumulation of material possessions without thinking of his neighbour, who therefore only strives for himself, is held captive by the world, he is My adversary's willing tool, and he will never find the path to Me if he does not discard the longing for the earthly world, internalises himself and aspires towards spiritual wealth. Both together are not possible, for then he will serve two masters and will not serve either well. If you are looking for Me you must gaze heavenwards, for I Am above and not below .... Below is My adversary's realm where you still linger with your body, but your soul can always lift itself up into My kingdom, to Me. Even though the body is still in My adversary's realm, the soul can nevertheless always rise into spheres beyond the earth, and that is what I demand of someone who wants to find Me, serve Me and thus be one of My Own. Then the spiritual spark in him will unite itself with the eternal Father-Spirit, for if he strives towards Me in all seriousness his heart will also be awash with love, which has nothing in common with worldly love. This love will manifest itself towards the next person, in which case the human being is making contact with Me already .... he renounces what belongs to

the world, he gives and thus serves his neighbour and, because I decreed this commandment he also serves Me as His Lord. Worldly love, however, is a form of selfish love, the human being should combat this love if he wants to attain bliss. Consequently, he must also combat his love for the world and try to fulfil the soul's wishes which, driven by the spirit within, will apply to spiritual possessions and demonstrate love for Me. For I alone Am the Master you should serve if you want to become blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Earthly worry unnecessary ... God's Fatherly love ...**

***B.D. 4414 from August 22nd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 51***

Why do you worry about your earthly life which I have shaped for each one of you from the very beginning? You cannot change it in the slightest, because My will has determined it as My wisdom judged to be good for you, and whatever comes upon you will be beneficial for you. Therefore travel your earthly path without worry, for every day goes according to My will, and every happening

was intended from the start. However, this is not to say that you should do nothing and neglect your earthly task, for this also belongs to your designated destiny, and all activity results in blessings. But do not worry about the outcome of your actions; and thus you may also place all burdens upon Me which I will gladly carry for you; you may confide your every wish to Me, express all considerations, I want to relieve you from every anxiety, for you shall travel your earthly path calmly and cheerfully, because whatever may come upon you, I know every incident and have predetermined it, and what I do is truly right. All worry is unnecessary once you have handed yourselves over to Me, once you have commended yourselves to Me and My grace. Then I, as your Father, will take care of your every worry, My children. Your soul, however, you must take care of yourselves .... This is a worry I cannot take from you, I can only advise you and offer you every opportunity, which you should use for your soul's salvation. The more you take care of it, the less you need to worry about the well-being of your body, because I will take care of that, as I have promised. And by this you shall also recognise the truth of My Word, that I will meet your every need which you, as My children, will have, for as such your requirements will be small, whereas the children of the world make great demands, which I must deny you for your own sakes. Yet I will not let My children starve, for they shall always recognise the love of their Father in Heaven, and in realisation of My love they shall trust Me and their faith shall become so strong that I can give

them everything they request, for the sake of their profound faith ....

Amen

## **Antichrist ... Brutal laws ...**

***B.D. 4429 from September 7th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

A visible power will control you which will refuse to acknowledge an invisible Power .... And this power will provoke your last test of faith, for it will be fighting against Me and will also want to educate you into becoming My adversaries. And this is why you will require your entire strength of faith in order to resist it. Many will bow down under the sceptre of the ruler promising them golden mountains but will demand the surrender of all faith in return, of all spiritual knowledge, the acknowledgement of his power and sovereignty and the denial of an eternal Creator, of a loving and righteous God, Who will call people to account one day for their will, thoughts and actions. And thus he will oppose Me, and although the last battle will not last long it will be very difficult for My believers because they will be placed under inhuman pressure which will make professing Christ incredibly difficult for them. Yet the knowledge of the pure truth, My obvious help and the

hope of My coming and life in paradise on the new earth will give you the strength to persevere and to defy every onslaught on part of the worldly authority. You have My Word that I will not let you remain in adversity, you can be firmly convinced of that. I know My Own and will support every one of them if only they rely on Me, if only they believe in Me. But the one who will come will dazzle people with his intellectual sharpness, his comprehensive knowledge, with his easy-going conduct towards other rulers, and they all will grant him the right of organisational activities with the ultimate goal of displacing all spiritual schools of thought.

For he will try to portray spiritual striving as the wrongly applied energy of life, which should be used for the construction and improvement of earthly requirements. And he will find followers everywhere, who will acknowledge him and likewise proceed against all spiritual work. And thus My servants on earth will have a difficult time. At first the intention will be to take all means which enable you to be spiritually active away from you, but you will also be individually persecuted and will have to give account to the earthly authorities about your convictions and activities. Furthermore, you will also be plunged into earthly hardship as a result of laws which seem, and indeed are, extraordinarily hard and brutal for the believer if I was not going to manifestly stand by you and sustain you by spiritual means. And you will feel My obvious help, you will sense that I Am with you and know the hardship of every individual person which I will

remedy when the time is right. The Antichrist will come and with him all the signs of the approaching end. For as soon as the battle of faith commences you can be certain that the end will not be long in coming, because the battle of faith will be waged with such severity and so brutally that I Myself will have to come in order to rescue My Own from deepest distress and lift them up into the realm of peace .... And then the last Judgment will happen and My adversary's power will be broken for a long time ....

Amen

## **Final battle ... Frankly professing Christ before the world .....**

***B.D. 4433 from September 15th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

War will be declared on everything of a spiritual nature during the last days before the end. Thereby you will recognise which hour has struck on the clock of the world and that the day is drawing to a close. Then you can expect considerable commotion as a result of the rigorous measures taken by the worldly authorities. You will be beleaguered with questions and threats about

your attitude towards Christ and faith in general. They will not shy away from watching you, from eavesdropping on your conversations and will take you to court for your words and actions. That is the time when you must profess Me openly and speak without fear about how you think and feel about Me. This open admission is what I require as evidence of your affiliation with Me. I Myself certainly know how you think and feel in your heart; nevertheless, it is a final battle in which a separation of the goats from the sheep shall take place. And this final battle must be openly conducted so that the battle itself becomes evident, so that the opponent's guilt clearly emerges before the world in order to push the undecided into a decision due to the believers' as well as their enemies' conduct. The battle will only last a short time and will happen everywhere, albeit in different ways. Heartlessness will always fight against love, the material world will mock and intimidate the spiritual world, two camps will be distinctly recognisable wherever the teaching of Christ has been accepted and where the divine teaching of love is the principle of what is preached to people and what they are required to believe. For this reason the apostasy from Me will be clearly discernible in the whole world; but where the Christian teaching of love is widespread the battle of faith will proceed extremely ferociously, and that will be the end. At this time you humans have no idea how the forthcoming events will proceed and, therefore, it seems incredible to you; nevertheless, it will happen as I proclaim to you through My spirit, and the time is so near



that it would scare you were you to know the day and hour of destruction .... And yet you should not worry, for your loyalty to Me will also assure you My full protection and supply of any strength so that you will be able to stand firm, and the knowledge of it will make you confident and strong in faith, so that you will survive the time, particularly since I will shorten the days, so that you will become blessed ....

Amen

# **Relinquishing the world ... Fulfilment of earthly duties and the blessing of God ....**

***B.D. 4436 from September 19th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

What does the world offer you? If you really think about it, it only offers things which make your earthly life more pleasant for a short time but which have no lasting value. And if you consider that you could be called from this earth any day then you work, from a worldly point of view, just for one day, because tomorrow could already be your last day. But even a long earthly life cannot be compared

to eternity and it is simply unwise to provide for oneself for this limited time and not to consider eternity. But not until you occupy yourselves with thoughts about life after death can you know that you are chasing after illusive possessions and then you will understand the spiritual aspirations of those who don't see the earth as an end in itself but as a means to an end. And then you too will strive for the truth, for enlightenment and for Me, Who can impart all that to you.

But one thing you should not fail to do: to appeal to Me to become your support and adviser, that I should take care of you and continue to guide you during the course of your life, that you choose Me and for My sake relinquish the world, i.e. that you have no great expectations to live a life of external comfort but that you, deep inside of yourself, live your life with Me, away from the world. This detachment is imperative, just as it is imperative that you take notice of the pure truth which, when you receive it externally, worldly people cannot offer you. If you entrust yourselves to Me I will walk with you and also ease your earthly labour because no one who works for Me and My kingdom shall be harmed. You shall indeed do your duty, that is, take up your position that has been allocated to you but who blesses your worldly labour if I don't?

You cannot automatically enforce your success and if My will opposes it you are helpless even though you are laboriously and constantly working. Alternatively, I can favour your work and help you to accomplish it. I do,

however, ask that you accept My gift from above, that you give it your whole attention and help to pass it on. Then you can live completely carefree because I will take care of every problem. First carry out your spiritual work and everything you do to accomplish your earthly allocated task will be blessed, because I truly provide better for you than the earthly world .... But I will not change My prerequisite that I as Father, will give you, My children, everything that you require spiritually and earthly ....

Amen

## **Extent of the work of destruction ...**

***B.D. 4441 from September 24th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

The extent of the act of destruction as a result of God's will is as yet inconceivable to you humans, for it will surpass anything that has ever happened before.

Countries and oceans will change, rivers will burst their banks and thus scenes will be created which make people believe that they have been transported into other regions, which in itself will cause indescribable chaos because people will no longer be able to find each other. They will restlessly wander about until strong-minded

people try to establish order and take care of the weak. The adversity will be so great that it can only be endured by love, and where one will actively help the other relief and help will soon be felt, which will clearly be granted to them from above. Thus, anyone who turns to God and calls upon Him in his heart will receive help, for God will then so clearly demonstrate His love and omnipotence that those of little faith will find it easy to gain a firm belief, and this time is a time of grace for the unbeliever, when he can still easily change himself in view of the occurrences which are based on the strength of faith. These occurrences will provide food for thought to everyone, yet only someone willing to believe will derive benefit from it, whereas the others will only ever speak of coincidences and face the immense adversity embittered, rejecting a Creator or condemning His actions. The magnitude of the disaster cannot bring them to their senses, they will try to find a natural explanation for everything and entirely reject spiritual correlations. They also remain hard and insensitive towards their fellow human beings' experiences and won't shy away from improving their own situation at the expense of people who are too weak to defend themselves.

There will be hardship wherever God has spoken and He will speak wherever the spiritual adversity is greatest, so that the survivors will receive a warning signal which will enable them to utilise the time until the end, and to also bring the people of the unaffected countries to their senses in view of the disaster which is too immense to be

ignored. For the whole of humanity will be gripped by fear that the natural disaster might repeat itself and result in complete destruction of the earth. This will in fact happen but not immediately after the natural disaster. All the same, this fear is beneficial for many people since the thought of a sudden end and a life after death will come alive in many of them and can result in a change of lifestyle. The world will helpfully want to intervene yet won't be able to help as much as is needed. Nevertheless, every human being who is willing to love and help will be blessed by God, for the immense adversity will come upon people so that they will soften their hearts and do justice to their actual task of being lovingly active on earth in order to attain psychological maturity. As long as people only provide for themselves they are selfish and won't progress spiritually. But their fellow human beings' hardship can awaken their kind-hearted activity, and then they will comply with God's will and thus their earthly task .... And then even the most severe hardship will be a blessing and will fulfil its purpose ....

Amen

## **The audible Word and conditions ....**

## ***B.D. 4448 from October 2nd 1948, taken from Book No. 52***

You need to pay attention to the slightest emotion if you want to hear My voice within yourselves. For this reason the transmission of My Word can only take place if you are in complete seclusion from the world. Although you are still living in the midst of the world everything around you can nevertheless subside into nothingness, it can stay completely unnoticed by you, if you direct your thoughts inwards and look for Me. Then you will observe different spheres to the earthly one, then you are already in the spiritual realm, your soul has lifted itself across while the body remains on earth but without having lost the connection with the soul. Anyone who succeeds in dismissing all worldly thoughts and concentrates will soon hear gentle Words in his heart, and the more the soul has detached itself from the body the clearer they will sound, that is, the more the soul strives towards the spiritual kingdom where My Word originates from, where I Am Myself amongst the beings which educate you on My instructions, if the teaching does not directly come forth from Me. The world certainly does not want to admit that God speaks directly to people, it finds it implausible because the world, that is, worldly people, will never be able to hear this gentle voice since they only take notice of their body's demands and what it achieves. The soul is an implausible concept for them, they do not acknowledge the soul and therefore do not accept what

the soul receives from the spiritual kingdom and wants to impart to people on earth.

They don't believe it because they also lack the will to live up to the conditions which enable them to hear My voice. They don't mentally detach themselves from the world but constantly strive towards it so that they have no time for turning inwards, thus they never lead an inner life without which, however, My Word cannot possibly be heard. I do not approach people from outside but meet them in their hearts .... Although I also work so evidently that it is externally visible to whom I Am present, who receives strength from Me .... but only ever where a life of love is being lived, where I can enter a heart because I Am called upon in the heart. I only manifest Myself where an earthly child firmly believes in Me and loves Me with all its heart, and both are feelings of the soul which are unrelated to the body as such. Thus anyone who wants to hear Me must come to Me and I Am not in the world but in the spiritual kingdom, even though My will is also in charge of the world but only to win worldly people over to Me, to entice them away from the bustle of the world into seclusion in order to make those possessions desirable for them which alone are of value for eternity .... Withdraw into solitude and listen within and you will clearly and distinctly hear Me if you pay attention to every thought, for as long as you don't perceive the audible Word in you which needs a particular maturity of soul and most intimate contact with Me .... However, I reveal Myself to everyone who

fulfils My will and desires to hear Me ....

Amen

# **Gathering spiritual treasures on earth .... Regret in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 4455 from October 9th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Anyone who has not gathered spiritual treasures for himself on earth and thus enters the gates of the beyond empty handed is one of the poorest in the spiritual kingdom. I would like to spare you this fate because you will experience bitter regret when you look back and see the many missed opportunities. Poverty in the spiritual kingdom is so depressing and hopeless that it will torment you and completely paralyse your will, as a result you will hardly be able to deliver yourselves from this painful state. And yet it is so easy to acquire spiritual possessions on earth if only you thought of Me and desired to speak to Me. Merely this desire guarantees receipt of My Word in different ways .... You will always be shown where you can receive My Word if you do not accept it from Me in your thoughts, that is, if you cannot recognise My voice in your thoughts.



However, it is certain that you will feel the inner motivation to do kind deeds as soon as you contact Me in thought and thus intend to get in touch with Me. I announce Myself by prompting you to love because only then can I enter into complete union with you. Thus, first of all I inspire you to actions of love, and this directly through the inner voice or through external advice and reminders by the deliverers of My Word who only preach love. If you listen to them and follow the Word then you will also gather spiritual possessions and acquire riches which will remain with you eternally, which cannot be taken from you on earth or in the beyond and which will increase in the same way, even when you constantly share them. To enter the kingdom on the other side blessed with such possessions is truly most desirable as it assures your eternal life in the spiritual kingdom, a life of activity which can only be called enjoyable and will be felt by you as a great blessing.

But those who enter completely empty handed will find it very difficult to acquire spiritual wealth even though it is not entirely hopeless. Even there the Gospel will be taught to the soul but, like on earth, it is not forced to accept it; like on earth, acceptance depends on its will which, however, is extraordinarily weakened and cannot make the right decision without the help of additional strength. And this input of strength in turn depends on the will of the soul to use it for deeds of love .... or on the loving intercession of a human being. For that reason you cannot have enough compassion for these poor souls who

urgently require your help because they neglected to gather spiritual treasures on earth to make their state in the beyond a happy one. Their poverty is great but people do not listen to My Word, they do not believe and therefore enter the kingdom on the other side poor and with darkened spirit ....

Amen

## **Announcement of the end .... 'You only have little time left ....'**

***B.D. 4457 from October 11th 1948, taken from Book No. 52***

You don't have much time left and seriously ought to prepare yourselves for the day when an act of destruction will happen the likes of which has never been experienced before. And although I keep announcing it, you nevertheless doubt My Words and are therefore slow in your work of improving your soul. And you only have a little time left .... But I cannot make you aware of it by any other means than through My Word; if you don't believe it you will be shocked when the last signs start to appear. Although shortly before I will indeed warn you once again, yet even these Words will not be believed by you

anymore than the previous announcements because you will be incensed by My forbearance and can't understand that I Am waiting for the sake of the souls yet to be saved, even though the time has long been fulfilled. Some can still be saved, I want to spare them the infinitely long path of a re-embodiment on the new earth and Am therefore patient and wait. However, even the final extension of time will come to an end, therefore take My Words seriously that you only have a little time left and that you will regret every day you have not used correctly for your soul.

And world events will change surprisingly quickly, just a few days will suffice in order to place you into a completely new situation. And then you ought to remember My Words and consider spiritual issues as being more important than earthly ones, for worrying about the latter is irrelevant since you cannot keep anything for yourselves if I won't retain it for you, and that it is up to My will and My might to physically protect and take care of you. Always consider your soul, be helpful and generous when you come across adversity, and enter into heart-felt contact with Me so that you will receive the strength to endure and to do justice to all requirements of life. Constantly draw strength from My Word, for it is a source of strength which can refresh you and which will never run dry. Be always ready for Me and I will not abandon you, regardless of what happens to you ....

Amen

# **The ability to hear God's voice ... Conditions ...**

***B.D. 4462 from October 16th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

You are only able to hear the voice of the spirit if all your thoughts and intentions apply to Me alone, if you thus completely detach your thoughts from the earthly world. This does not imply that you should not perform your earthly duties or totally withdraw into solitude. For this does not correspond to My will, but in the midst of the bustle of the world you should look for the opportunity, and you will indeed find it, where your soul disassociates itself from the world, where you can briefly detach yourselves from all earthly thoughts, hence where your soul lifts itself into spheres which are unrelated to Earth, where I Am the focal point of your thoughts, feelings and inclinations, where it looks for and wishes to speak to Me. Everyone can establish such short contacts with Me if he wants to, he can even turn his thoughts towards Me for a few minutes during his earthly work, and I will pay attention to every thought and impart My Word to him; and if a person mentally remains for a longer time in My kingdom, if he takes the time to hold an inner conversation with Me and pays attention to the thoughts

flowing to him as a reply, he will develop the ability to hear My voice, and it will soon sound to him like a gentle but clearly pronounced Word in his heart. You all can develop this ability within yourselves; however, it requires complete detachment from the world .... Nothing externally must affect the human being if he clearly wants to hear the voice inside. For this reason it also takes considerable strength of will to withdraw from the outer world and not to allow any part of this world take effect upon oneself .... I must be desired and be able to completely permeate his heart, otherwise I cannot be present to him and he will not be able to hear Me either. No-one can serve two masters .... When I speak everything else must be silent, and anyone who shall possess My love, which manifests itself in the Word, must also grant Me his love and willingly detach himself from all worldly matters, for My gift is precious and must also be appropriately appreciated ....

Amen

## **Supper ....**

***B.D. 4465 from October 19th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

And you shall be My guests who I invite to Supper. I will nourish you and quench your thirst with delectable

sustenance for the soul, I will spiritualise your body so that its substances can also partake when the soul is being refreshed, so that it will mature faster, because this is possible with those people who consciously strive towards Me and desire to hear My Word. Be My guests and come to Me gladly to take Supper with Me at My table .... I will prepare you a meal of heavenly food with delectable manna which will provide you with strength and spiritual nourishment for your soul. I won't deny you anything you desire, I Am always ready for you and lay out the table with delectable food because I love you and, as My guests, want to provide you with everything that pleases you. However, you should come gladly and yearn for Me, you should accept My invitation with a grateful heart and prepare yourselves for a dignified reception .... You should adorn yourselves in My honour as Host, don't remain standing outside but step into My house and thereby profess that you are invited guests with a right to be fed at the table of the Lord, who belong to Him, who are His friends and who He therefore treats as a good host would by entertaining his friends and offering them the most delectable gifts as often as they want to receive them. Anyone who replenishes himself at My table will never ever go hungry and thirsty again and yet always return to Me full of desire, yearning for My presence and accepting from My hand what My love offers to him. For he will constantly draw refreshment from it, in his constant feeling of fulfilled desire he will be blissfully happy and desire Me without end. And so My Word will flow to Him incessantly, the bread of heaven, which

secures eternal life for him. Come to the table of the Lord, delicious sustenance awaits you, take Supper with Me, let Me give you flesh and blood to enjoy so that you will be filled by strength .... Accept My Word and listen to Me when I speak to you, recognise Me as the most loving God and Father of eternity, as your friend and brother, and receive from My hand what My greater than great love offers you .... All of you, come to My table so that I can provide you with the food you need for your soul, so that I can feed and refresh all those who hunger and thirst for My Word, for My flesh and My blood ....

Amen

## **Power of the divine Word ... Antidote to suffering ...**

***B.D. 4468 from October 24th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

My love for you is infinite and I will grant your every request, but occasionally it happens in a way that you do not immediately recognise it as such, nevertheless, one day you will realise how well I take care of you. The last days will bring a variety of perils and suffering because you will have to mature quickly or you will not pass the

last and difficult test. You will experience constant distress and should always bear in mind that everything comes from Me, that I know of your hardship and misery but that they are also a blessing for you. Therefore do not fear and complain but remain devoted to Me in love, just as My endless love belongs to you, too, and wants to make you happy .... You should sample the power of My Word and soon you will recognise that you have an effective antidote against all suffering, fear and sadness. I have blessed My Word with My strength .... Why do you not use it? Why do you not accept strength when you are in danger of weakening in your earthly battle and lose heart? Why do you not give yourselves to its invigorating effect? You constantly receive evidence of My love for you, you are in the midst of immense grace, and yet you are of so little faith and fickle, so timid and weak. What else could I offer you that is better than My Word?

If you did not experience earthly hardship and worries you would not be able to hear My Word, because the world would hold you captive and stop you from heartfelt contact with Me. And therefore you should obediently accept this hardship when you receive My Word as compensation, because My Word is a great treasure for you which you merely do not know how to get. Let Me always speak to you in My Word, take refuge in Me in the Word, contemplate the expression of My love and you will feel a marked influx of strength. You will no longer feel weakness, fear and oppression and will have no more doubt .... you will master earthly life in full strength and



honour and praise My love and grace, and then you will be active labourers for Me in the last battle on this earth. I bless your willingness to serve Me but you should also activate it by doing what I ask of you. Time and again I remind you to accept My Word within yourselves because I want to give you the strength of My Word, because I want to help you but need your free will to do so if you are to derive the right benefit from My help. You have to struggle yourselves because it is the only way you can arrive at faith, the profound faith that you will need in order to be loyal servants to Me on earth. What you receive from Me, what you write down, has to be considered by you in your heart, it has to come alive in you, so that you can endorse My Word with conviction, so that the effect is not lost on your fellow human being and he feels the strength of My Word in himself. You will always receive help in your need, and the more you fulfil My will the sooner you will receive help .... However, it is My will that you should contemplate My Word more often so that you become conscious of My presence and believe .... And as soon as you have profound faith the fulfilment of all your wishes will also be certain ....

Amen

## **The doctrine of the Trinity of God ....**

## ***B.D. 4484 from November 11th 1948, taken from Book No. 52***

You have the gift of being able to use your intellect and you ought to use this gift. In an earthly respect your life compels you to do so and you readily comply with this compulsion. It is the most natural thing in the world for you to think about everything you encounter, to explore and ponder and thus intellectually enhance your earthly knowledge. But only rarely if ever do you use your intellect in order to acquire spiritual knowledge of your own inner accord. You certainly allow yourselves to receive it from external sources and accept it **without** using your intellect, without scrutinising or thinking about it. But you don't assimilate it with your intellect and thus you don't use the latter, or you misuse it by drawing entirely wrong conclusions because you accept the spiritual knowledge you receive without examination. But He Who endowed you with intellect will also hold you to account as to how you have used it.

Countless people live with misconceptions because they don't think about doctrines which should motivate their scrutiny because, in the form they are presented to people, they are simply unacceptable .... Admittedly, you reject all scrutiny with the remark that you, as human beings, are incapable of making a correct judgment, and you are right insofar as your intellect **alone** is not enough for this. Yet each and every time this has to be countered by the fact that enlightenment by the spirit can and

always must be requested in order to truthfully explain the most difficult problems, and that God will never deny His assistance to someone who seriously wants it. And thus it is also possible for a human being to get an explanation for questions which the intellect alone is unable to answer. But the less a person believes that he is incapable of making a correct judgment the more it is necessary to appeal to God for assistance. This is more advisable than to accept doctrines which a person finds difficult to accept, for whatever a person wants to endorse as truth also has to be completely explained to him, on account of which teachings from above are constantly conveyed to earth which bring light into the spiritual darkness. And darkness is wherever the truth is being displaced or veiled, where misguided teachings are spread and upheld by people as truth. And this darkness shall be penetrated by light .... Lies and error shall be displaced by the truth, it shall be exposed where people are wrongly instructed, because only the truth leads to eternal life and only the truth is divine, whereas misguided teachings are God-opposing ....

And so it is essential to throw light on a doctrine which, mixed up and completely distorted by the enemy of souls, has found approval amongst people, and precisely because the latter did not use their gift of intellect and accepted without inspection what they were offered: the doctrine of the Trinity of God .... This doctrine is completely incomprehensible, that is, it cannot be rationally grasped and understood, it is an unacceptable

explanation of the eternal Deity because it is absurd, since the human being who is professing it is not allowed to think about it anymore or, if he thinks about it, cannot admit to it .... Wanting to place the eternal Deity into a strictly-limited form is a sign of those people's imperfection who accept this teaching. Every form is a strictly-limited concept but God's Being is limitless because it is something profoundly perfect. Hence something supremely perfect cannot be divided either, for perfection is a state of spirit and something spiritual can never be divided into three parts .... thus one can never speak of a three-person God because it is an inconceivable concept which will lead to completely wrong points of view about the Deity's nature. God the Father .... God the Son .... and God the holy Spirit .... these concepts do not justify the assumption that three persons have united themselves as the eternal Deity, hence that these three amount to one God, whereas the **nature** of God can be made comprehensible to people if the three concepts are explained such that the 'Father' is love, the 'Son' is wisdom and the 'Spirit' is strength ....

And this alone is the correct explanation which is the foundation of the doctrine of the Trinity of God, yet due to misunderstanding it was wrongly interpreted and resulted in the misguided teaching that the Deity consists of three persons.

The spirit of God, the partial concept of God's Nature, can never be personified; it cannot be limited to a form in line with human ideas, it is an infinite abundance of light

and strength which is directed and used by an exceptionally strong will of love. The light is God ... the strength is God ... and the will of love is God ... one is not without the other, everything Divine incorporates this Trinity within Itself; it is the sign of perfection if love, wisdom and strength are inherent in a being, in which case it has become an image of God. Yet it is only ever one Being ... not a form but something infinite, spiritual, which requires no form in order to exist and which would burst all forms if they had not spiritualised themselves first, so that they were able to contain love, wisdom and strength in abundance without ceasing to exist.

Such a form was the human being Jesus, Who was chosen by God as the carrier of the entire abundance of love, wisdom and strength in order to serve people as a conceivable Deity so that they can believe in an Essence Which, being of supreme perfection, is nevertheless in connection with imperfect people, His living creations. But this form was purely physical, it was effectively only at the disposal of physical onlookers because the spirit requires no form in order to be able to be seen .... The idea of Father, Son and holy Spirit as three separate entities .... even with the addition that they are one .... is misleading, because people will then be at risk of implementing a separation by calling upon every part individually and will thereby increase the consciousness of each of the three parts, thereby losing the right, truthful sense of the **one** God to Whom alone they should turn in every earthly and spiritual adversity.

Even the man Jesus, Who lived on earth as an individual being in order to accept the abundance of God within Himself, became one with Him, which was evidenced by His ascension, because the body had completely spiritualised itself and all substances were able to join the eternal Deity and thus there no longer existed two separate beings who were perfect but it was only one Deity, Which was love, wisdom and strength in supreme perfection. God the Father, God the Son and His Spirit, which permeates the whole of infinity and implements everything that is determined by His will. It is the eternal Deity's **Nature** which is being characterised by the concepts of Father, Son and holy Spirit. Wisdom .... the Son .... comes forth from the Father of love, and the all-permeating strength implements what is decided by the Father and the Son. God is all-powerful and exceedingly wise and loving .... This concept is more understandable and solves the problem of the triune Deity in the simplest way, and only spiritually blind people are unable to grasp or acknowledge this uncomplicated solution because they are misled by spiritually blind leaders who are unenlightened and refuse to let themselves be taught ....

Amen

## Heaven and hell ....

***B.D. 4488 from November 17th 1948,***

## ***taken from Book No. 52***

I will not let anyone who gives himself to Me as My Own fall ever again. But anyone who remains in opposition to Me is in great danger of losing the strength of My love completely and becoming hardened in his fundamental substance, an extremely agonising condition which I would like to prevent. This truth, which has not been concealed from humanity from the start, resulted in the concept of 'heaven and hell', of a blissful and a wretched condition, which in people's imagination is a limited space, until ultimately the real truth ... the condition ... became less important in their imagination and only the place remained, visualised by fantasy in every conceivable way. This gave way to many misguided thoughts so that the truth is now completely distorted and the human being no longer has any knowledge of what heaven and hell really mean.

Life and death are heaven and hell .... Busy, joyful activity in the most brightly radiating light is life .... Weakness, helplessness and deepest darkness are death .... And every condition can continually increase in both directions until the final aim, blissful union with Me or deepest descent, infinite distance from Me, has been reached .... Inconceivable is the bliss of the former, inconceivable is also the torment and suffering of the condemned, who languish for eternities and have no strength for redemption. It is these souls you should consider ....

It is a misguided teaching that there is no salvation from hell, that these souls are eternally condemned by Me .... It is not I Who condemns them but they **themselves** who have chosen damnation, not I Who pushed them into the abyss, but they themselves aimed towards the deepest point. However, My love leaves nothing so far away forever and therefore there is even salvation from hell, since I died on the cross for these beings too and accepted their guilt, because My love is greater than My wrath, than My justice. Even hell will have to let go of its last victims, i.e. even the hardest matter will be disintegrated one day, freeing the spirits within for the purpose of ascending to life .... Because hell, as you humans imagine, does not consist of an eternally blazing source of fire, it is not a place which contains the condemned. Hell is an indescribably agonizing condition, a condition which starts on earth when people do not acknowledge Me, hence they disassociate themselves from Me and remain without the strength of My love. They certainly continue to live their physical life without Me and as yet do not feel the weak condition, which their distance from Me entails, as torment, but as soon as their bodily life is over the agony starts: the consciousness to be completely without strength and yet to exist ....

It is still possible at first to let go of the resistance if the soul listens to the advice of knowing beings, but these opportunities are rarely valued and the soul descends ever deeper, the distance to Me gets ever greater and the weakness increases until the final hardening takes



place .... the new banishment into most solid matter .... Then an infinitely long developmental period will have passed unsuccessfully for the spiritual substance which was once bound in matter and then set free as a human being in order to voluntarily strive for shedding every physical restraint. That it has failed is his free will because I truly do not withhold direct admonishments and warnings. But hell has a far greater attraction than heaven .... and the human being strives with utmost zeal towards matter again which the soul had long overcome. And therefore it is also his fate .... matter will once again be the shell for the spiritual substance which had failed its final test of will.

Hell has opened its gates wide, and countless souls will enter the darkness voluntarily .... Hell will triumph, i.e. its prince will have, as far as numbers are concerned, great success, but I will extort all these souls from him by placing them into the new creation again, and at the same time remove My adversary's every power over these beings by banishing him into the center of earth .... that is, he will be given the hardest cover as a constraint, which he will be unable to leave again until the will of humans gives him power once more, by people desiring material goods and increasingly distancing themselves from Me again. Then he will fight for the souls again and this contest will be permitted so that the souls can prove themselves by choosing between Me and him, because without the right decision no person can achieve blissfulness ....

Amen

# Communion ....

***B.D. 4492 from November 21st 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Eating the bread and drinking the wine is a token of what you should be doing in order to become blessed .... You must consume bread and wine, that is, you must give nourishment to your soul, by ingesting the bread of heaven with its strength, by accepting My Word and withdrawing the strength from it, hence, by feeding your soul with the sustenance offered to you from above by My love. Thereby I wanted to explain to you that the soul needs as much nourishment as the body and that it must be fed in the same way as the body, by consuming bread and wine. Yet the consumption of nourishment for the soul at no time depends on an external consumption of bread and wine .... This was merely a comparison intended to illustrate to My disciples what they needed and what they should offer their fellow human beings in order to attain bliss. It solely concerns the life of the soul, and the fact that the soul does not require physical bread and physical wine is clearly self-evident. However, I have only ever had your spiritual life in mind, I only wanted to ensure your soul's life and therefore will not demand external formalities where nourishment for the soul is

instead sought in all sincerity. Your hunger and thirst for My Word is, by itself, enough in order to be satisfied by the bread of life which comes from heaven, which in truth is My flesh and My blood, which assures the soul's survival, which permeates it with strength and thus provides it with eternal life .... The external intake of bread and wine can never provide nourishment for a person's soul if he has no heartfelt desire for My Word, if he does not want to be fed by Me with the bread of heaven. For only he will come to Me and take communion with Me. He will let Me speak to him. He feeds the soul with nourishment which sustains it and makes it happy. Consequently, anyone who merely enjoys actual bread and wine cannot claim that he is My guest digesting sustenance for his soul at My table. Only people's half-heartedness towards My Word made it possible to produce this misunderstanding of My Words and action, for as soon as the human being makes a serious effort to attain life for his soul, he will automatically understand the meaning of My Words, and then no person will ever be satisfied with merely performing an external act .... which seems to every thinking person a figurative comparison, which in fact it was .... The fact that the people of My church also maintained the external formality in the beginning was justified, insofar as in their heartfelt unity they always envisioned My presence, that they really congregated in remembrance of Me and together accepted My Word .... And I was in the midst of them and filled them with My spirit, thus they were My guests in truth with whom I took Communion .... I broke

the bread and offered it to them ....

They heard My Word within themselves .... And they practised the same, they also distributed the bread .... they informed each other about what I revealed to them through the voice of the spirit. The first disciples understood the meaning of the external symbol, yet those who followed them already started to pay **greater** importance to the **external** symbol and this is how it remained, and only a few grasp the deeper meaning and take Supper with Me, because only a few connect with Me inwardly so that they have the desire to hear Me Myself, that My Word is so delectable and precious to them as to make them hunger and thirst for it, so that I can invite them to take Communion with Me, that I can distribute the bread of heaven and refresh them with the wine of truth for the salvation of their souls. Anyone who is so intimately connected with Me always lives in 'remembrance of Me', he will always allow Me to be present no matter where he is and what he does, thus I will also always be present with him as a guest at every actual meal, he will always remember Me and desire to feel My presence through My Word .... He will be so imbued by love for Me that he will also tell his fellow human beings and he will share what he owns, spiritual and earthly gifts, because he will feel impelled into actions of love as soon as he is inwardly in contact with Love Itself. Then his soul will constantly receive nourishment and also distribute it constantly, he will constantly communicate, he will stay in communion with

Me and also be conscious of My presence .... Do understand, you humans, the act of Communion is not just a matter of a moment which is only carried out by the external consumption of bread and wine; understand that I expect more than merely a temporary commitment. Your heart must be completely prepared for My admission, an act of cleansing must have preceded it which only requires a life of love, and a loving person will also desire a sign of reciprocated love, he will desire to hear Me Myself speak .... and thus he will distribute first in order to receive from My hand a delectable gift in return .... My Word as nourishment for the soul is indispensable for him. And if he desires it he will indeed be fed, he will eat My flesh and drink My blood .... I will take Supper with him and he with Me ....

Amen

## **Death of a worldly ruler .... Turn of events ....**

***B.D. 4493 from November 23rd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

When you hear of the death of a worldly ruler you have arrived at the point you can call the beginning of the end. Then the world will turn into a place of fire, flames will

blaze high, unbridled hatred will rage and humanity will be gripped by horror as it sees no escape from the inevitable peril.

And then I will urge you to speak, for whilst everything is in uproar great calm will take hold of you as you clearly realise that the time of My appearance is drawing near, and thus you proclaim it to those who will listen to you. People see themselves surrounded by enemies on all fronts and are therefore without hope for a peaceful solution. Hence those without faith in the only One Who can help will suffer immense fear.

Consequently they will only focus on world events .... People will anxiously attempt to provide for themselves as they see the approach of great earthly hardship; they will anxiously try to secure worldly goods and prepare for escape even though it seems hopeless to them. Only the faithful remain calm, and then I will use these to encourage their distraught fellow human beings who despair in their unbelief. I attempt to bring Myself close to them once more, I let My servants talk to them and through them I Myself speak words of love and encouragement. I warn them against escape and not just to consider their physical well being; I demonstrate the futility of their intentions and admonish them to persevere and put their fate in My hands; and thus everything takes its course ....

The fire is kindled and people will not extinguish it anymore, I will put it out Myself by opposing it with other

elements, by confronting those Myself who want to tear each other apart .... And My voice will sound from above .... The earth will experience a natural disaster which will tear the fighters apart; they will be faced by a power which neither can match .... The process will only take hours but it will create a completely new situation in the world, totally changed conditions and an initially uncontrollable chaos, utmost earthly hardship and unspeakable grief and adversity amongst people.

Yet you all must endure this, for the end is approaching and many opportunities for purification still need to be created since all people have a shorter lifespan now and need to mature in the shortest possible time .... The end is near and as soon as this point is reached you also can, without doubt, soon expect the last day and the Last Judgment, so that may be fulfilled what has been proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **The ability to receive divine wisdom through the heart ....**

***B.D. 4498 from November 28th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Divine wisdoms have to be sought deep inside the heart, for mere human intellect will neither be able to explain nor understand them if the heart is not involved in it. For this reason divine wisdom can only be received by people who live a profound inner life, who often withdraw into solitude, that is, who stop thinking about the world, about earthly worries and earthly plans, who enter into contemplation and try to fathom the kingdom which is beyond the earthly world. Such people are rewarded by God by granting them insight into the most concealed things, by allowing them to behold His sphere of activity, by informing them of His plan of eternity and by giving them at the same time the necessary comprehension to understand everything and to grasp the correlations. He tries to reveal to them the greatest mysteries, although the human being's intellectual capacity is insufficient to receive a comprehensive explanation as long as he does not have the degree of maturity that allows him to be permeated by the light of wisdom. Yet with the person's continuing development his intellectual capacity will improve and it is therefore indeed already possible to penetrate profound mysteries on Earth, and thus to take possession of divine wisdom, however, it will only be comprehensible to those who receive it, whereas another person will not know what to make of it because he has no understanding of the correlations between all works of creation with the eternal Creator.

Nevertheless, the more mature person should make an effort to also inform his fellow human being, because the



knowledge can encourage another person's spiritual striving and because light shall be brought into the darkness which is spread across humanity, which lives in total ignorance of spiritual truth and no longer recognises its purpose on Earth, just as it is unaware of the individual person's final goal, which should be eagerly aspired to during earthly life. The question 'Why do we humans exist?' remains open to most people, they don't even make an effort to answer it or to look for a suitable answer. They often pose this question but they never seriously desire an answer or listen to those who answer them, for they only ever let their intellect speak but never their heart .... that is, they don't take any notice of their feelings which would be a clear answer for them. They drown out the voice of the heart and completely turn towards the world, hence they are incapable of receiving divine wisdom which necessitates a withdrawal from the world. And thus the world will remain dark and without light, since only a few people can receive enlightenment through the inner voice. But these few will be and remain happy, for they will take divine wisdom over into the spiritual kingdom where it originated from, while the others will enter the realm of the beyond in profound spiritual darkness because they failed to look for the light on Earth ....

Amen

## **Where two or three are**

# **gathered together in My name ....'**

***B.D. 4507 from December 11th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

And I Am with you when you speak My name, as long as your thoughts intend to reach Me. Then I Am in your midst .... Believe this and become aware of My presence when you speak of Me, and imagine that I knock at every heart's door and request entry, and that you should not reject Me if you want to gain My favour. You should be receptive when I want to talk to you through Word or Scripture, through thoughts or My servants on earth who bring you My Word. For if you accept My Word you accept Me Myself in your heart, if you comply with it you take Communion with Me, for then you will live in accordance with My will, which I will reveal to you through My Word .... with love, and through your deeds of love you will unite with Me, you will establish such a heartfelt bond with Me that you will hear Me when I speak Words of love to you and thus provide nourishment for your soul when I give you the bread of heaven, My flesh and My blood .... when I come to you Myself in the Word ....

Let Me stay with you often, let your thoughts drift to Me and hold frequent spiritual conversations, so that I can always be present with you, for I gave you this promise

Myself: Where two or three are gathered together in My name, there I Am in the midst of them. And wherever I Am you can only benefit, for I always hand out My gifts because I love you, My living creations, and want to make you happy. And the amount of My gifts of grace can be determined by yourselves, you can receive much, just as you can reject My love by turning your attention to the world .... by interrupting your spiritual conversations and focussing on worldly interests .... I let you do as you please and don't force you to listen to Me, yet you deprive yourselves of much wealth. I can only give you as much as your free will accepts, I certainly offer you My grace but I won't impose it on you, yet you will lose My presence when you turn away from Me, for I want to be desired in order to give Myself. Nevertheless, I won't stop .... time and again I will send My messengers to prepare the path for Me, and I will follow them if you if you are willing to receive Me .... And thus you can always make use of My grace; you can always be My guest just by remembering Me and ignoring the world. For truly, I will give you better things than the world can give to you .... Therefore, don't let Me knock in vain but listen to My voice and follow it, let yourselves be invited to take Supper with Me and be My guests, so that I can refresh you physically and spiritually with food and drink ....

Amen

**Humbly enduring fate ....**

## ***B.D. 4518 from December 19th 1948, taken from Book No. 52***

I have instructed My angels to intervene where human will does not succeed. For it is time that people find themselves a way in order to escape the imminent disaster. But I will help them if the urgency is not recognised, and thus coincidences will emerge which are nevertheless only My providence, which thus influence the individual person's destiny. People don't know that they are in constant care of the beings to whom they have been entrusted, who determine every individual person's life in accordance with divine will, who thus intervene in their lives on My instruction. But I nevertheless do not interfere with free will so as not to force the human being's will who should freely decide or profess what is good. And he need not do anything else but accept his destiny without resistance and without grumbling or complaining. For I know what is beneficial for everyone and what condition the human being's soul needs in order to mature and take this into account. And thus all events will intertwine and thus create a new situation which is entirely beyond anyone's calculation. But then you should also recognise My working and be grateful that I look after you by placing beings of light by your side to care for you, or you would become unsuitable for spiritual work and unable to help your fellow human beings. However, I gave you a mission and thus handed you into the care of My angels which will do everything

for you as long as you work on My behalf. My will alone decides, and this truly in a way which is good for you. And so you should stop worrying and calmly and cheerfully continue on your path of life which time and again will bring you sunshine and will never be too difficult for you to travel as long as you entrust yourselves to Me, as long as you push towards Me and work for Me and My kingdom ....

Amen

## **Tabernacle ....**

***B.D. 4519 from December 21st 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

You should understand that I cannot abide in a limited, specially designed vessel, in earthly matter, in certain places at certain times, but that I Am wherever a heart has developed love. Only a loving heart can claim to harbour Me, to be blessed by My presence, for My fundamental substance is love and thus I can only be where love manifests itself. But a material vessel can never be the holder of My eternal spirit .... This assumption is only the result of thoughts by spiritually blind people who have the wrong idea of My Being, which indeed permeates infinity and is thus omnipresent but it will never be contained in a limited vessel, as people are

being taught. What is humanity thinking of the eternal Deity .... This belief demonstrates spiritual poverty and how far people are kept from the truth by misinformed teachers ....

How can a spirit that controls infinity make its abode within a material form, which .... as the spiritually awakened person will know .... contains spiritual substance that is still on a very low level of development .... When I credit a person's heart with My presence then I Am contacting the spiritual essence in its final stage of development, I Am effectively permeating the soul, the human being's spirit, with the strength of My love, the expression of Myself .... And the influx of strength increases in accordance with the willingness of a person to love and thus fills the entire heart. Then I Am present in the person Myself; I will take possession of him just as he in turn will harbour Me within himself in abundance. Why should I dwell in a vessel which is still dead, which, in fact, is part of the spiritual essence opposing Me ....

My presence would cause any shape to melt if the strength of My love were to flow through it, and every thinking person will recognise the absurdity of this idea and reject such doctrines. However, human beings are very foolish, they will not let themselves be taught but hold on to what they are told to believe. They are holding a dead object in excessive veneration, which they themselves credit with contents supposedly representing the supreme and most venerable Being. A pure human

heart capable of love is the only temple in which I Myself will dwell, and therefore I need not be sought in particular places at certain times and in a particular form .... Instead, every human being should prepare himself to become the vessel I want to occupy. Every human being should shape his heart into love, then I, the Eternal Love, will take abode in him, then he will be able to love and revere Me everywhere and at any time, I will always be present in him because My spirit will unite with his, because I Am in him Myself ....

Amen

## **Unmistakable sign of spiritual low level: Rejection of the divine Word ....**

***B.D. 4520 from December 22nd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

It is very telling that you, My servants on earth, find little interest when you bring My Word to people as a gift from your Lord .... You, who are spiritually awake, who make contact with Me in thought and through actions of love, you know and believe that I speak to you Myself, thus you

offer My Word as the Word of God .... Consequently you must also realise how far people have distanced themselves from Me, that only very few regard Me Myself as the originator of the Word, that people do not believe that I Myself talk to them directly and therefore do not accept the teachings either. They do not recognise the voice of the Father and Creator since eternity. This is an unmistakable sign of people's spiritual low level.

What you, My representatives on earth, give to them is rejected, and what is given to them instead by those who call themselves My representatives even though they are not called by Me, is accepted as pure truth and advocated with zeal which, however, is wasted on errors and lies. Anyone who knows the pure truth also knows the spiritual darkness of those who reject My Word even if they deem themselves to be eager servants. They have not yet recognised Me and want to bear witness of Me .... They want to lead My flock and don't know the right path themselves, they want to teach and are ignorant themselves, and at the same time they are so arrogantly minded that they do not let themselves be taught even if I confront them Myself in the Word. Hence, if they do not recognise My Word they will not recognise Me Myself either.

And thus it follows that the time of the end has arrived, because humanity cannot be guided back to Me by anything if it does not take notice of My Word from above. There is no way I can speak to people Myself other than through your mouth, and My Own, i.e. those who



strive towards Me of their own free will, who often lift their thoughts to Me, will also recognise My voice. They will know which one of their fellow human beings belongs to My Own, because those who reject My Word and therefore Me Myself are My adversary's children even though they call themselves My servants, because My chosen servants recognise Me and My Word and are therefore closely united with Me, whereas the others will increasingly distance themselves from Me if they do not accept what I offer them as a special gift of grace ....

Amen

## **Cosmic changes ....**

***B.D. 4521 from December 23rd 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Where cosmic changes become known, which indicate a forthcoming natural disaster, you can also be sure to detect My working in people through prior signs, all kinds of admonitions and warnings, through clairvoyant visions by especially devout people, and through increased influences by the beings of light on those whose will is devoted to Me and whose appropriate way of life enables their contact. Where natural events occur more frequently people are also more open to My warnings, and there is usually also the motive for frequent changes

in the creations of nature as a result of such natural events, because the constrained spiritual substances strive towards higher development and will reach maturity faster where people are more compliant. Yet in accordance with My eternal plan of Salvation My direct influence through the natural elements will now also affect creations of nature where this is otherwise rare .... The spiritual forces, which have already been constrained for an infinitely long time, are pushing for liberation and will meet My approval .... There, too, it will be announced what is to take place in nature. People will be made aware of it although they are not interested in My admonitions and warnings, in My advice. Cosmic changes will also become apparent and could make everyone think; seers and prophets will arise whose gift of prophecy makes them feel duty bound to mention what they see or hear through spiritual contact. But in view of free will and belief everything will take its natural course, and even cosmic changes will be scientifically explained and therefore won't worry people.

However, although every happening, every process in nature, can certainly be explained in natural terms it will always have a spiritual reason and explanation, and it is more important to take notice of this than of the purely natural one, because you cannot stop or lessen the natural consequences with your knowledge, but you can utilise spiritual consequence for your benefit and thus calmly face the natural consequences .... You will be in control of them when you believe, when you have derived

the spiritual benefit from your knowledge .... Then you will also be in control of nature .... Do you know what that means? To be able to stop even the elements of nature willfully, which is also My will if you are sincerely united with Me? And the liberated spiritual substances will also acknowledge you as master .... you will also be the ruler over matter and it will willingly subordinate itself to you. You cannot appreciate its profound meaning as yet but when you have reached this degree it will also become clear to you what you can achieve with My strength, which will then be at your unrestricted disposal. Yet only few people will reach this degree of maturity due to their profoundly steadfast faith in Me and My love, and their unlimited surrender to Me .... But My power and glory will reveal itself to them and they will proclaim Me throughout the world .... Moved by My spirit they will always and forever speak on My behalf because they will soon no longer be part of this world and close to their perfection ....

Amen

## **Signs of the end ...**

***B.D. 4523 from December 24th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

The signs which precede the final end are unmistakable

yet only of significance to someone who looks at them from a spiritual point of view, because they take place within the framework of natural law and will therefore only be recognised as the previously announced indications of the end if people themselves believe in an end, thus if they are inclined to associate everything that is created with the Creator and all happenings with His will. Consequently, they find it easy to believe in God's reign and activity, they also know that nothing happens by itself but that everything is governed by God's will. But then they also know that the Book of the Fathers has to be believed, which had announced an end ever since the beginning of the epoch of Salvation. These predictions were confirmed and repeated by Jesus Christ Who effectively brought one stage of this epoch to an end and started a new one, but always with reference to the end, to the conclusion of a long period of Salvation, which is now coming to conclusion. To ensure that this period of Salvation will be successful for the souls He Himself accomplished the act of Salvation, thereby enabling them to quickly mature into spiritual beings which no longer required a material earth.

However, the act of Salvation was not made sufficient use of. Hence the earth can not yet be excluded as a place of redemption for the spirits, it merely needs to arise reshaped again if the redemption of the constrained spirits is to progress .... Thus, first it will have to be destroyed and dissolved in order to let something new emerge from it. The fact that this developmental phase is

limited is understandable, for God has always granted the souls a specific length of time to release themselves from the form, which is tied to His laws of eternal order. This time has now ended and as a result the signs must show themselves too, for God will never leave people without warning or admonition, so that they can still make full use of the last days for their souls. Even the longest period of Salvation will end one day .... Yet only the believer will deem this to be true, and this is why only the believer will recognise and pay attention to the last signs .... he will know that he is living in the last days and that he seriously has to consider his soul ....

Amen

# **'Thou art Peter, the rock ....' Living faith - the church of Christ ....**

***B.D. 4525 from December 27th 1948,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Anyone who wants to belong to My church must have a living faith, for I do not acknowledge a dead faith because it does not merit the description of 'faith'. And thus you humans already have the right characteristic of My church as well as the explanation for My Words 'Thou

art Peter, and upon this rock I will build My church .... ' My church is only based on the right faith .... But what is the right faith? .... Deeming something to be true which cannot be proven is **your** explanation. Nevertheless, this is not meant to be blind faith, not a thoughtless acceptance of religious doctrines, because this cannot give rise to a convinced faith. Even so, the human being must possess the **inner conviction** without proof .... This is the right faith or it would only be a play of words when faith is being talked about. Only a convinced faith is a living faith, and not blindly accepted dogma which is merely not rejected .... Peter possessed a convinced faith and this is why I referred to him as the rock which should be the foundation of My church. And time and again I will make this faith the condition for belonging to My church, for I Am not satisfied with those who only pay lip-service to a teaching but lack the inner conviction.

A living faith is a prerequisite, because the strength of faith will only become evident where the inner conviction exists. The fact that I expect more of people than a mere avowal with their lips should be obvious to every thinking person, after all, people could be presented with and expected to believe the most absurd teachings. But I made this impossible with My Words which specify a guideline to people .... Peter, the rock .... who shall be the foundation of My church. From this follows that you humans must therefore clarify your point of view regarding every doctrine, that you, in order that you can believe with conviction, will have to mentally

form an opinion about it and thus, understandably, cannot accept every doctrine, that an erroneous teaching must be recognised by you, because you cannot gain the conviction that what you are expected to believe is the absolute truth. On serious reflection you will certainly be able to distinguish which doctrines correspond to the truth and which have to be rejected .... And thus you will also be and remain true followers of My church if you have a living faith, and I will bless you ....

Amen

## **Coming in the clouds ... Rapture ... End ...**

***B.D. 4531 from January 4th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

And I will come to you to carry you into My kingdom .... Remember this promise during your hours of distress and wait for Me and My help, firmly believe that I will come as your Saviour when the adversity becomes insufferable. And don't be afraid, for I Am stronger than the one who wants to ruin you. You should know that it would be easy for Me to destroy him; yet nothing would be achieved by this for his many followers would continue his work if they were not destroyed as well. This, however, is not

acceptable, for that which came forth from My creative spirit will continue to exist forever, it cannot cease to exist because it is everlasting strength from Me.

Nevertheless, I will rescue you from his power by banishing him and all those who are enslaved by him. You, however, will be led into the kingdom of peace where you will live as if you were in paradise, until I return you to the new earth which you then shall populate according to My will. No-one will believe this promise, this prophesy, for when I come in the clouds I will repeal the natural laws by lifting you up to Me in the flesh before your fellow human beings' eyes who succumbed to My adversary. They will effectively experience something unnatural, which they currently don't want to believe in.

But you, who are My Own, you know that nothing is impossible for Me, and therefore you also know that I can stop or revoke natural laws if it benefits My eternal plan of Salvation, thus you also know that there will be an end and that you are living in the last days before the end. Consequently you do not doubt this proclamation either, which I imparted to humanity at the beginning of this period of Salvation. You consider it possible, and you should firmly believe it, so that you subsequently will be able to survive the difficult time, always thinking and hoping for my assured help and My coming from above. Regardless of what evil people will do to you, don't take offence, for they will receive their punishment which will be bitter indeed. They will see you being lifted up before their eyes while death is lurking around them and they



will be unable to escape in any direction; they will be devoured by the earth and be granted a wretched fate on the new earth. You, however, will receive your just compensation, all hardship will have come to an end, you will live in freedom and with joy on the new earth amid a paradise, amid love and in direct contact with Me, Who will often stay amongst the people who have become love. And this is the end which was predicted by seers and prophets time and again, which was announced ever since the beginning of this epoch of Salvation so that humanity will believe. Yet no-one takes these predictions seriously, nevertheless, the day will come when all this will happen and the last Judgment will occur, as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Spiritual turning-point .... Total transformation of earth ....**

***B.D. 4533 from January 6th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

You can take it for granted that the world is facing a change, spiritually as well as earthly. The earth itself is approaching a total transformation, a transformation of

its surface as well as extensive internal changes, and, likewise, people need to prepare themselves for a process that will have spiritual repercussions because all life on earth, human and animal, will cease to exist as soon as the reshaping of earth is under way. Thus it stands to reason that the entire transformation will have a spiritual foundation, that a new school for the spirit will be created which, however, will first call for the destruction of the former. Earth cannot continue to exist the way it is at present if it is not to circle through the universe amid other creations and heavenly bodies devoid of all purpose .... Change has to take place, and this act of transformation will be experienced by people to whom God has given the grace to use the final opportunities for achieving maturity. For God has blessed the last days of this earth's existence by providing blessing upon blessing for people who could certainly reach full maturity by the last day. That the gifts of grace are ignored, that the majority of people do not welcome and thus do not accept them, is only proof that the last days have arrived.

Hence only few will be able to observe the final act of transformation because they accept God's will and therefore also know of His eternal plan of Salvation. They will not be harmed by the process of transformation as they will be raptured before the last act of destruction of the old earth. And thus the change will merely affect them such that they will change their environment for a kingdom of peace until they are returned to the entirely

reshaped earth as root of the new human race. Until the last day, however, others will still have ample opportunity to change and thus save themselves too. For as soon as their spiritual transformation has taken place, as soon as the soul has returned to God, Whom they had adamantly resisted so far, the souls also become aspirants to the kingdom of the blessed and need no longer fear the destruction of the old earth. No creation on the old earth will survive nor will any human being continue to exist who was not lifted to heaven by God's love beforehand .... The complete destruction of the earth's surface as a whole will also result in the demise of every creature, and the transformation of any soul capable of change will have been achieved by the hour of the Last Judgment. Hence it depends on the human being's spiritual change whether he will survive the end of this earthly period and be permitted to re-inhabit the new earth as a child of God ....

All people will still be capable of change but only few will be willing, and thus the earth's process of transformation will take place, given that people's will shall no longer take the right direction and earth no longer fulfils its intended purpose. Earthly life is misused .... As a result, the whole of humanity faces a spiritual turning-point. However, it will not happen on the old earth and it will only consciously be experienced by a few people, whilst the majority of people will indeed enter an entirely different developmental stage, hence also be affected by the spiritual turning-point, but in a

regressive sense .... they will lose their physical life and continue their existence in a completely different form .... 'Life' will have ceased to be and the state of 'death' will surround the spiritual essence because it will have failed as a human being, because it did not use its opportunity to change in order to redeem itself.

In the universe, however, the act of transformation will denote an entirely new period of redemption and the conclusion of an era which was extremely significant, because God Himself incarnated on earth in order to exemplify to humanity the change from a human into a divine being, which all people should accomplish. Earth, which carried His physical body, will now have to help the hardened spiritual substances, solid matter, to achieve redemption. Every living thing will have to experience a change of its external form; everything constrained in a form below the human level will have to be able to comply with the impetus for ascent. As a result of earth's total transformation this will indeed be possible since the love of the divine man Jesus also encompassed the as yet unredeemed spiritual substances which He also intended to help with His act of Salvation. When this period of redemption comes to an end it will also mean the end for all creations in, on and above the earth. Then a continuation of development in the creations of the new earth can commence for all spiritual substances which still need to be redeemed and which, depending on their will towards God, will animate the various forms until their final salvation ....

Amen

# **The right kind of teacher ... Truth - Error ....**

***B.D. 4534 from January 7th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

People must hand themselves over to a good teacher if they want to be taught correctly, so long as they don't come to Me Myself for schooling. They could be instructed by Me directly at all times, yet they would lack the knowledge of this as well as faith. Consequently, they will have to receive the knowledge from somewhere else and need only make sure that the instructor knows the truth and is able to teach them correctly. Being instructed in the truth must be very important to them, therefore they must investigate the origin of the teacher's knowledge; they should first clarify the relationship the teacher has with Me. Hence, they must first believe in Me as Creator and Father of eternity, they must inwardly acknowledge a Deity and make an effort to get to know this Deity. This is the first condition or hardly anyone would try to penetrate spiritual knowledge. A distinction must be made between people who allow themselves to be instructed and those who want to be instructed .... The first let themselves be pushed into a

school without resistance, they let themselves be seized by teachers looking for subjects to whom they want to impart their points of view. The latter look for their own school in order to receive knowledge, and they are serious about attaining the truth. I will come to meet these seekers and guide them to the right teacher. However, since My adversary also wants to gain your soul he will not miss the opportunity to let representatives of error cross your path. Anyone who seeks the truth will also come across incompetent teachers, and therefore indications are given to you that you should conduct an examination in order to entrust yourselves to the right teachers and how you should do this. And again it should be said that your attention must first be drawn to the teacher's attitude towards Me, whether he spiritedly advocates My Word or whether his lips merely pass My Words on, which is very quickly recognisable for the serious seeker, since the repeat of the living Word ignites the listener's heart, whereas the lifeless Word is tiring and puts people off listening. Although someone with a hunger for truth can also derive some benefit from this dead Word, he will nevertheless feel dissatisfied with such teachings so that he will expect more, then he should give in to this longing and look for a different teacher. But teachers who inspire people's keen debates, who repeat My Word animatedly and cause a positive response in people's heart, whose bond with God can be recognised by their kind and loving nature, are true representatives of My Word and in possession of truth. You can trustingly hand yourselves over to them, they will

teach you correctly and contribute to the fact that you will soon establish heartfelt contact with Me and thus can be instructed by My spirit directly, either mentally or through the inner Word. The origin of their knowledge might well be the same with both teachers, both might have gained the knowledge through study, and yet their teaching ability will differ and therefore their knowledge will also be either of purest truth or interspersed with errors, depending on their maturity of soul. For this reason you must always pay attention to the teacher's way of life, to what extent the human being follows Christ, that is, to what extent he is permeated by love for his neighbour, which will characterise his entire nature and will always be recognisable, because love does not hide itself. Truth can always be found where love is present because it cannot be gained academically; instead, it can only be gained, recognised and taken possession of through the working of the spirit, which is the result of a life of love. And thus it can always be noticed whether a teacher expresses his own thoughts or merely words which have not yet found the right response in his heart and therefore cannot be repeated spiritedly. Test the teachers and choose a suitable teacher for yourselves, for you will come into contact with both. The right ones will lead you to Me, yet the others will not be prevented from approaching you because you can and should decide for yourselves if you seriously want to be taught the truth ....

Amen

# People's deliberate rejection of the divine Word ...

***B.D. 4539 from January 14th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

It is remarkable how few people allow themselves to be affected by the divine Word, how little notice they take of the fact that it is conveyed to them in an unusual way, and how often they inwardly object to it and silently or openly reject it. People are already strongly influenced by God's adversary who clouds their power of judgment and has weakened their will, hence they neither recognise nor do they want to recognise what they are lacking and what could help them. That which is most important seems utterly unimportant to them, they only pay attention to the body's demands and have little spiritual interests. This also explains why the divine Word is only occasionally recognised as truth and sends its rays of light in the surrounding area .... Only a few people will feel the strength of the divine Word affecting them and thereby mature psychologically. The Gospel will certainly be carried to all places, but it will not find open doors everywhere, and thus tiny lights will only glow now and



then and cannot expel the darkness of night which is spread across the Earth. It will only be bright and clear where the light from above is kindled, where the directly offered Word is accepted, whose effect on people is unsurpassed. And thus it is not down to the Word itself, nor to the activity of God's messengers, instead, the fact that the divine Word will not find the wider distribution necessary for the human race to heal spiritually and to prepare itself for the Last Judgment is entirely due to people's deliberate rejection. Countless threads are woven between Heaven and Earth, just as many threads stretch out from the Earth itself into all directions, the news of God's extraordinary working reaches all places and therefore could also be spread into all directions, yet time and again the threads reach a dead end and, on account of respecting free will, it is impossible to convey the divine Word to people as long as they inwardly deliberately reject it. Hence it is necessary to campaign and work incessantly, and as soon as only one person accepts the message from above a great rescue mission will have been accomplished, and God conveys His Word to earth for the sake of these individual souls, so that they will find the path to Him before the end arrives, before night sets in and extinguishes all light .... Amen

**Existence of God ...**

**Worldly scholars ... Heart**

# and intellect ....

## ***B.D. 4541 from January 15th 1949, taken from Book No. 52***

The worldly scholar often finds it difficult to believe in a Deity because his intellect is forced to conclude otherwise due to knowledge which, however, does not entirely correspond to the truth. Simply a mistaken view concerning the evolution of the earth leads to wrong ideas, and then it is difficult to acknowledge an eternal Creator, a Being which could certainly be recognised by its expression of strength, but whose recognition is usually not wanted. Science attempts to prove everything. However, where this is not possible it does not admit its inability but simply refuses to acknowledge what is outside the scope of its research. And thus it is based on a wrong concept, and the path to the eternal Deity is ultimately very difficult to find, even if the will to do so exists.

All kinds of research activity should start by revealing God's existence, which admittedly cannot be proven but which can be believed with complete inner conviction. Such research will then progress quickly and successfully. But to achieve this certain belief the human being, in spite of his keen intellect, has to disregard the latter for the time being and dedicate himself to the feeling of his heart, he has to leave all science to one

side and, like a child, allow himself to be taught from within, i.e. he has to accept what his feeling imagines or wants as the truth. Effectively, he has to dream with open eyes. Then he will always find a Deity, Who directs and guides everything, and he will know that he is supported by It.

A human being's innermost desire is and remains a strong power above himself; however, worldly intellect attempts to stifle this because it is also spoken to by the one who wants to supplant the Deity but who is unable to enter the human heart and instead attempts to influence the human intellect all the more. God expresses Himself through the heart, his adversary expresses himself through the intellect, unless the heart is stronger and persuades the intellect to be on its side. In that case it is also possible to recognise God intellectually, heart and intellect will aspire to the eternal Deity and then science will also build on a different foundation, it will draw different conclusions which will definitely not be false ones. Because once an investigation with belief in a Deity begins it will sooner or later achieve success and also come close to the truth, irrespective to which field it is applied. Then science and belief will no longer contradict but merely complement each other, and only then will knowledge be free from error, when it is in harmony with the belief in God as an omnipotent, wise and loving Being Which governs everything that was, is and remains in eternity ....

Amen

# Follow Me ....'

***B.D. 4544 from January 18th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

Follow Me and the goal that has been set for you since the beginning will be reached by you on earth already. You have to make the effort to live a life of love which will bring you very close to the One Who is eternal love Himself. And if you now bear My life on earth in mind and for the sake of the act of Salvation appeal to Me for reinforcement of your will, you will also find it easy to live in love, for I will help you and constantly provide you with opportunities which enable you to live up to your will to love if you feel the urge to do so.

My life on earth was only a practical application of selfless neighbourly love. And the result was the unification of the Father, the Eternal Love, with Me, so that I could use His strength and might, His light and wisdom like My own possession. I was permeated by His spirit, by His strength and by His light .... And thus everything was possible for Me since God Himself was working in Me. As a human being I demonstrated that it is not impossible to be filled by the divine spirit, that thus every human being is able to work the miracles and signs I performed, that the human being can shape himself such that he, as an image of God, can utilize all powers

and thus also accomplish whatever he wants.

Follow Me .... all of God's strength is at your disposal, He does not impose any restrictions on you, He gives without measure, and you may use everything He wants to impart because He loves you .... Follow Me .... live a life of selfless neighbourly love and you will become perfect and be able to constantly enjoy God's love and blessing. I speak to you as a human being, just as I walked on earth as a human being, Who equally had to attain divine strength through a life of love, and Who was also only able to accomplish the unification with the eternal Deity through love ....

I will show you the path which you only need to travel in order to then also recognise the truth of My Word. Let yourselves be urged by Me onto this path, don't offer Me any resistance, try to do kind-hearted deeds and your strength will increase, your will to love will be stimulated, for love itself is strength and if you practice it, whatever you give will also flow back to you again as strength .... Try it and let My Words touch your hearts, let yourselves be called by Me and follow Me .... I Am the voice in the wilderness of your life. Everything around you threatens to wither away if you don't irrigate the arid area with the divine flow of love .... if you don't develop all good instincts through love and increase the strength within you. Do not let My call go unheeded, take notice of it and bear in mind that I don't demand anything impossible from you, for I Myself as a human being had set an example for you as to what love and a human

being's will are capable of achieving .... Follow Me, and you will be and remain blissfully happy for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Retribution ... Sin and atonement ...**

***B.D. 4547 from January 24th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 52***

The God of righteousness will redress everything, and thus the conduct of humankind will indeed find its atonement, but not always in the way you humans consider right. God's wisdom recognises people's weaknesses, their moral degree of maturity and the souls' imperfect state, and thus He sometimes makes use of means which can also result in the opposite, because the human being himself is striving towards the abyss as long as he still expects advantage from it .... Consequently, he must first try to release himself from earthly cravings, otherwise the injustice will keep growing and God will have to balance things increasingly more, which signifies immensely difficult times on earth and an often unbearable fate in the beyond. For every injustice must be atoned for, unless the divine Saviour and Redeemer takes the guilt upon Himself and redeems it through His

crucifixion which, however, presupposes total devotion to Him and the will to live a way of life according to His commandments. In that case, the human being will have already attained a level of improvement which assures him forgiveness of his sins. But anyone who does not believe in Christ's act of Salvation must inevitably make

Amends for the guilt himself on earth or in the beyond. The world, however, is inconceivably entrenched in sin, consequently, the earthly adversity is likewise inconceivably immense and brings forth one iniquity after another. Someone who recognises and abhors it is no longer part of it yet he will suffer because of it, because every light-desiring person will experience darkness as pain. Yet the hour of Judgment is not far away anymore, retribution is inevitable, and therefore you humans should not doubt God's justice .... Human will as well as Satan's activity must be allowed free rein so that people will show their true instincts, so that a decision of will is made, which can be good or evil, and good and evil must therefore be seen in order to affirm or to abhor it. But don't think that retribution will fail to materialise .... For sooner or later the day will come when every individual person will have to justify himself for his thoughts, intentions and actions .... and the closer it is to the end the more evident becomes the raging of the dark forces and thus also the onslaught against the righteous, who shrink back from the devils in human form and call upon God's justice .... Retribution, however, will not fail to materialise ....

Amen

# **Question 'Why' ... (Anthroposophist Cologne) ... Fall of the angels ... Sin ...**

***B.D. 4551 from January 28th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

It remains perpetually unfathomable for human beings what moves God to rule and work as He does, because human intellect cannot comprehend what motives form the basis for God's expression of strength; neither can it comprehend the interactions because it can only see and feel the result of what primordially had happened in the spiritual realm, in a world, of which all visible creations are mere weak reflections that cannot even comparatively be referred to and which were only created as a result of what had taken place a long time ago in the realm of God's created spirits. These were the purest expression of His strength, consequently they too were powerful and strong, they were of the highest perfection. God's creative will had transferred itself to His created beings too, with the result that all His



thoughts urged to express themselves in them as well and therefore a creative will of unimaginable extent inspired these beings which now became active without restriction. In other words, new creations were produced which surpassed themselves; however, these new creations were always inspired beings and of greatest perfection too, therefore also cognitive and in possession of free will.

The first entity which came forth out of God outshone everything with its light and strength because it had developed from God Himself and found its bliss in the constant use of its unlimited strength. Its creations increased and its bliss grew immeasurably, God had imposed on it no limitations. However, He put it to the test because He wanted the entity to become aware of itself as the carrier of God's outgoing strength .... This test required that the entity .... Lucifer .... should depict God to his creations as their origin, in order that he too would continue to always consciously accept the strength, which enabled him to be creatively active, from God. Thus he was meant to acknowledge God as his Creator and source of strength and his bliss would be unlimited for all eternity. He was not put to the test merely for the sake of this acknowledgment but he was expected to make a decision of his own free will that was intended to elevate him from the perfectly created being to a perfect being of his own volition, so that he too could use his power and strength as a truly divine being within the will of God ....

And he failed .... He did not want to be the recipient but the source of strength himself, and the amount of strength at his disposal seemed proof enough to him .... Therefore he volitionally separated himself from God, although a separation from Him was not possible since he couldn't exist without God. And since his will, with the use of God's strength, had created innumerable beings, he considered himself as their creator and of enormous strength and power; consequently he volitionally separated from God in arrogance and lust for power, thereby becoming sinful and pulling all of his creations into sin too. Although they themselves were still innocent they were completely under the influence of him who had given them life.

And these were now given the right of self-determination by God, they were permitted to see the light and in their perfection also recognised their origin, they could therefore also stay with God and participate in His glory. However, only few followed Him, that is, only few chose to stay with God of their own free will and, as His angels, were constantly with Him and worked for Him in the spiritual realm. The greater part, however, fell .... they followed their creator, freely chose to accept his will as their own and by doing so fell into a state of spiritual darkness .... His awareness was taken from him because the effect of the strength reduces as soon as the entity distances itself from God ....

But everything was and is strength out of God which eternally cannot be lost and therefore must return to

Him in a way that God's wisdom has judged to be effective. And this way is the progression through the earthly physical creation, which God had brought into being for the purpose of leading the fallen spirit back to Him. The spirit moves through this creation with a bound will, that is, in a state of compulsion on the slow path of upward development until it reaches the stage when its free will is returned to it and it is once again confronted with the decision to choose the power it wants to adhere to.

The being is burdened with the sin of its past opposition to God but can release itself by using God's strength which it once had rejected; however, it has to acquire this through works of love and by consciously requesting it from God in prayer. It has to use its free will during its earthly life in the right manner .... it has to turn towards God again and acknowledge Him as eternal Father and Creator .... Then it returns once more to the state of light, it becomes a recipient of strength and can work again in accordance to its will which now is also God's will .... and it shall be able to create and shape for its own happiness and thus be eternally blessed ....

Amen

## **The human being's imperfect state**

# **corresponds to his will ....**

***B.D. 4553 from January 30th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

The fact that I gave you your earthly life does not justify the assumption that I placed you in the imperfect state which is causing you problems on earth. Every one of you is shaped according to his will, that is, not according to your will on earth as a human being but according to the characteristic of your will prior to your embodiment as a human being. Despite the fact that your will was not striving towards higher spheres I have given you the opportunity to nevertheless attain a certain degree of higher development by constraining your will, so that you were able to be actively of service in the state of compulsion which thereby reduced the vast distance from Me. Afterwards I released your will, which is shaped differently in every individual person, depending on his inner opposition to Me. And you humans are shaped according to this will of yours on earth, equipped with different physical abilities, traits and feelings, so that you have the greatest possible opportunity to mature fully during your life on earth, for the option of entering the spiritual kingdom at the end of this physical life is open to everyone. Thus I did not give you flaws and weaknesses, but you yourselves brought them along in misguided love, otherwise you would be able to discard them instantly were your love not wrongly directed. None

of you sufficiently consider the fact that you possess free will and that this free will is the cause of your embodiment on earth. In the past the spiritual beings sinned of their own free will, and of their own free will they must recognise their sins and make

Amends for them by consciously striving towards Me, against Whom they had transgressed. You humans on earth have almost reached the goal, for you are already considerably closer to the state which once was your fate before your apostasy from Me. However, your will decides the final achievement .... You must try to master all faults and weaknesses, vices and cravings yourselves, for you do not lack the means for help, the grace and strength from above. Yet if you love yourselves the way you are, you will never reach the final goal. Know yourselves and try to change .... for one day you will have to give account as to how you have used your short lifetime on earth. My love offers you every opportunity to mature full but it always respects your freedom of will ....

Amen

## **The doctrine of re- incarnation ... (Tantra- message)**

## ***B.D. 4559 from February 6th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

Whatever you would like to know, ask Me, and I will answer your questions as soon as you put them to Me .... It is of utmost significance for all people that they aim to achieve full maturity of soul during their earthly life and that they firmly believe that one day they will have to give account to a God of justice of how they had used their earthly life. This belief encourages people to be spiritually very active. Thus, it is understandable that a belief in frequent opportunities for higher development through repeated incarnations on earth will make the human being indifferent to his psychological task. This belief is dangerous, because it effectively lessens the endeavour for highest possible maturity of soul while, at the same time, it questions My justice. How should I call this or that person to account, unless I allow every human being to re-incarnate on earth? How should people, who transform themselves into love in accordance with My will during their earthly life be rewarded if I give others, who failed to do so, the opportunity to incarnate themselves again once or several more times for the purpose of achieving higher development? In that case, every person would eventually have achieved the same degree of perfection ....

The degree of light determines the degree of bliss in the spiritual kingdom. Hence, the strength of light, which the person has achieved on earth in free will, determines the

sphere of activity allocated to him in the spiritual kingdom, where he can consistently increase in wisdom and strength, and also in happiness. In turn, his activity consists of transmitting light and strength to beings who are in darkness and without strength, who require help on earth as well as in the spiritual kingdom. This activity is tremendously gladdening, so that you cannot compare it to any activity on earth. It follows, that every being capable of distributing light and strength to needy souls wants to be fully active, because it thereby makes itself extremely happy, seeing that it receives the strength from Me and is thus effectively a relay station for My emanation of strength. Every being seeks to implement this happiness-inducing process as soon as it has but a shimmer of knowledge, thus no longer moving in deepest spiritual darkness. Then, it will never again voluntarily exchange its abode in the spiritual realm with that on earth, it will never again desire the physical body, since the opportunities of ascent in the spiritual kingdom are equally available when the will to love has awakened in those with but a flicker of knowledge.

The soul can certainly embody itself if it has the will to do so and its cause for incarnation is a noble motive .... such as wanting to help its fellow human beings, or to atone a considerable guilt which prevented the soul from achieving a higher degree of maturity. Then the re-incarnation is not due to My will but the will of the soul itself is the decisive factor. However, since every soul knows that its past memory will be taken away, such

incarnation is of utmost danger for the soul since it can just as well fail in free will. It has to walk the path of development like any other human being and its carnal instincts will be particularly strong when it is faced with the same temptation that had caused its guilt in the first place. If a soul compares this with its activity in the spiritual kingdom, which slowly but surely also results in the degree of maturity, while the spiritual benefit of a repeated incarnation is doubtful, it much rather prefers its fate in the spiritual kingdom. Nevertheless, it remains in contact with earth in as much as it takes care of the souls' destiny on earth, always helping where it had failed itself, but the assumption that the same soul has embodied itself on earth as a human being again, is wrong.

It must always be contended that people on earth will be offered every opportunity to progress, that the flow of grace is unlimited. Due to the act of Salvation, a person's will can receive enough strength to make failure impossible, and that it is therefore entirely up to him to achieve the high degree of light. Such privileges may not be wilfully rejected in order to then request them anew. The human being has free will. One day he will have to give account of how he has used it and accept the consequences, which consist of a variable fate in the beyond, which he then cannot simply avoid with a repeated embodiment. The success of this is questionable again due to the fact that his past memory will be taken away from him. Admittedly, his will makes



the choice, thus he will be incarnated if he so wants, but this will is rare and therefore one cannot speak of frequent incarnations. Besides, this doctrine is a danger to people, in as much as they do not take their earthly life seriously enough in view of a repetition which, however, fails to happen ....

Amen

## **Mental knowledge of worldly origin ... Truth - Error ....**

***B.D. 4560 from February 7th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

The world separates Me from people and many fall prey to it despite My obvious expression of strength. Even though they recognised Me they abandon Me and don't consider the fact that I will call them to account one day. But the world does not only signify pleasurable activities or material possessions. The adversary can also use other means if he wants people to desert Me, if he wants to keep the truth from them and make them inclined towards his misguided teachings. Then he will use worldly minded people to speak in the guise of an expert and confuse the one who was offered My Word from above so

that he will no longer be able to recognise it because he no longer allows himself to be taught spiritually but instead in a worldly way. It is his own fault that this weakens his power of judgment, for the person to whom I convey My Word is offered a gift of grace which he should appreciate as such. When he is offered something precious he should turn away from worthless gifts; he should unhesitatingly relinquish the latter in exchange for My gift. If, however, he is unwilling to do so then he is not worthy of My gift and it will be withdrawn from him again. Hence the world is stronger, for where falsehood and error exist, the world is in the forefront; on the other hand, truth comes from Me, it is cut off from the world and is therefore only recognised and desired by those who have no further dealings with the world, that is, whose heart remains untouched by the enticements of the world, by all possessions of worldly origin. And so, mental knowledge which deviates from the pure truth likewise belongs to the world, because it did not originate from Me. Avoid the world and its representatives if you want to receive gifts from Me and when you are offered My gift of grace relinquish everything else, for it is the most precious endowment you can receive through My love .... You cannot excuse yourselves if you have refused My gift, for you are not incapable of recognising the truth as such if I offer it to you, yet you are unwilling to accept it and thereby also lose your power of judgment. And this is your fault for which you will have to justify yourselves. If I approach you, you must not place Me on par with those who cannot

offer you anything of great value because they are not taught by Me. However, if you do so, then you are unworthy of My gift and it will be taken away from you again and truly not so easily offered to you a second time. Spend some serious thought on this and hold yourselves to account as to what you will give up, and let yourselves be warned and admonished, for you are in danger of losing an awful lot just because you don't want to renounce what is worthless, what is offered to you by the world and what therefore cannot last for eternity ....

Amen

## **Passing on the divine Word ....**

***B.D. 4561 from February 8th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

A word-for-word rendition of the information you receive through the inner voice will always have the greatest impact, even if you are also capable of educating your fellow human beings yourselves people will nevertheless be less able to close themselves to the direct Word from above, for this reason written distribution is a blessing. And therefore I will bless every work which concerns the distribution of My Word and help you in every way, for it is

particularly necessary that people take notice of My extraordinary working, which they can ascertain through the written Words if they are of good will. Anyone who wants to reject it will reject it in any form. But in the written rendition people will recognise My spirit, My voice, and open themselves to its effect, for My Word speaks for itself, no explanation needs to be added, it will always be understandable to people because I speak to every individual person Myself if he attentively and, with a desire for truth, accepts it in his heart, thinks it through and pays attention to the feelings he experiences as a result. You humans have so many means of help at your disposal, all of which are gifts of grace from Me to make the path of ascent easier for you .... However, My Word offered to you from above is the greatest and most effective means of grace which will guide you upwards for sure, for it is blessed by My strength, it is a direct emanation of Me Myself which must always have an extraordinary effect on you, it just depends on your will to let it take effect on you. And this is why many people shall receive knowledge of it, many people shall experience the blessing of My Word on themselves, they shall be born again, they shall live again and forfeit everything lifeless, all formalities for My Word. They shall recognise Me Myself in the Word, believe in Me and learn to love Me, they shall accept Words of wisdom which they can never ever be offered elsewhere if they did not originate from Me. They shall know that I, as the Creator of eternity, do not forget My living creations, that I as the Father do not leave My children on their own, that

I want to help everyone to return to the Father's house, and that they desperately need My help and that they therefore should approach Me in prayer and appeal to Me for grace and strength in order to be able to shape themselves into love .... that they must know My will in order to fulfil it. Every work concerning this endeavour is blessed, for the time is rapidly approaching the end ....

Amen

# **Don't fear those who kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul ....**

***B.D. 4566 from February 14th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

Don't fear those who can physically harm you but only the one who tries to pull your souls into the abyss. Yet you can even face him with courage if you call Me to your side, in which case he will not be able to do anything to you because then you have a shield that makes you invincible, thus your soul will be protected from all danger. The world, however, will badly oppress you and the authorities will try to destroy you, because they will rise up against anyone loyal to Me since they don't want to acknowledge Me as Lord and therefore demand all

power and veneration for themselves alone. You will be badly oppressed and can nevertheless face every battle undauntedly and without worry, because I will go into battle with you as your commander-in-chief and fight on your behalf just as you fight on My behalf and for My name. And victory will be yours .... Do all you can to attain an ever deeper and steadfast faith, then you will also lose all fear of those who can only kill the body. If you pay more attention to the life of your soul you will also remain completely unaffected by everything of a worldly nature, enticements and threats .... you will only live according to My will, and if the demands of the worldly powers oppose My will, you will recognise them as Satan's emissaries and stop being afraid of them, for your faith will give you the strength to resist them; then you will no longer dread the world and its advocates but increasingly more side with Me as the One, Whom you fear and love at the same time.

Anyone of weak faith will be anxious and also observe earthly proceedings with worry; I Am not constantly present to anyone of weak will. He still pays too much attention to the world, albeit he does not desire it he will nevertheless not remain unimpressed, it will still occupy his mind, it will still hold him back from spiritual striving. And he will be afraid and hard pressed by the earthly powers. I would like to help him dispose of his fear, I would like to call to Him: You will always find a Saviour in Me if only you have complete faith in My love and My power. I can achieve everything, and I want whatever is

beneficial for you. Believe this and know that I will always stand by your side when you are threatened by Satan's advocates who want to push you away from Me. And once you have become aware of My presence you will lose all fear and courageously confront the enemy. You will be strong due to your faith in Me and will no longer fear your physical death because you will know that death does not exist for those who believe in Me ... that therefore your body can be killed but never your soul, but that I will also protect your physical life as long as your hour has not yet come ...

Amen

## **Destiny according to human will ...**

***B.D. 4573 from February 26th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

I inform you that your destiny certainly takes shape according to My will, nevertheless it adapts itself to your will, so that your will effectively determines the sequence of all happenings, because it requires the necessary opportunities to achieve maturity in order to subordinate itself as quickly as possible to My will. A will that is utterly devoted to Me assures a person maturity of

soul and he will be able to enter the beyond as a being of light when his last hour has come.

However, as long as he still resists Me he needs to be tested and always and forever encounter oppositions in his earthly life, unless he has completely handed himself over to My adversary, who will help him in every way during his time on earth. But he shall not take pleasure in his easy earthly life, for after his death he must atone for it a thousand fold. And thus a person who is granted a difficult destiny can know himself to be loved and cared for by Me; he need only ever trust in My help and My strength and humbly accept his destiny and his soul will benefit from it, the extent of which will only be recognised by him in the spiritual kingdom. Wherever suffering and worry can be found, that is where I Myself Am at work to change the individual person's will, that is where My presence, My guidance and My activity are recognisable. Hence, the immense suffering going on across earth should not be regarded as a sign of being abandoned by Me, but as a sign of My never-ending love and concern for you. I will not turn away from you even if you distance yourselves from Me, I constantly try to win you back for Me and therefore let you endure adversity and destitution, because your wrong will requires Me to do so if I want to help you attain beatitude. Every individual person's destiny corresponds to his will, which has been known to Me from the start, and the extent of suffering you have to endure corresponds to the maturity of your soul, which is also known to Me and which I



constantly seek to raise. You can pass away from the earthly world in various degrees of light; this is never limited, but I know your will and where the possibility exists to attain a high degree of maturity of soul I make use of all means, and strokes of fate, oppositions in life and suffering and sadness should be regarded as such, for they can be of immense benefit to you if you completely submit yourselves to Me, if you subordinate your will to Mine, if you humbly endure everything you are granted. For I love you, you are My living creations and I want to win you over for Me, for eternity ....

Amen

## **Assessment of duties according to degree of love ....**

***B.D. 4574 from February 27th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

You should use all your energy to attain everlasting riches, that is, everything you think and do should be based on helpful neighbourly love, then the salvation of your soul would be assured for eternity. My demand may seem impossible to achieve to you and, yet, I don't expect too much from you, nothing that cannot be done.

However, consider the fact that your daily fulfilment of duty can be understood differently, that you can do your duty without the slightest feeling of love for your neighbour, thus you are of service to him as a matter of duty, but that you can also carry out every action by being inwardly impelled through love and that these actions, although they are also daily duties, are assessed differently by Me and raise your maturity of soul. Love is everything, it values every action. Consequently, a person can be ever so dutiful due to his correct nature, yet without love they will only be actions of the body which I only reward in a worldly sense but which do not gain him spiritual wealth, for this entirely depends on the degree of love with which these duties are being accomplished. Thus you could gain so much more if you used all your energy of life for active neighbourly love, so that everything you do is motivated by the will to help where your help is needed. The actions you have to perform, where your free will is therefore excluded, are merely actions for the world, although they can also incorporate a spiritual character .... hence, duties that are demanded are indeed acts of neighbourly love but are, since they are dutifully performed, valued in a purely worldly sense by Me, because the love of the heart is absent. I pay attention to the heart and won't be deceived by pious words or expressions, I know how far the heart is involved; but I bless everyone who complies with human demands purely because he is willing to help, who carries out every work of duty with inner joy to help his neighbour and who therefore also turns his duties into a voluntary activity

and thereby utilises his energy of life which will result in abundant rewards in eternity. For he truly gathers spiritual possessions on earth and will not enter the spiritual kingdom poverty stricken, but, full of strength, he will also be able to work over there wherever his love impels him, whereas even the most hard-working person on earth will stand at the gate of death without strength and in a poor state because he only worked for the world, because helpful neighbourly love never impelled him to be active on earth but he only ever fulfilled his worldly obligations, admittedly by diligently fulfilling his duty but only because he had to and not voluntarily. This is why the same activity and the same amount of work can lead to entirely different success .... it can be purely remunerated in a worldly sense but also lead to everlasting rewards, and you should aim for the latter, so that your life on earth is not a waste of time, for you will never be able to catch up in the beyond on what you neglected to do on earth ....

Amen

**‘They ate and drank ...’ just  
as it was before the  
Flood ...**

## ***B.D. 4575 from February 28th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

As the end comes closer it will become again as it was before the great flood. People will be seized by an increased lust for life and be influenced by the world with all its attractions. People will no longer be able nor want to control themselves and will therefore unscrupulously enjoy life in sinfulness. For they will not desire harmless pleasures, instead, sin will prevail everywhere, selfish love will displace all neighbourly love and thus people will become sinful by harming their fellow human beings merely to satisfy their body's every wish. Other people's possessions will not be respected and thus all laws will be violated. The increased pleasure of life will stifle the voice of conscience and what the world has to offer will be relished to the full .... The world, however, is My adversary's realm and thus only bad can come from the world, it can only denote a danger for the soul, for the satisfaction granted to the body must be atoned for by the soul, it must pay for what the body demands. People may therefore seemingly delight in the pleasure, only those belonging to My Own will know which hour has struck when people seek to intoxicate themselves in the ecstasy of pleasure. Then the end will be very near, for I have long announced to you already that it will be like before the great flood .... They ate and drank, they married and were given in marriage and took no notice of the admonitions and warnings from above.

And it will be difficult to preach the Gospel to these people, for since they only pay attention to and aim for earthly life they lack all understanding for spiritual life, and therefore they mock and ridicule every bearer of truth who will try to convert them. Yet in the midst of euphoria comes the last Judgment .... It will be dreadful for all who look upon the world as their God, for they will fall from the height into the abyss, from joy into immense fear, they will fall from heaven into hell .... For the world and its attractions was their heaven, but the world will be destroyed .... and harshest incarceration will be the fate of those who used their freedom on earth wrongly, who live in sin and also die in sin. Beware of the world for it is a great danger for you .... at the moment it certainly still offers much that is desirable yet it is better that you refrain from it and strive toward the heavenly joys which come afterwards, and do without, so that you can enjoy the delights of heaven in all abundance. Don't belong to those who only love themselves and want to provide the body with every pleasure. The euphoria is short-lived, yet it will be followed by a dreadful awakening, as it is announced in Word and Scripture .... The human race, however, is in great danger, for it is already dazzled by the world's deceptive light, and it will not stand still in its demands but it will increase them .... It aims with giant strides towards the final end .... it seeks life and will find death, it seeks joy and walks into ruin ....

Amen

# Bliss in the spiritual kingdom ....

*B.D. 4578 from March 2nd 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53*

The bliss of those who discard their physical shell and are allowed to enter the kingdom of light, their eternal home, is beyond your grasp. Having left all sorrows behind, they are no longer weighed down by difficulties nor plagued by enemies. Fear and sadness are unknown to them; their eyes only see beauty, exceptionally charming surroundings, magnificent formations of My creative will, and figures of light approaching them in order to introduce them to the kingdom of peace and beatitude. And in this environment they may stay and occupy themselves according to their own will. Their bliss rests in this freedom after a state during which their souls were still constrained and surrounded by earthly matter. Their hearts are able and willing to love and they are so aglow with love that **this** alone makes them happy already, for they find constant fulfilment. They join souls which resemble themselves, that is, which possess the same degree of maturity, and these associations increase their bliss, because unity out of love also increases the individual being's strength as well as the urge to be active which results in joint kind-hearted activity which makes them exceedingly happy since the activation of

strength results in increasingly more strength. The influx of strength, however, is a feeling of utmost delight, for it is the evidence of being close to God ... My living creations feel Me and, depending on their degree of maturity which enables the permeation of light, also get to see Me Myself in a way which is endurable for them. Their inner bliss intensifies, for their longing for Me increases constantly and is always granted .... No-one on earth can understand what that means, because earthly love is just a pale reflection of spiritual love and already the most desirable on earth, in the spiritual realm, however, it surpasses all other glories the soul is offered, because it signifies the constant influx of light and strength and therefore also the constant nearness of God. However, once My living creations have entered the kingdom of light, I Am the epitome of bliss for them and they will never ever abandon Me again. Then everyone will receive the reward for the love he showed Me on earth .... I constantly increase their happiness, I permeate the soul with My love and provide it with constantly new delights .... because 'what no eye has seen and no ear has heard, that is what I have prepared for those who love Me ....'

Amen

**'I will send you the Comforter ...' (Explanation**

# of apparent contradictions)

***B.D. 4580 from March 5th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

My spirit will guide you into truth, as I have promised: I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth, which will guide you into all truth and will remind you of everything I have said to you .... Thus anyone allowing this spirit of Mine to become effective in him will also know the truth and can accept everything conveyed to him by My spirit. Think very seriously about this for once and you will know what originates from Me and can be believed by you. As soon as you recollect My Words which I spoke on earth to My disciples as well as to all other people, you will not be able to dismiss the fact that you can receive the pure truth in the way I told you with the Words: I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth .... And prior to My Words I said that I will take abode in those Who prepare their heart for Me, that I will not abandon them, that I will reveal Myself to those who love Me and keep My commandments ....

It therefore follows that My revelations must come from within, that I, once I have taken abode in a person's heart, will also manifest Myself therein with the result that the person will hear My voice through the inner Word .... And this is proof again that you may unhesitatingly trust this voice, for it is the expression of My love for My Own, who



are counted as My Own because they accepted Me Myself in their hearts, because I was able to take abode in them. Hence you possess My Word, the announcement of My will, the truth in its purest form. Therefore you need not be taught from outside if you acknowledge Me as your Teacher and entrust yourselves directly to Me. Direct communication between you and Me is therefore possible, and in order to be truthfully educated you must acknowledge this first. Then you will strive to receive the truth from the original source and will also be able to believe with conviction what is imparted to you. For this knowledge comes to you in a fully conscious state; I speak to you and you hear Me.

But I speak to you through your heart and your heart hears My voice, not your physical ear, which can only hear externally spoken words. If you inwardly hear My Word then you will know that I Am expressing Myself; alternatively, if you hear the Word from outside then you need to ascertain its origin, for anything can be offered to you from outside, My adversary also approaches you from outside, and then you should seriously examine it, and if you examine it seriously then you also have the will to find the source of what you are offered in **Me**. If you therefore want to hear Me speak I will certainly grant your wish, in which case every Word you receive will be true if it is imparted to you through My devoted servants. Let this be a sure sign to you: that I will answer your every question if you present it to Me.

You are all always taught in a way that matches your

maturity; you can only grasp profound wisdom once you have reached a specific degree of maturity, when the explanation from the spiritual kingdom can be given to you unveiled, which will be understandable to you if you compare it with My activity on earth, where I always spoke to people in parables, in metaphorical language, in order to explain it to them. These veiled teachings are intended to stimulate a person's thinking, so that he penetrates spiritual knowledge and does not just superficially accept it with his physical ears. If I impart My Word unveiled, as I do now, then the degree of maturity which guarantees the correct understanding is a prerequisite. Words to that effect will not differ as soon as both the veiled and the direct Word from above come in unveiled form from the same source, as soon as every teaching has originated from Me.

But first you must examine this and you need only appeal for My help in order to pass the right judgment. Bear in mind that the adversary works as well, and especially when people try to escape from him, when they strive for truth in order to learn to recognise and love Me. Then he will always try to extinguish or obscure the light and be very active where the opportunity presents itself.

In order to help you humans and to undermine the activity of this said power I provide you with information through bearers of light where impure influences have led your thinking astray. That which comes from above is truth, and that which comes from below are errors and lies .... Where direct inner spiritual activity can be

recognised it can only be the working of forces from above which receive and forward My illumination. However, where forces avail themselves of a human form in an unconscious state, caution is advised, for a passive form can also be used by a dark force, if only for a short time, yet fellow human beings themselves often determine the statements made through this form with their own thoughts and wishes, which are instantly picked up by these forces which will then audibly express themselves through this form. For, as soon as some of the listeners have strong willpower their thoughts will also exert a strong influence and, depending on their truth, they will be seized by either forces of light or of darkness and audibly expressed. For this reason the human being should always let go of his own knowledge when he receives spiritual knowledge, he should humbly and like a small child without knowledge allow himself to be taught, then purest truth will flow to him, because no resistance exists to prevent it ....

Many will take exception to the fact that a seeming contradiction comes to light, yet My spirit has always revealed the same to people, it was simply not understood by everyone in the same way, and even those who received My Word were not free of their own thoughts as soon as they turned their eyes towards the world and associated world events with the spiritual information. Besides, My eternal plan of Salvation was unknown to people at the time I lived on earth, and the explanations I gave to people about future times were

presented such that only someone who had completely shaped himself into love would have been able to form a correct idea about the last days, about the last Judgment and the end. The others lacked realisation and a clear portrayal would not have been beneficial for them, since the especially announced judgment was still ahead of them, the destruction of Jerusalem, which likewise signified the chapter of an era for these people and was nearer to them than the end. So people were certainly informed of a renewal, of a spiritual change, but with an additional remark which related more to the change of people than the transformation of Earth, because the knowledge of the latter would have been detrimental to their spiritual state ....

But now I approach **those** people who will live through the final chapter on this earth .... I approach those who have attained a certain degree of maturity and therefore also the understanding for the coming events. To these I provide complete clarification and instruct them to inform their fellow human beings of it. However, they will only be believed by those who become discerning and spiritually enlightened through genuine striving for perfection, who know My plan of Salvation and realise that there is no other option but a total transformation of the earth, for the sake of the souls which have fallen to the lowest point and yet shall be redeemed one day. Right now I speak to the people of the last days, but even in the past My Words were not contradictory .... As Jesus, the man, I said what I saw and was prevented from seeing

how the end would happen .... I saw the converted human race but not the transformed earth because it was God's wish to keep people uninformed at that time ....

The fact that Earth must remain a place of education for the spiritual substances and for how long, that it therefore must continue to exist, was certainly meant to be explained to people, however, the transformation of the earth's surface affects the higher development of the spiritual substances bound in matter and the renewed banishment of a soul which, embodied as a human being, has not passed the test of faith and will .... Neither was comprehensible to humanity, it only differentiated between an earthly world, as it existed, and a purely spiritual world, and it was merely explained to people that the earth, as a world of matter, cannot be excluded as yet and that the development on this earth must still continue for an infinitely long time. For Earth as a planet will not cease to exist after the last Judgment, it will merely fulfil its mission in a completely new formation and thus a new developmental period will start with a paradise-like state .... with those people who are lifted up to heaven before that, because they will prove their loyalty to Me during the last battle of faith, because they will persevere until the end and therefore become blessed in heartfelt unity with Me and the spiritual kingdom of light ....

Amen

# **Warning against rejecting the divine Word ... 'Test all things and ...'**

***B.D. 4587 from March 13th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

Truly, I say to you that you cause yourselves inconceivable damage if you disregard the Word I impart to you from above, if you content yourselves with teachings given to you by uninformed leaders which you will only understand if you take My Word from above to heart. First you should strive towards light, for only true light illuminates the path you need to take in order to reach your goal. In darkness you will miss the right path, in darkness you will follow the sight of lights flashing up and these are only deceptive lights which distract you from the right path. You must desire true light, that is, you must try to gain the right realisation, to adopt knowledge which corresponds to truth, and thereby form an accurate image of Me as a most loving Father and Creator of eternity, in order to then strive towards unity with Me from Whom you originated in the past. Consequently, you must be instructed of the truth. But truth can only be imparted to you by the One Who is the eternal Truth Himself or by someone who received the truth from Him directly. Strive for this sole truth and do

not be satisfied with knowledge which has not emerged from the eternal font. I cannot exhort you strongly enough not to ignore it when My love reveals itself to you and conveys purest truth to you. Test all things and keep what is good .... Take notice if you are offered the gift of God's Word and consider in your heart what your position should be. Don't reject it without examination but bear in mind that you might well reject a great gift of grace, and therefore examine what you are offered. If you can then reject it with inner conviction, then you are not at fault, yet a serious assessment should precede it so that anyone of good will and a heart capable of love will recognise the Father's voice speaking to him. You are offered the most precious gift of grace My love has in store for you .... Make use of it, let the grace take effect in you, listen to My Word and live accordingly and you will very soon realise that it is eternal truth which comes from Me Myself and will make you truly knowledgeable; you will feel the brightness within yourselves and clearly recognise the path to Me, you will be able to believe with conviction and also endorse Me before the world because your faith is a living one which only the pure truth can achieve. And so I admonish you once more: don't reject My servants when they offer My Word to you. I Myself impart upon you the most valuable gift of grace, the eternal truth, because only through truth can you become blissfully happy ....

Amen

# **The working of the spirit ... Scrutiny ... Proof: Oratorical gift ... Truth - Error ... God's messengers ...**

***B.D. 4588 from March 14th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

A large structure must be made to waver, and this undertaking shall be tackled by you, for which I Myself will give you the instruction as well as the strength to accomplish the work. Error has crept into all places where truth is expected to be, where people believe they know the truth, and now it is up to you to expose this error, which you would be unable to do by yourselves, by using your intellect alone, yet with My help you can do so, and therefore you shall teach in My name what I have proclaimed to you through the spirit. Each one of you shall make an effort to let My spirit speak in order to gain possession of the pure truth. And if this cannot be achieved you should pay attention to what My messengers reveal to you, who are directly instructed by Me again through the voice of the spirit. Every bearer of truth will uphold the same spiritual knowledge, that is,



once the truth is conveyed to someone it will always yield the same results; the spirit, which is in contact with the Father-Spirit of eternity, will proclaim the same to everyone. Thus, the origin of **different** results must be investigated. That which originates from My spirit will forever remain the truth, which never changes, regardless as to how and in which form it is offered to you. The working of My spirit guarantees you purest truth, and thus you need only examine **when** My spirit is at work and where false prophets portray themselves as My disciples and representatives on earth. And you can easily ascertain whether the spiritual information, which claims to be true, is accepted consciously or subconsciously. If I pour out My spirit, no process is being displayed for curious spectators, for I do not approach you humans such that you would even in the slightest way be forced to believe. No-one will notice anything extraordinary, unless he considers the fluent gift of oratory as something unusual, but in that case I refer to My Word 'Take no thought how or what ye shall speak .... For it is not you who speak, but the Holy Spirit...' Then you will already have a sign that My spirit is at work in the one who thus speaks well. However, if other exceptional signs are quoted as evidence, don't believe that it is I Who manifests Himself in this way. Every now and then you might well be able to observe phenomena which point to My life on earth .... if particularly devout and devoted people thereby contribute towards enlivening their fellow human beings' weak faith .... Yet the working of the spirit mainly refers to the transfer of My Word, because

through My Word humanity shall be guided into truth and because My Word also makes My will known, the fulfilment of which results in the direct working of the spirit again.

The human race certainly seeks and tentatively strives for truth, but it does not take the right path in order to find it. However, every person carries the truth within himself .... Every person carries the spiritual spark within himself, which is part of Me and can impart purest truth if the person looks within and listens to the expression of the spiritual spark, to the Word, which thus comes from Me because the spiritual spark is My share for eternity. Understand, you humans, you must look within yourselves and not wait for what is brought to you from external sources! But since you no longer fulfil the conditions needed for the manifestation of the spirit, since you are no longer capable of perceiving My Word in you, hence, since you no longer come to Me, I come to you by sending you a messenger who hears the expression of his spirit, My Word, and shall inform you of it. Now it is indeed conveyed to you from outside, but as an unmistakable gift from above, which can be recognised by everyone providing he makes the effort to seriously examine it or allows himself to be guided by his inner spirit, thus does not offer resistance if My Word inwardly appeals to him. And every seriously truth-desiring person will find My Word appealing, because My strength of love takes effect in the one who strives towards Me as the eternal Truth. Thus I Myself come to meet him and draw him close to

Me if I don't meet with resistance. Therefore, take notice of the working of the spirit and accept the offer of the one who, in a completely conscious state, listens to the voice of the spirit within, for you can believe his results, since he is taught by Me directly through My spirit. Beware of false prophets as they, too, mention My name and yet have no direct connection with Me, who therefore deem themselves capable of instructing their fellow human beings but have no knowledge themselves. Beware of those who receive their knowledge in a way where I Myself cannot be at work, because forces from below push in without being rejected by the recipient's will .... where the human being forfeits his will and his will is subsequently seized. In a conscious state they might well be of good will, nevertheless, their chosen path is wrong. Come to Me, make contact with Me in spirit, listen within and appeal to Me with all your heart for the working of My spirit .... and your prayer will be granted, you will be taught in absolute truth by Me directly or through My messengers .... But you will always be taught by My spirit and guided into all truth ....

Amen

**Doctrine of re-  
incarnation ... Misguided  
teaching ... Celestial**

# bodies ....

## ***B.D. 4590 from March 17th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

Do not be misled by supposed contradictions, rather, see the reason in the fact that your ability of comprehension does not always suffice in order to understand something properly, and that there need not be a contradiction, but you only suppose it to be. It should be sufficient for you to know that I will never teach you wrongly and that I will always give you the information such that it will benefit your soul ....

The doctrine of karma does not encourage you to increase your spiritual endeavour. It is far more likely to encourage you to conduct your life half-heartedly in the spiritual sense. For this reason alone it is of little benefit for the soul, and it does not meet My full approval that you humans count on a return to earth and as a result become negligent in your effort. Although I support the soul's higher development in every way, and wherever I recognise a reliable opportunity to advance your soul's maturity I Am willing to give My consent, but it always has to be on the basis of My lawful eternal order and never for the sake of a deliberately created opportunity .... Hence it must be understandable to you that I will not inform you of a repeated process of development on this earth, which presupposes your total failure during your

earthly life, but that I would like to protect you from this failure, and therefore caution, warn and instruct you in order to prevent a failure.

It would be a wrong instruction if I were to offer you the prospect of another path to reach your goal while the right path is still ahead of you, thus you should, and could, walk this path with correct use of your will. I only inform you of the infinite number of previous embodiments because I want you to become aware of your great responsibility for the short path of earthly life. This knowledge is only intended to increase your effort, but you should not draw the wrong conclusion and neglect your endeavour in the hope of repeating your incarnation on this earth if you do not reach your goal. My spirit will definitely enlighten you, and if you ask Me faithfully I will let you know through My servants to what extent your thoughts are correct.

If you knew of the endless many opportunities to achieve maturity on the innumerable celestial bodies in the universe, you would never come to the conclusion that a soul will be returned again to earth. However, the immature soul has to go through many more embodiments indeed where it is able to prove itself and thereby make further progress. Thus the doctrine of re-incarnation is in fact based on truth but it does not mean that the soul will be born again in the flesh on this earth. It merely indicates the many opportunities of higher development on other creations, where the soul, either in physical or in spiritual form, is again presented with a

task, the fulfilment of which will assure its ascent. It is an exception if a soul returns to **this** earth again to fulfil a spiritual mission, it cannot be generalised. Souls having passed away in a state of immaturity will also deem themselves living on earth. The areas they occupy make them believe that they were transported to extremely dreary, barren stretches of land, but they are actually on another planet which is suited to their souls' maturity and which is inhabited by the most primitive creations, resulting in a meagre, depressive stay for the souls .... This is an opportunity for purification of very materialistic minded people, who have to overcome their desire in order to be placed on another work of creation for the purpose of further ascent, depending on their will.

You still love this earth too much and therefore associate the word 're-incarnation' only with this earth as the dwelling place for a re-incarnated soul. But you should consider My love's incredibly extensive work of creation, which only came about for the countless spiritual beings who have to take the path to perfection, and who will take this path in some form or other .... in physical creations, as long as the soul is not yet spiritualised and receptive for light, and in spiritual creations, where the spiritual soul can constantly ascend too, where it purifies itself ever more and makes itself receptive for the emanation of Myself.

Imagine eternity, behold the starry sky whose countless stars are the creations of My will of love, destined to accept souls in need of development .... and you will

realise that this earth is not the only carrier of beings who are supposed to ascend and that it is truly not necessary to return the failed souls to earth again, although it is the only place for achieving the childship to God, but it cannot be deliberately and repeatedly chosen as a place to mature.

And thus the doctrine of frequent re-incarnation on this earth will have to be declared as a misguided teaching, which needs to be opposed as being harmful for souls, because it weakens people's will and endangers the being's sincere change in view of the expectation to be able to make up for any neglect in a repeated life until ultimate perfection ....

Amen

## **Test the spirits ... Act of Salvation ... Criterion Jesus Christ ...**

***B.D. 4601 from March 30th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

By the contents of the proclamations it is easily established whose spirit reveals itself, and attention must always be paid as to whether and in what way the divine

Redeemer is mentioned, because this is of greatest importance in the scrutiny of mystic proclamations. If Jesus Christ is acknowledged as Redeemer of the world then it is the most certain guarantee that the proclamation has come from above, that the spirit of God speaks through a person who is receptive to Him, hears His voice and passes it on as His Word. In that case the human being need not have the slightest qualms anymore and he can be certain that purest truth touches his ear and that he fulfils God's will by distributing the Word from above. Then he will have reached a particular degree of maturity which allows for a direct transfer of truth, for the act of Salvation is a mystery which can only be unveiled when the necessary understanding for it exists in a human being. Only when a person is in contact with the spiritual kingdom himself, which enables a direct communication, will he understand Christ's act of Salvation, that is, he will be able to comprehend and explain the problem of 'Jesus Christ - God', because the miracle which turned Jesus Christ into a divine man is paralleled by this person's spiritual activity, even though to an incomparably lesser extent. Nevertheless, Jesus' divinity is no longer a question for him, and he can also explain it to his fellow human beings with conviction, because the act of God's spiritual working is taking place in him which is evidenced by the received spiritual knowledge from above. Anyone who therefore conducts an examination in order to establish which forces are at work during such a transmission will soon become convinced of the truth providing he is not impervious to



the Book of the Fathers or rejects it. God will not leave His Own in doubt, and He will never leave a person who desires the truth in ignorance. And so He Himself advised people to test the spirits whether they are of God, and at the same time specified the criterion of truth and that of error.

For this reason people can unhesitatingly advocate the truth of the received proclamations from above, not even the slightest doubt need trouble their heart, for Jesus Christ offers Himself as a touchstone, because His adversary will never acknowledge Him and His human manifestation or inform people of Christ's act of Salvation. Jesus Himself says 'I Am the way, the truth, and the life ....' Thus anyone who walks with Him, who speaks on His behalf, who professes Him, must also know the truth without fail and cannot go astray. Consequently, proclamations pertaining to Him and His act of Salvation can never be inspired by the adversary, who will not mention His name. They must absolutely be acknowledged and judged as divine working, otherwise faith in God's Word as well as the process of the working of the spirit would be invalid which, however, gives evidence of itself through the reception of spiritual proclamations. Anyone who hears the voice of the spirit within himself will also be able to refute all objections yet only find credence where the spirit can likewise be at work, albeit not as obviously as with the recipient of spiritual proclamations. Someone who is influenced by negative forces will seek to portray everything of a divine

nature as implausible, for it is the sign that God's adversary is at work by trying to plunge people into confusion, because he fights the truth and would like to extinguish the light from the heavens. Therefore you were given an indication which you need only pay attention to in order to be able to judge clearly and to reject the evil influence, so that you can endorse the truth within yourselves as well as towards your fellow human beings. And you can rest assured that God Himself will support those who are working for Him, because it is His will that the pure truth shall be spread and continue to exist, but that He will also separate the chaff from the wheat ....

Amen

## **Eternal damnation ...**

***B.D. 4602 from March 30th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

God's mercy knows no bounds, God's love is infinite, His patience immeasurable, and for this reason His living creation cannot be lost **forever** or He would not be perfect. For this reason it is wrong to speak about eternal damnation, if it is to be understood as a concept of time which intends to describe something that is never-ending. For this kind of **eternal** damnation would then signify

something completely lost to God .... thus a spiritual being would finally be relinquished to His adversary, which originally had emerged from God and was taken away from Him by His adversary .... But in that case this adversary would be greater than God, to a certain extent he would be the victor and superior to God's might and strength which, however, is and never will be possible, for no being is able to surpass His perfection, might and wisdom.

What has emerged from Him will eternally remain His in possession, it will just be separated from Him for a time, that is, it has distanced itself from Him to the greatest extent due to its own will. Yet even this distance is not a permanent condition because the being, in order to be happy, has to be affected by God's emanation of strength and .... if it lacks the will for this itself, it will be seized by God's love and mercy which wants to provide it with the state of bliss. Hence **eternal** damnation would contradict God's love and mercy, or they would be limited, whereby God's perfection would suffer a loss. An utterly perfect Being has no human weaknesses, but eternal wrath would be an inferior human attribute, just as every eternally lasting state of punishment could not be called a divine principle, for the Divine is characterised by love .... Love, however, saves and helps; it forgives and will never push something away from itself forever.

In contrast, the adversary lacks the divine principle of love, and it will always be his objective to pull the spiritual beings down to himself forever. He is the one

who causes confusion to people's concept of eternity, who tries to portray God as merciless and harsh in order to stifle people's love for Him .... he is the one who does not know mercy himself and therefore unhesitatingly aims to render the souls miserable, who wants to deprive them of every opportunity of help in order to corrupt them forever. And he finds many followers of his doctrine of eternal damnation .... who do not recognise God in His infinite love or they would be unable to believe this teaching. Yet the truth will always be conveyed to people and the error glaringly brought to light, so that God will be recognised and loved as the most perfect Being, so that people will join Him and abhor His opponent ....

Amen

**'Satan prowls around like a roaring lion ....' 'Watch and pray ....'**

***B.D. 4607 from April 5th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

Wherever I know a child is in danger My love is willing to grant every help and I will rescue it from the control of the one who is My opponent and the enemy of My children. Wherever a soul struggles and intends to fulfil

My will My adversary's power truly need not be dreaded, for I caringly attend to those who push towards Me. And I will not abandon My children in their distress, I will erect a wall around them over which no-one will be able to climb unless I open the gate Myself and lead them to you .... Satan prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour .... Remember these Words and don't be surprised, for the time of the end has come when he knows that he has not much time left, and when he makes every effort to achieve My living creation's downfall, when he uses means which aim to help him to succeed. How often have I pointed the dangers you are in out to you, for a fierce battle will start between the forces of light and darkness. You will all be subjected to this battle, but especially those who lead a spiritual life next to their earthly one. For they are involved in thoughts of Me and therefore particularly provoke My adversary's hostilities in order to stop them. His battle strategy is often successful because he knows people's weaknesses and uses them against them in order to overpower them. You humans, however, have unlimited blessings at your disposal. You can gain victory over him with My help. Don't fear him but courageously stand up to him; know that you are strong and unassailable if you love Me and send a quiet thought to Me that I will remain with you in your battle against him .... And he will take flight from you because he cannot stand My presence. You are stronger than he is as soon as you enter the battle with Me .... I have no share in that which emerges from the nether world. I stay with My children, and even if these children

of Mine only voluntarily place themselves at the Father's disposal, are obedient to Him, as soon as He informs them of His will regarding the work in His vineyard.

I call those My children who recognise the Father's voice and pay attention to His call .... and, if I give them a task, who are always willing to stand up for Me, thus to actively teach if I educate them as a teacher. Hence, whoever wants to be accepted as My child must also come to the Father like a child and get from Him the instructions for his journey through life. And if I then ask that My teaching shall be spread when I Myself send My teaching to earth through the voice of the spirit, then this teaching must be sacred to him and he must accept and highly value it as the purest truth from the heavens.

In that case, however, it will also always remain the best and most sacred to him which he will no longer renounce, because it is strength from above which will also automatically pull him upwards. But to relinquish My gift very seriously violates the obedience owed to Me by a child and consequently cannot be a blessing either. And then you will be able to recognise the adversary's influence and have to protect yourselves from it. This is why I draw your attention to it and indicate the signs by which you will be able to recognise him: he will appear as an angel of light to those whose faith is still weak and dazzle them, their eyes will get increasingly weaker and, in the end, no longer recognise what is right, because they only too willingly listened to him and let themselves be deceived by his mask. However, he will only have

control over you if you doubt the pure truth. Then he will use your uncertainty and lead you astray .... 'For he prowls about like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour .... ' But you shall watch and pray so as not to fall during the temptation ....

Amen

# **The weak will not experience the end ....**

***B.D. 4613 from April 13th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

The weak will not experience the end .... I certainly know the nature of every individual person's soul; I know their will and their degree of maturity, which is also the extent of their strength of will in the last battle of faith. I know that this final acknowledgment of Me will require immense strength which only few people will be able to muster, and that it will necessitate an utterly living faith in order to stand firm and remain faithful to Me. For this reason the gates of paradise on the new earth will be opened to those who are faithful supporters and acknowledge Me, so that their demonstrated love for Me until the end will be rewarded.

But people of weak faith will not survive this last battle

on earth. I shall avert the risk of their apostasy from Me so as not to let them fall into My adversary's hands and in order to give them the opportunity of continuing their development in the kingdom of the beyond which, after the end of this world, will no longer be possible for a very long time. They will not be able to cope with the demands and strains of the last days and will end their purely physical life before this time, for they will not oppose Me, but they will merely lack the profound, living faith which would enable them to be true advocates of Christ. And there will be many who will indeed choose Me, who will carry the faith in a God of love and wisdom within themselves, yet who will not increase it sufficiently to entrust themselves to Me without worry and appeal for My help. These souls will be taken from earth by Me or they would go astray for a very long time.

The strong, however, will remain faithful to Me until the end and will be raptured by Me before the destruction of the old earth. This process has to be plausible to you, and it should be equally understandable to you that the weak souls will not inhabit the paradise of the new earth, which can only bear spiritually mature human beings who permit My presence amongst them, as I have promised you. There has to be a separation of the goats from the sheep in the end. The old period of development will end with the banishment of the failed spiritual essence into solid matter, and a new era will start with a mature human generation, which will already find itself in a state of bliss on earth because it will have endured and have



been sufficiently tested by Me on earth. This level of a soul's maturity allows for My presence amongst My children. But weak and still immature souls would not be able to endure My presence. Consequently, the new earth will not be a suitable abode for them; nevertheless, they will continue to ascend in the spiritual kingdom and, due to their prematurely finished life, will also enjoy privileges in the spiritual kingdom which will help their ascent. This is the separation of the spirits, which has always been proclaimed through Word and Scripture ...

Amen

# **The working of the spirit in the wakeful state ... Evidence: reasons ...**

***B.D. 4620 from April 22nd 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

It is intended for you to receive My Word in the wakeful state, for this gives you the evidence of My working in you through the spirit. You should compose yourselves in prayer and enter into heartfelt contact with Me by excluding the world from your thoughts, you should completely hand yourselves over to Me and listen within to My voice. Then it will speak to you gently and subtly,

depending on your maturity of soul it will be either audibly or mentally, yet always coming forth from Me and not from you. In this prepared state you are incapable of achieving the kind of mental work which corresponds to the content of My proclamations. You are in the state of a listener and not of a speaker. And if you want to clarify the difference: the listener can remain passive whereas the speaker needs to be active. Depending on his state of maturity his spiritual ear is developed such that he can understand My incoming Word although it sounds extremely gently in his heart. The depth of feeling is therefore the decisive factor for an effortless reception of My Word, and accordingly will be the proclamations' depth of content, which are intended for him and through him for his fellow human beings; this is why you must differentiate between spiritual knowledge which shall be conveyed to fellow human beings and the Words I grant to My children as a loving Father if they suffer fear and adversity and are in need of comforting Words, which certainly provide the evidence of My compassion to all people yet are particularly given to those who call upon Me in their distress for help. I will always answer those who want to hear Me and speak to them through the spirit .... as I have promised you. You are meant to hear Me, yet in a fully conscious state, for I don't conceal Myself behind a form which is so weak that it gives up its own will and in an unconscious state allows an unfamiliar will to take possession of it.

I constantly caution you strongly against the results of

spiritual beings which manifest themselves in this way, which instantly seize a weak will with their thoughts and then try to transfer these to people. But I also caution you against preventing the obvious working of the spirit or to deny My working in a person who clearly and in an aware state receives revelations from above. And I want to give you a reliable characteristic of My working which you can always use to make the test .... My Words, which I spoke to people on Earth, will be explained such that they can be logically substantiated to every scholar, every person having become academically knowledgeable, and these reasons will never contradict themselves, because it is My Word, which always remains the same and its meaning testifies to profound wisdom. Anyone who has truly penetrated this Word of Mine will hear Me Myself speaking, thus recognise My presence, if he reads My Word or it is audibly conveyed to him. And this feeling of hearing Me Myself speaking is the most certain guarantee for My working and is intended to dispel the person's every doubt. For I approach people in the Word, I Myself Am the Word, and those who believe in Me and want to be My Own will hear **Me**. My Word will affect them like a loving Father's voice which is obeyed by a child and therefore is also loved by the Father and will be endowed with His gift of grace as often as it wants to receive it. Therefore let yourselves be guided and taught by your feeling, for I Myself place this into your heart and error will never influence you such that you are willing to diligently defend it. For I protect everyone from obscure or deceptive feelings if he has the sincere

will to work as My disciple during the last days, because I need these true labourers in My vineyard and therefore also grant them the ability to distinguish between right and wrong ....

Amen

# **Adversity and suffering as educational means ....**

## **Increase of strength ....**

***B.D. 4623 from April 27th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

The time ahead of you will require all your strength if you want to do justice to the demands life expects of you. I must repeatedly inform you of this in order to make you understand that you can increase the measure of strength yourselves and that it is your own choice as to whether earthly life is difficult or easy for you to bear. For this reason I often let you experience hardship and adversity in order to educate you for this time, when you will only be able to master life if you obtain the strength from Me, if you appeal to Me for it or acquire it through neighbourly actions of love. I constantly remind you of this time by placing you in positions of feeling helpless and abandoned, so that you will turn your eyes and your

heart to Me, Who always wants to stand by your side as your guide and advisor. Yet it always necessitates a prayer, as this demonstrates your will towards Me. I will not provide you with strength against your will, since this would make you unsuitable for the battle of survival in the time to come; however, the slightest pleading thought to Me will call Me to your side, then you will noticeably feel the influx of strength and your faith will become stronger, and that is My intention. Only your heartfelt union with Me will make life bearable for you, for then no earthly worry will depress you because you will leave everything to Me and truly not do badly, because a child which unconditionally entrusts itself to the Father will never be disappointed by Him. And thus you can also be certain of being helped in every way, by merely believing in My love and My omnipotence, for I will truly not leave anyone in adversity who takes refuge in Me ....

Amen

**Spiritual concentration  
before acceptance ... Strict  
self-criticism ...**

***B.D. 4624 from April 28th 1949,***

## ***taken from Book No. 53***

You must first create a spiritual focal point before you are able to accept My Word. This part has to be observed, otherwise earthly thoughts will still stop the spiritual influx by coming to the fore and being accepted, although with serious aspirants they are only briefly disruptive because the powers of light assert themselves and prevent the earthly world from exerting a strong influence on the person, that is, they soon direct his thoughts to the spiritual realm.

Thus it can indeed cause minor discrepancies, vague definitions or indistinct and poorly worded sentence structures which, however, are of no importance and thus do not devalue or make the great spiritual knowledge appear dubious in any way. Yet care should always be taken only to regard a proclamation as such if the spiritual bond has been established whereby the recipient has therefore totally detached himself from earthly experiences. You are still too much under the influence of the world, consequently your thoughts still revolve around matter; you are still too preoccupied with worldly things and therefore cannot always liberate yourselves from spiritually meaningless notions and traditions, but you will always have to break down a barrier first, i.e., you must leave everything behind you in order to stay in the spiritual kingdom, and the more liberated and carefree you enter it the more receptive you will be for the treasures which are offered to you

there.

However, the separation of spiritual knowledge from earthly notions will come easy to you, and therefore you can unhesitatingly endorse the truth of that which was imparted to you, and you need not take offence to that which is spiritually irrelevant. Therefore you will not spread error, you should only ever scrutinise yourselves as to whether and when you are prepared to receive My Word, that is, when is the inner contact established so that you can hear Me Myself .... I know of your will and take account of it, therefore I protect everyone who wants to be of service to Me and in complete desire for truth appeals to Me for the same .... And for this reason you can unreservedly accept what you are offered in this form ....

Amen

## **Saviour of body and soul ....**

***B.D. 4626 from May 1st 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

You should bring all your cares to Me, for I Am truly the greatest Saviour and able to take every ailment from you, Who is able to grant health to your body and soul and bestow you with an eternally indestructible life. Even though you are required to use earthly medications,

without My blessing the objective of these medicines will be defeated; whereas I can also bless the sick person to become healthy in accordance with My will without external remedies. And I will do this as soon as I recognise that his suffering is no longer necessary, as soon as it has achieved its purpose and contributed towards the purification of the soul. For the sickness of soul is related to that of the body. You humans have no idea what a large factor physical illness plays in the soul's higher development and how grateful the soul will be one day that it was allowed to take this path in the flesh, and a much shorter path of earthly life resulted in its greater maturity.

Therefore, when you suffer you should only ever pray 'Father, your will be done ....' Then I will do My part just as you do yours, I will come to you as Saviour of body and soul and your recovery will be ensured. Bear your fragile body for the sake of your soul's strength and know that it will find it much easier to develop and look for unity with the spiritual kingdom if its body does not offer resistance, which it always does in a healthy state. Then the soul will be beautiful when it leaves its physical shell .... But in order for you to become conscious of My presence and My work, the healing process will happen quickly if you completely devoutly expect the miracle, if you thus believe that nothing is impossible for My might and strength and that My love is always intended for you and therefore also wants to help you. Firm faith is the best remedy which will never fail .... Bring all your cares to Me



and you will be set free from them, but come with a strong, unwavering faith and I will not let it be destroyed ....

Amen

# **The dying Saviour's last Words on the cross .... Audible Word .... Appearance ....**

***B.D. 4630 from May 5th 1949, taken  
from Book No. 53***

It requires a particularly high degree of maturity in order to be able to audibly hear My Word, therefore I can only impart a limited amount of knowledge to you at first, albeit to an extent which certainly enables you to work for Me and to proclaim the Gospel to other people. Even so, the end is approaching and humanity is facing the last events on this earth. People are completely ignorant and neither able to accept My Word nor to recognise it when it is offered to them. In their spiritual blindness they no longer know about the blessing of Christ's act of Salvation, they don't believe in Him and will therefore be hopelessly exposed to My adversary's control if they don't

change their thoughts and actions before the end. And in order to revive their faith again, where this is still possible, something extraordinary will present itself to people which was mentioned by Jesus on earth .... signs and miracles will take place .... The cross of Christ will visibly and so clearly appear in the sky that it will startle people who don't believe in Him, whereas My Own will cheer and rejoice and their faith will become greatly strengthened. This will give rise to an unusual desire for clarification, so that right and wrong assumptions will prompt My servants to intervene and instruct people of the truth. And for this you will require special knowledge which I would certainly like to pass on to you but which you can only receive in the above mentioned state of maturity that the audible Word demands. This knowledge cannot be conveyed mentally, the spiritual ear and eye have to be open so as to be able to assimilate the impressions experienced by the dying Saviour on the cross and expressed with Words which no human ear heard and which consequently remained completely unknown to the human race.

The reason why this knowledge was withheld from you is based on the fact that only few people would have been able to grasp the profundity of these Words and that it requires an extremely strong faith to have come alive through love in order to understand them. But shortly before the end there will be people who will have gained this living faith through love and to whom the meaning of Jesus' divine Words will be comprehensible. It is My will

to offer them a precious gift by transmitting these very Words, and therefore I require a suitable vessel into which I can pour out My spirit .... a servant on earth who is devoted to Me, to whom I can reveal Myself, to whom I can clearly and understandably pass on Jesus' Words on the cross through the inner voice, so that he will convey them to his fellow human beings and thus make them accessible to humanity. As soon as the appearance is visible in the sky My Own will step forward and speak on My behalf, they will cheer the cross of Christ and perceive His Words like a gentle chord within their heart .... but by this time these Words must already have been conveyed to earth, they must have been received by the audible Word and be comprehensible to My servant and find their confirmation through those believers who likewise heard it in their heart but consider it as spoken from above. But I will inform people in advance so that they become aware of the great miracle. And anyone being spiritually enlightened will feel uplifted in his soul and experience a tremendous flow of strength, and I want to give this strength to all those who demonstrate their loyalty to Me in the last days, and I want to give them a means which will so increase their strength that they will endure the most difficult battle and persevere until the end .... until I Myself arrive and fetch them home into My kingdom, until they enter the realm of peace, the paradise on the new earth ....

Amen

# **Agonies of a renewed banishment in solid matter ....**

***B.D. 4631 from May 8th 1949, taken  
from Book No. 53***

No words can describe to you the agonies which a renewed banishment in solid matter entails for the spirits, because this state is inconceivable for the human mind. The spiritual substance perceives itself as a being and yet is unable to use its will although it is aware of it as evidence of its existence as a being. The spiritual substance is held captive and was originally created as something that was able to be freely active, hence its helplessness and weakness and constrained state result in inexpressible agonies which usually make it revolt even more instead of becoming submissive to God's will. Humanity is in possession of free will and is approaching this very painful state .... It would still have enough time to avert this destiny from itself yet it is not open to any presentation by knowing people, and it is completely lacking faith in retribution, in the soul's continuation of life on account of which instructions will not be able to achieve anything and thus the adversity of most people's souls is extremely severe.

As yet the human being is still lord of creation, he is effectively in charge of it and able to avail himself of the creations according to his will .... but one day he himself will be a work of creation again, at first a lifeless, immovable object which can be used but also remain unused throughout an inconceivably long time .... one day he will be very far behind that which he is at the present time and an infinite length of time will pass by until he has evolved into a human being again, into the being which is endowed with free will and the strength to use this will. However, the many stages it will have to pass through, the countless torments it will have to endure in a bound will and the activities it will have to accomplish are not comprehensible to a person and therefore hard to believe for him. And yet he himself is responsible for the fate of his soul after his body dies. As yet he still has the strength to carry out deeds of love which will avert this bitter fate from him, he still has the opportunity to take notice of God's will by listening to the divine Word, and if he complies with this will his nature will change and gain the right to a state of light and freedom after his physical death. As yet he is still able to use his intellect, he can think about himself, his Creator and his purpose of life and, if it is his **will**, he will also be able to believe .... God approaches every person with His grace and gives them a small incentive to move in the right direction, to choose the right path.

If the person is not opposed to it then he will let himself be pushed onto the right path and the true goal will be

assured to him. Yet God also pays attention to opposition, that is, He does not force a person against his will ... but the person also bears the responsibility for his soul, he himself prepares its fate which will be extremely painful, and to its inexpressible regret it will have to take the path of a renewed banishment, for God's grace may not be rejected given that this also means a rejection of His love and thus a distancing of the soul instead of coming closer to Him, which is the purpose and goal of earthly life. Only a few people will take the right path during the last days, and thus the adversity is gigantic and urgently requires corrective action. This is why God's servants on earth should mention the dreadful fate which will await the human soul if it does not change during the last days before the end. Time and again the end shall be described to them as approaching imminently, for time flies and demands utmost activity in order to still save those souls from the downfall which accept the admonitions and warnings and are willing to do what is good. For the day will come unexpectedly and will throw countless people into ruin, into death, i.e., into the constrained state within matter from which they will only be able to release themselves after an infinitely long time. Be warned, you humans, for it concerns eternity, it concerns you yourselves, your souls, which are in acute danger and yet can still be saved if you are of good will ...

Amen

# People's fear ... Natural disaster and its consequences ...

***B.D. 4633 from May 10th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

All disbelievers will suffer inconceivable tribulation when I manifest Myself through the forces of nature, for they will experience a spectacle of development by tremendous forces against which the human being himself will be completely powerless. People will be seized by mortal fear, and even My Own will be affected yet be miraculously strengthened by My help as soon as they lift their thoughts up to Me. The disbelievers, however, will have no support to hold on to and will be hopelessly exposed to the elements of nature. In view of death a few will call to Me in heartfelt need, and their call will reach My ear and denote earthly or just spiritual rescue, if their hour has come. Yet then they will still have gained their eternal life.

But in the main, people will be senselessly scared, that is, they will be incapable of thinking of God, they will try to save themselves and face the same difficulties everywhere, for the whole of nature will conspire against them, all elements will be in tremendous uproar, water,

fire, storm and light will leave their natural order and cause an unimaginable amount of devastation which will cost countless human lives. It will just be a short action but have extremely far-reaching consequences for all survivors, for only now will there start an earthly time of hardship which surpasses all previous experiences. People will have to change their way of life completely, they will have to make use of everything left to them, they will have to rely on themselves and cannot expect any earthly help for a long time, since they will be completely cut off from the world and contact will not be able to be established again in a hurry.

The magnitude of the disaster will be incomprehensible, yet I constantly draw your attention to the fact that you should not abandon yourselves to earthly possessions, that you should not consider them important and forget about your soul, as it entirely depends on its maturity how you will bear up to the aftermath.

Proclamations of this nature meet with little belief and yet should be taken extremely seriously, for they will fulfil themselves literally. And every day is still a gift of grace which you should utilize, not in an earthly sense but spiritually, for only your spiritual possessions are of lasting value. Nevertheless, I promise My protection and My help to all of you who believe and want to be of service to Me. Don't let My Words depress you but know that everything, even the most difficult, can be endured if you hand it over to Me, if you ask Me to help you carry your burden .... I will not leave you and will help you



persevere until the end ....

Amen

# **Battle of faith ... Publicly professing Christ ... 'I will shorten the days ...'**

***B.D. 4635 from May 11th 1949, taken  
from Book No. 53***

You will still have to endure a harsh battle when you have to confess Me before the world. You will be expected to renounce all earthly possessions completely, you will be dispossessed and have to do the kind of work that seems to go beyond your strength, you will be prevented from doing what is important to you, you will be pursued and pressured without reason and will find no peace from the pursuits of your enemies who are likewise My enemies and thus fear no avenging hand above themselves. And you will wonder why I allow all this to happen without calling them to account, but you will also be surprised that you are not as deeply affected as it seems to the world, so that you will nevertheless remain cheerful and bright and full of confidence and hope that the hour of retribution will come for you as well, and that even these pursuits will come to an end one day. And thus you will

Speak out ever more convinced on behalf of My name and confess Me before the world. And I will shorten the days so that you will become blessed .... Always remember My promise that it will only last a short time before you will be delivered from the hands of your tormentors, remember that you belong to My chosen ones after all, whose every suffering will be rewarded for their loyalty's sake; and remember that through your confession lost souls shall still be won and saved for Me and My kingdom just before the destruction of earth. And for the sake of these souls take the cross upon yourselves which, admittedly, will weigh you down but it will nevertheless be bearable since I will also provide you with exceptional strength. The battle of faith will be difficult and therefore you already have to prepare yourselves in advance by strengthening your souls with the right nourishment, by accepting My Word and with it the strength with which I have blessed My Word. For when you accept My Word you unite with Me and therefore have to be permeated by strength and thus will be and remain resistant against your enemies until the end .... until I will come and deliver you from all adversity ....

Amen

**'There shall not be left one stone upon another ....'**

# Great adversity ...

***B.D. 4639 from May 14th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

A time will come when everything that was laboriously acquired and built up shall be lost; a time will come when people will realise that everything which was intended to provide them with physical prosperity is worthless and they will be completely destitute, because they lack spiritual wealth whose possession lets people get over the loss of earthly goods. I constantly draw your attention to this time for it will come to pass as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture .... not one stone will be left upon another .... The fact that such a dreadful work of destruction shall take place as an act of God might sound incomprehensible to worldly-minded people, nevertheless it is inevitable, firstly, because it is intended to have an educational purpose and then it is also designated in the eternal plan of Salvation to enable the spiritual substances at a lower stage of development to attain other forms. It is necessary for people to be extraordinarily severely affected for they pay almost no attention to their spiritual development anymore and shall be given final encouragements, although they can also ignore them if they are unwilling to change and to ascend. They can only be treated even more harshly for they are no longer open to gentle admonitions and everything which hitherto was inflicted upon humanity

for this purpose remains unsuccessful. However, the forthcoming time will involve a drastic change, so that people's thoughts will automatically turn to the meaning and purpose of earthly life and nevertheless cause a change in a few people, which will be truly beneficial for them.

The adversity will be so severe that it will awaken the willingness to help in those who still have a spark of love in their heart, and this spark will find nourishment and grow into a flame, for anyone who only wants to help will also actively help and ease his neighbour's difficult fate, because he knows himself how much distress every individual person's fate is causing. And those who are willing to help will also be helped by Me, they will receive help as a sign of a higher Power where no way out can be found anymore, Which lovingly draws up close to people to reveal Itself to them. For earthly help often seems impossible but that which is impossible for people can still be accomplished by Me, and thus even the greatest adversity is not hopeless because nothing is impossible for Me. And thus the love which is given to one's neighbour will bring forth good fruit, it will gain My love, and this signifies help and grace and an exceptional flow of strength, on account of which My Own need not lose heart, for they will not feel the adversity so much because they will be full of strength and always have Me by their side as a Helper Who, for the sake of their faith, will work evidently in order to still gain the few before the end who are weak in faith but nevertheless of good

will .... They will receive strength and survive that time of need without damage to their soul. My Own, however, will be protected by Me and can anticipate this time without worry, for it will not last long ....

Amen

## **Spiritual rebirth ...**

***B.D. 4641 from May 17th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

The decisive moment in earthly life is the will's inclination towards God, for from this moment onwards the soul begins to change, it is effectively the turning point, the start of return for the once-fallen spirit to God. The sooner this conscious direction of will happens in the human being's life, the greater the perfection he can attain before passing away; however, it is also possible to achieve a high degree of maturity within a short period of time if the human being realises at a much later time that he, as God's living creation, ought to strive towards unification with Him. In that case he can pursue changing his soul with an intensified will and equally still mature fully. And so every occurrence in human life will only ever be the cause for a change of will, but once the latter takes the right direction the soul is no longer at risk of slipping into darkness again, for God will draw it to

Himself as soon as it has made its decision known to reach Him. This decision of will, the deliberate turning of thoughts to God, is effectively the human being's spiritual rebirth, for the soul enters a new life, it no longer lives in the purely earthly-material world but penetrates deeper, it searches for truth and finds it, because God Himself manifests Himself as the eternal Truth by mentally influencing the soul which longs for Him .... Such a born-again soul must be nurtured and cultivated like a tender seedling, it must be kept alive with the lightest of nourishments and slowly invigorated and strengthened until it finds its own way in life and can effortlessly travel the path of higher development. The change of will is the act of rebirth, it has thereby started on the path which leads to eternal life, even though it still can present many dangers and obstacles .... worldly temptation and difficulties .... which will nevertheless be overcome by a strong soul. It is merely a question of whether the soul will receive this necessary strength or whether it must starve and will thus find the path of ascent difficult. This, again, is solely a matter of will, but once a will strives upwards towards God it will also be seized by God and constantly positively influenced, yet without being coerced. The most effective influence is the Word of God, which includes strength and life and nourishes the reborn soul and helps it to mature. A person whose soul is born-again will also always be receptive for receiving the divine Word, be it directly through listening to it or through reading divine revelations, or through mental connection with the

Primary Source of wisdom, through conscious connection with the One Who is the eternal Truth Itself. He will quite frequently withdraw into solitude, that is, he will look within himself and his thoughts will be influenced from above in the right direction .... his soul will receive nourishment and increase in light and strength. But a person whose soul is born-again will also live in love, for this is the consequence of a correctly inclined will. And thus he will mature and approach perfection, which is the reason and purpose for his life on earth, as soon as he has voluntarily detached himself from the power which held him captive and from which a person must release himself. However, in order to do so he will always have grace and strength from above at his disposal which he will use for his spiritual rebirth ....

Amen

**Battle of faith ... The  
strength of Jesus' name ...  
The coming of the Lord ...**

***B.D. 4643 from May 18th 1949, taken  
from Book No. 53***

For the sake of My name you will have to suffer. All those who profess Me before the world will be subjected to

awful threats and tribulations, for it will be people's aim to eradicate My name, to suppress the knowledge about My life on Earth and the act of Salvation, in order to make people lose faith in it. However, they will be met with unyielding resistance by people who stand up for Me and My name and profess Me aloud before the world. Then a sharp divide will be formed between all those who still believe and those who deny Me, and My small flock will have to come forward if it wants to stand up for Me, and this will be the start of suffering for those who will remain faithful to Me until the end. For whatever wickedness can be done to My Own will be done, and My Own would never bear up against this were they not strengthened by Me as a reward for their good will. You will have to prove yourselves, for a hard battle will be waged on account of faith. But as soon as this battle starts you will know that it is the last occurrence before the end, that you must therefore persevere if you want to become blissfully happy. Furthermore, you know that I will always be close to you during this time and provide you with extraordinary strength until I finally come Myself in order to rescue you from utmost adversity. Hence you know that it will only last for a short time, as I have promised you that I will shorten the days so that you will become blessed. And this knowledge, the firm and unwavering faith in it, will make you strong and immune, and you will endure all difficulties with such indifference and courage that I will reward the fact that you must suffer for the sake of My name and yet remain faithful to Me. And if you then devoutly pronounce My name it will



have an incredibly invigorating effect. This will make you realise that you truly know the truth and, with utter conviction, profess Me before the world even more and humbly accept everything people do to you, who are of service to the one who, as My adversary, wants to push you away from Me. Indeed, you will suffer but nevertheless be victorious, and your reward will not fail to materialise ....

Amen

## **Announcement of the Judgment ... Doubts ... The approach of a star ...**

***B.D. 4661 from June 7th 1949, taken from Book No. 53***

You have been informed of an approaching Judgment but you doubt this and do not take My Words seriously enough, or you would not make further earthly arrangements and only prepare yourselves for the day when My proclamations will come true. Although you do not know the day, it should suffice you that I, as your Creator and Father of eternity, have revealed it as shortly forthcoming, that I thus have informed you that it is time for you to prepare yourselves or I would not constantly

repeat the admonitions and warning, but leave you without notice. And therefore you should pay heed that the deadline grows ever shorter and is expiring very quickly everywhere. All earthly worries are in vain for I will take care of My Own so that they will have what they need. The others, however, will not be able to hold on to anything, even if they associate with My adversary, even if they, at present and with his help, are prosperous in a worldly sense and continue to increase their possessions, be they earthly goods or honours or worldly wisdom. My adversary will not be able to protect them on the day of terror, since I want to bring people to their senses through the forces of nature, so that they will think of their God and Creator and entrust themselves to Him in dire adversity.

Then everything will fall prey to the forces of nature, nothing will be left for people except what I want them to keep. And therefore they should endeavour to gain My grace, they should unite with Me through deeds of love and heartfelt thoughts, they should speak to Me and listen for My answer, and they will reap a far greater reward than if they worry about their body's wellbeing, about earthly wealth and earthly progress. You should believe that soon will come to pass what I already predicted long ago; you should believe that there is not much time left and no longer worry how to gain earthly profits, for this worry is futile, as you will very soon realise.

I will give you, who spread My Word, a sign so that you

will support it with full conviction. I want you to know that a star is approaching earth with great velocity, and that this appearance will happen shortly before I bring the constant proclamation to fruition. Then you, who are informed, will know that the hour is at hand. Then you should live only in accordance with My will, inform your fellow human beings of the forthcoming event, turn everyone's attention to it and closely unite yourselves with Me so that I can give you the strength you need during these perilous hours. Do not fear but only believe that I will deliver you from all hardship, so that you will be able to fulfil your mission for which I have prepared you .... so that afterwards you will bring My Gospel to your fellow human beings, for many of those who emerged unscathed will accept My Word with a hungry heart. You should realise that you do not have much time left until the end .... And preceding this end everything I constantly proclaim will come to pass. Believe it and prepare yourselves, for time is running out and I will appear very soon ....

Amen

**'Watch and pray, lest ye enter into temptation ....'**

***B.D. 4662 from June 9th 1949, taken***

## ***from Book No. 53***

You should be vigilant and pray, so that you will not fall when you are being tempted .... My adversary's onslaught against those of you who want to remain faithful to Me will be relentless in order to estrange you from Me. He uses all means and not least of all those which intend to disable you from establishing contact with Me, so that he will have an easy game as soon as you are weak. He lies in wait for opportunities to cause your downfall and only someone with a strong will, someone who is able to send a thought up to Me for help will not succumb to him. Call upon Me in every adversity of body and soul .... this is what I call pray and watch .... direct your thoughts upwards where he cannot follow you and you will safely escape from him and place yourselves under My protection. He will try to shackle you to earth with all his might, to that which is his share and which belongs to his realm .... he will want you to abscond from Me, from spiritual striving, he will cause you to doubt and want to confuse your thoughts through adversities and dreads, so that you won't find your way back to Me, so that you will engross yourselves in earthly things and forget about Me .... Watch and pray .... and detach yourselves from the one who is My adversary, and attach yourselves increasingly more to Me, Who is your eternal Father and Who can truly offer you more magnificent things than he can .... Watch and pray, for you are constantly surrounded by the tempter trying to catch you. A vigilant person will be able to recognise and escape from him .... And be

joyful and happy in knowing that I Am your constant Protector Whom you can turn to when you are threatened by danger, for I hear the faintest call coming from your heart and will support you so that you will be victorious in your battle against him. But anyone who places too much trust in his own strength and believes that he can do without My help will succumb, for he is overestimating himself and failing to consider that the adversary's strength is greater than his. You will win with Me but succumb without Me and fall prey to every temptation. But to walk with Me means to allow My presence through prayer and kind-hearted activity .... Then you are protected against all incursions by the enemy, then he will be powerless against you, for then he would have to fight against Me and I Am far more powerful than he is. Watch and pray, then he will have lost his target, he will avoid you, because then you will be surrounded by light which emanates My presence and that is intolerable to him .... Call upon Me in every temptation and I will always be with you ....

Amen

**The world wants to see  
miracles and does not see  
the greatest miracle of**

**all ....**

***B.D. 4665 from June 11th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

It seems strange to you that I do not appear in great glory, that I do not make My presence known through eye-catching unusual appearances, but simply and without splendour merely express Myself through My Word where I Am able to be present. The world wants to see miracles but My Own see miracles everywhere and therefore will also recognise Me in plain clothing. They feel My spirit which gives evidence of itself that it is not a deceptive light, but it spreads a soft yet bright light that radiates from the heart, where I Myself can dwell. The world wants to see miracles and fails to see the greatest miracle of all ....

For is it not a miracle that you may hear the voice of God, that I Myself can speak to you like a Father speaks to his children? Is it not a miracle that I personally answer questions which arise in a thinking person and which he is nevertheless unable to answer himself? Is it not a miracle that you yourselves have the teacher within you Who educates you in purest truth and grants you wisdom? You, who look for God in the distance, will never be able to grasp this miracle and therefore you will be unable to believe, for you do not allow My working within yourselves and thus I cannot make Myself known to you

either. Yet My Own, who have established a relationship with Me through their thoughts, who always feel Me close to them, are impressed by the miracle, even though the miracle keeps itself hidden from them, that is, they cannot comprehend the full extent of their experience. For they should remain open-minded in their relationship with Me, so that they speak and commend themselves to Me as a friend and brother without any sense of excessive awe. And therefore I Am closer to them than to those who want to behold Me intellectually and yet will never be able to find Me.

But I will also appear to some in an obvious manner, and they will then be able to bear witness of Me and portray Me as truly existing, and through their faith they will also help to strengthen the faith of those who are still weak but not without faith. My Word will speak for itself and give evidence of Me to the world. The substance of the Word conveyed from above to earth is a far more obvious miracle than any extraordinary process which people would like to experience as 'proof of God'. My servants on earth who remain simple and receive My Word without trance, who equally simply pass it on again as they have received it from Me, are not affected by inner excitement, yet their souls experience the merciful, unusual event and will be enlightened, even if the human being as such is unaware of it. I know why My servants must have this apparent insensitivity and thus it is also My doing, not in order to disadvantage but to benefit the soul. And therefore do not allow such thoughts to reduce

the value of the messages but know that I Am present with you Myself when you hear My voice, and that this presence of Mine is truly the greatest of miracles which, however, only few people believe or experience consciously. For the world wants to behold and be in awe but not quietly listen and be grateful for every genuine secret revelation which the conveyance of My Word from above signifies to people ....

Amen

## **The reason for God's remarkable action ....**

***B.D. 4670 from June 15th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

\_(12th anniversary of receiving the Word) 15.06.1949 The spiritual poverty of the world is immense and has once again reached the same low level as it was at the time of Christ's coming because people are no longer able to hear My voice. They can no longer hear Me nor do they want to hear Me and therefore live their earthly lives without purpose and aim, although they are pursuing earthly goals and are very busy indeed. Yet they cannot find contact with Me anymore and keep themselves apart from the One Who should be their only goal. They no



longer acknowledge Me because they no longer know anything about Me, and thus feel no love for Me either which would otherwise elevate them from their low spiritual state. It is a desperate situation because their ignorance results in an agonising state in eternity, which they could escape if they would utilize their final earthly life appropriately. I know what dreadful fate awaits the souls, I see the people in their blindness head towards the abyss, I call to them with Words of caution and alarm, I send guides along their way to return them to the right path towards Me. Yet people's will persistently aims towards the abyss, they do not accept advice, they resist and withdraw from My support .... they revolt against Me Whom they should love with all their heart, to Whom they should rush like children to their father.

They follow the attractions of the world, they purely live an earthly life, and thus I cannot come closer to them and they cannot hear My Word by which I want to win them for eternity .... And yet I will not let them fall, and if they do not want to hear Me Myself I will try to approach them in other ways .... I will send messengers to them whom they do not openly reject, and through these messengers I will speak to them Words of love and of concern for their souls. I would like to come to My children but they do not accept Me .... And thus I choose a cover, I hide behind those who support Me but who also associate with people who are still distant from Me. And thus I contact and reveal Myself to them as well, even though they do not recognise Me and only hear My messengers voice.

Can you now understand why I appear in remarkable ways by transmitting My Word to earth, by speaking through My devoted servants? Can you now understand the extensive hardship which I would like to remedy and therefore use every means in order to establish contact with worldly people?

There is not much time left and urgent help is necessary if I don't want My living creations to go astray, if I want to save them from repeating their path through the creations. You cannot imagine the implications of this harsh spiritual poverty but I take pity on people who could still have many opportunities to accomplish the purpose of their earthly life and who do not think of what will become of them after their death. I have compassion for them and yet I cannot help them in any other way but by means of My Word. I can only advise them and inform them of their deficiency but I cannot force them to live in accordance with My will. Nevertheless I can tell people that I will indeed use every means to help them and that I therefore will embody Myself within the spirit of those who want to help Me save the people. And thus you should believe those whom I send to you as My messengers, you should believe that the spiritual poverty is enormous, that I nevertheless take care of each one individually who will not resist Me .... that I Myself will approach him and that he can recognise Me, if only it is his will. Let Me help you and don't reject Me, turn around, retreat from the abyss .... there is still time but I only give you a short time until the end .... Be warned and follow

My servants sent by Me, and recognise in this your Father's great love Who wants to encourage all of you to return to the Father's house in order to become blissfully happy ....

Amen

# **The soul matures through suffering ... God's care ... World and God ...**

***B.D. 4672 from June 18th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

Whatever serves to benefit your soul has been foreseen since eternity. Therefore you can regard every difficult and upsetting, joyful and edifying experience, which only aims to achieve your psychological maturity, as having been imposed on you by Me. And if you consider the course of your life from this point of view then nothing should bother, burden or frighten you .... for all is for the best .... Every experience enables you to mature, you can derive benefit for your souls as long as you always recognise Me as the One Who allows it to happen, and remain in contact with Me by constantly glancing towards your Father above, Who wants to shape you into His children on this earth.

Fear and worry are unnecessary if you hand them over to Me and ask for My help. You are never alone if you allow My presence next to you, if you do not want to be alone and never exclude Me from your life, if you leave your thoughts, needs and actions entirely to Me, if you let Me take care of them, so that I will guide you and you are merely the executor of My will. You could travel your earthly path carefree and without worry if only you would always walk with Me .... Yet the world frequently stands between you and Me and separates us, the world is close to your eyes, and you neglect Me even though you want to belong to Me. The world is still too important to you, you do not realise its triviality because you are still involved with the world. However, as soon as you are able to value Me above the world, as soon as you are able to put Me first, the world will no longer burden you, it will not disturb you, you will be able to cope easily and be master of everything that approaches you on a worldly level.

Make the attempt, let Me take care of you and entrust yourselves to My protection and care with complete faith. First fulfil your duty towards Me by living in accordance with My Word and working for Me and My kingdom. Then you should also inform other people of My will by always reminding them of their true destiny, by motivating them to improve their souls and by passing on My Word, which you have received from Me and which will enlighten them where they are still in the dark. Draw your fellow human beings' attention to the fact that I Am in charge of

all people's destiny, that nothing happens to people without meaning and purpose, that higher development is the purpose of every experience, and that everything is bearable if I Am approached for help, acknowledged as Controller and Creator of eternity and prayed to for My Fatherly care. Caution them not to forget Me for the sake of the world, then every individual person's earthly path of life will be easy and safe and his soul will derive benefit from every experience. For I only want your soul to mature when you have to go through suffering, but you can make it bearable for yourselves if you take heed of My Word and always allow Me to walk with you. For I Am your Father and only want the best for My children ....

Amen

**'That day and hour knoweth no man ...' False prophets of the last days ...**

***B.D. 4675 from June 24th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 53***

No seer and prophet will ever be able to predict the time of an impending judgment, for this is not permitted by God due to being detrimental for people. For this reason no person will ever be able to predict the day when a

judgment comes upon people. Nevertheless, their attention shall be drawn to it, and so God proclaims through a human mouth, through seers and prophets, as soon as a judgment is approaching. The announcement of a judgment on its own should therefore be believed, but if a definite time of the judgment is given, the prophecy can rightfully be dismissed as wrong .... In that case false prophets will have appeared which need not be listened to, for such announcements are generally made for the sake of earthly advantages and then you must be cautious. However, if God avails Himself of a person in order to inform humanity of His eternal plan of Salvation, He will not merely inform him of His intention, of the forthcoming judgment, but He will also provide him with the general knowledge which makes the necessity of a judgment comprehensible to God's servant, so that he can convincingly substantiate these prophecies to his fellow human beings. But regardless of how determinedly he will stand up for the truth of the proclamations, he will never be able to state a precise date, because God reserves this right for Himself. Nevertheless, each such proclamation can be accepted as absolute truth, and time and again the Book of the Fathers will confirm that the announcements completely correspond to it, consequently, the fulfilment of these announcements can be expected with certainty and the forthcoming judgment taken as established fact, even so, humanity shall remain uncertain as to when God will manifest Himself; however it shall always be prepared, otherwise the announcements conveyed to people by

God's love would defeat the purpose and the judgment would befall humanity suddenly and unexpectedly ...

Amen

# Hearing the divine Word ... Thoughts ...

***B.D. 4700 from July 28th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

Only through the inner Word are you able to receive clarification about questions which cannot be answered by earthly scientists. An appropriate Authority regarding spiritual questions certainly exists, yet people rarely take the path to it. For this reason a truthful answer will also rarely be received which can only be provided by the One to Whom nothing is unknown, Who knows everything, Who also wants to impart the knowledge to humanity which enables people to recognise Him. Hence God manifests Himself through the Word and anyone who wants to hear it must gain God's love, he must make Him well disposed towards him by doing everything God requests of him .... then God will come so close to you that you will be able to hear His voice, for He expresses Himself through His Word, He makes Himself known to you, He speaks to you humans in easily understood

language, He speaks through your heart to your intellect and deals with every question you voice or consider in your thoughts. He responds to you .... His Word is therefore a sign of affinity from Him to you, for you will only be able to hear His Word if you unite with Him either mentally or through activity of love .... And as long as the earth has existed God has always spoken to people in this way, however, until now He was more easily understood, whereas now His language is only seldom appreciated. These few people, however, are considered by Him to an unlimited extent. He wants to explain and substantiate everything to them so that they will be able to impart the knowledge they gained in this way to their fellow human beings for their souls' salvation. And in order to stop them from doubting further He allows them an insight into His eternal plan of Salvation, and thus He ignites a light for them which will never ever let them descend into darkness again .... He approaches those people in the Word who are willing to let themselves be taught. And thus the Word will forever remain the bridge between God and people which, however, can only be entered by a person if he withdraws himself from the world, if he avoids the broad roads which seem more attractive to his eyes and entice him to take them .... He can only perceive God's voice in solitude, i.e., he must avoid the world and let his thoughts wander into the spiritual kingdom. Then he does what he should do initially: He makes mental contact with God, he enters into a dialogue with Him, he presents Him with questions which move him by allowing his thoughts free rein .... And these thoughts are already



emanations from the spiritual realm. For the human being is unable to produce anything by himself.

The intellect is certainly capable of receiving and processing the thoughts which flow to him, yet the thought itself does not **arise** in the person, instead it touches his heart, but it flows from the kingdom which lies beyond earthly spheres .... The thought is a spiritual product, thus a strength which takes on a specific form as soon as it is received by the intellect, thus the intellect is influenced by the heart to become active by shaping the influx of thoughts and giving them a certain order. The intellectual activity consists of **retaining** the thoughts which touch the heart as waves and **cannot** find a response if, due to the bustle of the world, a person's will only uses his mental activity for worldly things and pays no attention to spiritual currents. However, if the person seeks solitude and turns his back to the world, his heart will be touched and beneficially affected by spiritual currents and eagerly accepted by the person. Due to this willingness of reception the Word shapes itself, that is, the person becomes sensibly and clearly aware of what God Himself wants to tell him. Thus he hears His voice in his heart, the thought waves are received by the heart and conveyed to the intellect, and the person as such is able to rationally take possession of the received spiritual information and also understandably explain it to his fellow human being. This process is in fact simple and uncomplicated, it is just not understood by a worldly person because he does not appreciate the soul's

sensations and therefore also only tries to explain mental activity purely organically. Yet the actual source of the thought is unknown to him and a relevant explanation not acceptable to him because he does not acknowledge anything of a spiritual nature, he only acknowledges what he is able to see or touch. But God continues to provide evidence of forces which human intellect is unable to explain and provides the information about everything through His Word .... Anyone who allows the Word of God to speak to him will have comprehensive knowledge at his disposal, for nothing will remain unknown to a person who allows himself to be taught by Him, and therefore the human being is able to broaden his knowledge, he can delve into everything and get any information he desires. For God does not impose any restriction on a person as soon as he gets in touch with the Giver of knowledge and truth and allows himself to be taught by Him .... as soon as he believes that God Himself speaks to him through the heart ....

Amen

## **Loving Fatherly Words ... Guidance ...**

***B.D. 4704 from August 4th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You can always entrust yourselves to My guidance, and you will also always feel it if you are observant. You will not take one step on your own as long as you don't exclude Me from your thoughts, as long as you endeavour to live with and for Me, as long as you consciously strive towards Me. Thus recognise in every happening My guidance, My hand, and place your trust in Me, for anyone who chooses Me as His confidante will truly find the most loyal friend, the most loving bridegroom, the most caring Father and Protector, Who cannot be replaced by anyone on earth but Who also wants to be loved by you in the same way as He loves you. I will always walk next to you once you have chosen Me as your guide, and I will truly guide you on the right path once I have taken over the care for you, then everything will approach you such that it will help your soul to progress. If you can bring this faith in you to life you will truly take your path on earth without worry and in peace, for I will look after you and have arranged everything in the best possible way. Everything will serve a good purpose; even adversity and suffering will benefit your soul if you carry Me in your hearts, thus, if you mentally stay in contact with Me and don't want to lose Me. For only this will makes you dear and valuable to Me, and once a person has adopted this will, he will never lose Me again, I will be close to him and he shall constantly feel My love and care. He will never be alone and forsaken, he will always find the confidante in Me Whom he can talk to at all times and Who will always find Words of love and of comfort for him and forever stand by his side with advice and

practical support ....

Amen

# **Thirst for knowledge ... Unlimited knowledge ...**

***B.D. 4705 from August 5th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The field of knowledge is boundless. And even if you believe that you have been exhaustively taught by Me it is nevertheless merely minimal knowledge although it is sufficient in order to instruct your fellow human beings in turn and to impart a glimmer of realisation to them. Yet you could constantly receive new knowledge, time and again you would be given new information in all fields, time and again you could broaden your knowledge, and the questions and answers would have no end. But it is entirely up to yourselves as to how deeply you want to penetrate the fountain of wisdom .... The aspirant's desire will always be fulfilled and therefore you, who are being trained for teaching work, will time and again be stimulated through spiritual discussions, so that through your conversations you discover gaps in your knowledge in order to kindle your thirst for knowledge which subsequently can be satisfied. I want you to ask questions

so that I Am able to answer you, it is My will that you take an active interest in conversations of a spiritual kind, that you don't merely listen but allow your heart and intellect to be impressed, then elucidating knowledge will be imparted to you which will satisfy you and make you grow in wisdom, faith and strength .... The deeper you penetrate spiritual knowledge the more convincingly you will be able to believe and the closer you will come to Me and receive strength from Me directly. The fountain of knowledge is inexhaustible and the field which only I can open up to you is unlimited .... Even if infinite time passed by you would never reach the end because My creation is infinite and because that which is perfect must also be forever boundless. Knowledge pertaining to spiritual subjects can therefore never be completed; all the same, what you humans need to know, what is absolutely essential for the soul's maturing, can indeed be offered to you to a limited extent, yet it depends on your free will as to whether you want to add to this extent or whether you are satisfied with what I give to you .... Time and again I say to you that you will receive an answer to every question, time and again I invite you to ask questions in order to stimulate your thirst for knowledge and time and again I offer you the opportunity to be mentally very active so that I can instruct you again in accordance with your will.

However, don't consider your knowledge to have reached an end, don't believe that you are already in possession of all knowledge. For it is an infinite subject your soul can

still negotiate if it has the will to do so. Yet the knowledge you receive from Me is certainly sufficient in order to motivate a fellow human being in turn to believe in a God of love, wisdom and omnipotence .... And anyone who accepts this knowledge can already call himself indescribably wealthy, for it is the truth, and a tiny grain of purest truth can offset a vast amount of knowledge which is interspersed by error and is more likely to obscure the human being's spirit .... Pure truth alone is invaluable spiritual knowledge which merits the term knowledge. Only pure truth is illuminating, whereas teachings interspersed by errors will always leave gaps, they are concepts which often seem incomprehensible or incredible to a person who seriously desires to become knowledgeable. True knowledge, however, provides explanations for everything, because it is offered by Me, the Giver of truth. But true knowledge will time and again also give rise to questions; it will constantly inspire you anew to ask questions, so that it should increase and awaken the desire for more knowledge in a person. Inner desire presupposes enlargement of knowledge, this is why I welcome every thinking and questioning person who wants to be taught by Me. And although he does not voice the question I nevertheless answer him through My instrument which I use as a mediator between him and Me in order to express Myself .... Hence, you humans can receive extensive knowledge, no incomprehensible subject need exist for you if only you seriously strive for truth and enter into mental contact with Me. However, I require your full attention, otherwise you will be unable

to hear Me, otherwise I refuse to answer although you asked a question yet without seriously expecting an answer, which you demonstrate with your thoughts, which are truly not hidden from Me .... 'Ask, and it shall be given to you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you ....' However, My prerequisite is a serious searching, an appealing thought and an expectation of My answer by listening within or by listening to a mediator .... but then you will be instructed, you will be able to receive unlimited knowledge which completely corresponds to the truth ....

Amen

# **Traditional faith ... Conventional faith ... Misguided teachings ...**

***B.D. 4707 from August 7th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

It is extremely hard work to change people's traditional faith, the conventional faith, into a living faith, because they do not yet understand the word 'faith'. They have adopted the word traditionally without being aware of its actual deep meaning and rather adhere to external practices and customs than to the core which constitutes

the teaching of Christ.

They may have indeed listened with their ears to everything in relation to Jesus Christ as the divine Redeemer and describe this knowledge with the word 'faith'. They only mean by this that they do not object to this knowledge or reject it as improbable. But they have neither explored the details of the Christian teaching nor are they at all aware of the significance of the act of Salvation. Hence they refrain from forming an opinion of what they are being taught which, however, is necessary in order to gain a living faith, i.e. to gain an inner conviction for every religious doctrine.

But only living faith can lead to eternal life, because all kinds of conventional faith are unsuitable to transform the soul.

And everything is a conventional faith as long as the person is not overcome by a deep desire for pure truth. Because only this desire prompts him to think about the imparted spiritual knowledge which is then followed by inner conviction or by conscious rejection if he cannot find inner conviction, or living faith.

And this elimination of wrong from right has to take place. Error has to be separated from truth otherwise people cannot find a correct concept of God, Whose essence is of such perfection that everything which testifies of Him also has to be perfect. However, false teachings will never reveal God's essence but forever mirror a distorted image of God. But as long as the



people wanting to instruct other people .... (08.08.1949)  
do not know the difference between conventional and living faith themselves, as long as these people have not gained the knowledge of truth themselves, precisely by forming an opinion with divine help thus having achieved a living faith, they will not convey the right faith to the learners either. This explains why countless people may well call themselves religious yet are far removed from it .... why error is therefore widespread and truth is only of little interest, why human beings accept much as truth which, with sincere will, they certainly could recognise as error. But they keep to tradition, for generations they thoughtlessly and unreservedly continue to adopt the same distorted teachings which initially were given by Jesus Christ in their purest form to the people and which only became clouded and distorted due to a lack of own thinking and thus deviations were ignored. Moreover, people became duty bound to accept religious dogma unconditionally, so that they did not feel responsible and thus their faith became increasingly inflexible and a dead faith cannot result in spiritual progress.

People's attention should be drawn to their lifeless state, and thus living faith has to be preached all the time. They have to be advised that they may not call themselves believers as long as they only accept traditionally adopted spiritual knowledge without having made it their own, thus being able to uphold it with innermost conviction and not just with their mouth, and that this also necessitates intellectual contemplation. Then the

veil will fall from their eyes, then heart and intellect will occasionally refuse to accept something, and only then will the truth be made known, which will then make the person joyful and turn him into a diligent supporter. And then the human being will be able to believe actively and have freed himself from formality, only then can his soul mature and only then can he be a member of the church which Jesus Christ founded on earth ....

Amen

## **Irresponsible experiments are the reason for the destruction of earth ...**

***B.D. 4708 from August 9th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The divine world order cannot be revoked; nevertheless human determination can challenge it, but only to its own disadvantage. Laws exist which human intellect will never be able to ascertain, for they not only affect the natural properties of earth but also form the basis of continued existence for other creations, hence they are impenetrable for the human intellect and have to be accepted, that is, they must not be ignored if opposite laws are not to come into effect, which were likewise

given by divine wisdom, thus intending to maintain the eternal order.

A certain degree of creativity is indeed granted to humanity, and research in all directions can likewise be embarked upon. However, as long as the human being is not yet in full possession of spiritual strength he is subject to limitations both in regards to knowledge as well as to the exploitation of earth forces which are always active and must be utilized in definite conformity to law, in some sort of orderliness. If this lawfulness is ignored, if these forces are activated contrary to law, then the effect will be disastrous and total destruction of all matter will be the inevitable result, which human will is unable to bring to a halt. For then other creations, other celestial bodies which interact with these forces, will exert an influence and thus will be affected. People will no longer be able to observe these effects as they, without exception, will fall victim to such destructions, apart from those already in possession of spiritual strength who will be taken away from the endangered vicinity of earth by God's will.

Such a process will take place and thus signify the end of this earth. Human will is arrogantly resolved in wanting to investigate forces and through experiments thus will activate forces with said enormously destructive effect .... For the motives for these investigations, which will result in this unimaginable outcome, are not honourable. Hence God will deny them the blessing which rests on activities that aim to benefit fellow human beings. Besides, they

will be contravening divine natural law in so far as that they conduct experiments at the risk of human life, that they use human beings as test objects who have to sacrifice their lives. This is a sin against divine order, against the love for God and other people, as well as a sin against humanity which thereby is doomed for destruction. For the knowledge of those conducting such tests is far from sufficient and thus they will be undertaken prematurely which, however, is known beyond doubt. And such irresponsible experiments cannot be tolerated by God, hence they will have repercussions for the experimenters, who will achieve nothing else but total destruction of all material creations on earth, thus a shattering of matter which, however, in the spiritual sense means a disintegration of every form and a release of the spiritual substances bound therein. Thus people will trigger this final act of destruction on earth, and the whole of humanity will be destroyed due to the fact that craving for fame, excessive need for recognition and greed for material possessions are turning people into reckless speculators, who nevertheless are not ignorant of the fact that they will endanger their fellow human beings and still conduct their tests. Previously gained experiences will already have provided them with enough cautions and warnings in order to refrain from them, consequently their action is a sacrilege which God will not leave unpunished ....

Amen

# Spiritual exchange of thoughts ...

***B.D. 4710 from August 10th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You can gain incredibly much in an exchange of thoughts with spiritually inclined people if you desire the truth, for then knowledgeable spiritual beings will influence your thoughts by participating in your conversation and will interact informatively. Admittedly, you will then look upon your thoughts as gained by your own intellect when they are, in fact, transmissions from the spiritual realm, thought currents, which you received and subsequently enter and are retained by your consciousness. Spiritual exchanges of thought will always concur if both partners strive spiritually and possess the same degree of maturity, or it will be a matter of questions and instructions, if their degree of maturity differs. Yet such conversations are always beneficial, both for the knowledgeable as well as the uninformed person, because they always result in new realisations, precisely because of the participation of the beings of light which, in most instances, also initiated such conversations, for they bring their protégés together on earth, the souls which are entrusted to them, so that such conversations can take place and be influenced by them. However, if the debaters oppose each other, then controversial issues

will often ensue whose solution is also the light beings' work which can occasionally result in defeating the opposing partner. Moreover, discussions of a spiritual nature stimulate people's thinking and this is of greatest benefit for the soul, for then it will form its own opinion of every spiritual question and only then can and will it debate with intense interest. But anyone who avoids every spiritual conversation also prevents the beings of light from carrying out their caring work, he remains inaccessible to every spiritual instruction and will never broaden his knowledge, because he does not communicate and therefore can neither accept what is right nor relinquish what is wrong ....

Amen

## **Shield of faith ... Trust ... God's protection ...**

***B.D. 4720 from August 22nd 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

I Am giving you a genuine gift, and in realising it you should be joyful. How can the world possibly harm you if I stand before you as a shield and let nothing harm you? Hence, take your stand behind the shield of faith and you will be protected against all attacks by those with ill

intentions. I will always stand by you, always ready to protect you whenever you are in danger. And this belief has to be so certain in you that you thereby banish all fear and distress. I Am with you and hold on to you so that you will not get caught in the undergrowth, in the many worldly obstacles to which you fear to succumb. Just look up and call to Me in thought, then you will never walk alone but always in My company, able to live untroubled until the end of your days. Although the world will still badly bother you it should not cause you fear, for I Am stronger than the world, and if the world pesters you though I want you to be at peace, then it will be unable to harm you. Therefore, be joyful and happy and despise the world, that is to say, ignore it and what emerges from it. My kingdom will compensate you for what the earthly world denies to you, and to dwell in My kingdom is truly more desirable, for it will not disappoint you.

I Am also Lord over this earthly world and control your earthly life too, but you should leave this concern entirely to Me and not burden yourselves with it, because the state of your soul is far more important and you alone have to improve it. I can put your earthly life in order for you but you will have to shape your spiritual life in accordance with your will. And in order that nothing shall stop you from improving your soul I will take care of your body and all it requires to maintain and fulfil its earthly task. And because I make this promise to you, you can truly commend yourselves to Me, every experience will be for the benefit of your soul. Therefore I only expect

your complete trust in My assistance and you will be helped with every problem you have. For nothing is impossible to Me, and all threads in eternity are controlled by My will, in wisdom and greater than great love .... always for the benefit of My living creations, for whom I want to prepare an eternally blissful fate ....

Amen

## **Immortality of soul .... Wrong doctrine ....**

***B.D. 4723 from August 25th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You need truthful explanations because misguided teachings darken your spirit and portray My creative will and creative spirit wrongly to you. They show neither My love nor My wisdom and thus prevent you from igniting the flame of love in your hearts which would bring you closer to Me. Wrong doctrines can lead to non-belief, wrong doctrines can destroy all faith if they are not corrected, and therefore I want to enlighten you time and again for your own sakes, since you can, after all, only become blessed through faith and love.

What is the use of any teaching which questions the immortality of the soul? The soul is something spiritual,



whereas the body is physical .... The body can certainly die, that is, pass away and disintegrate in its substance, but the soul, the spiritual essence, is immortal. It has to continue, it will merely leave the body as soon as the body has served its task as a cover for the soul on earth. It will leave the physical external form in order to continue its process of development in spiritual spheres, to steadily increase its maturity if it has reached a certain degree of maturity on earth or, if its course of life was unsuccessful, to either remain in the same state of total immaturity or to descend into darkness, depending on its will, but always in spheres which should be understood as being outside the earthly-material world.

Thus, the soul will in fact experience a state of death, but this should not be understood as obliteration, it is merely a state of complete lack of light and strength, a state of helplessness, yet it will always be conscious of its existence. The soul will never lose its awareness of existence, it can merely mean either the epitome of beatitude or inexpressible agony for the soul, which is always consistent with the way of life the person had lived on earth. Hence the soul's life corresponds to its life in the flesh on this earth. Consequently, the deeds of the flesh determine the soul's fate and the place of residence after its death, and the day of death is the human being's Judgment Day, after which it will arise into a life of light or darkness ....

The soul is something spiritual which can never ever cease to exist, it cannot be temporarily extinguished

either but it will live eternally, with the exception that an existence in darkness cannot be called life but is spiritual death, yet neither can it be called a state of rest. A rest until Judgment Day is a wrong concept, because inactive souls experience this as personal torment, whereas a soul's true life is activity which, however, necessitates a certain degree of maturity, which a soul can easily attain on earth if it is of good will. The souls stay in the spiritual kingdom and can nevertheless always be in the vicinity of earth. They are merely outside of the physical world, thus they are no longer tied to a material form but are free spiritual beings if they are enlightened, otherwise they will be in a state of darkness, because complete lack of strength signifies constraint for them. But the soul can never die; it will merely escape its body, which thus will have completed its earthly life ....

Amen

# **The catastrophe and its consequences .... Neighbourly love ....**

***B.D. 4724 from August 27th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You will all return to a very primitive state of living, for

only this will make it possible to motivate you into helpful neighbourly love, which alone can redeem you. Then all people will have the opportunity to be lovingly active although it depends on free will to what extent the opportunity will be utilised. And thus humanity will very quickly want to improve their living conditions again and this, depending on every individual person's will, by just or unjust means, for only few will want to be of service while the majority will want to be served and at the expense of their fellow human beings attain prosperity again, if only for a short period of time, for the end will follow soon .... However, whatever precedes the end has been determined for eternity .... A partial destruction on an inconceivable scale will affect large stretches of land and claim countless human lives. These people, therefore, will have met their end, yet their death will still result in their souls' entry into the kingdom of the beyond. The last hour for this world has not yet arrived when the gates into the spiritual kingdom will also be closed. The survivors, however, will still be granted a last reprieve, an extremely difficult earthly life which can nevertheless be called a time of grace as it still enables many people of good will to gain higher maturity. The huge event should make all people thoughtful and let them seek unity with God, but only a few will derive benefit for their soul by commending themselves to their Creator and Father of eternity and appeal to Him for mercy and help.

And they will indeed be helped. For there will be great

and widespread hardship so that outside help cannot be expected. People can only help each other, and in their neighbourly love they will be strongly supported from above, they will be able to accomplish works which are in fact beyond their strength. Yet the will to help will gain them an extraordinary flow of strength, the will to help will also have beneficial consequences on them, so that the helpful person will receive spiritually and physically what he would like to pass on and thus his own adversity will be remedied too. The strength of faith and of love will clearly become evident and every human being can ease his fate by considering his neighbour and not just his own hardship. This great adversity comes upon you in order to revive love, for only love can redeem you and it grows constantly colder the closer it gets to the end. And anyone who is still able and willing to love will not be depressed by the hardship but will overcome it himself by virtue of his love for his neighbour. Even so, there will be much suffering everywhere. People will be torn apart, they will no longer hear from each other and everyone will then have the opportunity of using all his strength to alleviate the difficult situation in his surrounding area. And the human being can achieve much if only he calls upon God for support and desires help for other people. But anyone who takes advantage of his fellow human being and tries to benefit from his adversity will in the end belong to those who will be devoured by the earth on the last day .... he will belong to those who will be condemned, because they had become true devils and will have to share the fate of the one who will be chained

up and banished into the new earth for an infinitely long period of time again ....

Amen

## **'My sheep know My voice ...' Resistance ...**

***B.D. 4726 from August 28th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The way you consider My Word is the way I consider you. For it is the Father's voice speaking to you which you have to know if you love Me, that is, if you keep My commandments. Anyone to whom My Word is made accessible will accept it if he loves Me, or he does not love Me if he rejects Me, that is, he does not fulfil My commandments, he does not live in love for God and his neighbour, otherwise he would recognise My Words as the Father's voice. Thus it will also be understandable to you that I bless those who accept Me in the Word yet withdraw My blessing from those who reject Me, for they will not be able to say that they acknowledge Me although they reject My Word .... My sheep know My voice .... and anyone who recognises it will also vouch for it, he will speak on behalf of My Word and not be afraid to pass it on. For what child would not give credence to the

Words of the Father .... I came to My Own and they did not recognise Me .... And today I come to My children again, yet they pay less attention to My voice than ever because they do not have the right relationship of children to their Father, because they grant the world more rights and don't have much time for Me anymore. And yet they call themselves religious.

However, I don't acknowledge their faith because I don't notice any love in their hearts otherwise they would desire Me or My Word or attentively listen to the gentle sound of My voice wherever it can be perceived .... But I don't acknowledge anyone as My true child who suppresses My voice for the sake of the world, for although the Fatherly love embraces all His children it also wants to be reciprocated by them. Love Me and keep My commandments, then you will also feel that My Word is Fatherly, then no resistance will arise in you and you will joyfully profess Him to your fellow human beings and ensure the spreading of the Word .... However, if you lack love it will not affect you and you will reject it as a nuisance, which is evident within your heart and also in your conduct, and then you will also reject My love which comes to meet you in the Word and through the Word gives you the evidence that the Father speaks to His children and wants to be listened to by them .... Seriously examine yourselves as to whether you are children of the world or children of your Heavenly Father, and remember My Words: My sheep know My voice .... and don't be faithless, but believing ....

Amen

# **The Antichrist's scourge ...**

***B.D. 4728 from August 29th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The Antichrist's scourge will be wielded harshly over all who profess Me, just as it was wielded over Me before My crucifixion as a human being. Yet I will repel it from My Own, I will seize it Myself and instead let it affect those who are enslaved by Satan. His raging will certainly be sorely felt in the ranks of My Own, yet as long as they are covered by the shield of faith he will be unable to cause them much harm, for once again I will safeguard them against anything that is done to My Own. However, they recognise the reign of the Antichrist and that the end and with it their hour of deliverance will soon have come, and this knowledge gives them the strength which lets them endure anything. You will not have a peaceful time for much longer, hour after hour and day after day trickle away and the time My spirit has announced to you comes ever closer .... Earth is facing a powerful tremor with indescribable consequences. And even if you doubt .... you cannot stop it anymore and soon will have to make a decision for or against Me .... This decision will be demanded by the one who opposes Me and who will continue to oppose Me for an endless time to come.

He will arrive **prior** to Me and appear on this earth, and he will take possession of someone who wholeheartedly belongs to him, i.e., he will express himself in all his power and strength through the latter. People will join him in droves, they will admire him and voluntarily submit themselves to him .... they will be dependent on him because he exerts his influence on them as a human being and impresses them with his words and actions. He will be successful because they will all surrender to him of their own accord, and thus he will wield great power and use it against Me .... against all of those who believe in Me and profess Me .... He will fight against Me and thus also wage the battle against My Own, who will nevertheless remain loyal to Me until the end .... The time of the Antichrist has come and accordingly he will soon make an appearance, and then you will know that the end is near .... For he will only reign for a short time, and because he knows that he won't have much time left anymore he will open hell and release all that is evil which will cooperate with him in a shocking manner .... Yet the hour of his fall into the abyss has been determined since the start, and so it will come to pass as is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Experiments towards the end of the earth ....**



# Activating forces ...

***B.D. 4731 from September 1st 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

There is a set limit to how far people can go in their conduct towards what My creative spirit has brought forth. Thus, as soon as they presumptuously want to change natural creations, every one of which was given its purpose by Me, then people's attitude towards Me becomes irrational, they underestimate My wisdom and My might, believing themselves able to dismiss both and thereby sin against Me Myself as well as against what I have created. And then the limit I have set will be transgressed, and thus humanity will destroy itself, because their scholars will draw the wrong conclusions and the consequences of their experiments will be disastrous. People believe that they have the right to explore everything I kept hidden from them in recognition of their immaturity for such knowledge .... The earth in its core is and will remain inexorable for people until the end. Furthermore, forces of gigantic power are kept bound by Me in the earth's core so as not to endanger the earth's continued existence, only that eruptions ensue from time to time to allow these powers a brief outburst in order to give spiritual substances capable of development the opportunity to take shape above the earth and thus start their path of ascent. These forces unleash themselves with My approval, and

therefore their effects are intended in My eternal plan of Salvation.

The extent of an eruption will always be limited when it happens in accordance with My will, but human determination will never be able to stop it, human will can never be the cause of it since no-one is able to explore cause and effect. Yet in the last days people will presumptuously penetrate the earth deeply for reasons of research in order to release unfamiliar energies with the intention of utilizing them profitably, and won't consider the fact that they lack the knowledge and intellectual capacity for such experiments.

Hence they will have no respect for My works of creation, they will penetrate an area which is quite naturally closed to them and wanting to investigate it can be called an impertinence, from a purely earthly point of view. But from a spiritual point of view it will mean entering the territory of the lowest spirits whose banishment I recognised as necessary and which will then therefore be unlawfully invalidated by people, that is why revoking My eternal order will have unimaginable consequences.

Their manipulations will aim to utilise earth forces against which every resistance gives way, and which therefore can be used for all experiments. But people won't consider that these forces are capable of disintegrating **everything** within their reach .... they won't take account of their power against which human will and

intellect are futile. They will open locks which can never be closed again once they have been breached, for the area people want to enter is unfamiliar to them and they don't know its laws .... The earth's core cannot be researched in this way and every such attempt will backfire, not just on the researchers but on the whole human race .... For the limits I have set may not be exceeded according to My eternal order, which always favours progress but never destruction, and thus its infringement also has to have the opposite effect!

Satan himself will put these thoughts into the people of the last days, he will urge them to undertake this plan, for he knows that the destruction of creation will end the spirits' progress, which is his endeavour in his blind hatred against Me and all spirits striving towards Me. Yet even this plan, albeit evil, will be an inadvertent service .... he will fall in with My eternal plan of Salvation .... A new earth will arise where the development will continue, whereas everything satanic will once again be banished into its creations ....

Amen

## **Tolerance ....**

***B.D. 4733 from September 7th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

Tolerance on a spiritual level is inappropriate when it involves defending the truth, highlighting misguided teachings and combating lies. Then a straight path has to be followed, no concessions can be made against one's own conviction as soon as a human beings works on My behalf and thus is also instructed in the truth. Truth, however, is and will always remain the same, and if I educate a person Myself, then he will also be able to intellectually justify what he represents as truth to his fellow human beings. If then the other person's opinion does not agree with this explanation, then the advocate of My truth should not be tolerant and give in or accept the other person's opinion against his innermost conviction. Such tolerance would be the same as a denial of what the bearer of truth has received from Me. For he recognises the error and will not contradict it.

As soon as people's opinions differ they don't all have the truth, and only that person's opinion is correct, who has received the truth from Me Myself, who thus, after heartfelt prayer, is firmly convinced of his mental concept because he was taught by My spirit. This, understandably, presupposes that the person believes in Me, keeps My commandments and desires to know the truth. This person can consider himself to have been educated by Me and also be able to convincingly uphold his ideas to his fellow human beings. Anyone who is clearly recognisable as a bearer of truth, who receives his knowledge through the unusual process of the inner Word, can justifiably reject every other doctrine and

denounce it, for it is his duty to uphold the truth he has received from Me directly. Tolerance towards someone who thinks otherwise makes him unworthy of the immense gift of grace he receives from Me, for he does not value it if he does not support it.

Hence, a bearer of truth should never be accused that he is intolerant towards supporters of misguided teachings, for only truth will result in people's spiritual progress. Only truth will lead to Me, to eternal life in bliss, and only truth results in knowledge and thus means light for the being that is embodied as a human being on earth. Therefore it would be wrong to let a fellow human being live with misconceptions due to consideration in order to be regarded as tolerant. It would be an admission of personal uncertainty and doubt of the truth the person is expected to uphold. Furthermore, it would be half-hearted work for Me and My kingdom, which would entitle other people to doubt the mission as well as the source of the spiritual knowledge, which is not being as eagerly endorsed as a divine gift of grace should be endorsed. For this reason I choose strong-willed people as bearers of truth for Myself, who are also able to represent My Word intellectually and who neither fear the world nor My false servants. And I choose courageous fighters who will fight on My behalf with the sword of the tongue wherever the truth is being distorted ....

Amen

# Responsibility for accepting misguided teachings ...

***B.D. 4740 from September 16th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

It is very difficult for people to disassociate themselves from knowledge they were taught from an early age on and which they therefore do not want to renounce as misguided. They accepted this knowledge without thinking about it and since their education is not their fault they cannot, at first, be held responsible for accepting wrong doctrines. Nevertheless, as soon as they are able to use their intellect themselves it is their duty to scrutinise whether this spiritual knowledge is true. And they will have to be answerable as to whether they used their intellect as soon as they were able to do so. They should not accept all spiritual values as truth without scrutiny, neither can they justify themselves on the basis that they received this knowledge and are therefore innocent if they endorse it during their earthly life. They forget that they are responsible for their souls. They forget that I do not punish them but that they punish themselves, that is, that they remain in their state of imperfection, which can never result in their bliss ... but that I cannot release them from this state because their

redemption requires their active free will which they, however, did not use correctly or they would have used their intellect to examine these spiritual doctrines. They remained passive. To a certain extent they allowed themselves to be imposed by something which they could just as well have rejected if they had wanted to.

The fact that people are answerable for their souls means that they have to recognise their guilt, that they have to realise that their wretched position was their own fault and justly identify and admit their own neglect, thus they cannot unburden themselves at the expense of those who instructed them wrongly. Indeed, these teachers, too, will one day have to be accountable according to their guilt, yet someone who accepts misguided teachings is not exonerated from guilt, since I have given the human being intellect which he should use for the salvation of his soul first. Anyone who seriously wants the truth will make an effort and find it too. And every instruction offered to the person has to be reviewed if it claims to be true. Thus the human being is duty bound to compare the spiritual knowledge imparted to him with those teachings, and the right will shall also yield the right results. Yet the state of his soul after his death depends on the person's attitude towards the truth conveyed to him by My will .... full of light or darkness .... For only truth gives light to the soul, whereas error keeps the soul in darkness in which it had languished at the beginning of its earthly course of life as a human being but which it could have escaped had it used its will correctly ....

Amen

# **Reminder to work diligently for the kingdom of God ....**

***B.D. 4742 from September 18th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You should tirelessly work for Me and My kingdom .... then you will fulfil your earthly task in accordance with My will, and then you will also master your earthly life, you will not need to be afraid that you cannot meet your worldly responsibilities, for earthly life will merely be secondary when spiritual life becomes more important.

Work diligently for Me and My kingdom, that is, try to inform your fellow human beings about My activity with you, try to instruct them of the truth, and draw their attention to the end and the signs of the time .... Take an interest in your fellow human being's state of soul and explain to them how vain and insubstantial worldly goods are, how people merely strive for worthless commodities and give scarcely anything to their souls because they don't know about their earthly task. Tell everyone whom I send your way. You have been instructed of the truth by Me and thus are capable to work as representatives of the



truth amongst your fellow human beings. I have given you a rewarding task which will have beneficial results for you as well as for your fellow human beings, for the achievements won't just apply to earthly life but to eternity .... Fulfil this task with enthusiasm and do everything that furthers the distribution of the truth you have received from Me. Don't become indifferent in your work for Me and My kingdom but know that parched and starving souls everywhere are awaiting nourishment, which you should give to them with My gift from above.

And by remembering them you will be practising neighbourly love, for their souls require the sustenance from heaven, they need food and drink to strengthen themselves for their path of ascent. Work tirelessly, for time is short and requires diligent work in My vineyard, the souls suffer hardship, they are starved because too much attention is paid to the body's requirements and thus the soul's requirements are forgotten. Therefore help these souls, draw people's attention to the state of their souls, to a sudden end and their fate after death. Use every opportunity for spiritual conversations and thus motivate people to think about it. And then you will be doing the work for which I have employed you as labourers, and I will bless you, now and in eternity ....

Amen

**'I will destroy the wisdom**

# of the wise ....'

## ***B.D. 4744 from September 20th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

'I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring to nothing the understanding of the prudent ....' and will give true knowledge to those who have no earthly knowledge but are devoted to Me in love and faith .... And the world shall recognise that in this knowledge a power reveals Itself Which the world wants to deny. The worldly wise shall be taken aback, and I also call those people worldly wise, who have received their spiritual knowledge academically, who have acquired it intellectually, but have not asked Me Myself for it .... Worldly wise I also call those representatives of My teaching who, although they support it, lack sufficient faith to confidently defend My every Word and therefore do not allow the working of My spirit within them either ....

The knowledge they possess will not make them happy, but what I give to My children who desire to hear My Word due to their living faith will also give them great joy, since they recognise it as a gift of grace offered to them by My Fatherly love. Anyone who appears wise before the world and allows his intellect to speak, is and remains ignorant and I shall disregard him .... However, when a heart secretly admits My presence then I will be active and become evident through enlightening this

person's spirit, so that he becomes wise and prudent and capable of throwing light onto things worldly intellect and wisdom are unable to fathom. And I will always work unnoticed, although I will then make sure that even those, whose heart is still inclined towards the world, can also take notice of the truth.

For I want to draw their attention to the fact that they should not seek wisdom from the worldly wise, but that wisdom chooses to present itself in a modest apparel in its quest to contact people. Wisdom does not abide where there is pomp and splendour, for it is divine, it originates from Me and selects a worthy vessel, which is spiritually prepared and does not need worldly merits to be chosen by Me as a bearer of truth. The wisdom of the wise will not find the key to truth, the intellect of the prudent will not seek it in the belief to possess it already .... The key to wisdom, however, is and remains love .... which can ignite to a blaze in the heart of a simple, uneducated person, and such a heart will attract eternal truth which will then make itself audibly known in his heart and guide him into truth .... Then the person will recognise God, love Him with all his heart and erect an altar to Him, he will share his abundance of divine gifts with other people, he will convey profound wisdom and brightest knowledge to all those who are willing to accept it. And thus all who listen to Him will be wise, for they are taught by God Himself, they receive My sermon and will already be blessed on earth and afterwards in the spiritual realm ....

Amen

# Prayer in spirit and in truth ...

***B.D. 4746 from September 22nd 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

A heartfelt thought of Me, a short prayer sent up to Me in spirit and in truth, is pleasing to Me and will be granted, just as I will always draw close to those who communicate with Me in thought, for I feel in contact with them because they try to find Me in absolute truth and therefore I can also let Myself be found by them. Formal prayers, however, are not pleasing to Me because they kill the spirit, they become monotonous conversations I can never listen to, since only the lips speak to Me and not the heart, hence these words will not reach Me because they don't arise from the heart but are merely uttered by the intellect. Anyone who wants to be heard by Me need not voice any words, I know how he feels in his heart, what he thinks and feels, yet only his conscious direction of thoughts to Me makes Me inclined towards a person, who thus recognises his Father in Me and believes that I will help him. He will be helped ... whereas a prayer can last forever without being successful.

In that case it will be a lip-prayer which I condemn because it can never be heartfelt, because it is not a prayer in spirit and in truth but only a formality which lacks all inner feeling. Communal lip-prayers are an abomination to Me, they literally make it impossible to establish such heartfelt contact with Me since each person will, understandably, have different thoughts, just as each one has different problems which, however, are not touched upon, thus the prayer is everything else but a confidential dialogue with Me which I, however, require in order to be able to grant the petitions. For only the intimate dialogue with Me expresses a person's faith, the confidence of assured help, which is the prerequisite in order to be able to grant people the help. And therefore you should withdraw into your closet if you want to pray, you should withdraw within yourselves and allow for My presence with heartfelt thoughts which show your love for Me .... Then you will pray as is pleasing to Me and then your prayer will surely be granted ....

Amen

**Sign of the near end:  
spiritual decline ...  
Apparent state of peace ...**

## ***B.D. 4747 from September 25th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

A sure sign of the approaching end is the spiritual decline amongst people. Only rarely will you find people whose soul's spiritual development is most important. Time and again you will be able to notice that people's thinking and activity are purely determined by the earthly world, that their thoughts and intentions solely apply to material commodities and that they lack all desire for spiritual knowledge. And once you recognise this you will also have to admit that My intervention will be necessary, or you don't believe in Me and the correlation between Me and My living creations. But again I draw your attention to the fact that the philosophy of life will change sooner than you think .... The commotion of the world will even let My Own occasionally question the truth of the announcements; they certainly want to believe yet worldly people and their opinion make them waver. However, I will protect them from falling away from Me .... I will appear unexpectedly and provide the evidence of proof to those who are dear to Me due to their will but who are still weak of faith. But since the world has no connection with the spiritual kingdom, since the degeneration amongst people is becoming ever more evident and the small circle of My Own will very soon be isolated from the world and its attitude to life will only be met with ridicule and contempt, the worldly event will help to fortify the faith of My Own, while worldly people

will start to take notice if they, due to My love and grace, had been informed of My announcements of the near end through you, My servants.

I Myself will speak where your voice is being ignored. But you, who want to be My Own, continue to strengthen your faith ever more .... Withdraw from the world so that it cannot influence you; live quietly for yourselves and be of service to Me in Word and action; work in seclusion so that the world will not pursue you if it can be avoided. Time presses towards the end and every person's destiny is determined by his will. Don't deceive yourselves by the apparent state of peace, it is not a permanent condition but very soon will start to get cloudy and suddenly turn into a battle of immense importance .... Everything will be in uproar, the powers will fight each other earthly and spiritually and necessitate My intervention. Then a few people will still attain realisation and join the circle of My Own. And they all have My promise that I will help and protect them during the last days before the end. I will be with all who want to be with Me, and they will be aware of My presence and therefore be strong of faith, so that even in the fiercest battle they will persevere and remain faithful to Me until the end ....

Amen

## **Astrology ... Destiny in the**

# stars ....

## ***B.D. 4748 from September 27th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

Only what is relevant for the redemption of the spiritual substance, hence only what provides more or less detailed knowledge about My plan of Salvation and thereby also testifies to Me and My fundamental nature, should be regarded as given by My spirit. Knowledge outside this framework, which neither awakens in people the belief in My love, wisdom and omnipotence, nor promotes the individual's maturity of soul .... furthermore, knowledge which contradicts Christ's teaching such that it negates the human being's free will, which thus would leave the person at the mercy of his destiny without his own will .... finally, knowledge which believes that it can reveal a future veiled to people by My wisdom .... is not the working of the spirit and therefore not in accordance with My will. Rather, it is My adversary's means to divert people from true knowledge and to mislead them. People will never be able to ascertain or calculate how an individual person's destiny unfolds itself, all such claims are wrong conclusions or conjectures. They could certainly be coincidentally accurate but then never on account of calculations or influences from specific stars; instead a person's destiny always corresponds to My plan of eternity which is based on the human being's free will.



In the great space of creation myriad stars are indeed visible to the people of this earth, but these stars do not exert an influence on people, (28.09.1949) which can be understood by anyone who considers that countless stars are moving within their designated orbit, that this regularity has been recognised by My wisdom since the beginning of eternity to be good and right, that all stars support living beings for the purpose of higher development and that their destiny is also determined, but it will never be affected by other stars. The inhabitants of earth can only physically sense atmospheric currents which appear in the proximity of certain stars but they have no bearing on the destiny of an individual person.

The conformity to law in the entire universe, the eternal order which can be seen in My creation, is certainly sufficient evidence of a guiding power .... But the same order also takes place in the process of development of the beings, for whom creation as a whole came into existence in the first place .... The fact that these creations have a certain influence on the development of spiritual beings is correct, but only in as much as that they provide the latter with the opportunity for perpetual transformation and therefore gradual ascent. However, in the stage of free will people are confronted by events the way I, in My wisdom, deemed them to be beneficial for the being. The fact that all life on Earth takes place with a certain regularity causes people to come to wrong conclusions .... they interpreted this regularity in line with

their own ideas and concluded that they relate to the destiny of the human being. Yet these investigations do not correspond to the truth by any means and are not approved by Me either, for I will always accept the human being's free will, even though I have determined his fate since eternity ....

Amen

## **Worshipping the mother of God ....**

***B.D. 4752 from October 2nd 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

All your spiritual questions will be answered, as this will help to provide clarity where truth should be distinguished from error. However, you always have to meet the condition of being interested in the pure truth, for when you are governed by the desire to have an already existent point of view confirmed you are unable to receive pure truth. You have to request it and be willing to accept the right answer .... The mother of My earthly body was destined since eternity to be the childbearer of humanity's Saviour. She possessed a soul of light which incarnated on earth for this sublime mission, thus she was pure and perfect compared to her earthly

sisters. Nevertheless, she still had to experience an arduous life in order to attain supreme bliss in the spiritual kingdom, to become a true child of God, to achieve complete union with Me. By fulfilling her mission she had certainly earned the right to be regarded the holiest being in the spiritual kingdom, since due to her path of suffering on earth she had become an image of God. Her love for Me had placed her into a state of suffering which also spiritualised her body. And thus she was a shining example of a mother bearing profound sorrow over her child. However, the divine worship shown to her by people is not in accordance with My will. She certainly had been the mother of My earthly body but in the spiritual kingdom she is a being of light which, full of love and wisdom, wants to help you humans attain light and, as a result, beatitude.

Beatitude in the spiritual kingdom is only possible in unity with Me .... but a soul can only achieve this unity with Me through conscious aspiration and a heartfelt bond with Me. Thus I have to be the only worthwhile thought on the mind of someone who wants to achieve beatitude .... He has to try to find the bond with Me voluntarily, uninfluenced by spiritual powers, because .... were it allowed, every person would feel their influence, since their love for the people they want to help is immense. The soul deserted Me voluntarily, it has to return to Me voluntarily .... Any influence by the beings of light would be a restriction of free will. The act of free will is the will's voluntary inclination to turn to Me, which

expresses itself in the conscious association with Me, and this endeavour will be supported by the beings of light in every way. But the worship of any being of light is a wrongly directed will. The beings of light live in love for Me, they constantly honour and praise Me and never want to accept an honour by people for themselves, because they recognise in Me the Being which is most worthy of worship and in their humble love for Me reject any honour for themselves, as they feel that I alone deserve it. Anyone who is aware of the light beings' true relationship with Me, whose love for Me has kindled into brightest fire, will also understand the erroneous thoughts of people who show such worship for the mother of God, as takes place. They will understand that it cannot be in accordance with My will, because people effectively create a second God for themselves, a being to whom they show adoration and honour, which it does not want to accept, since the human being should only ever strive to establish the relationship with Me in order to achieve his goal while he is still on earth ....

Amen

**Predetermined earthly  
life ... Whims of destiny ...  
God's love ....**

## ***B.D. 4756 from October 8th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

Every earthly worry comes to nothing if you believe in Me. As soon as you acknowledge a Controller of earthly fate you must also be certain that this Controller knows all requirements and that He has taken them into account when He, in His wisdom, determined every person's earthly life. Hence, everything that comes upon the human being has its cause, its reason and its purpose. The purpose is always the attainment of psychological maturity which, however, can often proceed without opposition. Oppositions are all those disagreeable moments which the human being briefly describes as whims of destiny. Consequently, a person will also have to endure what he rationally condemns because it doesn't suit him. It is, however, necessary for a person's higher development and it will always go away again, it will effectively put itself right through My will, although the person is usually of the opinion that he has personally contributed towards removing that which seems unpleasant to him. Everything takes its course according to My eternal decision, and if you thus consider that every happening in your earthly life has been predetermined to the finest detail, that even your physical end has been planned from the start, you must realise that you cannot change anything and that therefore every worry is unnecessary, since everything will have to happen according to My will. And if you believe in My love and

wisdom you will also know that everything is good for you, because you, as My living creations, also possess My love and this love determined your course of life in order to teach you to become My true children. And so you need only hand yourselves over to Me, thus humbly endure whatever I send to you, then no worry will burden you, because I will take it from you when you no longer need it, and because nothing that comes upon you will last forever but will soon be resolved again. And if your suffering lasts longer, then it is necessary for your soul and it would only be detrimental for you if I removed your sorrow prematurely. Believe in Me and trust Me, and if you are burdened by a problem then confide it to Me .... My love can turn everything away from you and will indeed do so, because a father will always give to his child such that it will be happy. Yet then you must really come like children to the Father .... you must believe in Me and grant Me all your love .... Then the goal will have been reached on earth and you will neither require distress nor suffering in order for your souls to mature fully ....

Amen

**Body, soul and spirit ...**  
**Explanation ...**

## ***B.D. 4757 from October 9th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

People cannot understand the relationship between body, soul and spirit, which makes it difficult to explain to them the working of the spirit. The spirit is in opposition to the body, whereas the soul finds itself between both, thus it effectively has to side with either the body or the spirit but it can never pay attention to both. In the beginning of embodiment as a human being the soul is totally attached to the body. Hence it endeavours to fulfil the body's every desire, that is to say thought, feeling and will .... the human soul .... are wholly focussed on the body which, still consisting of matter itself, also seeks to unite with matter. Thus the person will long for material possessions because they epitomise the body's satisfaction. Therefore the spirit will not come into its own, the soul ignores the spirit's demands, the spirit cannot find acceptance because the body is still stronger and completely occupies the soul, thus dominating its thoughts and aspirations. However, the soul can also recognise the worthlessness of earthly things, it can consider its bodily wishes to be unimportant, it can demand more of earthly life than mere material goods .... then the spirit comes into its own .... Then it will express itself and be listened to by the soul. The soul will start to move in a different direction, it will no longer ask for the body but strive for spiritual values. It will accept being taught, that is, it shall willingly accept what the spirit

conveys. Indeed, it will feel happy and pay consistently less attention to the body, or it will try to incline the body to do what the spirit demands of the soul ... to renounce earthly matter in exchange for spiritual knowledge. Now the spirit will be victorious over the body. Both spirit and body try to win the soul for themselves. And as soon as the spirit has succeeded in displacing the desires of the body, it is the stronger ....

But what is meant by spirit? .... The spirit is the Divine in the human being; it is that which identifies the human being as God's living creation, the spirit is the bond which connects the human being to the eternal Father-Spirit. It is the human being's realisation that he will always be in contact with the Father of eternity. The human being only recognises himself as God's living creation when the spirit becomes active, until then he will merely be conscious of himself as a living being who wants whatever life has to offer. But once the human being recognises himself, the world will no longer mean anything to him. Then he will search for higher values, then his thoughts will be directed towards the spiritual kingdom, then he will try to make contact with the One Who gave him life, then his thoughts will be right and his wishes and actions in accordance with divine will. Then the spirit of God will be working within the person. The soul subsequently will give itself to the spirit to be guided and taught so that body, soul and spirit unite at last and seek unity with God, because the human being's spirit constantly strives towards the Father-Spirit to



Whom he is, and remains, inseparably joined for eternity ....

Amen

## **Re-incarnation ... Beings of light - Mission ...**

***B.D. 4758 from October 11th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

I will never let you fall prey to error if you want to know the truth. And where you lack the right knowledge, where you have the wrong idea, I will enlighten you Myself, because I do not want you to think wrongly. Although you only live for a short time on this earth as a human being, it is not too short to enable you to achieve beatitude. During your life on earth you are able to change your nature completely. You are able to entirely discard your selfish love, which was strongly developed in you at the start of your earthly life, and change it into unselfish love for other people, and thereby acquire a degree of maturity which will allow you to enter the spheres of light and thus be blissfully happy ....

Yet the degree of beatitude in the spiritual kingdom varies considerably, depending on the extent to which the soul's state is receptive to the rays of light which

affect it directly, which have their origin in Me and thus require My presence. Hence, it signifies unity with Me, and that can only happen with a being that has shaped itself into love. Therefore the degree of love also determines the degree of happiness .... The human being is certainly able to attain this degree of love while still on earth and depart from it as My true child. Then his fate will be infinite bliss.

But it is also possible for him not to achieve this perfection and yet shape his soul on earth through deeds of love such that it becomes receptive to light. In that case he will have passed the test of earthly life by having turned his will towards Me, and he will have proven it through labours of love. The kingdom of light will now accept his soul, which subsequently will be able to develop further. However, it will never be able to reach the degree that can be achieved on earth by a person who seriously strives for perfection. For his soul will be seized by Me and My emanation of light will find no resistance, because the soul became crystallised through love and thus My love is able to permeate it completely.

And now you will understand that this degree of beatitude requires the prerequisite of just one earthly life, or there would be less merit, thus the reward would also have to be reduced. You will understand that unification with Me has to take place voluntarily and with utmost effort on earth already, and that this bliss is My gift in return for absolute devotion to Me, which I will also reward with My undivided love. It therefore follows

that it would be an act of injustice on My part if I gave the same reward to souls who did not make use of their earthly life in the same way ....

Every human being has the same opportunities to achieve maturity. All means of help are at his disposal, he is able to request blessings, that is, utilise any amount of blessings, and with correct use of will every human being is able to reach the goal of becoming perfect, because he is only required to shape himself into love, and love can be practised by every person if he wants .... I truly do not expect anything unattainable from you humans, since the help of Jesus Christ is available to you after all, which so strengthens the right will that it can be put into practise. You humans could all become blissfully happy if only you wanted to .... Consequently, the right will has to be rewarded accordingly; the soul has to be rewarded differently in the spiritual kingdom than a soul who was negligent in its self-discipline during its earthly life, who did not take its endeavour for perfection seriously. A soul like that will have, understandably, attained a different degree of light, even though it can also be called blissful, because it has lifted itself out of darkness, out of the state of complete ignorance, because it will have become a recipient of light, albeit to a lesser degree ....

The soul in the spiritual kingdom is able to ascend to ever greater beatitude, for the constant emanations of light it receives will increase its degree of light. This explains why a re-incarnation on earth for the purpose of full maturity would be unnecessary as well as pointless, since

the soul's past memory has to be taken away and only free will would be decisive once again, which could just as well fail. In that case, the already achieved degree of light would be at risk; whereas in the spiritual kingdom the soul will keep what it has already achieved and is able to work with it most successfully. The return of a being of light to earth for the purpose of a mission is an act of utmost love and mercy, because every liberated soul finds life in the flesh intolerable once it has but a glimmer of knowledge.

A being which departs from earth so immaturely that it will find itself in utter darkness, will indeed stay close to earth, but it is usually unaware of its lost physical life. It has an immense craving for earthly possessions, yet to return a being like that to earth would truly be neither wise nor loving, for its will would never endeavour towards higher development, because the greed for matter needs to be overcome. This is far more difficult on earth than in the spiritual kingdom, where the being is able to recognise the insubstantiality of matter, and disassociation from it already signifies the beginning of its ascent. A being with a faint glimmer of awareness is extremely happy in its spiritual state and will never long for the restraint of earthly life again.

But to possess a faint glimmer of awareness means to possess a small amount of knowledge that corresponds to the truth, and this possession makes the being very happy already, because it is able to work with its spiritual wealth .... thus it is urged by love to share its possession

with needy souls.

However, every deed of love increases the influx of light, it increases knowledge and intensifies beatitude. Such a being will never surrender its free spiritual state in order to return to earth because it realises that it is able to ascend in the spiritual kingdom and that its work is needed ....

When, by comparison, a being of light incarnates on earth, it is an act of utmost love and mercy, which already needs a high degree of love, for it involves helping misguided people living in utter darkness who require exceptional help so as not to descend into the abyss. Such an incarnation can result in the childship to God .... the highest degree of perfection which, however, can only be gained in earthly life; for the soul has to take the same path in the flesh with all temptations by the powers of darkness. It enjoys no privileges as a result of its former maturity, merely a total descent into the abyss is impossible since it is protected by spiritually mature souls who will indeed help but not force its will. As a human being it has to struggle and fight and has no past memory. It has to live a life of love in order to then serve its fellow human beings as a guide. This soul's earthly fate will be far more difficult yet it will reach the goal, because its earthly progress was motivated by love, and love is strength which conquers everything, which achieves everything. And since it signifies the unification with Eternal Love Itself it will also always find support from Me ....

Amen

# **Collapse of ecclesiastical organisations ... True church ...**

***B.D. 4768 from October 28th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The last days will be preceded by a time when My Word and everything referring to Me as Creator and Provider will come under attack. People will intend to destroy the faith in a Deity, which thus will signify an open battle against everything of a spiritual nature. Ecclesiastical organisations and their supporters will be affected most, because measures will be taken against every externally identifiable representative of My kingdom and My teaching. As a result, I will awaken messengers of My Word outside of these organisations, who are called by Me to spread My teaching, for they are in possession of the full truth and therefore also suitable teachers for their fellow human beings in the last days. For it will be necessary during the last days before the end to strengthen people's faith or to awaken it, because only then will they start to think about the reliability of teachings which were passed down to them through

tradition. And they will realise that I Am not with those who only associate with Me through the church, who believe themselves privileged due to their affiliation to a particular church ....

Indeed, I love each one of My children, but if a child does not fulfil the Father's will by not using its bestowed gift of intellect and thereby activates its intellect and heart in order to know when it is doing My will, to recognise when false prophets pretend to be My messengers, the child will distance itself from Me and only find its way back to Me with difficulty. They, too, constantly receive My Word from Me, I constantly approach them by trying to give them the information directly, that is, by sending them My messengers to enlighten them, yet they do not accept instructions and can therefore no longer be excused if they stray onto a wrong path. However, once people lose their church due to My adversary's actions, only people who are truly devout and so intimately connected to Me that I can always be close to them, will not falter. They will not be affected by the harsh measures and brutal laws, for they know where to find the true church of Christ and will merely defend My Word with ever increasing eagerness, even though they will not be safe from the pursuits of those who fight against everything that is related to faith.

All of you, however, will still have to make your decision, and only your inner conviction that you know the truth, which is proven to you by the Word I conveyed to you Myself, will then give you the strength to offer resistance.

Then you, and all those who listen to you and want to serve Me, will use all their power of persuasion, and nothing will disturb them, for then they will know that they only need to wait a short time until they will be happy. They will know that everything external can certainly waver but not the church which Jesus Christ founded on earth .... the true church, which cannot be overcome by the gates of hell. Nevertheless, untold people will lose their faith, they will find it incomprehensible that I will not protect the church they regard as 'founded by God', and they do not call themselves to account as to whether or not they are members of the church founded by Me, because they are not allowed to think about it.

And thus, something that people regard as invincible will fall apart. It will collapse like a house of cards because it is a human structure that cannot last. Yet My Own will not be overcome, they will have the strength of faith that offers resistance because it finds My support. They will receive the strength from Me because they firmly believe in Me and therefore belong to My church which cannot be overpowered by the gates of hell. However, it will be a difficult time to which I will refer again and again in order to remind you, who belong to Me, to prepare yourselves, to constantly accept strength by receiving My Word and through deeds of love .... The time of battle is close at hand and then you must be forearmed .... you have to stand firm when those who hold on to an external belief fail, who deem themselves living in truth without



ever contemplating what they are expected to believe. They will waver and fall away, but you should stand firm and provide the evidence that an inner, living relationship also results in a living faith which will provide you with the strength to endure to the end ....

Amen

## **Reformers ....**

***B.D. 4773 from November 5th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

There have always been people who desired truth and were close to Me in profound love, who very soon realised that the pure teaching which originated from Me has been spoilt, because those who wanted the truth also recognised the error and digression from the pure truth. A person who loves Me knows that My Word is divine but he also recognises all misguided teaching as human work because love for Me and desire for truth sharpen his intellect and perception. And therefore error has constantly been fought against, i.e. time and again human beings have tried to correct what was wrong and consequently appeared as reformers, being met with hostility by those who could not detach themselves from error and defended it as God's Word. And I was always with them in as much as that I joined them in the fight

against error, thus I Myself spoke through these humans to everyone who listened to them. And there were always people who avidly absorbed what the former conveyed to them, who acknowledged and eagerly supported it themselves.

Thus every reformer found his followers which resulted in the 'division of the church ...' i.e. the church which claimed to have been founded by Me experienced frequent changes because it insisted on holding on to doctrines which were recognised to be wrong and its parting members followed their own school of thought by forming another church, which again claimed to be My church. The founders of this church were indeed enlightened by My spirit since they looked for the truth for love of Me. However, their followers did not always seek or require the truth, instead their dislike of the first church made them follow the second. And now it is the same again: Only the human being who seriously seeks and requires the truth will find it, for I will reveal Myself to him and he will always know of My teaching which I preached to people during the time of My earthly life. My spirit will always enlighten people who, in their desire for pure truth, pray for the enlightenment of spirit ....

Amen

## **Significance of the era ....**

# Christ's embodiment on earth ....

***B.D. 4774 from November 6th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

A highly significant era, which had started after the Flood and is effectively unique, is now coming to an end. For God Himself descended to earth during this era to show people a safe path, because they were failing, because they were no longer aware of the significance of their earthly progress as human beings and had made pointless what could have been extremely successful .... because they did not utilise their earthly life for their souls' higher development. God embodied Himself as a human being on earth during this time; He took on flesh and thus lived as a human being amongst people. He accomplished what people so far had been unable to achieve, He detached Himself from human nature and voluntarily strove towards God. It is wrong to assume that the Divine in the man Jesus protected Him from human failings and human emotions; on the contrary, He had to resist them particularly vehemently and yet was victorious, because love gave Him strength and because His will was exceptionally strong through love.

Hence, he provided humanity with the evidence that it is possible to develop oneself through love into a God-like

being, which is every human being's task and therefore the meaning and purpose of earthly life itself. He provided the evidence as a human being and the Deity united Himself with Him, because Jesus, the man, had shaped Himself into love. This act, therefore, took place in accordance with divine resolution during this era, and the entire universe participated in it .... All human beings before and after God's human manifestation on this earth share the blessings of the act of Salvation, which was accomplished by the human being Jesus on behalf of all beings in eternity. And yet, even this era will now come to an end, because humanity completely ignores Christ's act of Salvation and therefore does not apply for help in order to fulfil the purpose of earthly life. There is no other option for this human race since they reject the best way, that is, they ignore it. Thus an extremely important era will come to an end and yet its significance is not recognised.

Nevertheless, the act of Salvation remains effective, likewise, the blessings of the act of Salvation will not ever become ineffective; Christ's teaching, the pure Word of God, will be everlasting and taken across into the new age, even though the old earth will disintegrate, in as much as the entire earth's surface will be transformed and none of the creations on the old earth will remain. Jesus Christ, the Son of God and Redeemer of the world, will remain the epitome of spiritual development, His divine Word will then also be taught again. It will be made accessible to the people of the new earth through

personal contact with the spiritual world of light, as well as with God Himself, Who will stay as Father amongst his children who will have taken the path of Christ and thereby have also changed themselves into love. God, the Eternal Love, will interact with them like a father with his children. And these human beings of the new earth had their beatitude purchased by Jesus Christ through His blood, through His death on the cross ....

Amen

# **Voice of the spirit is truth ... Jesus Christ's teaching ... Inner voice ...**

***B.D. 4775 from November 7th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

What you are told by the voice of the spirit has to be acknowledged as spiritual truth, for the spirit does not err but, as part of God, knows everything and also informs the soul of what it needs to know. Therefore, if you let the voice of the spirit speak in you, you will hear God Himself, albeit always providing that you desire to hear God. Only your desire for God decides whether you may hear His voice. God, however, loves His children, and anyone who longs for Him is His child, thus He will also communicate

with those who want to hear Him. Therefore a person, who is serious about receiving the truth, will truly not ask God in vain .... God will reveal Himself to him, but He will do so in different ways because people often lack the knowledge and faith that God Himself will speak to people. Consequently, they do not listen carefully to His voice within, and thus God will bring His Word in other ways to them so that the person may partake of the truth, which is always upheld in His Word. But only in His Word should you humans search for truth.

Take notice of what Jesus taught during the time of His earthly life and accept it as God's Word, for the voice of God spoke through Jesus, the spirit of God was working through Him, and therefore everything He taught was purest truth. Hence you should always keep to His sacred Word; you should accept it in your heart as God's Word through which He wants to guide you into truth, if you sincerely appeal to Him for truth. He will give it to you, He will always convey it to you in the manner you are receptive to .... yet you will also always be able to listen inwardly for the divine voice, and if you practise this in the firm belief that He will reveal Himself to you as His children, you will soon hear His tender and soft voice inside yourselves. You will catch yourselves holding quiet conversations with your Heavenly Father, and then you should regard it as His Word, as His voice, which speaks to you Words of love and wisdom. And you may always believe these Words, since the will and desire for truth and the conscious endeavour for God also ensure the

working of His spirit, and you will receive the truth from God Himself, Who is eternal truth ....

Amen

# **New banishment of the spirits ... Salvation in one era ...**

***B.D. 4777 from November 10th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

The most severe punishment for any spiritual being that has already lived embodied as a human being on earth, is to be placed into hardest matter. Countless creations are proof that untold beings have to start their process of development again. As long as there are spirits in need of development, material creations will also exist to serve as carriers for the spiritual substance and, due to their usefulness and different external forms, depending on their shape and more or less hard substance, will enable it to develop. As long as these creations do not cease to exist the spirit is not yet released either.

It is possible for the spirit to evolve from hardest matter to a human being in the course of one period of Salvation. This opportunity is available .... But it requires the

surrender of resistance within a specific length of time, which is just as possible but very often fails due to the spiritual substances' obstinacy which is so God-opposing at first, that an eternity can pass until its resistance is broken or has lessened. And this resistance is demonstrated by creations which, to the human eye, appear to remain unchanged, often throughout an infinitely long time .... creations, which effectively form the earth's crust, which have to be forcefully dissolved through divine will if the spirits are to be provided with an opportunity for higher development. Consequently, one period of Salvation does not suffice for this spiritual substance.

Nevertheless, at the end of this era it can sense the turmoil in the universe and then will surge towards a new transformation of its own accord. The resistance to God will decrease because it senses God's enormous strength and might, and God will take its needs into account and at the end of an era will dissolve all creations. This signifies a turning point for the spiritual substances which had been bound in inactivity within the earth through an eternity. The spiritual substance will now be willing to be of service and will subsequently be placed into an external form which, at first, will only permit minimal activity. Thus the process of development above earth begins and will, with certainty, also lead to the embodiment as a human being, albeit only after a long period of time.

This is an additional explanation about the forthcoming



final destruction of earth which is part of the eternal plan of Salvation, and even though many people's lives will fall victim to it, it will nevertheless be a release for the spiritual substance which ardently awaits its new transformation ....

Amen

## **Reunion in the beyond in a mature state ...**

***B.D. 4781 from November 14th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

Souls in the spiritual kingdom recognise each other when they have the same degree of maturity and at a certain degree of maturity are receptive to light, which thus gives the ability of spiritual vision; whereas souls in darkness are unable to recognise each other, although they had been associated on earth. In that case they are in fact able to perceive beings and interact with them but identification is out of the question, for they no longer have physical characteristics, and spiritual vision requires a certain degree of maturity. But an enlightened soul is able to locate and approach a soul it had known on earth, it just will not be recognised by the latter. For this reason enlightened souls are able to help, but under cover, so

that their emanation of light will not forcefully influence the imperfect beings. Therefore, souls having departed from earth in an immature state will meet and be approached by helpful souls in the spiritual kingdom because they had been connected by love when they were still on earth. Nevertheless, the soul has to be voluntarily receptive to their instructions and advice. It can be guided to the right path, but then it will have to walk it by itself ....

Whereas two souls with the degree of maturity that renders both receptive to light, even though of different intensity, have the ability of spiritual vision and will recognise each other with indescribable joy. They will then join to work together, complementing and teaching each other and always communicating with love, which delights the soul immensely. Thus there is a definite reunion in the spiritual kingdom, but it can take considerable time until a soul has entered the spheres of light and only then will it meet its loved-ones again, realising that they had often already been close as its advisor and guide on the path of ascent. The bliss of meeting again is indescribable and compensates for much suffering that the souls had to endure in the beyond before they came to the light. But with the help of a light-soul's love the goal will definitely be reached, for love is the strongest power that can still help the unredeemed, which will also ensure its entrance into the spiritual kingdom, into the kingdom of light and bliss ....

Amen

# The Lord's visible appearance ...

***B.D. 4783 from November 19th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

I want to give those of you who are My Own a sign before I intervene in world events for the sake of saving erring souls. I want to provide you with the evidence that all My announcements will come true, and I want to reveal Myself to each one of you in a different way.

Nevertheless, a vigilant person will know that it is I Who approaches him, even though I choose a form for Myself which adapts itself to its environment, which will not give the impression of being unusual. I want to come to everyone who wants to be of service to Me and ensures the distribution of My Word. I personally want to come to you in order to strengthen your faith, so that you can endure the following events calmly and collectedly and will be able to assist your fellow human beings. For you, My servants, must remain calm and level-headed in the general turmoil in order to provide consolation and help where the adversity is great and help is needed. Anyone who recognises Me straight away will feel blissfully happy in My presence and accept every Word from Me as a gift of boundless love, and his heart will equally come

aglow with love, My strength will flow into him so that he could accomplish anything if he wanted to. However, not everyone will recognise Me straight away, yet some will sense that a special person is speaking to them whose Words they accept as absolute truth. And only in the end will they recognise Me in a flash and cheer and, if I have left them, glorify Me as I will nevertheless remain as an indelible image in the heart of the one I delight with My presence. Thus they will find Me in their heart again even when I Am no longer physically visible to them, so that they will constantly be able to draw strength from it and diligently accomplish the work for My kingdom after I have spoken from above which will result in acute adversity for people. Then much work will be in store for My Own and I Myself will help them, I Myself will speak through My Own to all those who want to hear Me and give credence to the Words of My Own. I will speak to them, and you will testify to Me, you will mention My appearance and with lively Words express what you feel for Me in your heart.

You will win many over, since in view of the great adversity people will be grateful for every explanation, consolation and help. You will work for Me and My kingdom because you feel impelled by Me, Who dwells in your heart and Whom you will never lose again once you have seen Him. I will never ever let go of that which has become My Own, this is why I will come to My Own during the last days before the end, and they will recognise Me because love will tell them who I Am. And their bliss will

accord to their degree of love when they behold Me. Anyone who looks into My eyes will be overcome by an incomparable sensation of bliss, so that he will recognise more than a mere person in Me. Admittedly, someone who is weak in faith and love and nevertheless wants to strive towards Me, will not instantly recognise Me, yet My Words will touch his heart and kindle the fire of love in him. Then he will recognise Me, sometimes only after I have left him and am no longer physically close to him. I Am among you as a human being, yet I only choose a cover for Myself so that you can see Me and dissolve it just as quickly again in order to be invisible to you. And thus I want to give strength to all of you, so that you will remain faithful to Me and persevere until the end. It will necessitate immense strength, which you will be unable to muster by yourselves. However, I know My Own and will no longer leave them to My adversary. Therefore, have faith and always expect My help. The greater the adversary is, the closer I will be to you, and you will behold Me physically. But then you will know that the hour is near when I will reveal Myself to all those who do not want to believe and are unaware of the approaching end. Then the time I allocated for people's redemption will soon have run out .... and be followed by the day of the end and with it the last Judgment, as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# There is only one truth ... Feeling of heart ...

***B.D. 4786 from November 23rd 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

You are certainly free to join any school of thought, yet you must always remember that there is only **one** truth, that, because different schools of thought also teach different doctrines, only **one** can be true, therefore an examination should never be avoided, which anyone can carry out if he earnestly wants to. Truth is guaranteed where divine revelations are conveyed to earth; therefore they can always be used for comparison. And truth only exists where it agrees with the teachings of the divinely imparted Word. However, if a direct revelation is not available for comparison, then it is absolutely essential to appeal to God for assistance, in which case the human being will surely make the right decision, that is, he will either decide or reject what he is duty bound to believe by a school of thought .... Sincere desire to know the truth and a prayer to God in spirit and in truth assures him that he will correctly recognise what is truth and what is error. And his heart will either encourage or warn him against joining a school of thought, but he must also pay attention to his feeling and not act **against** it. No spiritual organisation on earth is devoid of error, because the pure truth, which originally motivated the founder to advocate

it and to win fellow human beings over, will be changed by people time and again. This is why every seeker in all schools of thought will experience doubts, and for good reason, so that he will pursue the truth himself, and, through earnest deliberation and in connection with God through prayer and kind-hearted activity, awaken the spirit in him, which will then instruct him truthfully and guide him into true knowledge. A person can therefore find the truth in any spiritual movement providing he genuinely wants it. A blind person needs to entrust himself to someone sighted, and since only God can see they must be a spiritually awakened leader instructed by God, who can offer true support to the blind, who will guide him and also help him gain his vision if it is wanted by the blind himself. However, a blind leader will not be very beneficial; he will also lead everyone entrusted to him astray as long as he has not gained the ability to see of his own will. But a person who has not drawn his wisdom from divine revelations is a blind leader ... a blind leader is someone who has received his knowledge from likewise poorly sighted people again and thereby did not become enlightened but travels his path in the same darkness as before. God takes care of everyone who desires truth. Lack of knowledge, error and a dark spiritual state can only be found where the desire for truth does not exist because this is the prerequisite for God, as the Giver of truth and as the eternal Truth Himself, revealing Himself to a person, for anyone who desires it will be offered the truth ...

Amen

# **Leaders' and teachers' way of life is decisive for truth ....**

***B.D. 4794 from December 8th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

It is of utmost importance for you humans to be informed of the truth and that you therefore join a school of thought which upholds the truth, whose leaders and teachers are educated by God and thus enable the working of the spirit within themselves. And by the way of life of those who claim to be the representatives of the truth from God you will always be able to recognise the degree of truth, and thus you will at all times know how much value can be ascribed to their teachings. Therefore you should first pay attention to the attitude the leaders and teachers of a school of thought have towards the divine commandments, towards the commandment of love for God and their neighbour. Don't let their speeches alone deceive you, whether they put into practise what they teach is the only crucial factor and places people into the service of God. For a way of life according to God's will makes the human being an aspirant for the



spiritual kingdom and therefore he will think correctly, for a person who fulfils God's commandments recognises the truth and his power of judgment is considerably enhanced through the enlightenment of his spirit, which becomes effective as a result of his loving activity. A person whose way of life corresponds to God's will can always be believed, and if he then endorses a specific school of thought he will also work for God and His kingdom, because God will never let a person become guilty of a lie if he strives towards Him and wants to advocate the truth.

The human being's will always has priority, and accordingly God will take care of him or He will turn away from him. The right will, however, is full of humility and obedience towards God; hence he will never try to stand out, that is, he will not want to achieve earthly advantages or honour and fame, no reputation or high office, he will only quietly and modestly serve God and for the sake of truth endorse the truth because he feels that only truth leads to God and due to his love for his fellow human beings he would like to lead them to God as well. The teachers themselves have to be educated by God .... Yet only love will gain them this extraordinary privilege, and therefore a person has to have love if his spiritual knowledge is to be acknowledged as truth, as directly received knowledge from God. Consequently, where you humans cannot detect love in a servant of God you should also reject his spiritual information, for it is not from above, it is Satan's work of deception who, under

cover of piety, tries to spread error and will always find good ground where love is missing. Test it and appeal to God for help to make the right judgment, yet do not accept without scrutiny if you don't have the guarantee that the Word of God is imparted to you directly from above. Test all things you are offered, by appealing to God, and keep what is good .... This is God's will so that His spirit shall become active in you ....

Amen

# **Blissful condition of mature souls and the state of imperfection in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 4801 from December 24th 1949, taken from Book No. 54***

Blissful conditions have been prepared for you in My Father's house. There you will find everything that gives you joy when your soul has become free from all earthly desires and ready for the spiritual kingdom. But you can only understand these blissful conditions, the joys for your pure, spiritualised soul, when you already strive for spiritual values on earth, when the earth and its

possessions cannot attract you anymore. They are spiritual pleasures which give the soul unspeakable delight. They are pleasures which touch the feelings of the soul like earthly pleasures touch the body, bringing the soul great happiness because it no longer has any earthly desires. Like on earth, the soul will also experience beauty in the beyond and, like on earth, it will also experience feelings of happiness but far more profoundly. It will consistently long to increase its spiritual riches and this longing will indeed be granted. It can see and hear indescribable creations and will continually draw wisdom and strength from it .... It will move in the most delightful surroundings for which there is no earthly comparison because earthly creations are poor and barren in contrast, and therefore the human being lacks the imagination for the wonders of divine love which the Father allows His children to see. And since every being is in contact with like-minded souls the bliss will increase considerably and the light will become steadily brighter.

On the other hand, the state of the imperfect beings in the beyond can be described because it does not differ much from that on earth so that the souls still believe that they are living on earth, and this for a long time. Just as people on earth live for material things and cannot understand how spiritually aspiring human beings can withdraw from the world and still be happy, they also live in the spiritual world with the same desire for material things which will be granted to them but in a way that the

achievement of their wishes cannot make them happy until, after a long time, they have become aware of the worthlessness of material things and begin to detach themselves from them. But the spiritual kingdom of light with its inhabitants will be closed to these beings .... It is another world of which they will have no understanding as yet nor could they exist there because the abundance of light would consume them. But disguised beings of light are always amongst them, who try to teach them and attempt to direct their will to liberate themselves from earthly lusts and to help them strive for something higher so that they also can enter, often after a long time, the kingdom of light. Souls with the same degree of imperfection can enter the beyond yet will need different lengths of time to mature fully .... it all depends on their hearts' ability to love, which, sometimes will change faster in the spiritual kingdom than on earth, but they can also take a very long time to overcome their errors and bad habits. However, these immature souls are always faced with known concepts, while in the kingdom of light the soul will meet completely unfamiliar conditions where seeing and hearing result in blissful happiness and the wonders never end. Herein is the promise of Jesus fulfilled: 'Eye has not seen and ear has not heard what He has prepared for those that love Him' ....

Amen

# Christ's descent to earth and reason ....

***B.D. 4802 from December 24th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

My descent to earth was necessary because people, My living creations, suffered immense hardship due to their own fault. However, My Fatherly love did not want to let them perish. Besides, My adversary revolted against Me insofar as that he totally controlled My creations, which his will certainly created but nevertheless with My strength, and was effectively denying them freedom of will by weakening My living creations such that they were no longer able to use their free will correctly, that is, in a way that was pleasing to Me. And thus I wanted to help My weak creatures in their desperate need .... This hardship not only applied to their earthly life, this hardship would last forever had I not come to help them. I felt pity for My living creations although they had turned away from Me of their own free will .... However, the fact that their will was so exceedingly weak as to be controlled by My adversary was merely the result of their lack of love .... Love is strength and fortifies the will to resist the assaults by the enemy of the soul. Wherever love exists there is no danger of falling prey to the adversary because the presence of love demonstrates My presence too. But at the time of My coming into the

world people were entirely without love .... apart from a few to whom I came in order to help them in particular, so that their utterly heartless surrounding would not lead to their ruin. I descended to these few because they were under great pressure and called upon Me in their distress. Yet even their faith had become weak, no-one established the connection with their Creator and Father of eternity such that I was able to express Myself audibly to him. Where love did not exist, faith was missing and My opponent reaped a great harvest, for his activity even robbed the few of their faith in Me, in My love, wisdom and might .... And thus I Myself came into the world .... A human body received Me because I wanted to help people as a human being in order to provide them with the evidence **that** a person is able to approach and unite with Me if he strengthens his will through love and then deliberately fights the enemy of his soul, My adversary. My body was purely human but it was inhabited by a soul of light which, however, initially had no past memory at all until the unification with Me through love had taken place. Only then did the soul recognise itself and its mission. Jesus, the man, had united with Me through love, for love is strength, it is My fundamental substance, it is the Divine which permeates everything, hence it also shaped the human being Jesus into a divine Being Which was bound to be full of strength, might and wisdom.

Thus I entered the human form after it had shaped itself through love into an abode for the Eternal Deity. You humans will find it difficult to understand this enigma as

long as you still lack love, yet where love exists there is also light .... that is where I Myself can work and enlighten your spirit .... I came to My Own and they did not know Me .... However, I wanted to reveal Myself to them and therefore had to enlighten them as to **why** they were in the dark, **why** they didn't recognise Me and why they were in great danger. And therefore I instructed people through the man Jesus. I brought them My Word which they themselves were no longer able to hear but which was heard by the human being Jesus, since due to His love He allowed Me to be present in Him .... For My presence means that you humans can hear My voice. Hence, you can only hear Me if you change your nature through love, if your love allows for My presence ....

If love is within you, you are strong and no longer need to fear My adversary who intends to ruin you. I had to come down to Earth because you lacked this knowledge and I wanted to inform you of it again. And this is why I come to My Own again, for once again there is immense hardship, once again people don't recognise Me, My adversary is firmly in control of them again and only a few call upon Me for help. And I grant their prayer and Am in the midst of those who want to be My Own. And I bestow My Word upon them .... except that I Am not physically amongst them but Am with them in spirit, as I have promised. However, I will return to Earth and fetch My Own into My kingdom .... For the adversary's activity is getting out of hand, thus the time has come for him to be bound again, the time has come for the goats to be separated from the

sheep .... It is the time of the end, of which it is written that I will come in the clouds to judge the living and the dead. Yet I will be present to anyone who remains in love, he will not need to be afraid of the last Judgment, I will be His Redeemer again from greatest adversity, the Saviour, Who will come from above when Satan believes that he has won his game .... And he will be bound in chains so that peace shall come upon those people who are of good will ....

Amen

## **Incarnation of many light souls during the last days ....**

***B.D. 4803 from December 24th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 54***

The earthly world also helps the beings of light to reach perfection. For it offers the most opportunities for attaining childship to God, which even a being of light can only achieve by means of living in the flesh on this earth. In that case, however, their life on earth as a human being does not require the higher development in a state of compulsion, instead the enlightened soul can directly engender itself in the flesh in order to then pass



its decision of free will, for which it will often be sorely tested. Time and again beings of light will descend to Earth, and many such incarnations will be especially granted during the last days before the end, since precisely this difficult lifetime on earth guarantees the highest degree of maturity, whereas erring people will also require spiritual leaders, which only people embodied by beings of light can become. Jesus Christ, too, was such a soul of light which accepted a great and sacred mission that made greatest demands on a human being's will. His soul was certainly perfect when it entered this earth; nevertheless, this degree of light had no influence on the earthly life of Jesus the man, or it would have devalued His mission, the redemption of humanity. The conditions placed upon the human being as such were extremely difficult .... Like every other human being he had to overcome the body's wishes and cravings, which were extremely strongly developed in Him and thus required extreme self-control and abstinence. His soul had to resist immense temptations, as a human being Jesus had to fight a constant battle against Himself during His younger years. And therefore His love, gentleness and patience had to be valued far more than those of a gentle and passionless person who does not need to overcome anything because little or nothing attracts him. The soul of light knew its mission from the start and travelled its earthly path when humanity's hardship necessitated it ....

Thus Jesus came into the world at a time when people's

carnal sensuality had become rife and people needed to be given an example that and how it would be possible to exercise control over their carnal desires. Everything, even the most difficult, is possible with the strength of love .... Nothing exists which a human being who lives a life of love cannot overcome. Love itself is strength and thus can shape the free will to become incredibly strong so that everything is possible for a person. If, therefore, an extraordinary number of light beings are incarnated on earth during the time of the end, then they will all be given a mission which requires love and willpower. However, all these souls have the same in common: to spread the divine Word amongst people. For knowledgeable souls open up the knowledge to them on earth again, that is, it is brought back into their memory again, and they feel urged to pass the knowledge on to their fellow human beings who live in spiritual darkness. And thus the characteristic of those from above rests in the fact that they eagerly participate in the distribution of the divine Word, but, please note .... of the Word which has originated from the spiritual kingdom .... The teaching of love which Jesus Christ proclaimed on Earth was God's Word spoken through Jesus and will remain it for all eternity. And this teaching of love should and must always be mentioned where a person wants to stand up for God. Thus embodied souls of light only find earthly happiness by spreading this divine teaching of love, and they are God's true representatives on earth. Whatever is taught outside of **this teaching** is human work. No-one who supports this originates from the kingdom of light,

instead his home is in the realm of darkness. And the souls of light will always desire to take action against such teachings which, in the last days, will happen very often ....

Amen

**Gulf and bridge ...**

**Renewed banishment ...**

**Circuit of flow of love ...**

***B.D. 4807 from December 30th 1949,  
taken from Book No. 55***

The gulf between humanity and Me grows deeper and deeper, for the number of those who believe in Me with conviction continues to fall. The strength of My representatives on Earth gets constantly weaker, they certainly speak in My name yet are not the distributors of the pure truth. Ever more people leave the faith and turn to the one who is My adversary .... they turn to the world which is his kingdom and thereby increase the distance from Me which they should reduce during their earthly life. They move away from Me and broaden the gulf that separates them from Me. Yet this only works up to a point, for once the limit has been exceeded when the strength of My love no longer affects them, the spiritual substance

within people hardens again into solid matter .... As long as the earth still exists the defected people will remain within the circuit of My flow of love, yet leaving it signifies the disintegration of the forms which shelter the spiritual substances .... it signifies the death of people as well as of animals, it signifies a dissolution of creation and a restoration of the same.

No being can distance itself from Me with impunity, for it will lose its life if it loses Me. And so, anyone who wants to stay alive and does not want to lose his life ever again must strive towards Me and look for Me, he must endeavour to reach Me and thus lessen the gulf between us. However, without faith in Me as Father and Creator of eternity there is no path across this gulf, for the bridge leading to Me is invisible .... Only faith makes the bridge apparent, for faith causes people to call upon Me. Faith in Me leads to prayer, which is the safest bridge to Me. Untold people go past this bridge and even those who should be their leaders often don't find the bridge themselves because their words are lifeless, because the paths they take are unsuitable to serve as a bridge, paths, which time and again lead back to the beginning; because their words of prayer do not emerge from their heart and therefore do not reach My ear either, thus they do not use the bridge which is the only path that leads across the gulf to Me. Sooner or later, however, even this bridge will not exist anymore, for once My Own have come across it will be too late for the others, because then every path will be cut off and there will be no more

escape for those left behind; then they will be devoured by the abyss, the earth will admit them again and everything will become solidified and become matter once more, because it didn't strive to ascend but chose to reach the abyss ....

Amen

## **Conditions in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 4820 from January 19th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Once you have walked through the gate of death you will no longer feel your earthly shell but will be able to move about easily and freely, you will not be prevented from going wherever you want, you will not be forced in any way. And yet, this state can be painful for you too, namely, when you find yourselves in darkness, when there is no light and you are unable to see anything. This spiritual blindness is coupled with complete helplessness and a weakness of will which is unable to shake off its lethargy. Hence you will not be influenced by anything externally perceptible, but there can still be a limitation within yourselves which will prevent you from living, that is to say, from actively working in accordance with God's will, which all light-receptive souls may do when they leave earth, and who will therefore be placed into a

kingdom where they may behold ever increasing beauty.

To dwell in this magnificent kingdom is immensely blissful for the souls of the dead, for they will leave all worldliness, difficulty, misery and imperfection behind and will be united by love with spiritual beings who are full of love, wisdom and strength. And the soul will take part in this now, ever new discoveries will enchant its spiritual senses, it will behold creations of exceptionally marvellous shapes which cannot be compared to earthly creations. Furthermore, it will no longer be subject to time and space, it will be able to stay wherever it wants and can move into the past as well as into the future. Once the soul has reached perfection, that is, once it has entered the kingdom of light, it is no longer bound to the law of space and time.

Yet even there the degrees of light differ, which stimulate ever greater aspiration and also unite the beings to shape and work with combined strength. The activity in love is a supreme law in this kingdom as well, for this reason the beings of light help each other in perfect harmony, giving happiness and receiving it in turn. Their constant effort, however, concerns the souls in darkness, whom they know to suffer utmost hardship and whom they want to help through teaching.

There is no impulse of life in areas of spiritual darkness, the beings are totally apathetic if they are not burning with rage, thirsting for revenge and engaging in constant fighting with one another. The latter need an endless

time until they calm down and fall into a lethargic state. But only then can they be helped by the beings of light. In contrast to these, the imperfect beings are mainly full of selfishness and therefore unapproachable for teachings concerning the commandment of love. However, having ample patience the beings of light never tire of helping them, so that it almost always will result in spiritual progress after the beings have discarded their vicious instincts and no longer attempt to tear each other apart. The state of lethargy is at all times the preliminary state of awakening from sleep, and it only requires some loving support so that these beings, too, will catch a gleam of light and begin to see. Yet it will often take a long time, because free will takes precedence in the spiritual kingdom too, which may not be forced if the being is to achieve beatitude.

Amen

**Unbelief and devils during  
the last days ... Battle of  
faith ... The coming of the  
Lord ...**

***B.D. 4825 from January 29th 1950,***

## ***taken from Book No. 55***

The lack of belief during the last days before the end will have alarming consequences, since people will only chase after profit and never remember a God. Then people will equally try to cheat and outsmart each other, for the sake of matter they will increase all evil instincts, their lack of conscience will not hesitate to harm their neighbour as long as it is to their own advantage. They will solely think and strive towards increasing their possessions .... God, however, will be forgotten, they will neither believe in Him nor fear Him, they won't believe in their future accountability and punishment for their sins, and thus they will sin without hesitation and fear of a Judge. In an earthly way they will be prosperous, because they are supported by God's adversary who impels them to ever more greed for material possessions. He will have great power where faith in God does not exist; this is why unbelief is exceedingly dangerous for people, because this will move them closer to devastation. Where faith is missing there is no love either, since only this would be able to revive their faith. Where love is missing, people are spiritually blind, they don't know anything, and what they know is untrue. Darkness is spread across the human race and the earth is approaching the end .... From a secular point of view, there is no adversity, people are living in prosperity apart from the few whose faith is still firm and who will be treated with hostility by the former. Although their fate will indeed be harsh for a short time, they will recognise the most unmistakable sign of the



end in their unbelieving fellow human beings' prosperity, because they were informed of it in advance so that they will bear up against the adversity they experience as a result of their faith in God .... When the time of Satan's obvious reign has come, the end will not be far away either, for it also has been proclaimed in advance that the world will be full of devils, and people who do not believe will likewise behave like devils and therefore declare bitter war against the believers. But then the coming of the Lord will not be far away anymore, then every day might bring the end, because the Lord will come when the adversity is so great that they will fear to lose heart .... when Satan believes that he has won, when unbelief abounds to such an extent that the believers must fear for their lives. Then the Saviour will come from above, as it has been proclaimed .... He will come in the clouds and fetch His Own into the realm of peace and implement a final Judgment on earth. This will be the end, when Satan will be enchained and, with him, all those who were enslaved by him .... And a new Earth will arise which will only be occupied by profoundly devout people, people, who will remain faithful to God during the last battle of faith and thus receive their reward .... a life in the paradise on the new Earth ....

Amen

## **Need of reapers at the**

# time of harvest ...

## ***B.D. 4828 from February 2nd 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Many labourers will be needed when it is time to harvest and therefore I welcome everyone who offers His services to Me. And everyone will be assigned a place according to his ability where he can work and do his best to fulfil his duty. I will reject no-one because the work before the end is urgently needed and because I cannot have enough reapers when it is time to harvest. However, they must grant Me their will and their loyalty, they must support their Lord as suitable labourers and always accept His instructions with a firm determination to comply with them and thus to serve Me faithfully. Yet they should not only comply with My will but also adopt this will as their own, that is, they should be convinced that they can only help their fellow human beings through their work, that their spiritual work will not merely be accomplished mechanically or on My behalf but that they enjoy it themselves because they realise that only this work will profit the soul. Everything My labourers do for Me and for My kingdom must be carried out with utter conviction, eager dedication and love, only then will they be the true servants I have chosen to work for Me. Anyone who purely complies with his task under pressure will not gain any benefit from it, he will not be able to be the right leader of the blind because he

cannot see himself. Being of service to Me means to be lovingly active for one's fellow human beings in order to help them spiritually and physically in their adversity. For that is what I do in My love, yet My servants shall do this instead of Me, they shall represent Me, thus fulfil their Lord's will if He cannot express Himself because people would be unable to endure My presence on account of their immature state of soul. To these I must speak through a human mouth and, for this purpose, diligent servants should lend Me their mouths so that I can talk to the former if they require My Word. There is much work to be done in My vineyard, there are many fallow fields, human hearts, which shall be made receptive for the pure seed, for the Gospel which originates from Me and which shall lead people back to Me. So anyone who spreads My Gospel, who enlightens people and enables them to accept My Word, who instils love in their hearts and thus makes them receptive for Me Myself, is My labourer and serves Me well and He will already be blessed on Earth and, one day, in the spiritual kingdom, for he helps to save many souls from eternal death. He spreads light and thereby illuminates the path to Me, the path to eternal life ....

Amen

**Professing Jesus before  
the world ... Voicing the**

# **name of Jesus ....**

***B.D. 4831 from February 6th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Profess Me and don't hesitate to frankly mention My name when your attitude regarding your faith and Me is demanded of you. For your heartfelt avowal draws Me Myself to your side and all fear will leave you, you will speak candidly and without inhibition about matters of faith, about My teaching, about My working in you and on your behalf and also about the future. Then you will pull down a wall, a wall of silence, behind which much can be concealed and which is therefore suitable for covering-up the truth. Speak fearlessly wherever it may be, for I Myself will take you to where you will be asked to profess Me. Not much more time will pass until you, who still believe in a God, in life after death, will be mocked by the world, for increasingly more worldly people fall away and everything that is neither visible nor tangible is unreal to them. These worldly people will develop an open enmity towards the believers who, as a constant target, can barely protect themselves against the animosities. Nevertheless, it should not make you fearful, it must happen like this because the time is fulfilled when a separation between My Own and the supporters of My adversary takes place, who aims to stifle all faith in Me and by whom they are enslaved. You should know that I Myself Am with you, both in spirit as well as visibly, where

necessary .... Know, that you are far stronger than they are, even if there are more of them. For as long as I fight by your side no-one will ever be able to defeat you. Yet you must openly and confidently stand up for Me, so that the enemy will recognise Who provides you with strength, because it will be obvious that you receive exceptional help. Simply voice My name with complete faith if you are being pressured, confront your assailants with My name, call upon Me with your heart and mouth and fear no earthly power .... and I will provide strength to all those of good will, to all who want to be My Own, as I have promised. In the name of your divine Redeemer you possess a weapon which truly cannot be surpassed, because all My love belongs to every person who manages to find faith in Me during the last days .... And anyone who professes Me before the world also proves his unwavering faith to Me and I will take particular care of him. Soon you will be forced to confirm or reject Me, then don't fear the worldly power, instead, merely remember My Words: Whosoever therefore shall profess Me before men, him I will also profess before My Father .... You will be forced to make a decision for Jesus Christ or against Him. Then gladly profess Him before the world, for you can only reach Me through Jesus, only through faith in His act of Salvation and His help can you come close to Me, the Father, Whose love wants to unite itself with everyone as it united with Jesus, Who redeemed the world from sin on account of His infinite love ....

Amen

# The right, lawful marriage before God ....

***B.D. 4834 from February 10th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Marital togetherness absolutely necessitates God's blessing otherwise the marriage may well be lawful on earth but not in heaven. Anyone joining together on earth without believing in the Creator and Provider of all things, in the God and Father of eternity, will not be able to claim God's blessing. He does not acknowledge God, and thus God will not acknowledge a bond either, even though it was legally joined on earth, i.e. all required formalities for a marriage ceremony were complied with. Only when both step before God with the plea to bless their bond, when both acknowledge God as their Lord, to Whom they will be striving in love, can they be assured of His blessing, for God is present where He is desired. He is effectively witness to a marriage which is based on love for one another .... And thus it is quite understandable that only few marriages are able to make the claim to be joined before God, since not even a ceremony in church will replace the fulfilment of God's required terms. Because a church ceremony can also be performed by

people who marry without love for the sake of earthly advantages, which will not ever be blessed by God.

Marriage is a sacred institution which was set up by God for the procreation of the human race as well as for the mutual maturing of souls who are attracted to each other by love. However, marriage should not be seen as a businesslike union which is to be entered into only to indulge in sensuality or to attain earthly advantages. Marriage is not a state which can be arbitrarily finished or changed either. Anyone who is lawfully joined before God, i.e. who had begged for God's blessing with mutually agreeing will, remains eternally joined before God and can only be detached by death and experience a temporary separation. But for the most part such marriage partners also unite with each other in the spiritual kingdom and jointly strive towards ascent. The unification of spiritually like-minded souls on earth as well as in the beyond is the greatest joy and goal, and anyone having joined together through love will remain joined for all eternity. But there are only few such right, lawful marriages before God .... And for this reason profound happiness and spiritual agreement is rarely to be found on earth, because due to their sensuality people do not attach any importance to it but are content with purely physical sympathy which, however, can never be called deep love and will never last either. Only those who sincerely request God's blessing will enter into a right, lawful marriage before God, and they will live in harmony of souls until their physical death and also in

eternity ....

Amen

# **Retribution - Atonement ... Eternal Order ... Forgiveness through Christ ...**

***B.D. 4837 from February 14th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Retribution exists on this earth for all deeds, both good and bad, you cannot sin with impunity, just as you can't do something good without being rewarded, yet neither fear of punishment nor the expectation of reward should determine whether you perform an evil deed or a good one. Pure love for your neighbour should prevent you from harming him, instead you should help him, hence be willing to be of service to him, you should do good for the sake of it and abhor evil because it is evil. Thus is My will and corresponds to My eternal order; it is the law of the spiritual and therefore also the earthly kingdom to live in My eternal order so as to be happy, and anyone who revokes this law of order is in a wretched state and will be judged accordingly, that is, he will join those spiritual



beings which oppose My will, thus likewise disregard My order. The being will be able to realise its wrong there, if it wants to, and likewise have the opportunity to make up for it. Yet this requires an extraordinarily strong will as soon as the being has departed from earth, whereas on earth it can much more easily realise as well as make

Amends for its wrong doing .... Nevertheless, according to divine justice every wrong doing must be atoned for, and you humans should consider this as long as you live on earth. This is why love is constantly preached to you, this is why the Gospel, the teaching of Christ, is made accessible to you, so that you will reconsider, recognise your wrong doing and make an effort to make

Amends through good deeds, so that you make an effort to live a life of love, which is and forever remains the law of My eternal order. There is retribution, and you can consider yourselves fortunate if you are already allowed to make

Amends on earth, for it is extremely difficult in the beyond to dispose of your guilt, so difficult, that you will need an incomprehensibly long time for it, while on earth you may take refuge in the One Who died on behalf of your guilt of sin .... Yet this always requires the realisation of your guilt and the will to dispose of it through a righteous atonement or through the help of Jesus Christ, Whom you must call upon for forgiveness of your guilt, but this necessitates that you despise it yourselves and have the firm will to become better and to enter My law

of eternal order .... to live a life of love according to My will ....

Amen

## **Reference to great adversity ... Battle of faith ... Admonition ...**

***B.D. 4838 from February 14th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Not much more time is given to you .... you should know this and live the short time consciously so that it will still be a time of grace for you during which you can prepare yourselves and gather strength for the forthcoming event which will require all your strength. Don't let yourselves be deceived by the apparent calm and state of peace, for this will change overnight and the conduct of people at whose mercy you are will petrify you. You will not want to believe that the past hardship repeats itself so soon and follow the events in the world with horror; yet believe that you will only be helped if you turn to the One Who is Lord over everything, Who can protect you even from the greatest danger and to Whom you must entrust yourselves if you want to endure the coming time and remain steadfast in the battle which you must fight for

the sake of your soul's salvation. You can still gain much if you make use of the period of rest in order to reinforce your faith, to accept God's Word and to accumulate spiritual wealth .... yet sooner than you think great adversity will threaten to overcome you if you don't appeal for strength from above, which requires strong faith from you in order to be able to pray in spirit and in truth. The opportunity to be able to enter into contact with God exists for you at all times, and you should use it before it is too late, for once you get into difficulties you will hardly be able to think straight. This is why you should turn your eyes upwards now and call upon the One Who hears you in every adversity and who wants to and can help you if only you turn to Him with complete trust. Be seriously admonished not to forget about Him so that He will not forget you when you need Him and depend on His help. There is only a little time left, therefore make use of it and gather strength, which God imparts to you through His Word ....

Amen

## **Ecclesiastical commandments ...**

***B.D. 4840 from February 16th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

You will not receive any special instructions from Me as to what kind of attitude you should adopt towards the humanly decreed commandments of the church. Whatever you do of your own free will is valued by Me, whatever you do under duress, be it for fear of punishment or even due to habit, means nothing to Me. Whatever people tell you to do shall also be rewarded by people, people shall never be assured of receiving a reward from Me which I Myself have never promised. Even so, I cannot sanction something that utterly opposes My will, because I gave people freedom of will which, however, is infringed upon by humanly decreed commandment, for a commandment is an obligation which excludes the use of free will. I Myself gave people only one commandment, the commandment of love which is fundamental law and must be observed so as not to violate My eternal order .... However, the commandment of love is nevertheless a commandment which allows people's freedom of will. There is no compulsion urging him to be lovingly active, and neither will he be punished by Me, it is just that he will punish himself because he pays no attention to the only means which signifies redemption for him from a self-inflicted state of constraint. I gave people the commandment of love which can be voluntarily complied with or rejected .... People issued additional commandments which do not meet My approval, for they are not borne by love for fellow human beings but are mere measures to increase power, because the affiliation to an organisation, which lays claim to be the true church of

Christ, is made dependent on the fulfilment of these laws. Hence it places people under compulsion who, in the belief of committing a sin, will subsequently fulfil these commandments and thus direct their whole attention to them .... and neglect My commandment of love ....

Love can only grow in freedom. Love and coercion oppose each other, and therefore I cannot recognise in the fulfilment of the ecclesiastical commandments any love for Me as long as they have been traditionally complied with, effectively as a vow of the authority which decreed these commandments. Besides, these commandments are not suitable to ignite love for Me because they portray **Me** as a Being which is afflicted by human weaknesses, demanding obedience, reverence and acknowledgement when, in fact, I only want to be loved. Before My eyes nothing is a sin but that which offends against love for Me and other people. No-one will ever acquire merit who complies with the commandments of the church just because they are **commandments** which should be fulfilled .... Free will shall choose Me on account of love, and this is why people don't need any other commandments but the one I Myself gave to them in realisation of the blessing which arises for every person from fulfilling it.

Amen

# **True disciples ... Working of the spirit ... 'Why' misguided teachings ...**

***B.D. 4842 from February 18th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

My disciples were enlightened by My spirit and therefore taught correctly. When they preached for Me and My kingdom they could not utter anything but the words I put into their mouths, the words that My spirit revealed to them. And they taught the same as I Myself had preached to people on earth; they instructed them in My name, they spoke on My behalf, and thus they proclaimed to people the true Gospel in accordance with My will. And their true followers will always be those who are likewise enlightened by My spirit, for only they will speak the truth, only they will be My true representatives on earth. However, anyone who is not enlightened by My spirit yet preaches all the same will not uphold the pure truth, because a person in whom My spirit cannot express itself will distort the truth, he will interpret My previously spoken Word incorrectly, he will teach errors even though he has acquired knowledge through study and deems himself capable of instructing other people as a teacher.

The simplest explanation for it is this: Where My spirit cannot work My adversary's spirit is at work, and he works in a truly truth-destroying manner .... This explains the ease with which My pure teaching can be spoilt and then be offered to people in the form of a distorted representation. To understand the spiritual meaning of My spoken Word as I want it understood requires the working of My spirit within the person, it requires enlightenment of thought, and this in turn requires a way of life in accordance with My will. Nevertheless, the latter does not consist of fulfilling commandments decreed by a church but solely of fulfilling My commandments, the commandments of love for God and other people. A life of love results in the person becoming a vessel for My spirit, and only such a person is enabled to instruct other people, only he knows the spiritual meaning of My every Word .... And this knowledge is absolutely essential in order to recognise the blatant error into which people have turned My Word. This knowledge, which My spirit gives to a person who wants to serve Me, entitles him to teach, and after that every instruction is again aided by My spirit .... Anyone working for Me will not utter anything but My will, because I want people to be told the truth ....

But the spirit of falsehood dominates people because My spirit, the mediator of truth, can no longer express itself in those who believe themselves to be My disciples' successors, those who are holding the ministry but who have no contact with the giver of truth themselves.

Although they interpret My Word they do not know the spiritual meaning of My Word at all, they teach what they were taught by the fathers. They thoughtlessly accepted these teachings and unreservedly passed them on, without thinking that sooner or later they will have to answer for every word. Being spiritually blind themselves they are blind leaders of their fellow human beings, instead of guiding them into truth they turn them away from it. I have never preached on earth what they claim to be Christ's teaching, because they only observe the letter and do not understand the true meaning, since My spirit cannot enlighten them. Believing to possess it, they do not search for truth, thus they do not seek Me and therefore I cannot guide them into truth. For if they sought Me they would live within love and then recognise Me, because I reveal Myself to everyone who believes in Me and keeps My commandments. Anyone who wants to be My disciple has to follow Me as My apostles did, he has to live a life of selfless love for his neighbour, awakening his spirit within him so that he unites with Me through love and subsequently can be taught by Me Myself, as it is written 'You all shall be taught by God ....' My spirit will guide him into truth and only then can he be My representative on earth ....

Amen

## **Composition of the soul ...**



# Miniature creation ...

***B.D. 4845 from February 24th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

The human being's soul is a formation consisting of inconceivably numerous miniature creations. It is effectively a composition of creations which were its past embodiments, so that it can be called the whole work of God's creation Who demonstrated His infinite love, wisdom and omnipotence in the human soul. The human being has no idea that he shelters the entire creation in his soul, but when, after the death of his body, he is able to behold himself in the spiritual kingdom he will look with utmost reverence and love for God upon the works of wonder he finds within himself again. The soul substance of every embodiment during this process of development is gathered, and thus the individual substances of the human soul have moved through the whole of creation and now exhibit an incredible versatility. Only then will it become obvious how magnificent God's works of creation are, and His greatness, His love, wisdom and omnipotence will emerge so distinctly that all living creations remain poised in reverence and love for God Who provides such immeasurable happiness to His living creations through becoming aware of His strength and the realization of Himself. However, the soul requires a certain degree of maturity as to be able to behold itself, this is why it is one

of the beatitudes belonging to those in the kingdom of light. Beholding the soul is part of Jesus' promise 'eye has not seen, nor ear heard, the things which I have prepared for those who love Me ....' Hence the soul can examine all areas, it can behold what it has never seen before, but which is undeniably present in creation, and it is aware of the fact that these wonders will never end, that constantly new formations emerge and yet it will never tire of beholding these creations, instead it will want to see increasingly more and thus also become increasingly happier. The soul is something imperceptible for human senses and therefore cannot be understood either. For the person on earth it is something spiritual, in the spiritual kingdom, however, it is the essence, it is that which animates the spiritual creations, it is the true living being in the spiritual kingdom because it is permeated by the strength of God. And thus it finds within itself every thought of God again which He shaped into a form through His strength of will. Every work of creation is a manifested thought of God. And so the human soul is an enormous work of creation in miniature .... yet for people on earth it is a doubtful concept, it is something of whose existence they are not entirely convinced and which they can never prove scientifically either. Earthly people consider the soul a nothing or a questionable object, in truth, however, it is the most magnificent creation which gives evidence of God's love, wisdom and omnipotence, which glorifies Him in the spiritual kingdom, which is everlasting and gives rise to constantly praising God by all those who dwell in

the kingdom of light and are blessed ....

Amen

## **Reference to the approaching time of adversity ....**

***B.D. 4846 from February 25th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Listen and believe that you humans are approaching a dreadful time .... It will affect every individual person, although it will be easier for those who carry Me in their hearts, thus, who live their lives looking upwards. This time will be a heavy burden for everyone, for it will result in further adversity which will seem almost too much to bear for you. You will be shocked to the core, for you will experience external and internal adversity so that you shall turn to Me, so that you shall finally find the path to Me, your God and Father of eternity. This is the last means I will use before the end. If this does not help to change those of you who have committed yourselves to the world nothing will be able to save you anymore, then you will be enslaved to My adversary for good and must share his fate .... to be enchained at the end of days .... You only have a little time left until then, and during this short

time I will repeatedly approach you in order to save you from ruin, in order to bring you to your senses before it is too late. Take the message I send to you through My servants on earth seriously and adjust your life accordingly, and when you are confronted by the immense adversity remember that it will soon be followed by the end, which I also have announced. Then you should use every day by frequently seeking contact with Me, ignore all earthly matters and pray to Me in spirit and in truth, calling upon Me for grace, which I will truly not deny you. I will grant your prayer, I will shower you with blessings and give you strength and a strong faith so that you will persevere until the end ....

Amen

## **The process of Christ's return ... Ascension ...**

***B.D. 4847 from February 26th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

My return, My coming at the end of the world, is being doubted by those people whose faith is not entirely firm. And yet, they would be able to recognise the individual phases of the end time and also perceive My presence simply by being observant. 'I will remain with you always

until the end of time ....' These Words alone should be sufficient for you to form a correct idea of My return. The fact that I Am not visibly in your midst should therefore allow you to understand the spiritual meaning of My Words. I Am staying with My Own until the end of the world. For, since My ascension to heaven, I have been present to them at all times and everywhere .... For I said: I will **remain** with you .... Hence I was spiritually always with My Own and will remain with them until the end of time .... However, in those days I informed people of My return, of My coming in the clouds. Consequently, this return should be understood such that people will be able to see Me, just as My disciples saw Me ascend to heaven. Spiritually I Am indeed always with you humans if you prove yourselves worthy of My presence. But I will return bodily, albeit not in My earthly body, yet nevertheless visibly to those to whom I want to return .... But since I announced My return, you humans can also expect it with certainty if you believe My Word and belong to those who will experience the final end. I did not make this promise without reason before My ascension into heaven. I foresaw humanity's spiritual state during the last days, I also saw the tremendous adversity of the believers who want to remain faithful to Me and who will be put under extreme pressure, and I saw their struggle, the most severe battle people will have to fight for the sake of My name .... I saw their will and the great danger of having to stand firm amid devils. For this reason I promised to them My personal help, which I will indeed render when the time has come. I Myself will

come to My Own and support them in the last battle. And thus many may be able to behold Me, for I will always be present where the adversity is immense and My Own need Me .... they will see Me as a human being of flesh and blood, yet not born of a woman, instead I will come from above and clothe Myself with a visible form for you, so that you will be able to endure Me .... And everyone beholding Me will be permeated by strength and survive the last battle on earth .... But then I will come in the clouds in order to fetch My Own home into the kingdom of peace. This coming will take place in the same way but in reverse to the order through which My ascension to heaven happened. I will descend to earth in radiant light .... yet enshrouded by clouds in order to be visible to you .... and gather My Own in order to save them from utmost adversity and distress on part of the underworld's demons as well as from the ultimate act of destruction to which everything alive in, on and above the earth will fall prey. However, this coming in the clouds will also only be visible to those who belong to My Own, for My adversary's followers will be unable to see Me. It will be a spiritual return and yet also physically perceptible, but only by those who are spiritually reborn, who have a profound and living faith and therefore also accept both My constant presence until the end of the world as well as My visible return without doubt, because they are taught by their heart, the spiritual spark in the person, and consequently belong to those with whom I will remain until the end of time .... They believe that I will come back and I will not disappoint their faith ....

Amen

# The work of God's servants in the last days ...

***B.D. 4848 from February 28th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

You will know when your time has come, when you have to step forward to proclaim My Word to all those who need help. For your heart will tell you, you will feel inwardly urged to speak about My extraordinary working affecting you externally and internally, about My Word and the approaching end, in order to help your fellow human beings who take the wrong paths and therefore believe that they will perish in the earthly adversity. And I will support you in every way ... you will feel that I Am with you Myself when you speak for Me and My kingdom, for My name. You will be very busy because you are happy doing your work and, despite the surrounding adversity, will barely be affected by it. For My working on My servants on earth will be obvious, every person will be able to recognise what blessings the contact with Me entail if he merely opens his eyes and is seriously minded and does not deliberately oppose Me. I want to be your companion wherever you go; I want to guide you to where you are urgently needed. You will only be able to work for

a short time and so you should use the time in order to offer God's kingdom to many people. For then a different kind of adversity will follow .... Oppression and brutal measures will be used by the earthly authorities against all those who inwardly carry the faith in Me, the faith in Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation. Then everyone who had previously listened will be able to make a choice, and this decision will come easy to him if he has accepted My Word he received from you in his heart. In that case he can be counted as one of the flock of My Own, he will likewise fight on My behalf, if not openly then nevertheless through professing Me and My name before the world. Much seed must still be sown and steps should be taken so that the field is well prepared to receive the seed. This is why much work must still be done beforehand, for which I will take you into My service and guide you on your paths such that you will also be able to accomplish it if you are willing. I need you and therefore will place you in a position where you can be of service to Me. I will smooth your every path, I will place you where you can successfully work for Me, I will prepare you for your teaching activity and provide you with the strength for it, I will take care of you so that you can devote yourselves to the service of God's kingdom without being burdened by earthly worry. I will speak to you through your heart when the time has come for you to take up your teaching mission. Whatever you do for Me and My kingdom must be done by you of your own free will, and therefore you must enjoy it, that is, you must be so permeated by your task that you, impelled from within,



will fulfil it out of love of Me and your neighbour. You must be so permeated by My Word that you also want to pass it on to your fellow human beings and especially when the time of adversity comes, which I have always and forever announced to you. Then people will only be lifted up by My Word and then your time will have come for which I Am preparing you. Then you will feel My directive in your heart and diligently accomplish what I require of you. Then you will be actively involved as My endtime disciples in the redemption of erring souls out of love of Me and your fellow human beings ....

Amen

**'I will remain with you ...' 'I will send you the Comforter ...'**

***B.D. 4850 from March 3rd 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

I will remain with you always until the end of time .... These Words alone should be enough for you to also believe in My working amongst you as well as being an explanation for all kinds of revelations which emerge as the working of the spirit. Furthermore, the fact that I Am in the midst of My Own was proclaimed by Me with the

Words I said to My disciples: 'Where two or three are gathered together in My name, there Am I in the midst of them ....' Thus, the prerequisite for My presence, and therefore also for the working of My spirit, is faith in the power of My name, a confession of Me as the Redeemer of humanity .... Thus you should gather in My name if you want to hear Me Myself in the form of My Word, in the form of revelations from the spiritual kingdom. Each one of My statements is a spiritual revelation which, however, all people could hear through the voice of the spirit as I have promised: 'I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth, which will guide you into all truth and will remind you of Me ....' 'It will remind you of everything I have said to you ....' Hence, through the voice of the spirit you will hear the same Words and you will know that it is I Who is speaking to you, that they are My Words I want to remind you of again. And you will remember Me, for My Words are spirit and life if you hear them through the inner voice. They are not merely empty Words which are only heard by the ear, instead, they penetrate your heart, after all, I Myself Am speaking to you through the voice of the spirit and I use the same Words as during My life on earth, so that you will recognise Me in them. However, you won't recognise My presence by these Words alone .... it is the **spiritual** meaning concealed within, which can only be grasped by an enlightened spirit, by a person whose way of life allows for the working of the spirit. He understands everything and in turn can instruct people who are still spiritually unawakened. My Word has to be explained to them, otherwise they interpret it literally

and subsequently won't be able to recognise either My love or My wisdom, indeed, they frequently only interpret the meaning of the letter and gain little or no spiritual knowledge at all. But I Myself Am among you and want to educate you , and therefore I bless each person who prepares his heart as an abode and accepts Me therein and eagerly listens to what I reveal to him, but he is also a doer of My Word and therefore recognises its spiritual meaning. He will hear Me Myself speak and allow Me to speak to his fellow human beings to whom I want to reveal Myself, so that My promise will come true 'I will remain with you always until the end of time .... I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth, which will guide you into all truth and will remind you of everything I have said to you ....'

Amen

## **Directive to take action .... Final admonitions before the end ....**

***B.D. 4857 from March 12th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

You must be ready to work for Me at any time if you feel My directive for it in your heart. And you will very clearly

feel what you should do and won't inwardly resist it because it will be your own inner urge to comply with My will. Although everything you are confronted with seems like a matter of course to you, it is nevertheless I Who is guiding you and instilling in you the feeling for your thoughts and actions, providing you are willing to serve Me and thus subordinate your will to Mine. Time flies by tremendously fast yet it will no longer result in a change of will; humanity keeps its face turned away from Me and towards material things, it continues to distance itself from Me increasingly more, it is seized by the opposing power and only a few can be stopped on the downward path, only a few will listen to the warning voice in the wilderness of their life .... For I will not leave people without warning so close to the end, I very often send people across their path who warn and admonish them, who point out the near end and beseech them to stop chasing after earthly possessions, who attempt to make them look up and announce the Judgment to them .... But who listens to them? Who still believes in a God to Whom they must answer, who still knows the actual purpose of earthly life, and who still believes in life after death? .... Their God is money, their purpose of life is material possession, and they think of death as a frightening, inevitable end of all life. And if they don't listen to My messengers, their wasted life and utterly wrong will cannot be portrayed to them either, making a change of thinking impossible. However, the only other available means than the proclamation of My Gospel consists of extreme adversity .... but an adversity which will be

announced to them in advance by My messengers, so that they will learn to believe if they are willing. And for that purpose I require you, My servants on earth, now and especially in the forthcoming time, because the great adversity will soon be followed by the end; because you are to inform people that they can expect the last Judgment, even if they don't believe it .... Time and again they shall hear it until they pay attention to the signs of the time and take a near end into consideration, although they are not convinced of it. This is the task for which I have appointed you, so that you will speak wherever the opportunity presents itself, so that you will convey your knowledge to your fellow human beings, so that those of you who are informed of My plan of Salvation will attempt to announce to people the end of this earth period and explain to them that it is based on the spiritual low level. You must explain that to people since the time given to people for their redemption has come to an end, My love wants to start a new rescue mission .... and the soul of anyone who listens to you and takes your words to heart will emerge unharmed from all upheavals, it will be saved from the downfall on Judgment Day, because it will still grasp My lovingly extended hand just in time ....

Amen

# **God's voice can be heard**

# everywhere ... The gravity of the time ...

***B.D. 4861 from March 21st 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

You live in an extremely difficult time and are constantly made aware of it because it not only concerns the earthly development in the history of the world but humanity's spiritual development, which you should recognise as being at risk in view of the near end. You have to admit to yourselves that extraordinary events direct your thoughts to spiritual problems; you also have to admit that the references to the last days match old prophecies regarding the end, and thus you must pay attention to them and be full of gratitude when thinking of the One Who is admonishing and warning you. You ought to take every reference seriously and look at all earthly happenings in relation with people's process of development .... you ought to know that every occurrence is merely a means to induce the human being to work at improving his soul, so that he will voluntarily strive towards God .... This time is so grave because the consequence of a person's life on earth is of utmost importance, since missed or wrongly used time on earth cannot be repeated and yet no-one can be spared the responsibility for it. But all admonitions and warnings are only possible such that they will not result in compulsory

faith. They certainly point to the end, to the Creator and Preserver of all things, but they don't prove anything, and therefore there are just a few people who recognise the approaching end by the signs and who, aware of the spiritual hardship, hand themselves over to God. Then they shall speak on behalf of God and His kingdom, they shall try to convey their assured faith to their fellow human beings, they shall at all times be in contact with their Father of eternity and accept the warnings and admonitions imparted to them in order to pass them on to those who are still distant from God.

He that hath eyes to see, let him see. He that hath ears to hear, let him hear .... God's voice can be heard everywhere, His activity can be seen far and wide, and in all places people are mentally influenced from above .... Yet their will is free, and God will not forcibly influence anyone even if an extraordinary experience clearly reveals God's activity. The time until the end gets ever shorter, the signs will increase, thereby facilitating everyone's realisation and belief; and if a person is of good will he will not resist and close himself to these indications. For God's grace takes effect in all places, the rays of the tiny lights which flare up everywhere can be persuasive if a person does not obscure them by not allowing himself to be affected by the rays .... And blessed is he who follows such a ray of light and need not spend the last days in darkness .... He will take the right path which will safely lead him to the goal, to God, his Father of eternity ....

Amen

# God's revelation ....

***B.D. 4866 from March 26th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Open your hearts to the voice of the One Who wants to speak to you and know that He merely avails Himself of a human being because He cannot reveal Himself to you directly. Yet also accept that His Word is addressed to you; after all, it intends to benefit all of you: I Am with you in spirit always, even unto the end of the world .... And thus you will always be able to hear the voice of My spirit if you believe these Words of Mine and through your faith are also convinced that I communicate with you. Hence you need to listen within in order to be able to hear My voice, and this requires seclusion, retreating within yourselves, a private dialogue with Me in solitude. But which one of you is making provisions in order to hear Me? Whose faith is so strong that he is conscious of My presence and, if he speaks to Me in the silence of his heart, also expects an answer? Behold, those of you who call yourselves devout don't do the latter, and thus you doubt the fact that I reveal Myself, consequently you cannot hear Me either, because all doubt renders the hearing of My voice impossible. Only a few people listen within with childlike faith, thus I can reveal Myself to



them and inform them of that which you should all know about Me and My will ....

However, most people walk past these few, they don't recognise the Father's voice to his children, they take little interest in the proclamations coming to them from above; but they allow themselves even less to be stimulated into eagerly following an example of the consequences of faith and love in order to experience the great mystery of divine love, for every revelation is a disclosure of My Nature, of My reign and activity and My greater than great love. And therefore I cannot come closer to people, they cannot sense My proximity for they don't recognise Me. The Words 'I Am with you always, even unto the end of the world' mean nothing to them, they don't understand their meaning, they don't know the significance of My presence and the delectable gift which is the result of My presence. They don't understand My Words and won't even learn to understand them through evident proof. I reveal Myself to those people to whom I Am present if they want to hear Me. The eternal Deity draws Itself towards Its living creations and lets Its strength flow into them in the form of Words .... I Am the Word Myself, therefore My presence must also be obvious through the Word, through its transmission. And thus you humans have the evidence that I exist, for I descend to you humans in My Word. Understand this and don't pass by if I cross your path in the form of My Word. Accept it as absolute truth which is still unspoiled because it originates from Me directly, because My Word is the clear

living water which flows from the Source so that you can refresh yourselves in order to successfully travel the pilgrim's path on this earth, in order to reach the goal which shall be the culmination of your earthly life .... in order to draw near to Me and become what you were in the beginning, children of My love who can create and shape and be inconceivably happy ....

Amen

## **Neighbourly love ....**

***B.D. 4868 from March 29th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

What you do to the least of My brothers, you do unto Me, and thereby you demonstrate your love for Me and for your neighbour. For a deed of neighbourly love also testifies to your love for Me and will enrich you far more than you have given up. And who is your neighbour? Every needy human being who approaches you with a request for help is your neighbour, regardless of whether he voices it or whether it remains unspoken. For you will recognise yourselves when your help is needed and appropriate as soon as the spark of love in you flares up and you are affected by your fellow human being's adversity. Yet you can live in abundance and accomplish a deed of neighbourly love without sacrificing anything,

but it will not be regarded as such if you lack love, if you help in order to dispose of an irritating petitioner or to shine before your fellow human beings. So many motives can prompt a person to render help, yet I only value a deed of merciful neighbourly love impelled by your heart. And you will experience the fact that, when love grows cold in people's hearts, help for other people will only occur due to organisation and deeds of love will effectively become routine, which certainly can alleviate people's adversity but which cannot be classed as deeds of neighbourly love, as the fulfilment of My commandment of love, and which therefore cannot have any redeeming effect either. The right hand should not know what the left hand is doing .... it should be a quiet giving; yet material gifts alone cannot be described as deeds of neighbourly love. Every other help, every kind look and every caring word can be valued as a deed of love if it comes from the heart. People's spiritual and psychological adversity is often even greater than their earthly adversity, there you should actively help by giving encouragement and comfort in suffering, by lifting people up spiritually, by conveying My Word and leading them back to faith, where it is necessary. All this is part of the commandment of neighbourly love, and I only expect a soft and compassionate heart for you to be able to fulfil My commandment of love for Me and your neighbour and also awaken love in your neighbour's heart, who thereby can be guided on the right path and you will have acquired a double reward. However, you should not help for the sake of reward but only for love of Me, then all

your deeds will be blessed ....

Amen

# **The working of the spirit ... Spiritual rebirth ...**

***B.D. 4869 from March 29th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Let My spirit take effect in you and you will know the truth, for the working of the spirit will guarantee you such. Then I Myself will guide your thoughts correctly, I will inspire you with the right thoughts, I will pour out My spirit upon you. It need not always be an obvious, that is, an extraordinary activity like the direct transmission of My Word from above; instead, the working of the spirit can also take place in a completely natural manner, providing a person fulfils the condition I have linked to My working in the human being .... He need only want what is right and live as is pleasing to Me, i.e., he need only fulfil My will which manifests itself in actions of love, then his spirit will already be awakened and this spirit within the person, being in contact with Me, will teach the latter such that he will think correctly, that he will know the truth and will therefore also be able to recognise and endorse what is right. He will also be

entirely convinced of thinking correctly, but he will ascribe this ability to himself and not to My working in him until My servants enlighten him about the working of the spirit in the human being. He will indeed understand this, but only when I Myself can take effect in him through the spirit, otherwise he will reject such teaching as implausible. Once My spirit can be active in a person he will also have been won over for the eternal kingdom, for this is already an act of spiritual rebirth, an act of redemption from the constrained state .... Then the spirit will guide the person and, without doubt, lead him towards the goal, towards eternal life. If a person therefore consciously strives towards Me, if he firmly believes in Me, if he lives a life of love and pays attention to his inner feelings, his thoughts and his constantly growing knowledge, often without any external influence, he can therefore also assuredly assume that his spirit has awakened to life and that a descent into the abyss need no longer be feared. Then his thoughts will concur with the Word from above with which I would like to prepare all people for this process, so that they will have a direct connection to their eternal Father, so that they will receive the knowledge about My reign and activity in the universe, so that they will learn to love Me as their Creator and Father and thus establish contact with Me so that I can convey the truth to them through which they will become blessed ....

Amen

# Union with God - The human being's goal ....

***B.D. 4871 from March 31th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Your goal shall be the union with Me .... Do you know what it means to be as one with your Father of eternity? Being able to create and shape like Him in strength and wisdom and being able to constantly work for the still imperfect spirits? And to be eternally happy?

Your past life will appear like a bad dream to you which, however, will no longer frighten you but only let you realise the Creator's love for His living creations, which guided you through infinitely many stages of maturing. And in the realisation of what you are now in the kingdom of light, you will look up to Me full of gratitude and love, Who is close to you now and bestows upon you beatitudes without measure.

To be united with Me means to be perfect, just like you were in the beginning before you became sinful. To attain this perfection is the highest goal of the human being on earth, because it is a prerequisite for a blissful life in the light. And the only means to achieve it is love, which consumes everything imperfect and shapes a light-receptive and divine soul which will be able to accept My emanation and, once it is touched by it, will feel

indescribable bliss. The transfer of My love onto the being is the epitome of blissfulness and thus a prerogative of the perfect being which is no longer separated from Me but has fully united with Me.

The transfer of strength, however, includes everything else .... realisation of truth, light and strength, so that the being will therefore move within wisdom and use the inflowing strength correctly, that it thus, in accordance with God's will, will be able to create and give life to what it has created. Hence the being comes into all rights of childhood, it knows no boundary, it knows everything, and its strength enables it to work in accordance with My will, which now is its own will, so that every activity will delight the being because it works for Me and finds rich reward in My love. The being yearns for My love and I constantly fulfil its yearning, and its happiness knows no bounds.

The union with Me can only be achieved through love, since love is the most effective fire which melts all hardness, purifies everything impure and clarifies all ambiguity .... love is the agent which releases and bonds at the same time .... It releases the pressure of oppression, the shackle of sin, and it forms the bond between the living creation and Me, which remains insoluble for all eternity .... And once a person has formed the bond with Me he will remain connected to Me, for as soon as My strength of love has flowed through him he inevitably becomes My possession which I will never abandon to My adversary. Anyone who succeeds in

detaching himself from My adversary has already become My Own and proved himself as My child and is now always able to be constantly in the vicinity of the Father, Who will never banish it from His presence again ....

Amen

## **Prayer in spirit and in truth ....**

***B.D. 4872 from April 1st 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

You should pray in spirit and in truth. This requires true belief in Me Whom you call upon in prayer and Who is to help you. Hence you must believe that I exist, that I have the power to help and My love wants to help you. This strong faith will also let you find the right words or thoughts to make contact with Me. Then you will speak to Me from your heart, it will not be an empty prayer but the right kind of communication with Me, for you entrust your worries and problems to Me and expect My reply in form of an action, thus you rely on Me to grant your prayer. If you have established this state of trust in My help you cannot pray other than in spirit and in truth and I will answer your prayer .... But how can a person pray in spirit and in truth if he uses acquired words, if he, together with



other people, performs long prayers which neither testify to devotion nor depth of feeling because the heart does not know what is voiced by the mouth? How can you humans expect Me to take pleasure in a prayer which is everything else but a trusting call of a child to the Father? Your prayer should be as simple and plain like the words of a child so that I can be present with you and you experience My grace.

Anyone who speaks to Me in that way is heard by Me and I will grant his prayer because I have promised you: Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. But lip worship is not pleasing to Me, for I only look into the heart, which no-one can conceal from Me. I will bypass a silent heart and neither My love nor My omnipotence will provide the person with proof that I have heard him. I turn away from those who constantly pray but whose thoughts are not even partially involved in what they express with their mouths. For all those who pray like this do not recognise Me as yet, because the true recognition of Me Myself will let them become silent and reverent, whereas profound humility utters heartfelt words which I understand perfectly because they are spoken by the heart, which at all times establishes contact with Me and which will always draw Me close. Prayers in spirit and in truth only seldom rise up to Me, and therefore I can only seldom grant a prayer although there are very many praying people on Earth suffering adversity. Yet My true children pray within their heart and will therefore always be

successful, for true faith guarantees the granting of their prayers since I will never disappoint true faith ....

Amen

# **Spiritual turning point is not a reversal but renewed banishment ...**

***B.D. 4875 from April 6th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Development for the better is no longer possible on this earth, people will not even remain on the same level but descend constantly, they live beyond all bounds and distance themselves from Me to such an extent that they live their earthly life entirely without strength, hence it is totally pointless. And therefore a substantial change is intended to put an end to humanity's spiritual decline and to pave a new path which will lead to an ascent again. You humans are unaware of My plan of Salvation apart from the few to whom I reveal Myself. But you would be able to take notice of it were you at all interested in the issue as to what forms the basis of all events around you. Yet your questions are different, the questions you are concerned with only relate to earthly advantages, to ways and means of procuring a wealth of earthly goods. You

only increase your knowledge in this field and ignore all spiritual matters. But therefore you will also be taken by surprise by the forthcoming events and will be unable to find an explanation if you intellectually search for it. However, the knowledge of My plan of Salvation would explain everything to you, the knowledge of My eternal plan of Salvation would let you look at everything from a different perspective, and it would awaken your sense of responsibility because your soul's fate after death is determined by your way of life. Then a small improvement could still be achieved, although only a few will take the explanation seriously which is offered to them by knowledgeable people. And therefore I will bring one period of development to a conclusion and let a new one begin.

This should certainly be looked upon as a spiritual turning point yet not as a reversal or a sudden advancement of the souls' development, instead it is far more a total failure on the one hand and the creation of new possibilities for development on the other. For that which failed during the old period of development will start its process of development again in the deepest abyss; hence it will not continue an interrupted process of purification. This is why the time before the end of this epoch is so extremely significant since it will, after all, shape the fate of countless souls as to whether they live or die. A continued existence of this earth would by no means benefit these souls, because they severed the bond with Me long ago, thus they are entirely without

faith and in this state will not make use of the blessings either which could ensure their spiritual progress. Until the end every effort will still be made to save the individual souls, that is, to draw their attention to their purpose, yet they cannot be supported against their will and this will only strives to descend, it only applies to matter which shelters the lowest developed spiritual substances. And I always take the soul's will into account, it shall receive what it desires .... and therefore hard matter will become the external cover of that which had already reached the last stage of development on earth .... the souls of the furthest distanced living creations will be banished again in the creations of the new earth. And time and again this dreadful fate shall be presented to people, time and again they shall be given the information of My eternal plan of Salvation, because it is the time of the end when every person should become aware of the great responsibility he bears for his soul, because he can still use the last days for the salvation of his soul if he has the will to do so. He should know that an end will come and what this end means for his soul, he should know that there will be no postponement but that it will come true what seers and prophets have announced since the beginning of this epoch of Salvation, that the end will come without fail and with it the last Judgment, which will decide over life and death, over light and darkness, over reward and punishment .... over hell and damnation and paradise and beatitude ....

Amen

# Christ's path to the cross ....

***B.D. 4876 from April 8th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Anyone who wants to follow Me will walk a lonely path, misunderstood by his fellow human beings as was My share, too, despite the love I gave to fellow people. Anyone who wants to follow Me will have to accept his cross just as I did, although My eternal love will not let anyone's cross become as heavy as that of the man Jesus .... He will have to carry it, yet he can ease his burden at any time if he calls upon Me for help. Then I will place the cross on My shoulders and carry it for him, and with Me everything gets easier, with Me he no longer walks on his own, I will empathise and share his suffering and joy at all times; he can always follow his earthly path in silent togetherness with Me, and therefore he will find his cross bearable and humbly submit to his destiny .... I took all of humanity's suffering on My shoulders as I walked along facing crucifixion and endured unspeakable physical pain. I walked the arduous path that ended with death on the cross for everyone who wanted to follow Me one day. I suffered indescribably as a human being so that people's suffering would be lessened. I participated in all of humanity's suffering and carried the cross on its

behalf. And anyone who loved Me followed Me .... There were only a few, compared to the whole human race on whose behalf I died, only a few shared My pain, they suffered with Me and for Me. They, too, carried their cross because they followed Me, since their love for Me made them feel all their suffering twice as much. Yet their love was like balm on My wounds which were inflicted on Me by pitiless people; their love increased My will to suffer on behalf of humanity and to bring help to them through My crucifixion. Many followed Me on the way to the place of execution yet only few sympathized with My pain .... Many people live on earth but only few are My disciples .... I died for all people on the cross but only few accept My sacrifice and make use of the attained blessings. Only few people follow Me and yet, only by following Me can they become blessed. Everyone should take his cross upon himself and remember My sacrificial walk to Golgotha, which was almost too difficult for a human being to bear and made Me fall .... But the love of a person came to My aid when I had almost failed as a human being and I made the sacrifice, I emptied the cup of suffering completely ....

And if you humans have to suffer remember My Words 'Whoever wants to follow Me let him take up his cross ....' You should know that all suffering you humbly endure in My will is taken into account as a path to the cross which signifies redemption and liberation from all guilt for you .... You should know that you are living on earth in order to release yourselves from guilt, the magnitude of

which cannot be estimated by you as human beings, for which I have indeed died in order to lessen it but which every one of you also has to remove, as far as it is within your power, if you want to take part in the act of Salvation which was started by My love with My crucifixion. You humans were only given a small cross to carry because I have taken the heaviest weight from you, but you cannot remain entirely without suffering in order to keep going towards the One Who wants to help you at all times, Whom you should follow so that you will become eternally blessed ....

Amen

## **Unattainability of God ... Recognising His fundamental nature ...**

***B.D. 4877 from April 9th 1950, taken  
from Book No. 55***

No human spirit will be able to grasp Me as long as it has not united with Me, with My eternal Father-Spirit. And this union with Me is an act which necessitates utmost willingness to enter into My will, thus it means conforming to My fundamental nature. Only what has become as one with Me is able to recognise Me,

otherwise it is mere faith and not complete realisation. The human being's spirit certainly has the ability of insight but never by itself, only in unity with Me. It is a spark of My eternal Father-Spirit, it is part of Me which came forth from Me and keeps in permanent contact with Me, but only the human being's will brings it to a state where it can function. And this will has to subordinate itself to Me, then the spiritual spark can become active in the person. But it can often take a long time until the human being's will awakens the spirit in himself, and this time is lost for eternity.

The human being's earthly progress in the state of ignorance is futile for the soul, as then it will only live for the world, it is not yet able to understand the meaning and purpose of its earthly life, it has not yet got in touch with its inner spirit and is completely blind. Only the awakening of the spiritual spark in the person will safeguard the soul's higher development, its maturing. For the awakened spirit will persuade the soul to turn away from the world and listen to the spirit's voice, and then there will be a dawning, the darkness will be dispersed by light .... and the spirit will edify the soul about My Being, about My working and My continuous care for My living creation. Then the person's spirit will guide him into truth, it will convey knowledge to him which he cannot receive from an external source, since it would be presented to him incomprehensibly or he would not be able to grasp it. Then the spirit will persistently urge the soul towards a unification with Me since, being



part of Me, it also wants to draw the soul unto itself; hence unification with Me should also become the soul's aim.

The human being will only start to appreciate My fundamental nature when he has reached a certain degree of maturity, even then he will never be able to fathom it in its full profundity. He cannot grasp it as a human being, and even a being of light is still very distant from Me, although permeated by My strength and therefore blissfully happy. It is impossible to completely ascertain My fundamental nature, for I outshine all other beings of light and strength and therefore I Am incomprehensible to every being, even when it has achieved the highest degree of perfection. If it were possible to comprehend Me, I would not be Infinite, neither in perfection nor in power. Yet precisely this incomprehensibility fills a being of light with bliss, so that it is able to look up to Me and love Me ever more profoundly, so that it will constantly strive towards Me with longing, and will always receive fulfilment of its desire. The fact that I Am unattainable to the being will intensify its love because, in awareness of My unattainability, it will regard My love as the greatest gift.

Yet on the other hand, My living creation is inseparably connected to Me .... Its self-inflicted imperfection, its thoroughly contradictory state to My fundamental nature does not limit My love for it and eternally will not induce Me to disown it, thus to separate Myself from it .... Irrespective of how unattainable I Am to the being, it is

nevertheless connected to Me, it belongs to Me, because it originated from My strength and thus is a fundamental part of Myself. And this togetherness shall now find its culmination in the conscious unity on the part of the being. By striving to reach Me it should put itself into the state of bliss because, in order to feel My love and experience it as bliss, the being's will must be totally inclined towards Me. There must be no opposition in the being whatsoever. It has to want to reach Me in order to be lifted up by Me, and this lifting up, this drawing-to-Me, is a never-ending state in eternity ....

The being will never reach the final goal, yet it will constantly come closer to Me, this certainty is still incomprehensible to you as human beings on earth. However, the being's bliss rests in its continuous desire and fulfilment .... A completely satisfied being would no longer be able to feel desire and therefore also miss the elation of fulfilment. But I want My children to strive for Me at all times, I constantly want to give to them and therefore also want to be constantly desired .... And thus, as the final goal, I will stimulate the beings into utmost love and yearning, but always remain above My living creations, not due to lack of love but because of My greater than great love, for I want to bestow never-ending joy, because My love can never cease in all eternity ....

Amen

# Jesus' forerunner at the end ....

***B.D. 4878 from April 13th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Someone amongst you will emerge who shall bear witness of My coming in the clouds. And when you hear him you will know that the end is near. He is one of the purest, he is full of love and kindness and therefore closely united with Me, he is a comforter and friend to you humans, a liberator from emotional distress. He is spiritually illuminated and knows about the Last Judgment, and therefore he will warn and admonish people in My name. He will fight for Me and My kingdom and be fully enlightened. And thus he will also know where the pure truth is represented. Consequently he will emerge from amongst those who receive My teaching from above and, due to his way of life, due to his love for his fellow human beings, he will also be taught from above, because he will still have to accomplish a final task .... to be My forerunner prior to My return. For the time is fulfilled, the predictions of the prophets are coming to pass and thus he, too, will have to appear. He will descend from the kingdom of light to earth for My sake in order to announce Me to people who are suffering utmost adversity and distress.

He will bear witness of Me since his voice will be My voice and anyone who listens to him, listens to Me. However, he will not stay with you humans for long ... Until you recognise him he will indeed live in your midst, but My adversary will persecute him and provoke people against him. He will preach love but people will listen to him with hatred. They will pursue and try to kill him. But I will know how to protect him until his hour has come, for he has to complete his mission, he has to prepare a path for Me, he has to uphold the flock of My children and inform them that the Lord's return is at hand.

And once he appears, not much time will be left. His words will ignite and arouse the lazy and undecided from their sleep, for he will only be a mouthpiece for Me, through him I want to openly express Myself just one more time. And once again he will be a voice that cries in the wilderness, who will only return because I will need a strong worker in the end, a worker from above to help humanity. Yet the world will hate him and spare no means to eliminate him, even though he will only speak and do good. But the world will have descended into darkness and all lights will have gone out .... Consequently, a bright light will appear on earth and all bearers of light will fetch oil for themselves to brighten their own lights again, which worldly people will endeavour to extinguish. And all people of true faith will recognise him as the forerunner of My return, and they will know that the time is fulfilled when I can be expected and with Me the Last Judgment .... They will take his words to heart because

they sense that it is I, Who speaks through him, and that I announce My coming through him, who is My messenger as destined since eternity.

But he will have a difficult time with people who worship the world and reject his admonitions and warnings, yet who will not shy away from trying to kill him in spite of the fact that he will prove himself helpful towards all people and many will also accept his help. The former will want to prevent him from completing his mission but I will not recall him into My kingdom until he has prepared the path for Me, until he has proclaimed My coming to all who long to behold Me and whose faith he has strengthened, because he will only proclaim what he receives from Me through the inner Word, through the remarkable working of the spirit within himself ....

Amen

## **Fulfilment of predictions made by seers and prophets ....**

***B.D. 4879 from April 14th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

Very soon you will realise that My Word will fulfil itself,

because the time has come I have always and forever announced through seers and prophets. They all proclaimed My Word, thus they only expressed what I wanted to tell people, and since I used the prophets as My representatives they were only able to say what I Myself wanted to say. Hence it is certain that these messages will fulfil themselves, because My Word is truth. The believers are merely unsure when My prophecies will come to pass and therefore they are not taken seriously either, for everyone believes that what people were foretold a long time ago will happen in the future. They don't know when the time will be fulfilled, but neither do they believe that they are living in the midst of this time ....

They believe and yet they do not believe .... They do not reject it, but they do not want to admit it is happening now, and therefore they have become indifferent to their psychological task. But I keep telling you that you do not have much time left to think about it if you do not want to be taken by surprise. You will only be on this earth for a very short time and it is up to you whether you, too, will belong to the inhabitants of the new earth. In that case you will have to believe firmly and resolutely that the end is near and prepare yourselves for this end. You have to live in accordance with My will, then you will discover for yourselves what time you live in. Then you will no longer waste time and also know what fate awaits humanity; and in order not to belong to those unfortunate people who will have to fear the end you will

have to join Me and turn your back on everything that belongs to the world.

But if you exist without faith you will only pay attention to the world and will not recognise the gravity of the hour. Then you will be hopelessly lost for an infinitely long time. I can only warn you of the end and remind you to love, but I cannot forcibly convey the understanding and knowledge to you. You are therefore in utmost danger and only because you do not believe the Words, which will be repeatedly proclaimed to you through seers and prophets that the end is near. Yet time and again My love will cross your path in order to guide your thoughts to the end .... My love will let you take painful ways in order to take your eyes off the world .... My love will speak to you through My servants, it wants to save you, nevertheless, it allows you complete freedom ....

Amen

## **Immense affliction before the end ....**

***B.D. 4883 from April 22nd 1950,  
taken from Book No. 55***

People everywhere will experience immense affliction when the final adversity before the end starts. Every

nation will go through suffering and distress, partly caused through human will, partly through the influences of nature or fateful events, and people everywhere will have the opportunity to place themselves at the service of neighbourly love, for wherever there is adversity it can be alleviated by people who are able and willing to love. All people will be affected apart from those who receive their strength from below, that is, whose hearts are so hardened that they are enslaved by God's adversary who will provide for them to an exceptional extent. The contrast between good and evil will strongly emerge everywhere, and thus a spiritual battle for people's souls will also be waged before the end. Spiritual influence will therefore trigger all instincts in the human being during the end time, both good as well as evil will visibly manifest themselves and, therefore, a separation will also be noticeable, for good people will keep away from evil ones and yet will constantly be pursued with hatred, on account of which good, and therefore God-inclined, people will suffer progressively more distress. There will be an extraordinary scale of adversity .... The words of the seers and prophets who have proclaimed this immense affliction for the time of the end can be applied in all instances; it is merely the cause of affliction which will not be the same everywhere. But a separation of the spirits will happen in all places and thus the time of end can be recognised. The earth and the spiritual realm will be the goal of people's efforts, and anyone aiming for the earth with its possessions will be lost for the spiritual kingdom, he will pay homage to the world and therefore



to the one who governs the world. And the majority of people will focus on the world, whereas the spiritual kingdom will only have a few followers; only a small flock compared to the whole of humanity will consciously or unconsciously strive towards God with a will for good and abhorring evil. For this reason there will always be just a small number of spiritual aspirants present among people, at first they will be laughed at and ridiculed by their fellow human beings until people's evil nature breaks through and expresses itself in hostile actions against all those who abide by God and remain steadfast in faith.

This will be the start of an affliction the world has never before experienced .... Evil will prevail everywhere and suppress good, evil will indulge itself in all places and good will suffer adversity. Until, finally, even the life of God's faithful followers will be in danger, they will have no more protection because people will reverse the laws, that which is right will no longer be acknowledged and only the power of the stronger will count. And this will be with those whose attitude committed them to Satan. They will be favoured by him throughout their temporal lives, for they will have sold their souls to him in return and will have elevated themselves as masters over the weak, treating them vindictively and denying them all earthly necessities. The extent of distress will be such that the believers will require, and indeed receive, an extraordinary supply of strength so that they will not give up during the final battle, which will only last for a short

time and will be shortened for the sake of the chosen, so that they will not weaken in view of the hardship within their own ranks and the affluence in the ranks of the adversary. Then salvation will come to them from above, as it is proclaimed. The Lord Himself will come in the clouds and deliver all those who remain true to Him. The affliction will come to an end and a new life will begin on earth, and God's faithful followers will receive their reward .... just as Satan's children will be punished, because God's justice demands their atonement. It will come to pass as it is written .... The Lord will fetch His Own and place them into a realm of peace, He will pass strict Judgment on all sinners and they, too, will receive what they deserve, and the hardship on earth will be over ....

Amen

## **Remorse of souls who rejected divine gifts of grace ....**

***B.D. 4887 from May 1st 1950, taken  
from Book No. 55***

Souls will find themselves in serious spiritual difficulties if they have been approached by Me in the Word and did

not accept it as the Father's voice. For they have the ability to recognise it, they merely lack the will to consider it seriously. Yet one day these souls will realise it and then their remorse of not having utilised My precious gift of grace will be huge and their self-reproaches will be inconceivable torments. Anyone who is offered My gift of grace is in fact being called to work spiritually, because I know his soul's degree of maturity and want to further its progress. He is capable of understanding as soon as he is willing to live in truth. Hence he will face the crucial decision to either follow eternal truth or the world, and it is then up to his will to choose which path to follow. Consequently, a person who can choose between two directions and voluntarily takes the wrong path has to be answerable for it. The soul is subconsciously aware of this and therefore in difficulty, even if the human being's intellect wants to dismiss such considerations. Then soul and intellect will argue about significant spiritual disagreements, and blessed is the person whose soul is still able to convince the intellect of its error before it is too late, that is, before the soul leaves its mortal shell.

But if it enters the spiritual kingdom in a state of darkness then it will experience the light, which should have illuminated it, like a fire within itself. For even in a state of ignorance the soul will remain conscious of the fact that it dwells in darkness due to its own fault, because it had fled the light that was ignited by My love and grace. Then it will live in great anguish and long for

this immense gift of grace, which it cannot receive again once it has been rejected. Although it can be helped by the beings of light they will not appear to the soul as carriers of light, instead the soul's free will is tested in a different way, so that it will have to make a crucial decision again .... to follow the souls of light, which do not identify themselves but want to be of help .... or to remain obstinate and decline the light beings' assistance. Just as the human being on earth is not forced to accept the light that shines to earth from above, the souls' will in the spiritual kingdom also decides whether they should accept the help that is constantly offered by My eternal love in order to guide them towards progress.

On earth, however, they have an exceptional gift of grace in My Word, which will result in their spiritual maturity with certainty. Therefore, it is irresponsible to ignore My Word which is offered to people from above, and to be indifferent or completely negatively inclined towards it. And, understandably, it has to be extremely depressing for a soul to know that it had ignored the most certain means for attaining eternal life and has to dwell in an unfortunate state in the spiritual sphere of darkness and misery. Yet it was of its own free will, it will have created the pitiful state of its own accord and now either has to endure it or voluntarily strive to change, thus make use of every opportunity My love and mercy provide so that it will still be able to ascend and enter the kingdom of light, if only after an infinitely long time. Only the soul's will creates its fate in eternity .... its will awakens the soul

to life, just as it can cause its spiritual death ....

Amen

## Reference to the end ....

***B.D. 4889 from May 4th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

You only have a short period of time left .... Time and again I say this to you because you are of weak faith and don't want to believe that you are living in the last days and that My warnings and admonitions are therefore meant for you. But you should believe it, for it depends on your faith how you use this final time for your soul and its progress. Whatever you do without faith is only done for the world; but this will pass away and all your efforts will be in vain, all commodities will disintegrate and nothing will stay behind which will be useful to you in eternity. You will only keep that which is not of this world; only the spiritual treasures you gathered will remain with you. If you, therefore, believe in a speedy end, then you will no longer create and work for this world, for the body and its requirements, but you will first take care to improve the state of your soul, and thus you will work for your eternal life. The world stops you from doing this work, the world tries to captivate you with earthly pleasure and all kinds of enticements. And fulfilment of

earthly wishes always results in a slackening of spiritual work, thus the loss of everlasting spiritual treasures.

For this reason I caution you against the world .... Don't take more notice of it than is necessary for your earthly life; don't seek it but avoid it wherever possible; don't ascribe any value to it other than that it is the necessary means for your maturation on Earth, and don't let it triumph over you but strive to rise high above the earth. And you will be able to do so once you allow the belief of the near end to come alive in you. Know that I Myself Am talking to you, your God and Father of eternity, and know, that every Word is truth because I tell you so. And therefore, only take care of today and don't worry what will happen tomorrow, for you worry about useless things and should only take your spiritual maturing and spiritual preparation for eternity seriously. You should always let this be your first concern, then you will not need to fear an end, you will await it calmly and collected and be prepared for My coming at the end of the time which you are still granted to release yourselves from Satan's shackles ....

Amen

**The reward of a life of love,  
blissful fate in the**

# **beyond ....**

***B.D. 4890 from May 5th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Those of you who heed My will on earth are granted a blissful fate. I expect nothing else from you other than that you conduct yourselves on earth like your Father's children, that you love and help one another like true children of the same Father do. No other commandment is given to you by Me, for true love includes everything, from true love emerges everything that leads to unification with Me. Consequently, true love is all you need to strive for on earth. Your nature must shape itself into love, it must become again as it once was when it originated from Me, the Eternal Love .... Then you can stay in your true home again, in the kingdom of light, in My presence and illuminated by My strength, which signifies eternal beatitude for you. A blissful fate is granted to you if you respect My will .... Therefore, make My will your own, live in Me and with Me, and My will shall be yours too. To live according to My will is all I expect of you. But anyone who lives according to My will cannot be anything but good, and thus is kindness of heart also the evidence that a person has entered into My will, that he is a true child of his Father. And I watch over My children with all love and care, consequently they can go through earthly life without worry as soon as they feel themselves as My children and are closely united with Me

through love, which characterises the human beings as My children. Be kind to each other, support each other in every adversity, try to keep all suffering at bay and help wherever possible. Prove yourselves as My children, and your Father's love will be your eternal reward ....

Amen

## **Spiritual rebirth ....**

***B.D. 4893 from May 9th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

I want to help everyone of good will to attain spiritual rebirth. For eternal life, the state of freedom and strength, the state of bliss, only starts with spiritual rebirth. Everything that is still enshrouded in matter, everything that still languishes within its constraints, is still enslaved and weak and only ever wastes its energy of life in order to increase matter. However, the soul which detaches itself from matter begins to liberate itself and slides into a different sphere, although it still lives on earth. The soul, recognising its true purpose, begins to establish a different relationship with Me, its Father and Creator of eternity, a relationship which is more akin to the original relationship, albeit still in a primitive form. It strives away from one realm towards the other kingdom, it steps into another previously unknown world .... it is



born-again .... And this rebirth clearly takes place when spiritual aspiration takes the place of earthly endeavour, when the world with its demands no longer comes first but is only taken notice of as far as the preservation of the earthly body requires. Spiritual rebirth is the result of intimate mental unity with Me through the right kind of prayer or actions of love .... I Am motivated to approach a soul the moment it looks for Me, the moment it strives towards Me. In that case, its attention has been focussed on Me and the purpose of earthly life will have been achieved, a change of will has taken place which will also cause a change of nature, an assimilation with My fundamental nature, which is love in itself. The soul has stepped out into a spiritual life and thus starts its spiritual ascent, which will certainly be achieved once it has taken hold of My hand and allows itself to be drawn by Me. In order to attain spiritual rebirth the soul must have buried its earthly desire, it must no longer be held captive by its old shell because of cravings which aim to comfort the body; it must unhesitatingly be able to renounce what the world has to offer because it cannot be in the earthly and the spiritual world at the same time, but the entry into the spiritual world can only take place when it has completely overcome the earthly world. It is, after all, the soul's life and not that of the body, which shall start anew. The body can certainly still be on earth; however, it must now submit itself to the will of the soul, thus its continued life on earth will be determined by the soul. I want to help everyone of good will to attain spiritual rebirth .... And My help for a human being

happens first of all by way of assisting him to liberate himself from matter. Admittedly, this often signifies My painful intervention, yet it is only ever intended for the salvation of his soul, so that it will learn to rise above matter, so that it will seek a different life, a life with everlasting possessions, so that it will strive towards the kingdom which is its true home, where it is free from every shackle and full of light and strength, where it can be blissfully happy for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Incarnation of beings of light ... Forerunner ...**

***B.D. 4899 from May 19th 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

I repeatedly convey the Gospel to earth, and as you receive it from above it is pure and uncorrupted by human will. I know that this is necessary since untold people are no longer able to find Me because they are no longer taught the truth. Therefore I have embodied Myself in the spirit of those who want to serve Me. The fact that they now receive the truth in its purest form is a necessity which was long recognised by My love and wisdom, which in itself prompts Me to protect the

recipient of truth from above against the influence of impure spirits, which want to confuse his thoughts and prevent the truth from being conveyed to him. Therefore, anyone who receives the Gospel which I Myself taught on earth and which My servants on earth are once again instructed to spread, can rest assured that he has the truth, that he, as My apostle in the last days, may instruct his fellow human beings without fear that error could enter his teaching. And in this knowledge he should approach all those who cross his path. He should consider himself as My representative and always stand up on My behalf of what he has received from Me Myself, and which will express itself as an inner feeling because it is pure truth.

Many beings of light are presently embodied on earth because the immense spiritual hardship requires exceptional help which can only be provided by beings of light. Such souls of light are usually spiritual leaders, i.e. due to their way of life in accordance with My will they have a close relationship with Me and thus are able to accept My instructions directly and pass them on to people. The degree of maturity of these light beings is such that a descent into the abyss is impossible, on account of which they always live in utmost humility and unselfishness and only try to bring My kingdom to people without wanting any benefit for themselves but to serve Me and to help people. It is therefore possible for a being of light, sent to earth by Me, to incarnate several times if people's spiritual low level necessitates it. But these

incarnations are always in utter service to Me until the end, for My will prevails in these beings as they had already submitted themselves to Me voluntarily and cannot lose this degree of maturity on earth anymore. Inferior spirits will never be able to dominate such a soul embodied in a human being, and it will never succumb to their evil influences either. Hence, an already perfected spirit on earth will never be able to fall, that is to say, not achieve its mission .... Such a mission can merely appear in people's opinion as having been interrupted as a result of a sudden recall into the spiritual kingdom or due to adverse human actions which prematurely ended its earthly life. Yet even this is known to Me since eternity, and I do not forcefully interfere so as not to enslave people's will.

Nevertheless, the act of Salvation will be completed, and everything will come to pass as destined by My eternal plan of Salvation. Even the most perfect spirits from the heavens will temporarily embody themselves in order to achieve spiritual progress amongst people, for without such help the latter will be too weak to resist. And then the dead will rise from their graves, that is to say, those who are spiritually totally blind can be awakened and enabled to see through a bright flash of light from above .... But then it will be the time of the last days when My return can be expected, which was constantly proclaimed by seers and prophets. And prior to My coming the greatest light on earth will shine in modest apparel. Yet again it will proclaim Me as he had done

before My appearance in the flesh on this earth, before I commenced My teaching of people to whom I wanted to bring the Gospel .... He was My forerunner and will be it again. You humans will recognise him by his words, after all, he will be using the same words and will testify of Me as he once did before. His spirit will return to earth in order to fulfil the law whereby he has to precede Me in complete awareness of his origin and his task. He understands everything and also knows his earthly fate, which he will not avoid as it is part of the act of Salvation, in which he will participate for love of the unredeemed. He knows that his mission is only fulfilled with his death and has no other desire but for final unification with Me, his Lord and Master, his Friend and Brother, his Father since eternity.

And once he appears the end will be near, for I will follow him shortly and fulfil My proclamations. However, My return will be the final act before the earth's total destruction and everything that lives on it .... Then comes to pass what is written. A new heaven and a new earth will arise where I will dwell in the midst of My Own, where there will only be one shepherd and one flock, because all those who live will be united with Me and allow My presence. For all children on the new earth will be My children to whom I will come Myself to bestow utmost happiness on them ....

Amen

# Process of conveying the Word from above ...

***B.D. 4907 from June 1st 1950, taken from Book No. 55***

Accept My Words as purest truth and also always acknowledge Me as the Originator of what you receive as a dictation. Regard the form of transcription as being given word for word but not that a sentence is taking shape in your thoughts. This characteristic ought to disperse your doubts, should you succumb to such. The activity of thought cannot be compared to this way of writing, because a person's will usually dictates the direction of the former, that is, a person chooses a subject before he intellectually, by way of active thinking, works out the details, whilst a spiritual dictation, a genuine proclamation from above, excludes such deliberations, because the subject is unknown to the person and is effectively only given when the writing down of the dictation starts. The fact that the person can mentally comprehend what he is writing does not warrant the assumption that he himself performs the mental work as he only receives what he writes down. In fact, I also subject a person who earnestly wants to be of service to Me to tests of faith and willpower and repeatedly will expose him to temptations in which he should prove himself, that is, in which he voluntarily has to keep

turning to Me in order to pass the tests of faith; yet the strength of My Word will protect him from falling away as soon as he allows himself to be affected by it.

However, you keep asking yourselves what you should regard as My Word .... I will always speak to you if you want to hear Me .... The only decisive factor is whether your heart desires to hear My voice. As soon as you want to hear Me I will indeed speak to you .... The idea that I might withdraw and deny you My strength is wrong, for I know what your heart desires and what you would like to know, and therefore I will also reply to unspoken questions and this truly according to truth. But whether you understand the answer correctly, whether you accept it according to truth or give yourselves a different interpretation is entirely up to you, yet it must always be taken into consideration. My Word is eternal truth but who stops you from interpreting My Word according to your liking because your will impels you to do so? Nevertheless the meaning of My Word remains unchanged, and you will also learn to understand the true meaning and recognise that only purest truth was imparted to you and that you only received what was given to you by My love. For I protect all those from misconceptions who want to be of service to Me and are of good will ....

Amen

# 'I Myself Am the Word ...' The disciples' Gospel ...

*B.D. 4909 from June 4th 1950, taken  
from Book No. 55*

Engross yourselves in the Gospel I send to you from above and you will realise that it is the same that My disciples had written down, who did so on My instruction. It is always Me Myself Who speaks to you humans if you accept My Word, wherever it may be. I spoke to people through My disciples and still do so today, because My love is not restricted and neither is My Word, that is, the emanation of My love, which expresses itself through My Word and will never end, which you will certainly understand when you know what My Word fundamentally is. I Myself Am the Word ... This alone must prove to you that I have not committed Myself to letters and that My Word will always and forever be conveyed to the spiritual essence which has embodied itself on earth as a human being. My Word will certainly forever remain the same because, being the only truth, it can never be changed by Me, yet you humans rearrange it through your will, you assign a different meaning to My Word, as long as you are not yet spiritually enlightened. And for this reason alone I must repeatedly convey My Word to earth, so that My Word will come true: Heaven and Earth shall pass away: but My Words shall not pass away. ... **My** Word, the pure



Gospel from the heavens, which time and again provides you with the evidence of Myself and My love. As long as you humans are still imperfect you will not keep anything of perfection the way it is .... Instead, you will always strive to change it, precisely because you are imperfect. It is a natural law that nothing will remain pure as soon as it comes into an impure environment, and human will is far more inclined towards that which is imperfect and will always try to drag down what is above himself.

Nevertheless, it is free will, which will not be interfered with from My side, hence I will never keep My teaching pure by force, instead, I will repeatedly convey the pure truth again **to those of you who desire it**. People will never become aware of the distortion of My originally pure teaching if they do not profoundly desire the truth themselves, otherwise the error would not be so widespread. And neither will they accept anything that is offered to them by Me with love, for they are spiritually blind, they keep to the letter and remain untouched by the spirit of My Word. I will never expend Myself, and I will never stop bestowing the emanation of My eternal love upon humanity. And therefore I will never stop descending personally to people in the Word .... which I promised you with the Words: I Am with you always, even unto the end of the world .... If I therefore want to stay with you Myself, then you must also be able to hear Me, for I Am life, I Am strength and thus also the Word of eternity, which manifests itself as life and strength, light and love. I do not want you humans to look upon Me as a distant God. I want to be a Father to you, always close and

always willing to give you Words of love if you want to hear them. Just as I once spoke to people when I lived on earth, just as I spoke to My disciples after My ascension to Heaven in whom I continued working in spirit as before on earth, that is how I also **always** want to speak to people like to My children, I want to convey Words of love and wisdom to them in order to reveal Myself to them as God, Creator and Father of eternity. And therefore I will never stop being present to My earthly children in the Word, and yet I will only ever impart to them the same that My disciples also received as Gospel from Me, because it is the pure truth, which shall remain, even if Heaven and Earth pass away ....

Amen

## **Humility - Arrogance ... Danger ...**

***B.D. 4919 from June 22nd 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

I bestow My grace upon the humble, to the arrogant I deny it, for arrogance smothers love, whereas humility awakens it. And for this reason all My love belongs to the humble which showers him with grace beyond measure. Someone with heartfelt love for his fellow human being

cannot be haughty to him but regard him as his brother and help him because of love; this is why the humble person will carry out deeds of neighbourly love, for which I will bless him and reward him in turn with My love and grace. An arrogant person's heart is hard and unfeeling, he does not serve but wants to dominate and will therefore be disregarded by Me, because this feeling, the need to dominate, was the reason for the past apostasy from Me which can only be atoned for through profound humility towards Me, hence humility also signifies returning to Me. The spiritual being had sunk very low due to arrogance, however, in the stage as a human being it has already ascended to a certain level but now it is in greatest danger of succumbing to arrogance again, of elevating himself, and this manifests itself in heartlessness towards his fellow human beings. The fact that the human being, due to arrogance, also deprives himself of all means to ascend further, that he thereby forfeits My grace, is the greatest danger to which I always draw your attention, so that you will not plunge into the abyss again of your own fault. Everything that is domineering still belongs to My adversary, who remains in utter opposition to Me and believes himself capable of overthrowing Me. Having once been the highest bearer of light he became My adversary because he elevated himself above Me .... he believed he was able to place himself **above** Me and plunged into the deepest abyss.

Arrogance is the first step into a bottomless fall ....  
humility, in contrast, is the ladder to higher spheres, the

safest bridge to Me .... For the person who receives My grace will safely reach his goal, because My grace signifies help, My support and My guidance. Consider your past sin which separated you from Me, consider My greater than great love which wants to draw you back to Me; consider your weakness and imperfection and how very distant you are, then you will bow your head with utmost humility and longingly stretch your hands out to Me, and then I will take hold of you with My love and grace and provide you with everything you need in order to reduce your distance from Me, in order to return to Me from Whom you originated. But woe to you if you never become aware of your distance from Me, if you deem yourselves too exalted as to pray to Me with profound humility .... In that case you cannot receive grace, then you are still under the control of the one who made you fall, then you can never become free from the sin of your past arrogance, for without My grace you will never ever become blissfully happy ....

Amen

**Extraordinary events are  
signs of the approaching  
end ....**

## ***B.D. 4928 from July 9th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

Everything points to the end and if you humans pay careful attention to the events around you, you will also recognise that I Am speaking to you through them, that through them I want to draw your attention to the end and your special mission of being leaders in the final battle of faith. I want to strengthen your faith in My Word, but I also want to help your fellow human beings to gain faith, since they either cannot find it or are too weak to advocate it. I want to speak to all of you by every conceivable means so that you will not fail in the final battle of faith on this earth. Nevertheless, I will always take account of the fact that you live in an extremely materialistic world, that you have little contact with the kingdom which emanates the truth and that it is far more difficult for you to believe because you no longer carry Me in your hearts lively enough, since you distanced yourselves from the manifestation of Jesus Christ to such an extent that, due to your unbelief, you receive little strength. You do not accept the truth conveyed to you from the spiritual kingdom; you do not grant credence to the teachers, who are My servants. But I nevertheless do not want to let you fall and will approach you time and again with references to the end, with images by seers which will become public knowledge, with predictions by prophets which will also be heard by those who have no interest in the end and the last Judgment. I also know

many people's struggle for faith and I would like to give them a sign too, which, however, shall not compel them to believe. I want to make them question and become reflective, this is all I intend to achieve with extraordinary events during the last days, for once they spend serious thought on it I will be able to approach them in My Word and instruct them according to the truth. They will only be open-minded for My Word if it is made accessible to them as My evident working through the spirit, for I can only give them the pure truth through My Word. And only through the Word from above can something be proven to them which they would otherwise find incredible, but it cannot be proven by the sign itself, because the sign only speaks to the intellect and not to the human being's heart. You humans must always be aware of the fact that you are living in the endtime, that there will be an increase in signs which cannot be explained in an earthly way and which will visibly point to another world ... Anyone who recognises them as such will derive benefit from them, but anyone who bypasses these as well, will have to fear the final end because it will result in his downfall ....

Amen

# **God's will: Fulfilment of the commandments of**

# love ....

## ***B.D. 4932 from July 12th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

My will plainly manifests itself in My commandment of love for God and other people. It includes everything you should and should not do, and if you therefore fulfil these commandments you will approach your perfection. For then you will neither be able to sin again nor remain within the old sin which consisted of the fact that you had voluntarily distanced yourselves from Me, thus you denied Me love and consequently became heartless towards all living creations which originated from Me. And thus your love for Me, if you fulfil My commandments, signifies renewed unification with Me and illumination by My strength of love, so that your past nature of light and strength will be restored again and you will possess full realisation and be able to work and create in line with your own will .... so that you will be perfect again, that is, you will have shaped yourselves into divine beings again which you were in the very beginning.

For this reason you humans must first know My will, so that you can live accordingly in order to become blessed. You have to be informed of My will and thus you have to listen to My Word which clearly and understandably reveals My will to you. My Word familiarises you with My

commandment of love, with your obligation towards Me and your fellow human beings; My Word explains your distance from Me if you don't try to reduce it yourselves; My Word informs you of My love, grace and mercy, of My wisdom and omnipotence, so that the flame of love for Me can ignite itself if only your heart is willing to love. My Word also describes your fellow human beings as My children whom you therefore should approach like brothers, to whom you should also give your love if you want to fulfil My will. My Word cautions and admonishes you and draws your attention to the consequences of a wrong way of life, of a heartless way of life, by failing to observe My commandments. You have to accept My Word if you want to become blissfully happy. But leave it to Me as to how My Word shall be conveyed to you, just be willing to accept it when I offer it to you, for you can only discover My will through My Word and only through living in accordance with My will can you become blessed ....

Amen

## **Strength of faith of a living but wrong belief ....**

***B.D. 4936 from July 16th 1950, taken  
from Book No. 56***



Only a few people follow the right and true faith, hence the faith which utterly corresponds to the truth. But I also respect the faith of those who are not instructed in the truth, who also have a living faith in what they were taught, who therefore, for love of Me and their neighbour, gained a living faith to which they hold fast for fear that they might sin. They trust in Me and are convinced that I will grant their prayer, and I do not disappoint such faith, which goes to show that even wrong believers can receive remarkable help by virtue of their faith, but then it should not be assumed that what they believe is **true**, instead, merely the strength of a **living** faith can be recognised through it. Nevertheless I also try to convey the pure truth to them, for one day they will have to accept it in order to become blessed .... if not on earth, then in the beyond. Yet it will be far more difficult to get through to them with the truth because wrong teachings are too deep-rooted in them and time after time My adversary tries to combine new misguided teachings with the truth, and the more blindly people believe, that is, if they don't think about the spiritual knowledge they are given, the easier it will be for him. **Love**, however, is the decisive factor, for love illuminates the spirit. In a loving person reservations will arise by themselves and the correctness of what is presented as truth will be doubted. This is why a loving person is often discerning and can detach himself sooner than others from wrong doctrines, or his faith becomes so alive through love that He sees in Me the most loving and powerful Being to Whom nothing is impossible .... which

also gives rise to profound faith in the miraculous power of certain things, which I will not disappoint, even if he diverts from the truth and no doctrine can ever meet My approval which leads people astray. Everything is certainly possible to Me, yet only a person's childlike love and unlimited trust in My help motivates Me to grant it to him, for I have given you humans the promise that I will not disappoint a firm faith, that I will give you whatever you request, if you pray in spirit and in truth. And a firm and indisputable faith also guarantees a prayer in spirit and in truth ....

Amen

## **Prediction of the natural disaster ... Dead stretches of land ...**

***B.D. 4940 from July 21st 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

The last end will be preceded by an enormous event which is bound to make all people think who survive it. It will be an indication of the end, a small scale destruction compared to the final work of destruction of this earth, yet of such an extent as never experienced by humanity since the earth came into existence. It is a natural

happening which will throw all affected people or those who hear about it into turmoil, for the consequences of the incident are too vast as to go unnoticed. So-called dead stretches of land will form which exhibit no life whatsoever because the vapours of the earth smother all life in these areas. An obvious influence by natural forces will be recognisable so that this phenomenon cannot be traced back to human activity because I want to reveal Myself through this happening in order to make the near end credible to people, which seers and prophets are constantly proclaiming on My instructions. People are faced by renewed suffering and yet cannot be spared this suffering as long as they still pay tribute to the world and only take notice of Me in passing. They must look for Me so that I can let Myself be found, which can only be accomplished by an event which can no longer be explained with people's activity. They must sense that a higher power is behind it and entrust themselves to this power in their earthly adversity. But in order to do so they must also be at the mercy of this power in order to take refuge in it of their own accord. They must physically be without help in order to noticeably feel the help from above ....

And for this reason a violent storm will arise which will uproot and lift everything off the ground; the earth will split open and from above and below people will find themselves at the mercy of the elements which they will be unable to fight as they will not have enough strength; an unbearable heat will, in fact, have already rendered

people incapable and lethargic beforehand and so they will watch the first signs in nature without interest until they recognise their grim situation and then they will almost brutally fight for their life which they fear to lose. And I will help all those in their adversity who are of good will; I will provide them with realisation so that they can recognise **My** reign and activity in all happenings and as a result of this insight also instruct their fellow human beings and encourage them to turn to Me, and they will preach to them about My love, wisdom and omnipotence so that they will call upon Me when they are in danger. I want to be their Leader, and those who believe in Me and want to serve Me shall be saved during all hardship of the last days before the end. For shortly after this event follows the destruction of the old earth, as it is written. Yet people shall not experience this destruction unprepared, hence I will cast a shadow beforehand .... a final indication which should be given credence, so that people will not walk into eternal ruin, so that they will be able to save themselves if only they use their will correctly ....

Amen

**'Thou art Peter, the rock,  
and upon this rock I will  
build My church ....'**

## ***B.D. 4942 from July 27th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

I certainly established a church on earth but I did not want an organisation .... I say this to all those who interpret My Word 'Thou art Peter, the rock, and upon this rock I will build My church' such that I Myself Am the founder of worldly organisations which call themselves the true church of Christ. Like all My Words these, too, were intended to be understood spiritually, in fact, they are very easy to comprehend if the faith of My disciple Peter is understood as a rock, which everyone must possess in order to belong to My true church. My church is a purely spiritual foundation; it is to be understood as a community with a faith as rock-hard as Peter's, but never the amalgamation of people in a purely secular organisation, which has to be called secular because everything that proves the affiliation to this organisation must be outwardly recognisable and because further regulations or laws were decreed which inhibit a person's thinking and actions, which entirely contradicts My will. It is My will that people wanting to belong to My church should strive towards Me of their own free will, which necessitates faith in Me as well as love .... Neither can be enforced nor achieved through regulations; love for Me does not awaken as a matter of duty but through faith in My perfection, and although this faith can be taught, it cannot be demanded. The human being must bring himself to believe after he has received knowledge of

Me, of his Creator and Father of eternity. A human being only becomes a member of My church through this self-attained faith, therefore My church cannot be an organisation with a mass of members who lack living, self-attained faith. For although faith and love are being preached, the listeners must nevertheless first activate their will in order to acquire the right of belonging to the church which was founded by Me.

And therefore I repeatedly emphasise that people could not have formed this church by establishing an organisation in which, like in any worldly organisation, leaders of various ranks work, to whom I have never appointed such a ministry, whose functions are more of a ruling than a serving nature and who are often not members of the church I founded themselves because they, too, only believe blindly what they were taught and as yet have neither acquired a convinced faith through deliberation nor a living faith through activity of love. Hence these believe themselves to be My representatives on earth, and yet they are unable to convey truthful knowledge to people because they don't possess it themselves. They feel that they are Peter's successors but they are not because their faith lacks the strength of a rock as soon as it is tested. The church founded by Me will prove itself .... not even the gates of hell will defeat it. But once the walls of the former are shaken, which is intended by My will, it will not survive and only blindly believing fanatics will remain steadfast but not on account of conviction but because of

fanaticism which is not valued by Me as faithfulness. For I want people to think about everything they encounter, and it is My will that they shall acquire vision and don't remain blind due to their own fault. I also want them to think about My Words: Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it .... I want people to reflect on how these Words of Mine are to be understood: It is My will that they should be truthfully interpreted and you humans also recognise when human interpretation does **not** correspond to the spiritual meaning which I have placed into My Words. And you will be able to recognise it if you dwell on it with willingness for the pure truth when you are taught by those who call themselves My representatives on earth. My true representatives are certainly informed of the truth and can therefore also provide their fellow human beings with a correct explanation regarding My Word and its deeper spiritual meaning. However, My representatives also belong to the church founded by Me, even though they are not members of an earthly organisation. My true representatives will also announce in My name to all spiritual organisations the end of their existence, because everything that has distanced itself from the real truth will fade away, even if people are convinced that that church will be invincible. Only the church which I Myself have founded on earth will be invincible, which is a spiritual community of those with a faith like Peter's and who, through this faith, shape themselves into My image, who can indeed have a living faith because they

are instructed in the truth, who allow My spirit to be effective in them, which always is and will remain a sign of affiliation to the church I have founded ....

Amen

## **Antichrist ... The faith is in danger ...**

***B.D. 4947 from August 6th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

The Antichrist will irresponsibly proceed against all who still believe in a God of heaven and earth. For he will force people to deny their faith which, on My part, is entirely a matter of the human being's free will. He will force them by threatening measures which appear intolerable to people, hence they will be too weak to resist. **The faith is in danger** .... This should make everyone think who is approached by Me through My messengers on earth, who receives My Word which I have conveyed to My messengers. The faith is in danger .... Do you know what it means having to make a public declaration and at the same time heading towards extreme earthly hardship? .... Do you know how people will pull every single religious doctrine apart with the intention to demonstrate its uselessness to you and how



little you will be able to answer? Do you know how difficult they will make it for you to stand firm in faith of Me, your God and Father of eternity? How they will take and destroy everything that hitherto seemed irrefutable to you?

Everyone who determinedly rejects their demand of denying Me will be treated brutally, and in the face of this many will weaken and betray Me without resistance, for they lack the strength of faith which arises from the pure truth. I want to draw your attention to this time and enlighten you in advance, because I know every individual person's character and the spiritual adversity you will experience resulting from My adversary's activity, who can be distinctly recognised by the Antichrist's measures. And I want to inform you of his success .... since he will fight with much cunning and force he will find many followers .... He will succeed in doing what many before him had failed to do, he will shake the faith which seemed unshakable .... He will overturn religious doctrines with the greatest of ease for he will be an effective speaker and will show people the error of their thinking, and those who don't carry Me in their heart will cheer him on and agree with him, considerably strengthening his power even more.

He will achieve what no-one else has achieved before .... he will overthrow a power which was deemed insurmountable. But there is **one** wall he will not be able to pull down, he will meet with one resistance, namely wherever My fighters are under My guidance .... There he

will fight in vain, for My fighters will be invincible since they will be protected by the shield of faith which is so alive that it is strength in itself and cannot be shaken. These fighters of Mine will draw the strength directly from Me, for they will be able to hear and even see Me and not succumb to any temptation .... they will be enlightened and therefore will also recognise what hour has tolled and how close it is to the end .... The right knowledge will provide My Own with the strength to persevere to the end; but the majority of people will lack the right knowledge, and when it is given to them they will not accept it.

But I know what will happen and want to help you, and Am only able to do it such that you will be informed about the battle of light against darkness in the last days before the end, about My adversary's great power and your heavenly Father's even greater love and grace for everyone wanting to remain His Own, who thus have the sincere will to belong to the small flock whose shepherd I Am and whom I therefore will not abandon during the worst battle of faith which the people of this earth will still experience before their end ....

Amen

**Love for the world -  
disease ... No-one can**

# **serve two masters ....**

***B.D. 4957 from August 27th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

The love for the world is a creeping disease which will definitely lead to spiritual death. And thus you can appreciate that your Father in heaven will quite often have to resort to painful means in order to rescue you from this death, in order to enable your spiritual recovery, in order to make you relinquish the world and its pleasures and attain eternal life .... It would be misguided compassion were I to shy away from such means only to prevent you from suffering during your earthly life; it would be misguided love which would not be a blessing but only a disaster for your soul. My wisdom, however, looks ahead and My love tries to help you. The fact that you have to relinquish the world in order to attain Me is inevitable, and if you do not sacrifice it voluntarily I will have to take what is dear to your heart. And this is why you so often have to suffer on earth, even if your way of life is not blatantly evil. Yet you are still permeated by wrong love, by love for matter, by the kind of love which first has to be redirected if it is to make you happy. And as long as you don't eliminate this love from your hearts I cannot enter them, for where I stay all earthly longing must have been overcome.

And again I must say: No-one can serve two masters .... I

Am not content with shared love, however, My adversary, the prince of the World, will not allow that you do not give him the sole right over your soul either. And thus the human being has no choice but to make a decision .... for Me or for him. But as long as he desires the world his decision is for him, who pulls him down into ruin. He will indeed give you plenty during your earthly life, but after your death you will be utterly poverty-stricken in the beyond, and torment and darkness will be your fate .... My gifts, however, are less enticing on earth for they consist of spiritual possessions which have little attraction for you humans during your earthly life, but after your death they represent an immeasurable wealth which makes you blissfully happy and turns you into children of the kingdom of light forever. I offer incomparably more than My adversary, yet his gifts dazzle you and make you hanker after them. **But remember life after death ....** remember the hour of your passing away is not known to you, that it can be very soon and that you then will lose whatever earthly goods you possess. Then you will have to fear the hour of death .... Yet you will yearn for it if you have gathered spiritual treasures, if you renounce earthly goods in order to exchange them for gifts offered by Me. Then you will long for the hour of death, for you know that when you leave the earth it will be the hour of entering eternal life. Earthly life will seem like a fleeting moment to you, and yet it is decisive for the whole of eternity. And therefore you should understand it when I afflict humanity with all kinds of calamities and take everything away that seems desirable to them. It is not

cruelty but love and wisdom, which indeed realises and understands why you humans are in danger and wants to rescue you from it.

Anyone who must suffer should know himself loved by Me, but anyone who receives the possessions of life in abundance is already subject to My adversary, for I know his will and do not compel him to change it. Yet even these people will be approached by Me through their fellow human beings who shall touch their hearts so that they will change their nature into love. Then even they will still be redeemed with certainty. But if their hearts are hardened their good living standard will noticeably continue to get better, for the 'master of the world' will give to them in abundance, because they sold their soul for the sake of earthly possessions and their spiritual death will be assured to them ....

Amen

## **Suffering proves God's love ... Fire of purification ...**

***B.D. 4959 from August 31th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Accept every burden of life and know that it is necessary in order for you to deliver yourselves from every impediment which is still encumbering your soul. One day you shall freely and without hindrance dwell in spheres that are permeated by light, by that time your soul must have discarded every layer or it will be unable to receive the abundance of light, otherwise the light would meet with resistance which prevents it from entering the soul. What you have to endure on earth only makes it easier for the soul to detach itself from its oppressing shell, so that it can repel what is still tormenting it, what is still tying it down and thus keeping it enslaved. But the kingdom of the blissful spirits knows no impediments, this is why it can only accommodate the pure and wholly spiritualised soul which is free of all impurities that could prevent the permeation of light. The soul must have attained its original state again when, being light itself, it was divine and in intimate contact with the eternal Deity, because it was part of It, a spark of the Eternal Light. All impurities must have been removed first, and that means that the soul must have experienced a fire of purification, which can be the result of intense suffering but also of profound love, but which is always successful.

Hence you humans should not complain if you have to suffer, instead, consider suffering as proof of God's love, Who only ever has your soul's purification in mind in order to provide it with a blissful fate once it enters the spiritual kingdom. Then the soul will bless the suffering

and with tremendous gratitude look back on earthly life which, through suffering, resulted in the state of being receptive to light and enabled it to stay close to God in blissful happiness. On earth it is incapable of appreciating the Father's great love and kindness and often rebels against its destiny. Submission, however, guarantees more of God's love, but more suffering also assures higher maturity of soul and life in spiritual spheres in eternal beatitude ....

Amen

## **Love for God and one's neighbour ....**

***B.D. 4961 from September 2nd 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Whatever you want people to do to you when you suffer adversity you should also do to them .... That is the commandment of neighbourly love, which is the most important commandment for you because it includes the love for God at the same time. For whoever loves his neighbour like his brother also loves the Father above all else, Whose child is the neighbour. And thus you humans know what you ought to do in order to become blessed, for these two commandments are the epitome of My will,

the fulfilment of which is your earthly task. If you pay attention to these two commandments of love for God and your neighbour you will be unable to commit a sin but will live to please Me, and I will bless you in turn by increasing your realisation and wisdom, light and strength. Yet you humans also know that you are repeatedly approached by the opponent in order to push you off the right path, in order to make you desert Me. And therefore he will try to prevent you from arousing My favour .... He will try to stop you from loving Me and your neighbour and time and again persuade you to transgress these commandments of Mine. He will make you conscious of the fact that you are more important, that you should think of yourselves first and thus let selfish love dominate, so that you will have no understanding for your fellow human being's hardship and neglect Me in favour of your own endeavours .... earthly possessions, which are temporary.

And thus you will have to decide, you will have to choose Me or My adversary .... you will have to fulfil My commandments or perish in selfish love, for My adversary only wants your ruin. But the love you give Me and your neighbour will make you happy, for this love is truly strength and increases spiritual possessions. Your one and only purpose in life is to help your fellow human being, for selfless neighbourly love is the right means of release for your soul, it is the purchase price for eternal beatitude. In the spiritual kingdom, however, love is natural, whereas on earth it is an effort to rise above



oneself, because selfish love still constitutes a strong counterweight which, however, is wrongly directed love and locks the entrance to the kingdom of the blessed spirits. Love comes forth from Me and leads back to Me again, but anyone who is without love has voluntarily excluded himself from My circuit and is therefore at risk of falling prey to the one who is entirely without love because he is My opponent. That is why he has to be fought, love shall be practised and therefore My commandment always be complied with; you shall shape yourselves into love through selfless labours of love so that you will correspond to My fundamental nature, so that you will liberate yourselves from your enemy's bondage, so that you will unite with Me and be eternally happy ....

Amen

**Words of love ... Words of  
wisdom ... Teaching  
ministry ... Criticism on  
publishing ...**

***B.D. 4963 from September 6th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

In realising your task in life, which consists of distributing the pure Word of God, everything will cause your rejection that has not come forth from the primary source of truth. But they can nevertheless be Words of love with no indwelling God-opposing spirit, and everything that is not in favour of Me is good if it inspires love. In the spiritual kingdom the beings which are permitted to teach recognise each other by their radiance, it is therefore impossible for a still spiritually unenlightened being to intervene. The earthly child which willingly opens itself to the spiritual influx will be lovingly grasped and protected by the beings of light .... I, your God and Father of eternity, Am present in spirit to all those who want to be in contact with Me. I do not abandon these people, for they are My children who have already informed Me of their will. Hence they also sense My presence, they hear Words of encouragement and of comfort from Me, they hear Words of love, which I have on hand for all people who want to listen to Me. It is also My will that they speak to their fellow human beings of My love, I want them to actively stand up for Me, that they motivate their fellow human beings to establish contact with Me as well, that they therefore guide all those into a living faith who allow themselves to be led, thus who are willing to recognise Me. I also give them the ability to speak on My behalf so that they can be successful when they vividly describe My working in them by filling their hearts with profound love for Me and their subsequent hearing of divine Words of love. This has to be said to all those who can hear Me speak in spirit, to

whom I reveal Myself so that they will learn to recognise and love Me. They shall proclaim that they themselves experienced My working in them.

However, not all are assigned the task of instructing their fellow human beings, the task of imparting the divine wisdom, the eternal truth to them. For this teaching ministry requires more, only the chosen ones among those I have called shall hold such a teaching ministry and it is them who must therefore first be instructed by Me for the teaching ministry before they can work on My instructions. Anyone who wants to proclaim wisdom must be wise himself and accept his wisdom from Me, for that which should address a person's heart must also be acceptable to the intellect. Wisdom must be recognised as wisdom, for although it requires good will to do so first it must nevertheless also stand up to serious scrutiny, which can only be expected from truthful knowledge. The intellect must not be excluded where it concern the acceptance of My pure teachings of faith. Since I gave the human being the ability to think I must also provide him with knowledge which his intellect is **unable** to reject if the heart is open to My instructions. Consider this, then you will understand that not everyone can be a teacher for his fellow human beings, that a person must first have penetrated the wisdom himself before he can instruct other people. Furthermore, consider that all instructions spread through print or in writing are intended to be a blessing .... that you should therefore proceed very judiciously if you don't want to endanger

the pure truth, which cannot be taught by **everyone** who is not called to do so. For you **endanger** the truth if a serious seeker of good will discover flaws which make My nature seem implausible or imperfect to him, because his intellect also wants to form an opinion. I, your God and Father of eternity, certainly recognise your will to be of service to Me and bless you for it, yet you should not step into the public domain without My specific instruction, since you have plenty of opportunities to work in privacy, that is, in the circle I Myself bring close to you. For I look into the human hearts and know whom I bring together so that they can find Me. Yet I also know what causes deliberate rejection if it is not offered to people in the right way. I certainly give evidence of My love to all those who desire it, yet not all of them have attained the degree of maturity in order to hear My Word **audibly**, just as not every soul is capable of repeating what My love conveys to it **mentally**. For this reason such souls are not called for teaching work, although they can be very beneficial by communicating their thoughts to people in their vicinity since, if they love Me, their thoughts cannot be wrong as soon as they speak on behalf of Me and My kingdom.

On the other hand, it is quite a different situation where it concerns the public distribution of spiritual information to the human race, which lays claim to having emerged from Me directly and which should be accepted as purest truth. Then those who seriously and with good will scrutinise it intellectually must also be

able to accept it, because the pure truth, having originated from Me, can certainly stand up to any test, since it speaks for itself. Even the pure truth will meet with more rejection than acceptance, but the reason for this cannot be found in the fact that it is unacceptable for a person, but that the person, due to his God-opposing relationship, is no longer capable of recognising it. But even the person most incapable of recognising relentlessly uncovers what prevents him from accepting spiritual knowledge and is delighted if he encounters a target in order to doubt the pure truth. And you should not provide him with these targets if you want to work for Me and My kingdom. You can certainly be of service to Me and constantly present Me to your fellow human beings as a God of love and mercy; you should, wherever possible, influence your fellow human beings to practise love, by living a way of life according to My will you should be an example to them, you should strive spiritually and also strive to encourage your fellow human beings to do the same, you should sincerely unite with Me and pray to Me in spirit and in truth, and you will feel My emanation of love increasingly more, you will think, act and speak correctly and thus be My faithful fighters in the battle against the one whose aim it is to ruin all those who don't resist him. And thus you should wait until you hear My call to carry out specific work in My vineyard, for the time is not far away when I will need those of you who want to be of service to Me, and when I will assign a task to everyone according to his ability ... and blessed will be the one who serves Me ....

Amen

# **Destructive will of God's adversary ... Bound spirits - Human being ...**

***B.D. 4965 from September 10th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

Everything that is transient in the world belongs to My adversary, that is, all matter shelters imperfect spirits which My adversary once turned against Me and which therefore still oppose Me. Material Creation came into being through My will and he has no authority over it. And yet, this world belongs to him, for he can boast that the spiritual substances bound in matter are the product of his will. However, My will caused the emergence of material Creation in order to remove the spirits from their creator's control and he will never ever be able to destroy My work of love and compassion although it is his constant endeavour. He certainly would like to liberate the spirits from the bound state I placed them in for the purpose of attaining beatitude, for as **free** beings the imperfect spirits would never strive towards ascent but, under the control of My adversary, would continue to descend ever further into the abyss. For this reason I

removed his power over these spiritual beings and created forms he is unable to destroy, because they are My consolidated will. Thus, My adversary has no control over the spiritual substances which are still bound in matter .... However, he tries to use it all the more on the final material form which shelters the spiritual being, on the human being in the stage of free will .... He cannot **force** the human being to become enslaved by him yet he can seduce him in every way and try to cause him to maliciously destroy material creations as well. Thus, he uses the human being in order to accomplish his will after all .... the destruction of matter .... It is, however, up to the human being to comply with his will or to offer him resistance. And in order to win a person over for his disgraceful plans My adversary enticingly presents **that** to him which he himself would like to be destroyed. He tries to arouse or to increase the human being's greed for matter and thereby also trigger instincts in him which do not shy away from destroying matter in order to enrich himself or to amass possessions, thereby taking their actual purpose of releasing themselves through being of service away from them, because the human being himself prevents the inherent spiritual substance from being helpful.

Consequently, what the enemy is unable to destroy he wants to prevent from developing further. He tries to give permanence to that which is impermanent, if his destructive will cannot reach it. And the human being obeys him only too gladly as long as matter is enticing to

him and he constantly aims to increase it. If My adversary succeeds in tempting people into becoming destructively active, then the prematurely released spirits will wreak so much havoc that it will revoke the order, so that chaos will ensue which will also affect those people who want to withdraw from My adversary's influence. For the devious spiritual beings will cause destruction everywhere, which will always happen through My adversary's initiative who will once again exert his influence over the released spirits. This is why they will be bound again by My will ... Due to the individual person's impulse of preservation, people, whose material possessions were destroyed, will constantly create works for helpful purposes again in which the spirits which escaped from matter will be bound once more for their continued maturing. And these works will then be even more eagerly of service, because the inherent spiritual substance will sense the relief of having been integrated into the process of development again, which it involuntarily had to abandon. It will sense the benefit of order which forms the basis for all My creations, in contrast to My adversary's unlawful activity, which it is indeed subject to in a free state but which does not make it happy. The human being can, by virtue of his free will and My grace, which is at his disposal, resist My adversary and contribute considerably towards preventing him from destroying matter if he helps it to fulfil a serving function and only destroys it if matter is given a higher function of service. Then the human being will keep removing himself ever further from My adversary's influence, then



he will completely submit himself to My will by releasing himself and also help the spiritual substance in matter to progress in its development by not granting My adversary any power at all over himself and also trying to release matter from him, by making sure that the human being's will always resists My adversary ....

Amen

## **Test the spirits ... Satan's great power before the end ... Doubts ...**

***B.D. 4968 from September 17th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

You will experience ever more doubt and confusion thanks to My adversary's incentive who wants to pull you away from Me and also prevent the pure truth from establishing itself as it will glaringly highlight his activity. He is therefore always keen to isolate My followers and representatives on earth, to stop their connection with people who want to educate them and introduce them to the truth. He proceeds with great cunning and in a disguise which even My Own find difficult to recognise. He spreads his poisonous seeds all over the place to render everything which is intended to have a life-giving

effect incapable of living. He instils severe doubts in the hearts of those who work for God and His kingdom .... But anyone in doubt should turn to Me directly and I, as the eternal Truth, will help him at all times, for it is My will that the truth shall be spread and that everything shall be denounced which does not correspond to truth .... I can certainly impart the truth to you directly, however, as long as you are not receptive for communications from the spiritual kingdom you will be instructed through My messengers, and you should scrutinise their credibility, their faithfulness, that is, their way of life according to My will. Then you will be able to form a correct judgment, then you will be beneficially affected by the pure truth and you will recognise that which does not and never can come from Me.

My adversary will put even the staunchest champions of faith under severe pressure with his weapon of deception and falsehood. He, too, pretends to be devout and devoted to God if he can thereby cause confusion. He does not eschew from using the mask he hides behind and presents himself as My representative on earth, yet it is easily recognisable for anyone who wants to belong to Me and is watchful. He can be recognised; consequently, not one of My Own needs to be afraid of getting caught up in his web of lies, as long as he genuinely wants to do what is right. He can only cause confusion in weak or undecided people who have not entirely escaped from his power. And he is only able to deceive them because they don't take an examination seriously and don't keep

strictly to My Word, which always helps them to become aware.

Anyone who lives a life of love, who therefore lives up to My Word, cannot be deceived by illusive words of love, for My adversary will never preach unselfish love but always endorse that which will provide people with earthly success, even if the word 'love' is used as an excuse, for then selfish love becomes the driving force of action, which I never have preached nor ever will preach to people. The spirits which visibly or invisibly approach people must be tested, and they can certainly be recognised if the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ is mentioned to them .... if I Myself Am called upon in spirit and in truth for help with every serious scrutiny .... If complete clarification about Jesus, the Son of God, and His act of Salvation is demanded from these spirits they will have to speak up .... regardless of whether they are spiritual beings or embodied as humans. And every spiritual being which stands up for Christ and His act of Salvation, which acknowledges Him as the Son of God, is good and will never cause you harm. But if a being, be it human or spiritual, portraying itself as a saviour, as someone chosen by Me or as an anointed being designed to influence you, merely avails itself of Jesus' name in order to make you listen to it, then it is an emissary of hell which can only mislead those who are enslaved by it or the weak, who merely expect from it and its propositions worldly-material improvements, therefore they should not be spiritually acknowledged as My

messengers. My adversary has great power, especially during the last days before the end, but it will never be so great that it could be detrimental to you, My faithful followers, for if you live a life of love you will be spiritually enlightened and recognise Satan's machinations .... However, many people are still captivated by him, and they themselves grant him the power he exerts over them. He will certainly still cause much confusion amongst people, yet My Own will not fall prey to him, and even the tiniest spark of desire for truth will find Me prepared to hand out My grace so that My adversary's activity shall be recognised and abhorred. You, who are true yourselves, should therefore not fear his mask .... a heartfelt thought sent up to Me makes his influence ineffective and you will brightly and clearly recognise what is true and what is false ....

Amen

**Light - Shadow of death ....  
Deceptive light - God's help  
by means of sickness and  
suffering ....**

***B.D. 4969 from September 19th 1950,***

## ***taken from Book No. 56***

Anyone who is not impressed by My Word is still subject to the shadow of death, he does not recognise the light and deliberately keeps his eyes closed because he prefers darkness and thus prevents the light from entering. He keeps his sights on the world where deceptive lights are constantly flashing and dazzling his eyes, so that that he either fails to see the gentle light shining from the spiritual kingdom or entirely ignores it for the sake of the secular light. He is enthralled by everything of an earthly nature and, if he is approached by a messenger of light with My Word which suggests that he should renounce earthly possessions for the sake of his soul's salvation, he turns away indignantly, because he has no concept of the life of the soul and does not want to relinquish the world because he feels comfortable in it, and thus he is approaching spiritual death. My Word could provide him with spiritual treasures, My Word could give him a light which soothes his soul, My Word could awaken him to eternal life, yet he is taken in by the world and only looks for and desires that which provides his body with comfort. He remains in the dark despite the world's deceptive light .... For this reason I want to help him learn to despise the world by presenting its possessions as transient and worthless, by allowing his body to grow weak and by reminding him of his physical death. Even that which a person deems most desirable I allow to fall apart and to shatter, I let the person suffer earthly adversity and distress, bear suffering and illness

and make him realise that the world will not help him. I allow the person to plunge down from an earthly elevated position, I allow poverty to replace wealth, and only ever for the purpose of his recognising the worthlessness and impermanence of what he desires, and time and again I will make My Word accessible to him, so that he will try to find a substitute in it for the earthly things he had lost .... I let him experience darkness where no deceptive light will flash anymore, so that he will see the gently light from above and turn to it, so that he will escape from the night of death into the light of life .... This is why the suffering on earth will never end, because time and again I want to draw people to Myself who are still distant from Me and subject to the prince of the world, but whose course of life will soon be over without having resulted in success for the soul, on account of which it is embodied on earth. And in all places I will let a light shine in the darkness, and anyone who allows himself to be illuminated by its gentle glow will first move from the darkness into a dim light which he finds comforting and his desire for light will grow .... My Word will touch his heart, he will recognise it as a loving Fatherly Word, as the only path to life, and his soul will enter from the shadow of death into the land of light, into eternal life ....

Amen

## **Embodied beings of light ....**

# **Lack of past memory ... Forerunner ...**

***B.D. 4970 from September 20th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Those who want to be of service to Me ought to know the following: the spiritual state of people who live in the last days requires special help by the beings of light which work on My instructions in the spiritual realm as well as on earth, where a large number of them are embodied as human beings in order to fulfil a redeeming mission. How the beings of light work and help them is clearly evident to people who accept the spiritual information given to them, because they know that people's spiritual hardship can only be remedied through the gift of My Word from above. In view of the wide-ranging spiritual decline it would be completely impossible for My Word to gain acceptance amongst humanity, because it would neither establish the connection with the spiritual world, nor would it want to or be able to accept proclamations from this world. Therefore the world of light has to take mediating actions, the beings of light must look for suitable vessels on earth into which they can pour the emanations of My spirit and thus .... where necessary .... beings of light descend to earth as human beings in order to become a link between people and the spiritual world .... in order to

be mediators between Myself and people. Hence a large number of beings of light are embodied during the last days before the end, in which you humans live at present, in order to help you, given that you are deluded and ignorant, live a wrong way of life and are therefore in serious trouble.

You yourselves are unaware of the low spiritual level and its consequences, and if the knowledge is given to you, you won't believe it. Yet the world of light shelters inhabitants who look upon the activities in the darkness on earth with horror and want to rush to your aid in order to still help those who don't offer resistance and entrust themselves to their guidance. However, they are nevertheless human beings who thus want to help and inform you. This is why you don't recognise them, just as they don't recognise themselves as beings from above even though they, as human beings, sincerely strive to ascend .... They are human beings like yourselves and yet their will is directed towards Me, who cannot be harmed by My adversary anymore because they have already become My Own before they came to earth for the sake of the needy human race. They want to bring you the light they constantly receive from Me and which simultaneously is the strength to ascend. Yet neither are they aware of the fact that they voluntarily came to earth, for their efforts to ascend have to be clearly observable by their fellow human beings in order to encourage them to do the same. Were a being of light recognisable as such to people it would not be able to



serve them as an example, for then people who are afflicted by all weaknesses and flaws would feel incapable of ever attaining this example. Only very special, elevated spiritual beings know of their mission and origin and also inform people of it, although they will find no credence.

But such elevated beings of light will be recognisable to anyone who wants to recognise them, for their mission always involves public and not private activity, for then not just individual people but all people shall be informed of supernatural activity, of the strength and might and glory of the One, Who is Lord over life and death and the whole of creation, Who does not want His living creations to descend into darkness and therefore sends an exceedingly bright radiating light from above .... And one such light will bear witness to Me and become a talking point. And once it shines you will know that the end is not far away, that humanity has been granted just a short reprieve, for if he is not listened to and his warning call remains unsuccessful then nothing can save the unspiritual world anymore .... then the end will have come without fail as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

# **Examining deviating spiritual information ...**

# **(Spiritualism?)**

***B.D. 4971 from September 22nd  
1950, taken from Book No. 56***

Don't fail to appeal to God for clarification when you have questions or doubts in your heart, because He, Who is the eternal Truth Himself, also wants you to live in truth and brightly and clearly recognise it as such. You have the right to raise questions, as bearers of light you must be knowledgeable in order to be able to instruct your fellow human beings correctly, and thus you are entitled to criticise if you are not convinced that the spiritual knowledge you receive from external sources is the truth. In that case it is not just your right but also your duty to establish clarity for the sake of truth, in yourselves as well as in regards to those who spread error and claim it is truth. God always remains true to Himself and thus His Word will also always be the same, just as His will turns into an action in keeping with His plan of eternity. No-one will ever be able to claim to have received something from God as truth which deviates from His eternal Word, for His Word will never change. Whatever He announces through seers and prophets will come to pass according to His Word. But the meaning of His Word can be understood differently by people and therefore it is necessary to explain time and again how He wants His Word to be understood. And these explanations can only be conveyed to people from the

spiritual kingdom, which repeatedly happens through divine revelations, through the direct transmission of the pure truth, by God speaking to suitable people through the voice of their heart directly but also by way of beings of light, which themselves live in absolute truth and also want to impart it to people on earth. Consequently, only the purest truth comes forth from God as well as from the kingdom of light to people, providing they sincerely desire it and the recipient himself accepts this truth without distorting it, which depends on his degree of maturity .... God does not deny Himself to anyone who appeals to Him for the pure truth, He grants it to him without reservation, yet the applicant is not always capable of receiving spiritual knowledge, that is, of understanding it as it should be understood .... The truth comes forth purely and clearly from the spiritual kingdom, however, a heart not entirely pure will cloud it and then pass on ambiguous spiritual knowledge; this is why the degree of maturity of someone who wants to spread the truth on earth will determine its purity. The spiritual information does not come spoilt from above; instead it is distorted by the human being's will if he lacks the necessary degree of maturity which shapes him into a proper recipient of divine truth. Hence this is the explanation for **minor** variations which nevertheless cannot be considered an error.

However, completely contradictory messages from the spiritual kingdom claiming to be irrefutable truth necessitate a serious examination. For then different

forces will be the points of origin of the proclamations and should therefore be subjected to a stringent review. And again, the degree of maturity of the one who desires to receive spiritual knowledge has to be examined first, albeit this is not easy for you humans, since a person's inner nature is not so openly accessible to you as to be able to assess the person's quality. But then you must keep to the Word which was once spoken by God and which will never lose its meaning, even if eternities pass by .... If therefore an explanation completely deviates from this Word you can rightfully believe it to be a deception by dark forces which pretend to be knowledgeable and which only succeed with people who seek contact with the spiritual world without having the necessary maturity to be a receiving terminal for the pure truth. Hence their hearts are not yet pure enough in order to serve as a receiving vessel for the divine spirit but who are nevertheless spiritually arrogant .... since they want to be something they are not and so fall prey to the forces of the underworld. The latter will understandably instruct them regarding their raised questions, but not truthfully so as to deepen the darkness with error where light is sought. God imposed conditions which must be fulfilled if the human being wants to hear His Word in direct contact with Him, which guarantees purest truth .... and the first condition is to shape the heart into a worthy vessel of His spirit through selfless love .... Love includes profound humility, childlike prayer and the utter submission of will to the divine will. Anyone fulfilling these conditions can confidently establish contact with the kingdom of light

and need not fear to receive error or not to recognise the truth as such. As a recipient of divine truth he will also be able to legitimately advocate it, and his teaching, his knowledge, will always concur with the Word of God, which eternally remains as unchanged as it came forth from Him .... He will always know the truth because he will be instructed by God Himself, the Eternal Truth ....

Amen

## **False Christs and false prophets ...**

***B.D. 4977 from October 1st 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

And false Christs and false Prophets will come after Me, but do not believe them, even if they perform signs and miracles. I already informed you on earth of the machinations of those who misrepresented My pure teaching and introduced themselves as saviours of the world, who preached under the guise of piety and yet were anything but My followers. For they were not interested in love for Me and their neighbour, instead, they were only interested in power. False Christs and prophets only ever appeared for a purpose which was far removed from My will. They certainly preached the

shaping into love but the preachers themselves did not strive for it, and so their words lost strength and truth, consequently, they could not be true prophets and proclaim Me accurately to people, even though they mentioned My name and used Me time and again for the sake of pursuing a purpose. This could only be followed by a time of confusion, a time when I was no longer properly recognised, even by people with better intentions. For the words of those proclaiming the Gospel no longer contained My spirit, now people were **governed** by a worldly spirit instead of being lovingly guided in My will on the right path to Me, the spirit of the Antichrist was already strongly represented and the fruits of his activity became evident: Distortion of My teaching of love, greed for power, pride, deluded thinking towards those who lived according to My will and to whom I was able to reveal Myself. These revelations meant nothing to them, they were suppressed because they undermined what people had built up, because they were the pure truth which the latter could not abide by, since they lived for the world and had worldly aspirations .... Anyone who seriously turned away from the world and towards Me also soon recognised the error and the danger it signified for humanity. However, anyone who does not recognise it has therefore fallen prey to the one who governs the world, who is My adversary and wants to corrupt people. False Christs and false prophets will arise .... Every person who does not know the truth has fallen prey to a false Christ, because he allowed himself to be misled by his apparently divine speeches, which lacked truth because

the preacher himself did not live a life of love and therefore did not know the truth. Nevertheless, he portrayed himself as My representative and threatened them with temporal and eternal punishments .... He is a disgraceful prophet, for he thereby distorts My teaching of love, he falsely testified to Me, as I Am not a God of wrath but a God of love instead .... He neither speaks the truth nor is he able to speak it because he does not possess it .... Therefore he instructs people wrongly and yet educates them in the belief of knowing the only truth. My reference to false Christs and prophets mainly concerns teachers who spread errors amongst their fellow human beings, because they speak in My name and yet do not testify to Me correctly. But I want to highlight their activity and denounce their misguided teachings .... I want to help people of good will to gain realisation .... I want to send bearers of light amongst people who are authorised to speak in My name because I have chosen them Myself .... who are also capable of speaking in My name because I Am instructing them Myself. These will very certainly be recognisable as My messengers, as true bringers of light, and no-one of good will and who hates life will be able to call them false prophets. Only someone who wants to hold on to errors will not acknowledge them and portray them as Satan's emissaries, because he avoids the light. The world is approaching the end, and thus more false prophets will appear, but in the same way My messengers will also emerge as their adversaries, so that people will recognise the value and worthlessness of both if they want to put

them to the test. Where false Christs and prophets are spoken of, genuine ones must also exist, and these are very recognisable, for they enlighten people and announce the Last Judgment. In contrast, the false ones confuse people and teach them to live, but not according to My will but for their own pleasure instead. Genuine prophets proclaim My Word in its purest form, the false ones use My Word as well, yet they always pursue earthly goals with it, trying to attain advantages, power and riches. Anyone who receives from Me will pass it on to his fellow human beings without demanding a reward for it, but those who ask for payment have not received the gift they distribute from **Me**. This, too, is a sign by which false Christs and prophets can be recognised, for spiritual gifts are priceless treasures which may never be valued in an earthly way or they will judge the one who allows himself to be paid for them. For every gift shall be distributed with love, even more so spiritual gifts, which My love has intended for people and conveys to them time and again so that they will be saved ....

Amen

# **Ten Commandments ....**

## **First and second commandment ....**



## ***B.D. 4978 from October 3rd 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

You shall be given the guiding principles by which you should live on earth and fulfil My will: You always have to keep My Commandments of love in mind and then you will never be able to sin, because a life of love is at all times a life within My eternal order and then it is impossible to sin. My Commandment of love towards God and your neighbour incorporated the laws and the prophets, hence the Ten Commandments given to Moses were not eliminated by My Commandments of love but merely confirmed. The Ten Commandments were integrated at the same time in My Two Commandments, wherein I required love for Me and your neighbour .... You shall give all your love only to one God, thus only one Being should represent to you what you wholeheartedly aspire to, what you love and worship, what you strive to reach. Nothing shall exist to you that could replace or displace this most perfect Being, your God, because all else a person still deems desirable are gods which reduce the love for your God and therefore cannot be tolerated beside Me. Your love shall fully and completely relate to Me, your God, Creator and Father of eternity. Because as a result of this love your conduct in life, your will and your knowledge will be shaped. Anyone who loves Me more than anything else has gained everything, Me Myself, My love and eternal life close to Me .... This commandment is the first commandment, nevertheless it

also includes the second commandment, love for your neighbour. Because the love for what I created is also an acknowledgment of love for Me, and therefore both commandments are not to be separated from each other. So that you will learn to believe firmly and steadfastly you shall sense My nearness and feel that I Myself Am speaking to you and take notice of all your thoughts and requests, even if they are not voiced. I will always share your inner life, I will know your questions and always will want to answer them just as soon as you give Me the opportunity, i.e. as soon as you mentally present the question to Me and patiently wait for the answer .... You will always receive the reply as soon as you attune yourselves to receive it, thus by listening within yourselves, from where the answer will emerge.

And thus hear the explanation of the commandment: Second Commandment. 'You shall not take the name of your Lord in vain ....' I Am and remain the highest and most perfect Being for you, Whom you nevertheless can contact at any time. I want you to unite with Me, to strive for unity with Me; I want you to call for Me because by doing so you inform Me of your will; I want you never to exclude Me from your thoughts, I want to be the First and the Last to you, I want you to share with Me everything that moves you, I want you to come to Me for advice and completely confide in Me, and humbly submit to My will .... But I do not want you to take My name in vain without the involvement of your heart .... I do not want you to live a life of pretence, I do not want you to appear

to the world as My children who are sincerely devoted to their Father and in reality are very distant from Me. I do not want you to speak My name before the world and make the connection with Me absolutely impossible due to your attitude, due to your conduct which does not correspond to My will but which remains hidden from other people because you are constantly using My name in order to deceive them. You are using My name in vain when your heart and mouth do not agree with each other, when your mouth speaks differently than your heart feels. Then it is truly better for you to openly turn away from Me, because then you would lack all knowledge, whereas by mentioning My name you are admitting to know Me although you still dislike Me in your heart. You don't mislead Me but you certainly mislead your fellow human beings, and thus you are playing a game of falsehood and deceit with Me. You should become conscious of the fact that the deceptive mentioning of your God's name will double your sin, that you are more or less using Me as a cover for your wrong way of life, that you want to cause confusion amongst those who still believe and to whom I Am the highest and most perfect Being. I should punish you for every call to Me and every mentioning of My name from your mouth but I acknowledge your free will and put up with your sacrilege which, however, at times makes the believers wonder and doubt their faith. Therefore every mentioning of My name without sincerity is a temptation for the believer for which I will hold you to account one day. It is belittling Me, Whom you do not acknowledge and yet use to veil your true nature, Whom

you thus try to turn into an accessory otherwise you would openly turn away from Me and not try to conceal your way of life. The deceptive mentioning of My name is a lie which will avenge itself badly when all sin will be revealed one day, it is a flagrant violation of the commandment of love for God and the next person ....

Amen

## **Third, fourth, fifth and sixth commandment ....**

***B.D. 4979 from October 4th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

'You shall keep the Sabbath Day holy ....' This commandment is meant to make you conscious of the fact that you are indebted to Me, that earthly life was given to you for a specific purpose, that you should sincerely strive to make contact with Me .... that you should cross the bridge to Me, that you should leave the world behind and, through contemplation, heartfelt prayer and silent dialogue with Me, move yourselves into the spiritual kingdom: .... That you thus keep a true Sabbath Day, that you take a period of rest from the rushing and racing of the world, in which you certainly live but which should not turn you into slaves. In Me

alone should you recognise your Lord, and it is Me Whom you should serve and thus you should frequently stop for an hour of rest, when your thoughts are with Me even when you perform your earthly duty and are constantly active. The more you can detach yourselves from the earthly world, the more often you connect with Me in thought, the more convincingly will you recognise Me as your God and Father of eternity and thus, by fulfilling this commandment of keeping the Sabbath Day holy, you once again simply fulfil the commandment of love for Me. But your love shall also apply to your neighbour. Who, however, is your neighbour? All people with whom you come into contact .... your love shall belong to all of them .... When I, through Moses, gave people the Ten Commandments it was necessary to make people particularly aware of their mistakes and bad habits, because their love had grown cold for all people in their surroundings. Even the children no longer practised love, it was a state of wickedness, depravity, and selfishness .... For this reason the commandment of love for your neighbour had to be presented to them in every detail. They ignored all divine order, and thus they had to be given several commandments which, indeed, are all included in the commandment of love for your neighbour but which also need to be observed by people today if they don't want to infringe against love.

You shall honour your parents, offer them the love of a child and always be obedient to them. You should always remember that they, with selfless love, are preparing you

to become human beings and thus enable you to live earthly life for the purpose of higher development, that they were given this task by Me, that you should thus repay the innate love they give to you and which is motivating them to physically and psychologically take care of you. You owe them your life and thus should honour them and return their care for you until the end of their life. Then I, too, will look upon you with pleasure and give you My love because by loving your parents you show a warm and loving heart which will also love Me, once it has recognised Me as the eternal Father from Whom all living creations emerged, who He wants to shape into His rightful children. Only love will turn you into My children, and anyone who loves and honours His parents will also love the Heavenly Father and be blessed by Him ....

Amen(04.10.1950) 'You shall not kill ....' This commandment also fulfils itself if your neighbour is looked upon with love. Because love will never damage him and even less endeavour to take his life. It does not merely concern the human being's life on earth which the heartless person intends to take; it concerns the opportunity of development which can only successfully change the human being into a child of God on earth. You therefore burden yourselves with an irresponsibly severe guilt when you violate a human being's life, when you forcibly end it and by doing so unlawfully rob the soul of My gift of grace. You are committing a double sin, against your neighbour as well as against Me, as in fact every

offence against the commandment of love for other people is an offence against your love for Me, because you also indirectly refuse to love Me, Who created your neighbour. To end an earthly life should never be endorsed even if honourable motives give cause to it. Because once again it is decisive that the soul only received the body's life for the purpose of higher development. You should not consider earthly life, the life of the body, as the most important and consequently only take the body's life into account. But far less should you deem earthly life so unimportant that you think you may end it arbitrarily. The person who unlawfully takes another person's life will be pursued by an inconceivable vindictiveness on earth and even in the spiritual kingdom and, furthermore, due to such acts of hatred and heartlessness he will lapse into deepest darkness himself for he will have devoted himself to Satan who, in order to prevent all higher development, endeavours to destroy the life that I awakened. He has transferred his willingness to sin to the person and thus has used him to commit an evil act which, however, the person could have refused to commit of his own free will. He was not forced to sin .... But when earthly rulers bring force to bear, when a human being acts in self-defence in order to protect his own life, when his inner being resists an act of most blatant heartlessness and yet is unable to oppose earthly law, the attitude of the person acting against this commandment will always be taken into account. However, if the person violates the commandment wholeheartedly he will be held fully responsible because

he ignores My commandment of love and belongs to My adversary ....

Amen

### **Third, fourth, fifth and sixth commandment ....**

'You shall not commit adultery ....' This area is particularly significant because it incorporates everything in relation to carnal desires. It concerns the sensual orientation, the active expression on the sexual level. Indeed, I Myself gave the right for this with the Words 'Be fruitful and multiply ....' I Myself created humanity such that the bodies of a man and a woman long to unite, nevertheless the final purpose of the latter is just procreation. And since the human being has free will it is up to him to control himself or to fully express himself without self-control. What on one hand is blessed by Me can, on the other hand, be a most welcome opportunity for the adversary to entice the person into sin, although he will always be conscious of it because every sexual activity, every fulfilment of carnal lust pulls the human being down and even places him below the animal, which only acts out its instinct in accordance with natural law. But the human being has his freedom of will because he should learn to control himself, because he should suppress his body in order to help the soul to ascend. The sensual instincts are the greatest obstacle for the spiritualisation of the soul. And yet I created the human being such that carnal desire can pester him greatly if he allows himself to be controlled by it .... if he has no will to



resist the temptations which are always caused by My adversary. The commandment I gave to you, not to commit adultery, is a serious one ... And adultery is every impure way of life which in truth signifies an unlawful conduct against My law of order .... a misuse of the natural process of procreation for the purpose of awakening human life. Two people should find each with other pure, unselfish love, and a subsequent conception as a result of such love will never be a sin because it complies with My eternal law of order. However, all sensual passion without love is of utmost danger for the soul, which will lapse into spiritual darkness and only with utmost difficulty will be able to lift itself out of it. Carnal desire is selfish love to the highest degree which stifles all unselfish love for a fellow human being, because nothing is sacred to such a person, he does not honour and respect his fellow human being but merely takes advantage of him .... He takes what does not belong to him, and thus sins against the commandment of love for one's neighbour in many different ways. Anyone whose soul genuinely endeavours to ascend also knows that he should not enjoy life entirely uninhibited because he will feel that his soul is pulled down and that it will have to make an incredible effort in order to lift itself up again. A right kind of marriage will never find My disapproval or I would not have created humanity to reproduce itself, however, boundaries can easily be exceeded, and every excess is a breach of the marriage wanted by Me through natural law .... the coexistence of man and woman for the purpose of humanity's reproduction .... But I know

people's nature, I know their weakness of will and My adversary's extremely powerful influence .... I do not condemn those who sin but I Am giving them the commandment for their own benefit, and anyone who follows it will also love Me and his neighbour, he will travel the path of ascent easier than those who give free reign to their bodily instincts at the expense of their soul ....

Amen

## **Dogma: Mary's ascension ....**

***B.D. 4980 from October 5th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Your spiritual development depends on your attitude to truth. Anyone who looks for it will find it and progress without fail, anyone who rejects it or is indifferent to it cannot gain spiritual advancement, since he does not live with love either, which is closely connected to truth. People's response to truth corresponds to their response to Me, Who Himself is eternal truth as well as love. And thus you will understand that I will always endeavour to convey the truth to people, since error understandably has to retract away from Me. Every inaccuracy has to be rectified and misguided teachings exposed because they poison people's thoughts and consign the soul into the

hands of the one who is the representative of lies. Hence it cannot be tolerated that people are offered error in form of religious dogma which they have to accept. Any doctrine demanding compulsory acceptance meets My disapproval, even if it corresponds to the truth, for faith in such a doctrine does not result in any benefit for the soul. It is far worse, however, if a misguided teaching is forced on people which is of no use for the development of the soul. No measure can ever meet My approval which restricts the human being's free will .... And every dogma is an infringement of free will .... In any case, it is inconsequential for the ensuing generations how the mother of Jesus left earth because, as long as people are not spiritually advanced enough to comprehend the process of a soul's spiritualisation, the portrayal of ascension will only result in darkness again. Complete lack of understanding will result in doubt and disbelief.

However, the ascension of Christ is a different matter. He was, after all, the divine Redeemer, Who had to be obeyed by every power and Who accomplished the act of Salvation for all human beings. Hence, all human beings should also receive knowledge of Him, and His earthly life from beginning to end should therefore be known and comprehensible to people. His ascension was the conclusion of divine activity on earth, his ascension was the culmination, it was the fulfilment of many prophecies and the completion of Jesus' life on this earth. But even the belief in this should not be demanded, but people should remain completely free to believe it, because only

a life of love and profound desire for truth results in living faith .... Consequently, it is neither valuable nor advantageous to provide people with a new bone of contention, which human intellect cannot prove and which requires a higher degree of development in order to be understood and believed. This, however, is no longer found amongst people and therefore it merely increases the confusion when, in fact, people ought to be receiving knowledge ....

Amen

## **Seventh and eighth commandment ....**

***B.D. 4982 from October 15th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

For My child, who is serving Me with loyalty and steadfastness, another sign of My love and grace: You were also given the commandment: 'Your shall not steal.' If you take whatever belongs to him you are quite obviously disregarding the commandment of love for your neighbour. You should respect your neighbour's possession, indeed even protect it against his enemies, otherwise you do not feel the love for him that I require of you. You should love your neighbour as yourselves ....

and you will be grateful to anyone who respects your possessions; hence you should do the same in order to gain your neighbour's love too. Whatever you acquire unlawfully will not result in any blessing to you, rather it will burden you and weigh your soul down which wants to ascend. You shall not steal .... This does not just concern earthly commodities, which you should not take from other people. You can also cause him spiritual damage by denying him that which benefits his soul and what My grace is giving to all people and what can be given to him by each one of his fellow human beings. Thus, anyone who owns spiritual wealth has received this from Me .... However, your fellow human beings also have the same right to partake in it .... and you should not diminish this right by withholding from him things which are also intended for him. In that case you are more than less taking what belongs to him too, even if he has not yet taken possession of it. Your behaviour will then reveal no love for your neighbour and even less love for Me, your God and Creator of eternity. Any reduction of spiritual or earthly wealth is therefore covered by this commandment, and any negligence of love for other people will reflect on yourselves, who shall receive as you give, and who shall lose what you take away from people. And thus, psychologically and earthly you shall receive the reward you deserve ....

And in the same spirit you should understand the following commandment 'You shall not bear false witness against your neighbour.' Your mouth should always speak

the honest truth, you should never damage your neighbour's reputation, his standing amongst his fellow human beings, by telling lies. Any defamation is a sin against this commandment, with every lie the person is causing damage to other people and acting heartlessly and unfairly, to which he will have to be answerable. When you are asked to bear witness to your neighbour be truthful and full of love for him. Try to understand his faults and kind-heartedly point them out to him but do not take advantage of his weakness by trying to belittle him for your personal gain. You can damage the other person with a thoughtless word and awaken thoughts of retaliation in him which will stifle all love and make the person sinful. You should certainly remain truthful, thus not praise an undeserving person contrary to your better knowledge and conscience, but distance yourself from every act of unkindness, distance yourself from all belittling of other people for your own advantage. Any judgment of your neighbour that does not correspond to the truth is a flagrant violation of this commandment for it lacks all love and brings no honour to you humans. Every lie is to be condemned but when it is plainly intended to damage another person it becomes a double sin, a sin against the other person and a sin against Me, Who is the eternal truth Himself .... It is a violation against the commandment of love against Me and against your neighbour ....

Amen

# **Ninth and tenth commandment ...**

***B.D. 4983 from October 15th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

People who still languish in matter also desire it in every sense. But the purpose of the human being's earthly life is to overcome matter, to detach from it, to eradicate everything the world can offer to people, because only by overcoming the latter will the soul achieve the necessary maturity in order to enter the spiritual kingdom. To desire worldly things need not be a sin, although it hampers the person's higher development, but it can easily result in sin because greed tries to acquire the object of its desire and this frequently by dishonest means. The greater and stronger the passion for things which give the body a sense of well-being, the more the person's mind will focus on it and can trigger bad instincts and characteristics in him which will result in harming other people.

For that reason I gave you the commandment 'You shall not covet your neighbour's wife, house, servant, or anything that belongs to him ...' Everything that belongs to your fellow human beings should be sacred to you, you should not attempt to seize any possession from your neighbour and even the thought of taking it is a sin,

because it betrays your will, your darkness of soul, which as yet does not know love. And although you try to hide your cold hearts from other people they are obvious to Me due to your longing, and as soon as you greedily think about your neighbour's possessions you do not see the other person as your brother whom you should love as yourselves. You should grant him the same right that you demand for yourselves, to respect your wealth; you should be pleased when your neighbour is successful and help him to increase his wealth; then you are winning the fight of overcoming matter, then you will acquire more riches than you could ever take away from other people, because your love for your neighbour will be rewarded by My love, and this will truly give you an everlasting treasure of grace which offsets all worldly possessions and joys.

Hence you should also respect and protect your neighbour's possessions and distance yourselves from greed if you don't want to infringe against the commandment of love for your neighbour, which I only gave you to make your ascent easier, because only through loving your neighbour can you gain My love and only through love can you become blessed ....

Amen

## **Accountability on the Day**



# **of Judgment ... Redeemer Jesus Christ ...**

***B.D. 4984 from October 17th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Sooner or later all of you will have to give account of yourselves before My judgment seat and remember every hour you wasted and lost for eternity. Sooner or later all of you will have to confess your sins because they become apparent and cannot be kept secret any longer, for nothing remains hidden before My eyes. And thus I demand an account for all your thoughts, words and actions. And you should remember this Day of Judgment if you think that you can sin with impunity, this day, when all of you will have to be answerable about your way of life on earth. It will come without fail and take all of you by surprise because you don't expect it quite so soon. Yet it will come like a thief in the night, without warning and in silence, it will come when no-one expects it. And yet not unannounced, for long before I will have drawn people's attention to it, to the Day of Judgment, the day of the end and the destruction of this earth. The fact that you humans do not want to believe it will not change My plan of eternity, for this day has been predetermined according to My will and human will shall be unable to postpone it but must submit to My will. The reason why I speak to people time and again through servants on earth

and in the kingdom of light is due to the fact that a day like that, which concludes an unimaginably long period of development, shall not come unannounced to humankind. The Day of Judgment is the conclusion of an earthly period which was granted to people for their salvation. During this developmental period people received a special privilege .... the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ Himself came to earth in order to help those people who wanted to fail in their process of development.

And thus people were **able** to redeem themselves if only they **wanted** to. If, however, their will fails then it will be their own fault, and as long as people live on earth I warn them time and again about this **fault**. Their fault only consists of the fact that they don't want to accept help but are too weak on their own. What they can do they don't want to do, hence they will also have to take responsibility for what they don't want to do. This is why everyone will be held to account on the last day, for they all had a measure of blessings at their disposal which could have helped them to ascend with ease. And the indications of the end through seers and prophets are part of these blessings. But anyone who does not listen to them, who does not give credence to them, does nothing for his own redemption either. I always admonished and warned people through seers and prophets, and the often enough announced end of the old earth also explains the emergence of prophets in My name, because I won't leave people without warning and

they are living in the last days, because the end is so near that all of you would be shocked if you knew the day and the hour. Time and again I draw your attention to it yet no-one shall be forced to believe it, but woe to those who listened to My Word and refused to believe it .... who recognised it as My Word and yet do not believe in the end and the Judgment and therefore do not prepare themselves for the end. Woe to them ... for the hour will take them by surprise when the last Judgment arrives ....

Amen

## 'Deliver us from evil ....'

***B.D. 4985 from October 19th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Deliver us from evil .... You are often approached by temptations which are indeed permitted by Me but which are always My adversary's activity, because he also fights for every soul and therefore tries to influence the human being to oppose Me, thus to encourage him to sin. These temptations are always an obstacle for the human being which can make him fall, yet I, too, won't leave him without grace as a countermeasure against Satan. I, too, will come forward, distinctly and recognisably, when the human being is facing a crucial decision, when he is pushed off the right path by My adversary's cunning and is

still uncertain. Then a short quick prayer is enough, a thought to Me: Deliver us from evil .... I will clearly step forward by revealing the right path to him, and I will show him the darkness of the other path he was in danger of taking .... I will assist every person who merely sends a questioning and imploring thought to Me. I will certainly allow temptations to take place, for the adversary is also entitled to exert his influence, after all, it concerns the free decision of will, and for this the human being must be subjected to both influences, the good as well as the evil. Yet he need not succumb defencelessly, he will always be able to give resistance, because I will help him once he has taken the path to Me. And then I will show him very clearly which power wants to harm him .... I want to deliver you humans from all evil, I want to liberate you from the control of the one who caused your constrained state, it is My will that you shall become happy, that you shall no longer feel pressurised by the one who intends to ruin you, who entices you to fall and who spares no means in doing so. He will even appear to you as an angel of light if he thinks that this will be successful, he wants to possess you and uses cunning and trickery. And yet he will find his Master in Me, for once a soul has chosen Me it will never again fall prey to him. But woe to the person who is enslaved by him .... For he will hold him tightly until the latter beseeches Me for help, which will surely be granted to him. Deliver us from evil .... Often voice these words in your heart and you will always feel My help, for with this appeal you testify to Me, because you call upon Me to help you against the one who is My

adversary and your enemy ....

Amen

# **Love ... Pleasure of giving ... Reciprocated love ... Belief in Christ's act of Salvation ...**

***B.D. 4986 from October 21st 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Awaken to new life .... Try to kindle the flame of love in you, constantly provide it with new nourishment and thereby ignite your love for God, which will make you eternally happy. Then you will be assured of eternal life, a state of abundant strength and light in unlimited freedom. Then you will be able to do whatever you want, you will have conquered death, for all lack of strength, all weakness will fall away from you and you will live and be blissfully happy. Yet this can only be accomplished by love and love cannot be given to you, you must kindle it in yourselves. You must help where help is needed and, animated by the feeling of inner happiness, constantly accomplish new deeds of love, then you will always keep the fire within you burning, you will feed it and be

constantly active with unselfish love. Only the pleasure of giving spurs you into renewed kind-hearted activity, and you will experience this when you look into a needy fellow human being's eyes after you have helped him. This reward is far nicer than material payment, for it is reciprocated love which shines forth from these eyes. Then you will have kindled love in your fellow human being's heart again, a tiny spark will have been ignited by you and once again the flame of love will spread and communicate itself to other people. Only a united activity of love can redeem the human race from the state of spiritual hardship it finds itself in. Only loving activity results in light and grace and leads you to God, the eternal Love Himself. However, the closer it gets to the end the more love will grow cold amongst people, since they only live for their own ends and have no heart for the suffering of their fellow human beings. The distance to God will therefore become ever more obvious, the gulf between people and God will have almost become unbridgeable, the darkness in people's hearts impenetrable, for the light of love will not be able to shine forth and therefore not provide illumination, and the One Who would be able to help is not called upon, because He is not acknowledged .... Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer, will be unable to distribute the blessings of His act of Salvation, He will not be approached for them because people don't believe in Him. And this is the worst situation, for then they will lack all strength and support without which, however, they cannot become happy. People no longer believe what

they are advised to believe, and if they don't acknowledge the divine Redeemer they will not call upon Him either, consequently they are spiritually unenlightened and therefore suffer profound hardship. They are already in a state of death and could certainly be delivered from it yet never without love, never without divine grace, but the human will must always profess to it first. Try to awaken yourselves to life .... you are able to do so if only you wanted it .... Practise unselfish neighbourly love and you will find it easy to acknowledge Jesus Christ as the Redeemer of the world and as the Son of God, for then the spirit within you will enlighten you, so that you will be able to believe because you live a life of love. Awaken to new life, for the hour is close at hand when it will be decided as to whether the soul has chosen life or death. Make use of every opportunity to actively practise neighbourly love, and you will experience the beneficial feeling that you are infused by new life .... Then you will have conquered death and need not fear the final end, for then you will be living in light and truth, and you will live eternally ....

Amen

**Spiritual coercion ....**  
**Dogma ....**

## ***B.D. 4993 from November 2nd 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

The greatest danger for a human being is spiritual coercion which prevents the recognition and free decision of his will's direction. Every person is an individual being that has to perfect itself and, therefore, everyone is responsible for his own way of life on which depends the attainment of the degree of perfection. Hence everyone has to make a free decision and testify to Me of his will. I Am demanding this testimony and do not agree that one person should tell his fellow human beings how they must think, will or act. The freedom of will must not be violated, but it is violated when the objective of a person's will is determined by law and he is required either by promises or threats to move only in a particular direction .... I will never accept such coercion although I will not openly oppose it so as not to use coercion Myself.

The human being is a thinking individual who received the ability of free will and thought from Me purely for the purpose of making a decision during the last stage of his spiritual development on earth, in accordance with which he will then be rewarded in eternity. It is indeed good and in accordance with My will when a person informs his fellow human beings of the consequences of using their will in a righteous or wrong way. It is also My will when all manner of clarification is given concerning his relationship with his Creator. However, a good instruction



concerning the divine doctrine of love and the importance of practicing unselfish love for one's fellow human being is quite sufficient. But it should all be done without coercion .... The human being should be educated but never forced into accepting a doctrine because he should use his own judgment and inclination in directing his will.

I gave the human being free will but if you take it away from him you will be using your own will wrongly, although you will believe that you work for Me on My behalf. I never gave My disciples the task to spread My teaching by way of religious coercion because an enforced faith would not benefit the soul's higher development. I only ever require people to believe in Me as a supremely perfect Being, I only ever require their belief in My omnipotence, wisdom and love and its strength .... For if you believe in this you will experience the strength of love yourselves and will automatically recognise everything else you need to believe, because then you will be truthfully taught by My spirit within yourselves. However, enforced faith will not lead you to perfection. Enforced faith will rarely come alive, and I cannot look upon enforced faith as a decision of free will because your will has not yet become active, instead you will have acknowledged a school of thought as the result of your education without having properly evaluated it as to its worth or worthlessness.

I want you to believe that you can only attain beatitude through love .... but you have to acquire this belief

yourselves; you can certainly accept the teaching of it but then you will first have to practise love in order to gain the certainty that love is spiritual strength, and only this inner certainty is assured faith which is life-giving because it was voluntarily gained. All coercion is a sign of imperfection because it violates the freedom which originally was the spiritual being's characteristic and which it has to regain in order to become blessed. How can coercive measures which deprive people of spiritual freedom be considered to be in accordance with My will .... if a person is virtually duty-bound to believe something which, as far as I Am concerned, needs absolutely free deliberation and acceptance?

As supreme Lawgiver I gave people no other commandment than that of love, which also comprises the Ten Commandments of Moses, but which only will be fulfilled if love is voluntarily practised, otherwise it would bear witness against Myself or it would question the human being's free will. However, people presume that they can establish laws without having the authority to do so. Thus they infringe upon the person's free will .... Every law is coercion, and every kind of coercion is contrary to My will. As soon as a person no longer has freedom of thought, as soon as he is forced to believe in a doctrine, his earthly test of volition comes to an end, for he has to make his own decision and not an enforced one. And every dogmatic doctrine is coercion, irrespective of whether it is true or not.

Every dogma is a violation of free will .... which will not be

free at the time of a spiritual decision, since the decision has already been dictated to him and can only be bypassed by committing a sin. I gave every human being the right of free choice; I merely require that he should seriously consider what he is asked to believe. If, in spite of serious deliberation, he cannot accept it with full conviction, I will not regard it as a sin; however, he will commit a sin if he affirms a doctrine with his lips without having asked his heart. Every person is responsible for himself, and it is presumptuous when one person intends to determine the faith of thousands with an instruction which must always be considered a dogmatic doctrine.

Anything that violates a human being's freedom of will can never find My approval, since not even I Myself determine people's acceptance of truth if their own will does not want it. I will certainly continue to teach people and transmit the pure truth to them, but everyone is at liberty to accept or reject it. And thus you should simply teach your fellow human beings with love but allow them spiritual freedom for their decision, because an enforced faith has no merit before Me ....

Amen

## **The Father's concern for His children ....**

## ***B.D. 4994 from November 5th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

You children of this earth are My problem children, for you go your own way and don't feel drawn to the Father nor listen to the Father's voice which lovingly wants to regain you. The path you take leads far away from the goal, and thus I worry about you because I know where this path is leading to. Yet as My children you also have free will or you could not be My children. Free will is part of the state of perfection which you initially enjoyed, therefore I cannot forcibly bring you back to Me but only ever give you love which, once it touches your heart, will drive you back to Me.

But how often do you humans prolong your time of separation from Me yourselves .... And how often do you even exceed your appointed redemption period .... And then you once again will have to expect an agonizing state which, however, is not imposed on you by My wrath but by My love so that you will attain the goal.

Once again you humans face a turning point, the end of a period of time which was granted to you for salvation. I get increasingly more concerned about you since the short time left to you could still be used to help redeem you, you can still be released from the oppressive constraint if you would want it yourselves, if you would commend yourselves to My guidance without resistance. The time of grace will expire soon, the result of your resistance will soon make itself known, and you will have

to bear the consequences of having made your own way without listening to the Father's voice. It clearly speaks to everyone, for I speak to you through all happenings, your whole earthly fate is the expression of My love; suffering, hardship and sorrow are Words of love from Me to you to remind you that you are My children who separated from the Father and should find their way back to Me again. And only something that inwardly stirs and discourages you drives you back to Me, with Whom you will find protection and help in every adversity ....

You have to come to Me yourselves, just as you separated from Me yourselves. And for this reason suffering and hardship will increase until the end, since they are the only means which can still result in success, since you don't listen to My gentle words of love in your heart and since My affectionate persuasion remains ineffective.

You travelled a long way until you became human beings .... Don't let this path have been travelled in vain, take advantage of your last available opportunities to make the decision in the state of free will with which you will become your Father's true children again .... Don't let your short remaining time pass by without changing your will, that is, without turning it in the direction where most faithful Fatherly love waits for you. Time flies and you are approaching a dreadful fate if you remain opposed and don't find your way back to Me, for My plan has been predetermined since eternity .... A new period of Salvation will start because everything has to take the path of higher development, so that all of My love's

children will get the opportunity to come close to Me of their own free will .... to return to the Father's house which they had once voluntarily abandoned ....

Amen

# **The Father's concern for His children ... Childship to God ...**

***B.D. 4995 from November 6th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

All human beings are My children and I take hold of all of them with the same love, because My love for My living creations can never stop and knows no exception. And yet, innumerable people are still so far away from Me that they no longer feel the strength of My love, nevertheless of their own free will because they turn away from Me and the rays of My love can only touch a receptive heart. Hence they are like children who have left the Father's house, who moved to faraway places because they thought they could do without the Father's love. I want to win these children back again because My love yearns for them and because I also know that, outside the Father's house, they live in adversity and misery, since I know My children and their disastrous

state which is their fate as long as they are separated from Me. I try to regain them and will invite their love until they are My Own again, until they are blissfully happy in the Father's arms .... Nevertheless, an infinitely long time may pass by before I reach My goal; however, I Am forbearing and patient, and My love knows no bounds. What I don't achieve soon I will achieve later, but sooner or later even the last child will have found its way back, if only after an endlessly long time. I will achieve My goal for certain; however, as long as they are distant from Me My living creations must still suffer indescribably and therefore I try to shorten their state of suffering by using every means to break down their obstinacy and by revealing Myself to them as the most loving Father .... but always bearing free will in mind, which they must keep as My true children in order to become perfect. They shall attain the childship to God and become akin to Me in everything, as true children they shall come into the Father's inheritance and create and shape with Me in eternal happiness. Only on earth can the souls achieve the goal of maturing into My true children. They are set the highest and most glorious goal .... Yet, how little it is striven for by people to whom I, as Father, want to prepare the most glorious fate. In the past they became enslaved by My adversary and allowed themselves to be influenced by him, and this situation of bondage must first be severed by them before they can be accepted into the Father's house, they must renounce this world which is his realm; that is, they should not desire the attractions and pleasures of this material world but must

direct their will towards Me and, like lost children, yearn for paternal protection and paternal love. Then I will come to meet them in order to show them the way which leads them safely back to Me, back into the Father's house. One day every soul will return to Me, yet My love tries to shorten the time of distance from Me, because it is a time without bliss, a time of spiritual darkness and of weakness. And since I love all My living creations I also approach all people so that they will learn to recognise their Father and submit to His will. But someone who nevertheless opposes Me will not be forced by Me. However, he prepares a burdensome fate for himself, he deprives himself of heavenly blissfulness, he forsakes precious treasures for the sake of transient earthly possessions .... and he will still remain separated from Me for an endless time and will thus be controlled by My adversary .... yet always because of his own fault ....

Amen

## **It concerns eternal life ....**

***B.D. 5000 from November 14th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

It concerns eternal life .... the soul's life in the spiritual kingdom after the human being's death on earth .... it concerns eternity. Do you humans understand the



implications of this? Consider the immense responsibility you have in earthly life, where you create your own fate in eternity, where all means are at your disposal in order to become blessed and which you ignore at enormous expense to your soul. Consider that you will be held accountable for your thoughts, will and actions on earth, and that you will not be able to undo anything, neither will you be able to catch up on what you neglected to do .... but that you will find utterly appropriate justice in accordance with your earthly life. Every thought, every action will automatically either divert the human being from the goal or lead him to it. And therefore he should always endeavour to gain God's pleasure in order to be able to stand before His Judgment seat one day.

It concerns your soul's salvation, and during your earthly life you only take notice of your body and its requirements but ignore your soul. God's love, however, does not want to let go of you, it does not want you to become eternally lost but wants you to have eternal life .... God's love will pursue you for as long as you live on earth. God will bear your faults and weaknesses with infinite patience, and His mercy will know no bounds. As long as you live on earth His love is yours and longs for union with you. And this union with the ultimate love will result in a state of happiness which He wants to bestow on you because you all are His children. It is a very difficult start to guide you into happiness as long as you do not have the will for it yourselves.

And yet, this will cannot be forced; you have to change

yourselves in utmost freedom into your fundamental nature again, which you once possessed when you came forth from God, your Creator and Father since eternity. Then you will be God-like beings again who will be able to enter into unity with Him without ceasing to exist in His light. And this change of nature is your earthly task, your goal and your destiny. It is not difficult if you only want God, but it will be a hard fight if you adhere to the world. This is why the world is your enemy, your danger and your downfall. Consequently, you should avoid it, you should not fall under its spell, you should rise above it and only strive for the divine kingdom, which will truly offer you far more delectable possessions; you should ask for God, Who can and wants to give you everything that will make you blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Light beings embodied as human beings ... Disciples of the last days ...**

***B.D. 5002 from November 19th 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

The will to serve Me links the human being to My flock of disciples who I instructed to proclaim the Gospel. Every

person wanting to work as a labourer in the vineyard of the Lord is welcome by Me, because many reapers are needed during the time of the end. I only value free will and assign to everyone work they are capable of doing. Hence, I do not reject anyone because I need all of them. The work first of all consists of spreading My teaching of love, and this mission is extremely important because during the last days people will thoughtlessly spend their lives entirely without love. Understandably, someone who is to spread the truth must live a life of love himself, otherwise his words would have no effect on his fellow human beings. Hence I can only use people as labourers in My vineyard if they observe the commandment of love for God and other people themselves, because only those people are capable of accepting My instructions, but in fact, only those people voluntarily offer to be of service to Me. The first condition to be a suitable worker in My vineyard therefore consists of activity of unselfish neighbourly love, and I also grant My special love to such a person who lives a life of love himself .... I regard him as My child, for it has recognised Me as its Father and wants to serve Me obediently .... For this reason, every person can regard himself as My child who places himself at My disposal for spiritual cooperation, while the others are indeed My living creations which I love and never want to lose but which must prove themselves as My children first by fulfilling My will. Consequently, I send My children to their brothers and sisters who have not recognised their Father as yet and let them be taught by the former .... which is a mission of such importance that I will always

work together with My children in order to save souls from their eternal downfall. Children who have already found Me shall also show the path to the others, so that these, too, can experience the bliss of My presence, which equally turns them into My children. During the time of the end even light beings must descend to earth in order to help people, because they are extremely strongly influenced by the opposite side and people are too weak to offer resistance. These light beings embodied as human beings possess strong souls which strive towards Me, even though they lack the past awareness of their origin. They will always strive upwards and will never let themselves be influenced by low forces; nevertheless, as human beings on earth they wage a battle with them but will emerge victoriously. Powerful psychological strength often suggests a soul from above, yet the soul is not aware of this, otherwise its mission would become less important, which must always be and remain a free decision of will. The soul might well suspect it as a result of increased knowledge, yet for the soul's own sake this fact will remain hidden from it until the time of complete spiritualisation, shortly before its demise, when, during a spiritual vision, it will recognise its origin and will long to return, full of yearning, to where it will be blissfully united with Me again. Such an incarnated being of light can be of great benefit on earth due to its spiritual strength and its love for its fellow human beings, however, as long as it lives on earth it is just a human being who, like any other human being, has to go through a process of development in order to be

able to increase its spiritual powers, for he shall be an example for his fellow human beings who can attain the same powers as him, if they are willing to do so. A person on earth can even muster these light beings' greater willpower by availing themselves of the blessings of the act of Salvation, on account of which precisely this teaching is diligently endorsed by those who are to proclaim the Gospel. **Jesus Christ as the divine Redeemer and His teaching of love shall be proclaimed to people**, and for this I need My servants on earth, so that all people will find the strength to strive towards ascent and release themselves from their tormentor who wants to plunge them into ruin if they are not being helped. For that reason I will bless every person who wants to help these souls, who serves Me as a servant in My vineyard, who, as a spiritual assistant, spreads light in the darkness of night in which people walk without reaching the right goal. And spreading light means instructing people in the truth, which I Myself impart upon those who thus want to be of service to Me.

Amen

**A rock will be made to waver ... (Spiritual upheaval) ...**

## ***B.D. 5004 from November 21st 1950, taken from Book No. 56***

Humanity will experience significant spiritual upheaval to enable it to recognise a misconception which, until now, it had endorsed as truth. I will noticeably draw people's attention to My Word .... I will destabilise a rock .... and people themselves shall be able to decide what they want to discard: My Word or an organisation which had established itself as a result of this Word. They will only be able to accept one of them, and every person will be free to make his own decision. I will only allow this to happen for people's own sake in order to release them from a coercion which enslaved their thoughts and will and thus prevented the decision of will, which is the reason for a human being's life on earth.

I want to make a rock waver .... and once the foundation is shaken the entire structure will crash, i.e. people will no longer feel committed but freely think and act at their own discretion. They will no longer fear a power supported by God, because only now will they recognise Me, Who is stronger than this power and does not support it. It will certainly mean spiritual chaos and at first the error will still want to assert itself, but then the truth will flare up like lightning and will clearly highlight wrong doctrines. They will not bear up to truth, for messengers of truth, bearers of light, will appear everywhere and be listened to, even though they will attract bitter hostility from the followers of the deposed power.

I Am revealing the forthcoming event to you humans and you can expect it soon, however, everything will take its time, and this occurrence, too, will point to the approaching end, for seers and prophets announced the end of a great city .... It will be a world-shattering event which, nevertheless, has a spiritual foundation and is intended to have a spiritual effect. It shall testify of Me before the world Who, as Eternal Truth, will never tolerate untruth and will proceed against it when the time is right ....

Amen

## **Strength of the divine Word ....**

***B.D. 5010 from November 29th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Immense strength will permeate you if you accept My Word with faith in Me and with love, if you want to hear Me and faithfully receive My Word. Then you will effectively force Me to be present to you, and My presence must also emanate strength, and although it is only felt beneficially by your soul, it is exceedingly grateful for it. Once a person accepts My Word consciously, the separation from him to Me will have

been overcome, since hearing My voice is also the evidence of My presence. His will and desire to hear Me is sufficient for Me to be inclined towards him and speak to him in any form, in Word or scripture, directly or through messengers or also in spiritual conversations .... I will always reveal Myself to the one who wants to hear Me. Therefore you humans have a reliable means of eliminating the separation from Me by withdrawing into silence or by engrossing yourselves in a book containing My Word and when you thereby acknowledge Me as a Being you wish to be close to. Then you will inevitably draw Me close to you, for I perceive every heartfelt wish and will grant it. Nevertheless, My Word will remain lifeless for you if you merely read it without sincerely desiring Me .... For this reason, not everyone will draw the **same** strength from My Word; this is why it may greatly strengthen one person whilst another will not feel any effect at all, because his heart remained indifferent while his eyes and ears accepted My Word. You yourselves determine the effect of My Word, you can take possession of an abundance of strength or give sparsely to your soul, depending on your heart's degree of desire, for you either accept Me and allow Me to be present or you close the door to your heart and deny Me entrance, even if I knock at your door and wish to come in. For I often come to meet you by Myself if you do not draw Me to you through your desire .... I offer you an exquisite gift indeed, because I Myself would gladly like to speak to you; nevertheless, I will not force My gift on someone who does not want it, but once a person has felt the



strength of My Word his soul will constantly long for it. He will never let Me bypass him but accept Me in his heart instead, so that I will remain there and constantly refresh the soul .... And so it will never need to go hungry and live in want, it will always be replenished with My Word and receive strength without limitation ....

Amen

## **Spiritual action ....**

***B.D. 5015 from December 7th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

A significant spiritual course of action will occur which will make people reflect on issues relating to the approaching end, since something will take place that was predicted by seers and prophets a long time ago. These prophecies are quite evidently fulfilling themselves and people are starting to take notice. For then they will pay heed to all the signs because they will begin to believe that the end is near. The spiritual action will have an earthly effect, albeit one originating from the spiritual kingdom, hence beings of light are engaged to bring humanity to its senses. The purely worldly minded person will see nothing but a natural event which by chance has affected people who are the focal point of spiritual activity.

But anyone who considers that nothing ever happens by chance will hesitate and recognise a sign which points to the approaching end. For God's reign and work is clearly visible; it is not people who manifest their will by implementing God-opposing actions but, instead, a distinct power can be identified which wants to emphatically express itself. This fact, and the way it manifests itself, will make people think, and depending on their spiritual maturity and attitude they will be more or less impressed by the event. The predictions of seers and prophets are fulfilling themselves .... And the powers of heaven shall move .... All spiritual beings are participating and decisively intervening in world events, because the time has come of which it is written: the sun will lose its shine, i.e. the glory will fade which wrongly shone long enough because ignorant people allowed themselves to be dazzled without objection.

But then a light will shine from above, and everything wrong cannot endure its radiance, but the light will emerge from the shadow of death .... that is, it will only come ablaze with light after a sick and decaying body has expired. Then something new will arise from the old, and many people will become enlightened, they will pay attention to the signs of the time and regard everything that happens on earth as God's will or permission. Heaven and earth will unite for the purpose of bringing light to people who live in darkness. And even if it is people's own fault that they live in darkness they will nevertheless be noticeably helped, so that they will be able to recognise

God's might if they are observant and look for the light ....

Amen

# **Destiny according to will and resistance ....**

***B.D. 5018 from December 12th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Merely the destiny you require in order to change your will, to stop your resistance against Me, is imposed on you. Only I know the extent of your soul's resistance, and your earthly life will be shaped accordingly. The human being's relationship with Me can differ considerably, which cannot be judged by another person, because I also know a soul's most secret thoughts and notions, and therefore a person can be as close to Me as a child, then he will effectively be guided by My Fatherly hand and truly avoid the said abyss and safely reach the goal. Others, however, won't allow themselves to be led, they believe themselves able to walk alone and trust in their own strength .... I let these occasionally run into obstacles so that they will call for a Guide and enable Me to approach them. Others, again, reject My guidance and meet Me with suspicion, they don't believe in Me and walk through life alone. And thus they still resist Me,

these are the people I have to deal with strictly and who are spared nothing in earthly life, so that they will still change before it is too late. I will only try to achieve their change of will, and this change may often come about through an event which you consider to be cruel and unkind of Me as long as you are still unaware of the fact that you have not only been created for this earthly life but that the whole of eternity is still ahead of you. And for the sake of this eternity I will use all means, depending on the severity of your resistance. But anyone who surrenders to Me will no longer need exceptional teaching methods, and I will place My hands beneath his feet so that his earthly path will be easily negotiable, although he, too, still requires trials in order to raise his degree of maturity, which impel him to Me until even the last distance from Me has been overcome, until he, in blissful unity with Me, can conclude his earthly life ....

Amen

## **Gratitude ...**

***B.D. 5019 from December 13th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 56***

Your love for Me also results in your gratitude for everything I give to you, even if you don't put your feelings of gratitude into words it nevertheless is in your

heart, into which I can look at any time. The mouth often voices what the heart is not aware of, and such words mean nothing to Me. But the heart can feel without expressing itself with words, and I only take such feeling into account. A person's heart, having received kindness, will also respond with love and be thankful to the giver. But to accept a gift without gratitude betrays innermost heartlessness, it betrays arrogance towards a fellow human being which makes him feel entitled to have received something. The same also applies to Me, so that the humble person always accepts My gifts of grace with a grateful heart, be they spiritual or earthly offerings I give to Him in My love. Humble childlike love is always evidence of gratitude .... Thus words are not necessary for Me, yet you should not fail to express your thankfulness towards your fellow human being so as not to hurt the giver and repay his love with unkindness. Although someone who only gives for the sake of gratitude certainly lacks the right love for his neighbour every well-intentioned gift should nevertheless be gratefully acknowledged so that the giver shall also learn to know the pleasure of giving, so that the giver's love will be kindled by the pleasure of the recipient, for a warmly felt gratitude can inspire further giving, which will always be a blessing for the giver and the recipient. Gratitude is inseparable from love, because a grateful word without love cannot be called true gratitude. But the life, thoughts and actions of a loving person constitute never-ending gratefulness towards the One Who created him, for his will also belongs to Him, He owns the love of his

heart which, bowed down in most profound humbleness, receives every gift from Him with emotion. This gratitude is pleasing to Me, since I also possess the love of My living creations which will then always receive beyond measure, so that they become blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Characteristic of truth of the proclamations: Love, grace, mercy ....**

***B.D. 5023 from December 18th 1950, taken from Book No. 57***

If you know that I Am speaking to you, you will believe .... if, however, you are troubled by doubt, you will also doubt that I Am the Giver of what you receive. Therefore it is so important to conduct an examination first, that is, to pay attention to the characteristics which verify Me Myself as the Provider. The spirit within advises you correctly if you allow it to take effect with every examination. It will point error and untruth out to you when these occasionally accompany the truth due to the influence of evil forces. Call upon the spirit within for help and advice, that is, make contact with Me, the Father-Spirit of eternity, as soon as you desire clarification. The most

reliable distinguishing features of the primary source of truthfulness are My mercy and love, which will always be mentioned. My loving and merciful nature lets none of My living creations fall as long as there is still a possibility for salvation. Nevertheless I respect the free will of these living beings and adjust Myself to it. This is why My proclamations seem improbable to you when they seem to be earthly, but, coming from the spiritual kingdom, they are indeed presented to you as truth. As soon as I Myself Am presented in such proclamations as an infinitely kind Being, not evil forces but beings of light which know the truth are portraying the events in the beyond in an understandable way to you, because as human beings you will never have a correct idea of the spiritual kingdom, since it far exceeds your comprehension. I will truly protect all people who try to find Me and are voluntarily devoted to Me from becoming entangled in a web of lies which might harm their souls. I Myself come close to anyone who seeks the truth, as I Am the Eternal Truth Itself, but I nevertheless address a human being in an understandable language, which they will also recognise as truthful in the kingdom of the beyond, even if they grasp different concepts there which can only exist in the spiritual realm and can only be portrayed to you humans on earth in comparable metaphors. Nevertheless they correspond to the truth and can therefore be viewed as being conveyed to people according to My will, as long as the one characteristic is not missing .... that I Myself Am always recognisable as love, grace and mercy, as the Father Who seeks to gain

His children .... Then you need not be afraid of falling prey to error, for it will be I Myself Who conveys these proclamations to you from the spiritual realm, because I know when they benefit your soul's salvation ....

Amen

## **‘Whoever loves his life shall lose it ....’**

***B.D. 5024 from December 20th 1950, taken from Book No. 57***

The will to live means guaranteed victory over death .... Admittedly, you cannot prevent bodily death, but even physical death can be the transition into life if the human being's will is strong enough for him to gain eternal life. This will to live has My approval, even though I said the Words ‘Whoever loves his life shall lose it, and whoever loses it will gain it ....’ Anyone who only thinks about how he can preserve his physical life will very soon realise that he is completely powerless and taken from this earth without being able to oppose it. Thus it is not this kind of will to live which will enable someone to be victorious over death ....

The soul's true life has to be desired, and the human being's will has to use all its strength to acquire it, then



there will be no more death for the person for eternity, then he will live in light and strength and be able to be constantly active for his own happiness. Then he will have truly conquered death, and the soul's separation from its body will be an awakening into new life, unburdened by the physical shell, free from all matter and yet with an inconceivable abundance of strength. This is the life people on earth should learn to love and only endeavour to gain one day, then they will long for their death, then they will want to relinquish their earthly life for the sake of true life in eternity. But people are still far too attached to their bodily life, they fear to lose it, they love earthly life and therefore will lose it and their fate will be death.

And again, not physical death is meant by this but the death of the spirit, into which the earthly life-loving soul will descend without fail. This death is worse than a human being can imagine, for he will then have lost himself, he will have lost his earthly life and his soul will be without light and strength, totally helpless and in profound darkness .... Spiritual death is an indescribable torment for the soul because it is conscious of itself, thus it is aware that it was not obliterated at the moment of death but continues to exist in an agonizing condition. The desire for pleasing activity can only ever be fulfilled by the living soul, for this requires strength which is only inherent in a living being, whereas a being without strength is dead.

However, what the human being accomplishes on earth

with his inflowing energy of life need only consist of worldly activity, which will certainly increase material commodities but they are worthless in the spiritual kingdom .... Or it can consist of spiritual activity, which will produce everlasting treasures and thus also guarantee a life in eternity. And for this reason, the human being's will should seriously strive towards eternal life, so that he then utilises his energy of life for the acquisition of spiritual strength .... then he will be victorious over death, then eternal life will be certain for him and he will not taste death for eternity ....

Amen

## **Spiritual influences, questions - truth ...**

***B.D. 5026 from December 24th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 57***

A person's heart is often moved by unvoiced thoughts which he himself is not entirely conscious of but which are obvious to Me at all times. I try to respond to them in the form of thoughts but only after a person seriously occupies himself with the question as to whether My answer can mentally flow into him, prior to this it is not possible. And therefore I require mental communication

with Me, I require a trusting dialogue with Me, the presentation of everything the person is concerned about in order to answer him in an easily understandable way. The human being has to intellectually consider everything arising from his heart, then a clear responsive thought will come to him, likewise gained through his intellect, and he will understand what was previously unclear to him, he will feel that he received advice from Me and all doubt will perish, for he turned to the right Source Which enlightened him. He has to conduct all his mental activities with My support, then correct thinking will be guaranteed. However, it is far more difficult to impart knowledge to a person who is mentally inactive, knowledge, which is completely unfamiliar to him and of which he therefore cannot form an opinion in order to attain an answer. This requires the complete exclusion of all mental activity, because then forces will be at work which affect the spirit in the person, for which the physical organs are not required. These forces are, in fact, also in direct contact with Me because they effectively only pass on what they receive from Me. Hence they establish contact with the spiritual spark in the person, they effectively exclude the organic person and transmit a flow of spiritual currents into the person's soul. These spiritual currents affect the spiritual spark and establish its connection with the eternal Father-Spirit ....

Thus the spiritual influences originally come forth from Me, even if they are imparted to you through beings of

light.

And such spiritual influences always signify thoughts of truth and clear realisation. I don't want to keep you humans in darkness about anything, I want to illuminate your innermost being, as soon as this is your own will. I want to make the eternal truth known to people because they can only become blessed through the truth. But it only ever concerns the life of the soul .... which shall be attained through the truth, not earthly-material life, for this life has to be lived by you as I recognised from the start to be expedient and successful for you. Therefore the instructions, which I impart to you Myself or through beings of light, will relate to your spiritual development, thus they should be considered by you as a Gospel, a teaching originating from God, which leads back to God again. A person who takes his spiritual progress seriously will therefore only ask spiritual questions in his thoughts, he will lead a second life alongside his earthly life, which will certainly show itself in his earthly life because his thinking, intentions and actions will betray his spiritual attitude. Whilst he therefore takes care of his spiritual life I will take care of his earthly life .... which I will arrange appropriately in order to further his maturing. In fact, the human being's wishes quite often diverge from My will .... I don't always let life proceed as he would like, yet I truly know best what will help him reach perfection. Then the human being will speak to Me often and desire an answer that pleases him .... Yet he should only be spiritually-minded and leave Me to take care of

everything else. The light that has been kindled in him shall shine far and wide and not only illuminate one person's destiny .... it radiates from the spiritual kingdom to Earth and emits a bright shine. Light, however, is knowledge .... thus knowledge is conveyed to earth which has everlasting value, which is and must be helpful for **all** people or it would not be light from above. This is conveyed to you by forces of light on My instructions, and since it comes forth from the eternal Source only truth can flow to you. Consequently, with every examination you humans must consider whether spiritual thoughts or earthly questions are expected to be answered, if you become doubtful. You are only intended to spread spiritual knowledge amongst your fellow human beings, and this is imparted to you in all truth. However, earthly questions can also be answered, yet generally this answer only benefits the questioner and not another person, this is why someone who wants to be instructed from the spiritual kingdom is no longer paying attention to the world and is therefore a suitable recipient for spiritual gifts, which he then should distribute in order to help his fellow human beings ....

Amen

**Christ's descent to earth  
once and now ... Act of**

# Salvation ....

## ***B.D. 5027 from December 24th 1950, taken from Book No. 57***

At the time of My descent the same hardship prevailed on earth as can be found amongst humanity now, for it lived in the same profound spiritual darkness as it does now. I took pity upon this state and in order to help people I came to earth Myself. I came as Saviour, and a path out of darkness into light existed for people which I Myself showed to them. All they had to do was to emulate Me and their spiritual adversity would be over .... I came as Saviour and released them from Satan's chains who had caused their immense spiritual hardship and from whom they lacked the strength to escape. The path I told people to take was possible for them to travel for I Myself went ahead of them as a guide. I Myself knew the path for I, too, had to take it beforehand, because I had embodied Myself within a human shell and therefore only expected from people what was possible for them to accomplish .... I took the path of love, and this path has to be taken by everyone who wants to awaken from the spiritual kingdom to the light of life, who wants to release himself from My adversary's chains, who wants to be redeemed from sin, which was the cause of humanity's profound spiritual hardship. I came as humanity's Redeemer into the world which, without My help, would have got lost in darkness. And I accomplished the act of Salvation for

time and eternity, for the past, present and future .... therefore also for present day people, who experience the same spiritual hardship and require urgent help if they don't want to decline further and plunge into the abyss as a result of My adversary's doing.

For the danger is far greater now because people are not granted much time anymore, the time of grace allowed for the redemption of the human race will expire soon .... Humanity is facing the end of a developmental period, it is approaching a significant chapter, it has to make its final decision, to choose life or death .... The only options will be continued existence or to perish completely, that is, a life according to divine will or physical **and** spiritual death if the human being fails to make the right decision .... And once again I come as Saviour in need, at first spiritually, according to My promise that I will reveal Myself to those that love Me and keep My commandments. To those I reveal Myself in the Word and inform them of the approaching end. But then I will come again in the clouds, just as I once ascended to heaven .... I will come and, when they are in greatest distress, will help those who followed Me, who have taken the path of love I preached by fetching them into My kingdom, away from the earth whose only remaining inhabitants will be devils in great numbers. I will come as a Saviour again, yet My arrival will be the conclusion of My act of Salvation on earth, because I will have died on the cross in vain for anyone who has not recognised Me by then, he has not accepted My act of Salvation and will remain in My

adversary's bondage for an incredibly long time to come. For he and his followers will be bound into matter, and spiritual death will be the fate of all those who refuse to acknowledge Me because they voluntarily submitted themselves to his influence, they ignored My act of Salvation and will therefore languish in the bondage of darkness due to their own fault ....

Amen

# **Battle of faith - Immense adversity - Professing Christ ... Saviour ...**

***B.D. 5028 from December 25th 1950,  
taken from Book No. 57***

Remain in constant faith in your God and Father, Creator of Heaven and of Earth and Ruler of the spiritual kingdom in Power and in Glory .... remain in faith in Him even in greatest adversity and profess Him before the world .... This is demanded of you humans and requires much strength, especially during the last days before the end. And only those people will endure who request the strength for it from Me and constantly accept it through My Word. You will all still get into great difficulties, you will be put under a lot of earthly and spiritual pressure to



change your mind and to deny Me. Even you, who are faithful, will still have to pass tests of faith, although they are expected of you more for the sake of your fellow human beings than for your own sakes. You will manage to struggle through because you already have much strength, because you are in contact with Me and will not break this contact off, because I hold on to you with My love which you feel and return with all your heart. Nevertheless, you cannot be spared these tests of faith, after all, your steadfastness is intended to make your fellow human beings realise where you receive the strength from and how effective it is because you believe in Me. It will be like it was when I came into the world, where faith in Me was even lacking in those who were considered to be their fellow human beings' teachers and who, through their way of life, betrayed their shallow faith in a God of love, omnipotence and wisdom.

The same lack of faith will be in people now and those who are determined to make them deny God completely will find it easy and meet with little resistance, since people's faith is lifeless because they live without love. They don't believe in a God and Creator of eternity and even less in a divine Redeemer, Jesus Christ, in His act of Salvation and are therefore under the control of the one who wants to wrestle the souls from Me for good. He will not succeed for My love will not even let go of the lowest fallen souls. And therefore I allow Satan to do whatever he can think of in his hatred and delusion .... I allow it because I want to commence a new period of redemption

as soon as there is no more hope that people will change on this earth. And thus he will rage until he goes too far, and you humans will experience the consequences and full force of his hatred, for he will fight those of you who belong to Me and wage a brutal battle.

Nevertheless, you should fearlessly anticipate this time, for I, too, will work extraordinarily, but with love and not hatred. And love will triumph, I will come to you as your Saviour when you are in greatest distress, but I predict this adversity time and again so that you will not waver in your faith but realise that everything will come to pass which I announced to you through seers and prophets, through My disciples of the last days, who work in My name in order to convey strength and comfort to you when you are in desperate situations. I Myself will always be close to you and this certainty will give you strength, and you will prevail until the end even in the staunchest battle of faith, I will fight by your side and victory will be ours ....

Amen

**'The powers of the heavens shall be shaken ...' Reversal of natural laws ...**

# Rapture ....

## ***B.D. 5029 from December 28th 1950, taken from Book No. 57***

The gift of grace from above is strength from heaven; it comes from the spiritual kingdom of light, from heaven, in contrast to the expressions of strength from below, which originate from hell. Beings from the kingdom of light thus become unusually active as soon as the pure Word of God can be conveyed to people by way of God-serving and helpful people's will on earth who are receptive to the transmission from the spiritual kingdom and who accept the spiritual gifts .... The powers of heaven are moving .... they will be exceptionally active during the last days before the end. This explanation must first be given concerning Jesus' Words about the signs of the end and His second coming. He made a powerful statement, for He announced changes which, according to His Words, signify a reversal of natural laws .... His Words always had a spiritual meaning, yet in the last days a second meaning will come to light apart from the spiritual meaning, for inconceivable natural phenomena will also take place, which the human being will be unable to explain by virtue of his intellect. They will run counter to divine natural law but are in principle only humanly unknown natural laws again, and these events are described by the Words 'The stars shall fall from heaven .... The sun shall be darkened, and the moon

shall not give her light .... ' Scientists and the like will be unable to provide an explanation for this, they will be unable to throw light on the matter because their knowledge fails them where divine strength is at work. No-one will be able to fathom these natural laws because they only come into force at the end of a period of Salvation and the disintegration of physical external forms has become necessary. They are unnatural phenomena and yet intended in God's eternal plan, consequently part of His eternal natural law, which is completely incomprehensible to people who are as yet spiritually unenlightened.

Nothing is impossible to God .... hence He will always be able to be active and achieve everything, even outside of natural law; or else His omnipotence would be limited. Nevertheless, His activity always moves within divine order, for it is impossible for the human being as such to judge this; it would, however, be presumptuous to doubt it, because this would also doubt God's wisdom. And since God is Eternal Love Himself He will always implement His will such as it is necessary and good for His living creations, which He wants to gain for Himself. Things will happen before the end which you humans cannot possibly imagine as yet. And this can only be vaguely indicated to people with Words which announce unusual, indeed, almost incredible events. Even so, the Word of God is purest truth and will come to pass when the time is right. Then the strangest changes will occur in the cosmos, yet this present human race will only be able to observe

them in the beginning; the end will not be experienced by them apart from a few who will be taken away and be able to watch the process of destruction of this earth and their inhabitants .... The old form and composition of earth will have ceased to exist, but the new earth will only shelter spiritually awakened people who will know the reasons for all events at the end of the earth, however, they will also know about God's power and glory, His greater than great love but also about His righteousness ....

Amen

## **Love of the world - Satan's followers ... Love of God - Overcoming matter ...**

***B.D. 5039 from January 11th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

Only a person desiring to reach God lives a spiritual life, whereas a follower of Satan lives a purely worldly life on this earth, even if he seems to be a representative of God. Overcoming the world also means overcoming Satan, who is lord of the material world insofar as that the still immature spiritual substance bound in matter belongs to him, even though his power over it was removed from

him. It is certainly still part of him because it shares his spirit yet it is inaccessible to his influence while it is bound in its form. Nevertheless it is his means in order to draw people .... the souls which have to make a decision between God and him .... over to himself. For the human being, who starts off spiritually immature, desires that which the world presents to his eyes. Yet he should rise above it .... Then he will belong to the Father of eternity but Whose kingdom is a spiritual one. Therefore, anyone who loves the world and its pleasures, who strives for material goods and only lives for their acquisition, belongs to God's adversary and also gives him authority over himself. But anyone who strives for God is no longer attracted to the world, he has surmounted the world, otherwise the desire for God would not have awakened in him. Consequently, turning away from the world is also a sign of a voluntarily aspired affiliation with God.

Satan uses the world to entice and therefore has a means of attraction which most people fall prey to because they love the world. Love of the world and love of God are not possible at the same time, and love of the world and neighbourly love will also rarely be found together as the latter would indicate a lessening of the former, and thereby you recognise the followers of God and the followers of God's adversary .... And as long as a person still pays attention to worldly possessions and still yearns for them he will be unable to find inner peace, the peace of soul. For peace of soul comes from God, and God is only with someone who turns his back to the world. The

human being is certainly placed into the world and has to fulfil his earthly task, and that will also force him to keep in touch with the world. Yet it concerns the desire of the heart, it concerns the innermost attitude towards the world's treasures which will completely lose their appeal if a person is imbued with the need to strive for the spiritual kingdom and its treasures. In that case he will indeed continue to exist in the world yet only to fulfil the duties which earthly life imposes on him. The world, however, will no longer attract him, and that is the sign that he has overcome the world and with it its lord, that he has detached himself from God's adversary so as to be able to establish contact with God. No-one can serve two masters, and his desire clearly demonstrates to which lord a person is of service .... The earthly world and the spiritual kingdom are so far apart from each other that what a human heart desires is easily distinguished. And Satan can never dominate a person who, through his will, has already been taken possession of by God ....

Amen

**Achieving beatitude - Free will ... Wolf amongst sheep ...**

## ***B.D. 5041 from January 14th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

I truly only have but one goal, to give you humans beatitude .... But your blessedness first and foremost necessitates that you should want it yourselves. Try to understand that this is not up to My will but solely up to your own free will.

And this will is also sought by My adversary, who does not want to let go of you but cannot hold on to you if you want Me. Thus you can understand that and why he afflicts those people who strive towards Me, whose will has in fact already chosen Me but whom he wants to regain. Beatitude is only possible in unity with Me, which will be achieved without fail once a person has made his decision in My favour. Anyone who desires Me is no longer at risk, but as long as he lives on earth he will be confronted by all kinds of temptations, because My adversary will not stop fighting until then, even if he is unsuccessful.

My adversary works with cunning and force indeed; nevertheless, his spirit is dark or he would recognise the futility of his endeavour. I want to give you beatitude .... and by directing your will towards Me you humans give Me the right yourselves to draw you towards Me. But Satan, realising that you are lost to him, will not give in because he underestimates the strength of My love, since he believes that he can still wrest from Me what nevertheless belongs to Me. His method is to cause



confusion, to plant doubts into people's hearts and thereby shake their faith in Me. Yet, again, only your will is the decisive factor. If it belongs to Me then you will soon recognise his deception and turn away from him. What was incomprehensible will become clear to you, and you will liberate yourselves from his power, he cannot hold on to you because you strive towards Me. Hence, anyone who wants Me will reach his goal indeed, irrespective of Satan's raging during the last days before the end.

Admittedly, at times he will be difficult to detect, for he frequently sneaks in disguised and takes hold of the most fleeting thought that could serve his purpose. He works with much cunning and force and people, who are not fully instructed in the truth, are used by him as tools because error itself grants him the cover he needs to conduct his battle from there. Pure truth will not let him arise, since he will always be recognised by those who live in truth. However, even the slightest error will grant him access, and then he will cause utter confusion, like a wolf that breaks into a sheep pen generates fear and terror. Yet even then he will still be unable to cause harm if My sheep take flight to Me, to their shepherd, Who protects them from all danger. Thus, again, only the will is decisive, and as soon as it is turned towards Me, Satan has lost all power over a person. Thus you should know that you will always be on the right path when I Am your goal, that you can neither fall nor trip since I Am walking with you because I Myself want to help you gain

beatitude. Therefore, do not fear any adverse power but trust only in Me, your God and Father of eternity, hand yourselves over to Me and strive towards Me .... Then your will shall belong to Me and truly, I shall not let you fall into My adversary's hands, who wants to alienate you from Me. My love will seize you, and the strength of My love will also conquer him, since nothing can resist My love forever ....

Amen

## **Explanation and reason for an arduous destiny ...**

***B.D. 5048 from January 24th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

An arduous destiny on earth will profit the salvation of your souls. For every day brings you closer to the end and the end is near. And do you know whether you will experience the last days? Do you know that you won't be called back before the end and that your earthly life might only last a short time yet? Always consider that tomorrow could be your last day and that you will then be grateful to have reached that particular degree of maturity which entitles you to enter the realm of light. Consider that earthly life is only the means to an end and

that it won't last forever. Everything is temporary, joy and sorrow, desire and pain. Only the soul is immortal and its suffering should be reduced. Therefore the body has to suffer as long as the soul lives on earth. Those who are spared suffering on earth cannot expect a painless hour of death because the soul will still have much ballast which it will take across into the spiritual realm. Yet the agonies in the beyond are considerably greater and can often last an endless time if a soul is hardened and thus will find little help.

People still have to endure much adversity because time is passing swiftly and rapidly bringing the end. Only the soul which has been purified by grief and suffering will have the strength to resist during the last days .... because such a soul can receive My strength, while a soul within a dense cover cannot be touched by My emanation. For this reason the human being should look at each day as a gift of grace and be grateful, he should use his time well since he does not know when it ends, because one day he will regret every day which has not brought him spiritual progress. Suffering and love mature the soul and therefore you human beings must patiently endure what is given to you as this is in your best interest; everything My will inflicts on you can lead you to perfection ....

Amen

**Many paths - One goal ....**

# True members of the church ...

***B.D. 5049 from January 25th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

Complement each other but do not separate; walk together but do not take different paths if you all have the one goal to reach Me, to behold My countenance and to be blissfully happy in eternity. You should know that I assess every single person according to his inner nature and that I do not reject anyone even though he may not turn to Me, for he is an erring child which only requires My grace and mercy and not My wrath. Hence I will also help all misguided people and gently push them onto the right path which leads to Me. Every person is considered differently, yet this should not lead you to believe that he would therefore be unable to reach the goal. Anyone who merely asks for Me will also be pulled up by Me.

Therefore do not fight against each other but fight together in the last battle on this earth. Then there will only be one troop for Me whose commander-in-chief I Am .... who believe in Jesus Christ and therefore have His name imprinted on their forehead .... I only take notice of one thing, and that is of importance, namely to what extent their faith is alive .... the fact that they profess Jesus Christ with their mouth does not yet include them in the group of My Own, but the fact that they are true

Christians who live a life of following Jesus and have thereby attained a living faith is decisive in order to be included in My small flock whose shepherd I Am.

And as long as the congregations fight each other they lack this living faith, because then they will also lack the understanding of that which I regard as the church founded by Me. True members of this church of Mine understand each other even if they belong to different denominations and schools of thought, true members try to find each other and are happy to have found themselves, and true members are in innermost contact with Me Myself because they desire My Word and also recognise it as the right food and drink. True members of My church are not offended by outward appearances and attach no importance to them either, but they are permeated by love for Me as well as for their neighbour, consequently their spirit is awakened and instructs them correctly, so that they recognise each other and have nothing against each other anymore. Then they will strive to ascend together, and if the way up is difficult one will help the other, for then they will approach an elevated goal: they will return to the Father's house and I will come to meet them and show Myself to them, for I will draw near to anyone who genuinely desires Me, I will approach them as a friend and brother and draw all My children to My Fatherly heart, never ever letting go of them again ....

Amen

# Kind Fatherly Words of comfort ....

***B.D. 5057 from February 8th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

Look up to Me in every adversity and don't abandon yourselves to anxious thoughts which inhibit your spiritual striving, which weaken you and make you waver because you are effectively captivated by the material world. All earthly worry is superfluous providing you recognise your Father in Me to Whom you can turn with all earthly problems with complete confidence. Always bear My great love in mind, think of yourselves as standing within this abundance of love and know that no hardship exists which I cannot master and that I will provide you with everything you ask for to enable you to be of service to Me without worry. I always have an open ear for your requests and problems, and I will never let you call in vain because I want you to have a living faith to enable you to experience the strength of such faith. I want to help you and I will help you .... And if you firmly believe this, you will banish all adversity yourselves and join Me ever more intimately, which is My intention, so that you will stand firm and full of strength when the time of adversity comes upon you, which is inevitable for

the whole of humanity. Seek help from Me at all times and look up to Me with absolute confidence, and My help will be obvious, because I took everything from you in order to provide for you without limitation ....

Amen

## **Explaining the various characters of the Word-recipients ....**

***B.D. 5061 from February 12th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

My child, accept My Words without objection and allow them to take effect on you .... A task has been assigned to you which can only be accomplished by a human being who establishes contact with the spiritual kingdom with heart and mind, who thus takes the state of people's feelings on earth into account but desires the spiritual realm himself, and this is necessary in the last days before the end where people have broken off almost all contact with Me, where faith in a spiritual life and a spiritual future is almost entirely lost. I know of humanity's desperate situation and, in order to provide it with help, will have to resort to means which promise success without impairing free will. Thus one such means

is the transmission of the pure truth from above through receptive mediators, but who can also be called mediators insofar as they gain easier access to people's hearts due to their personality. They shall, after all, win **those** over who are still distant from Me .... You should really consider that people striving towards Me are already within a sphere where My working is easily recognised but that people who are still distant from Me are outside of this sphere and that it is therefore necessary for someone to have access to both spheres in order to speak as they understand it and yet also about that which has originated from Me. I know why I chose you for this mission because I know the human hearts which first scrutinise everything intellectually before they accept it as their own, and whose intellect should therefore not be ignored in order to be able to influence the souls successfully. The redeeming work for such people is considerably more difficult yet not hopeless, for My grace works where it finds an open ear so that My gift of grace can also touch the heart. Thus it is My will that My working shall also be mentioned where the world is still exerting a strong influence.

During the last days proclaiming My Gospel in the hitherto usual way will reap little success, if it is not entirely impossible. People who live in the world and are also in touch with worldly people are not as quickly rejected if they speak on My instructions than those who have little contact because their spiritual sphere is already so different that worldly people cannot put



themselves in that position and are more likely to feel repelled than attracted by it. These spheres are formed by emotions, which therefore can be good or bad, full of love or lacking love. It is always a person's character which shapes the sphere in which his soul is subsequently moving. However, if I assign a mission to a person who wants to be of service to Me, then I Myself will form the **type** of sphere surrounding him which corresponds to this mission, in which My willing servant can then be successfully active for Me and My kingdom .... which, however, is not to say that I avail Myself of a person who lives entirely outside spiritual spheres, since he would be unable to work in My name, but I spread a veil across the light which would break through too brightly and radiantly and which would cause precisely the kind of confusion amongst worldly people which would interfere with winning one of them over. I select people for such a mission who have voluntarily become My Own, who were seized by My love and who I can now use as a tool in the last days before the end. I Myself work in and through them .... And this shall be your explanation to the question why all people don't have the same emotions and nevertheless an abundance of strength becomes effective which is not obvious .... For I look into the heart and know a person's will, to which degree he is turned towards Me, and according to this will is his calling for My kingdom ....

Amen

# Re-incarnation ...

***B.D. 5062 from February 13th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

You are given a light from above where it is still dark within you. And My messengers are instructed to make the light accessible to all who desire it. Whatever contributes towards the enlightenment of spirit will be conveyed to them, so that they will indeed be able to distinguish between truth and error and always recognise the One Who is truth Himself. You, My earthly children, are destined for the greatest bliss I can prepare for you; but the degree of beatitude will always correspond to your will, for this is not determined by Me. Utmost bliss, however, also makes utmost demands on your will, for in order to achieve childship to God, which assures you the Father's inheritance, you have to be perfect too, just as your Father in heaven is perfect. I expect much of you earthly children, but I give infinitely more still. What I expect of you is complete subordination to My will and transformation to a high degree of love. For the degree of bliss in eternal life can differ considerably, it always depends on the degree of love you kindle and activate within yourselves.

Hence this activity of love determines the degree of maturity and therefore also the degree of bliss, so it follows that childship to God requires a life of utter love

on earth, so that the human being's nature will be changed into love, into My image, into My true child, for whom I have prepared all delights, as I have promised. The soul's childship to God has to be the result of a single life on earth, because this high degree of maturity cannot be achieved in the kingdom of the beyond anymore, albeit even there a being will still be able to attain an undreamt of abundance of light. Nevertheless, a being of light can, if it re-incarnates in the flesh on earth for the purpose of a leadership mission, acquire its childship to God, but this necessitates an extremely sorrowful and difficult earthly life as well as a redeeming activity on earth, which was the reason of its repeated embodiment. Only beings with a high degree of light will undertake a repeated incarnation on earth, but purely for love of misguided human beings, whom they want to help in times of greatest spiritual hardship.

Alternatively, every light-receiving soul in the spiritual kingdom can also be called blissful to a degree, and this bliss suffices to trigger its will into helping beings who still languish in darkness, whose condition they know and want to remedy. No soul of light lacks this willingness to help, because receipt of light presupposes love, and love constantly wants to express itself. Every loving deed in the spiritual kingdom increases the beings' beatitude, and such a being will never ever desire to return to earth, after all it recognises a vast sphere of activity for its strength of love and also feels the ever increasing abundance of light and happiness. But no being will be

returned to earth against its will, since this would contravene My divine order. Beings of light, even of a low degree, do not harbour this will, only exceptionally elevated spirit beings descend to earth in order to carry out the above mentioned mission. As soon as a soul has but a modest degree of awareness it also knows about the opportunity of further development in the spiritual kingdom, for then its love has been kindled or it would still be completely in the dark .... But if a soul is still spiritually blind then its desire to return to earth might surface, but never for the purpose of spiritual maturing, it is only drawn to earth by its desire for matter which I, on My part, will not comply with .... For this desire can be more easily overcome in the kingdom of the beyond than on earth, and without the surmounting of this desire there will be no light, no spiritual progress.

Anyone who neglected to acquire a tiny spark of understanding on earth, which thus assumes deeds of love, will also be in profound darkness in the beyond, and to return him to earth would not be an act of mercy but an infringement of My eternal order, which pursues constant progress and excludes any kind of regression due to My will. However, in this case re-incarnation would be an unfair compensation for the soul's failure on earth, it would not be love and mercy on My part but a huge burden for the soul, which would have to accept the responsibility for a second time without any guarantee of achieving its goal. And it would not achieve its goal either, for repeated embodiment would understandably

present it with far greater demands in order to balance the exceptional privilege, whereas its will would once again remain free .... Thus it would have to undergo a test of will twice, which would mean the same as if I would double a person's life time on earth and thus bypass an existing natural law .... Also, having failed on earth once, a soul would be constrained and its will weakened by My adversary again, since the path to Me, to the divine Redeemer, is blocked by Satan by means of the world, since it will have desired it as well as matter and will receive what it desires .... Only the being's will is decisive at all times, but this very will is not interested in embodiment on earth once the soul has but a glimmer of knowledge.

However, a soul which is still lost in utter darkness will not be allowed to re-incarnate because My wisdom knows of the danger and frequent futility of a repeated earthly progress and My love does not support regression but only advancement. My eternal law is development and progress .... I only encourage opportunities for higher development which, admittedly, could also be unsuccessful but then only due to the being's will. Regression can only be caused by the being's will, never by My will. Individual instances of re-incarnation to earth happen for a special reason but do not justify the assumption that every soul will be able to return to earth deliberately once it has completed its path unsuccessfully or with only slight success. Yet the fact that the soul repeatedly incarnates itself is certain,

because it has to continue its higher development in the kingdom of the beyond and this always necessitates that it carries out its designated activity in a new embodiment on one of the countless creations which all serve as places to mature for the spiritual essence. But activity and tasks are of a different nature than on earth and cannot be explained to you humans either, merely the principles of redemption and maturity always consist of loving service.

Countless possibilities are at My disposal to beneficially influence the souls which had departed from earth in a still immature state. Life on this earth had promised exceptional success which, if unused, can never be made up again such that the beings can re-incarnate on earth any number of times; this is why the teaching of re-incarnation is misleading; thus isolated, justified instances should not lead to the assumption that every soul will re-incarnate on this earth, which would be far more detrimental than advantageous for the soul. The soul's free decision of will has to be made on earth, and with the help of the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ it is certainly possible to do so during one earthly life .... Anyone who rejects Him has forfeited an exceptional grace and has to struggle in the beyond until he acquires the understanding and still accepts His help over there.

Jesus' death on the cross is of such enormous significance for the salvation of all souls that it only requires the human will to become redeemed, but a will that fails also has to accept the consequences:

indescribably difficult higher development in the spiritual realm or descent into the abyss, with the result of a repeated path through the whole of material creation .... a re-incarnation of undesirable consequence .... a tormenting state of endless duration until the human state has been reached again, which will then gives him a new opportunity to make his free decision of will. No being will be lost forever, but the time it takes to achieve beatitude is determined by the human being's will itself. Yet the law of eternal order will remain, for it is based on My wisdom and love which will never change ....

Amen

## **Individuality of each soul ...**

***B.D. 5063 from February 14th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

When My creative will became active My wisdom also realised the accomplishment of all that which My love and strength had created; I saw the fallen spiritual beings' process of development as well as the partial relapse into the abyss, I saw a countless multitude of originally created beings fighting each other in the universe. I saw satanic actions everywhere in the spiritual kingdom and in the earthly-material creations .... I saw

the rise and fall, I saw the constantly changing shapes and My wisdom recognised most clearly that the huge redemption work will be successful one day, which delighted My love and thus My will was incessantly active. I foresaw the achievement an eternity ago .... yet I also saw the countless originally created spirits which would remain opposed to Me and need an infinitely long time before they surrender to Me without resistance. But this did not trouble Me for time does not exist for Me, if only I reach My goal one day. Yet the plan of redemption for these spirits remaining in opposition to Me considerably deviates from the one for the less hardened spiritual beings, for the former require several infinitely long periods of development until their final redemption, and each one signifies a different process of redemption than the preceding one. For the sin keeps increasing the more often free will is misused, and the final stage as a human being also provides the spiritual entity with awareness, because I endow him with intelligence by virtue of which he can distinguish between right and wrong. Before a human being's soul can be formed the individual soul substances must effectively have travelled through all creations, the soul will have gathered all minute particles which once belonged to a freely spiritually creating original entity, and this original entity receives, as a human being, the self-awareness again which it no longer possessed during the preliminary stages of development. Then the soul will continue to remain a self-aware individual entity in the spiritual kingdom, although it will then work and create in unity



with equally mature souls .... It will recognise itself for what it once had been and is incredibly happy in this self-awareness. But the final test of earthly life can, although it is not too difficult, also be **failed**; in that case My work of redemption has not been possible during **one** course of development and the being will have to go through a second and far more difficult process of redemption, it must once again take abode in new material creations, the soul will be dissolved again into untold minutely small particles and, depending on its nature, engendered into various shells once more and the path of higher development will start anew.

A soul which deserts Me as a human being increases its sin many times over and must therefore also suffer considerably more than during the individual developmental stages of the previous period. Yet even then My infinite love will be at work again in order to help this soul to ascend, so that, at the end of its earthly progress in the law of compulsion the re-assembled soul can incarnate itself in a body of flesh with the purpose of passing its final test of will on this earth. Although at a later state of maturity this soul can undoubtedly look back upon an entirely different earthly progress than that of the period before, nevertheless it remains the same spiritual being but will only recognise itself as such when it reaches the specific degree of light when it receives its past memory again. Every soul entering the spiritual kingdom after its physical death remains what it is and can continue to ascend constantly higher and, in unity

with equally mature spiritual beings, bring happiness to countless beings on earth as well as in the spiritual kingdom; but it always remains the same being and will never lose its self-awareness again. If, however, it descends into the abyss, its thinking will become confused, it no longer recognises itself and if it descends to the lowest point it can also harden into solid matter again, thus starting the process of development in new creations on earth once more. The being only recognises itself during a specific degree of maturity, and this degree of maturity has been attained as soon as the soul is permitted to embody itself as a human being, on account of which the human being is in clear possession of self-awareness which the soul will not lose again unless it descends into profound darkness again, where it can no longer recognise itself for what it is and what it had been. I will collect every spiritual being again which once went astray, I want to regain it in the same condition as it once came forth from Me. I want to draw completely free, supremely perfect angel beings burning with love to My heart and I will achieve this goal even if it takes eternities, for My love, wisdom and might is without bounds and My creative will shall never end until even the last spiritual being is redeemed and has become My child ....

Amen

## **Prayer in spirit and in**

# truth ... Pious gestures ...

*B.D. 5069 from February 22nd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57*

I take no notice of pious gestures; they are, after all, merely outer ostentatious covers which are intended to conceal the heart from onlookers. Anyone who truly sincerely thinks of Me and speaks to Me with simple, unembellished words considers every ceremony, every external movement or gesture to be strange; the heart does not need it, it takes the straight path to Me and exclaims its distress or its love and adoration of Me and I hear every thought which rises up to Me from the heart. But where an inner feeling is meant to be outwardly recognisable too much value is placed on other people's opinion, since I Myself have no need of such external testimonies and without them a person's heart lies openly before Me. In that case you only want to convince your fellow human beings of an apparently intimate relationship with Me, and thus you don't approach Me with an undivided mind but place too much importance on other people's judgment. But, in addition, your prayer will also lack depth of feeling, for **heartfelt** contact with Me lets you forget everything around you but also makes every external gesture seem absurd and derisive.

Therefore, as long as you still outwardly portray what should only move you within you still have not found

heartfelt union with Me in your thoughts, which does not allow for external actions, because then you will be so completely seized by Me that you will forget the world around you, that you will be true children of your Father whose love for the Father leaves no space for anything else. You should certainly not forget your fellow human being and always have an open eye and ear for his problems, you should not carelessly ignore him if he comes to you full of grief; you should not neglect him, not be arrogant towards him but humbly stand by him with patience and compassion and do everything in your power to help him for love of him. However, if you desire to enter into heartfelt communication with Me your thoughts should **only** apply to **Me**, and nothing of an external nature should disturb or identify this heartfelt bond .... For I want to be prayed to in spirit and in truth and this should happen in private, where no-one is a witness of the communication of heart between Father and child .... And all pretence should fall away from you, for I Am the Eternal Truth and also want to be called upon in all truthfulness ....

Amen

**Overcoming matter ...**  
**Awakening of the spirit ...**

## ***B.D. 5072 from February 24th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

Anyone who is materially-minded and allows matter to dominate his thoughts too much can hardly become aware of the spirit within himself which is in complete opposition to matter. Thus anyone intending to awaken the spirit within him must first have overcome matter, that is, he should no longer be its slave but have become its master. It should no longer control him, he must be able to easily let go of it and thus give it away himself by sharing his material possessions with his needy fellow human being whom he can help by providing him with earthly-material possessions. This process of loving activity towards one's fellow human being is necessary in order to bring the spirit within alive, because the person will thereby shape himself such that My spirit can become effective in him, since the spiritual spark within is inseparably connected with Me, its eternal Father-Spirit. Understandably, the divine element within the human being, in order to express itself, must respond to something divine, because a connection between perfection and imperfection is impossible. Love, however, shapes that which is imperfect into a divine being. Without love My spirit is unable to make itself known in a human being, the person's love, however, becomes active towards a fellow human being and thus the former also demonstrates his love for **Me** and can subsequently also receive My manifestation of love. My strength can flow

into him and express itself in the working of the spirit.

Selfless neighbourly love will only ever be practised by someone who has become master over matter, in which case the spirit is able to work in him. As a result I Myself enter into heartfelt contact with him because his spirit is part of Me. Do you now realise what you win if you release yourselves from matter? Do you realise the triviality of earthly goods if you gain Me by letting go of them? You give little and receive infinitely much in return .... the most precious becomes your possession .... My love, which pours into your hearts and grants you riches beyond measure .... Material things are indeed given to you as a test of your will, yet you can use them for beneficial activity .... you can relieve much hardship with it and thus be lovingly active on Earth. Then matter will provide you with spiritual possessions because you use it for doing kind deeds, then it will simply be the means in your hands used in order to attain spiritual treasures, yet only if you give it away, because material and spiritual possessions can never be acquired at the same time as long as the person still allows his heart to be held captive by matter. It has to be conquered, and that is your task on Earth if you want to awaken the spiritual spark in you and thereby also establish contact with Me, if you want to give Me the right to dwell in your heart. But then you will have won everything, then you will only work for the spiritual kingdom, then you will have passed your test of earthly life, for once I have taken abode in you I will not leave you again; then you will be

permeated by My spirit and become aspirants for My kingdom which is not of this world ... Then you will return into the Father's house, to Me, from Whom you once came forth and Who will not rest until you have become His Own forever ....

Amen

## **Hardship of unbelievers on entry into the beyond ...**

***B.D. 5076 from March 2nd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

You all should help with the redemption of misguided souls. Everyone who believes in Me and thus also in the soul's life after death, should try to convey this belief to his fellow human beings, too. Then he will do a work of merciful love for others, for he will save such souls from death. If you knew how much easier the souls' fate will be if they have but a glimmer of faith when they pass from this earth, you would do anything to kindle this spark in yourselves, and the stronger it is the brighter will be the soul on entry to the kingdom of the beyond. Anyone who has faith himself should not rest until he has won his fellow human being over to the faith. He should work diligently and will thereby acquire a great reward, for the

souls he has gained will thank him a thousand fold.

To soothe spiritual hardship is a true labour of love, the effects of which will extend into eternity. And spiritual hardship is experienced by all those people who lack faith, who are not convinced of an utterly perfect Being, who do not believe that they will be accountable to a Judge at the end of their earthly life, who thoughtlessly live in the world ignoring their task of developing their soul and who have not reduced their guilt of sin, which was the reason for their earthly life, but even increased it, because they fell prey to My adversary who wants to corrupt them forever. These human beings suffer severe hardship, yet their fellow human beings' love is able to help them. Participate in Christ's act of Salvation and try to enlighten your fellow human beings, since you know of the great love and mercy of the One Who has created you.

Do not portray Me to them as a punishing God but as a loving Father Who recalls His children into the Father's house which they had voluntarily left. And help them to regain their faith, then you will acquire a substantial reward for yourselves, for you will accomplish a work in My vineyard which I will truly not leave unrewarded since I, after all, will regain My children, for whom I long and whose love I constantly invite. Help Me to regain these children, so that I can make them eternally happy with My love ....

Amen



# **The Lord's return ... Present time ... Witnesses of the new earth ...**

***B.D. 5077 from March 2nd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

You all shall be witnesses of My power and glory, you shall live to see My return, partly in spirit and partly in the flesh, for the time is coming to an end and it will come to pass as I have always and constantly proclaimed. You shall experience My return and bear witness of it in the paradise of the new earth .... For I will move those who remain faithful to Me onto the new earth, where they shall also proclaim My Word as they do now on My instruction .... I know who is suitable to do so and know full well how to protect My servants from the destruction, I will endow My disciples of the last days with extraordinary strength to enable them to successfully attend to their office, so that they will courageously fight all those who are hostile to Me and who also extend their hatred to My Own. And not one of them will pass away from earth until his mission has been accomplished. The last on this earth, however, shall be the first on the new earth, where their task will be the same .... To proclaim

My Word, albeit in a different manner, for it will be gladly and longingly accepted, it will be recognised for what it is .... as the Father's evidence of love, Who wants to give pleasure to His children.

They will all recognise My voice when I speak through you to people. For they will have all passed their ordeal on this earth and remained faithful to Me. Hence their reward will also be substantial and pleasing, a harmonious life in the paradise of the new earth, which no person can yet imagine but which is granted to them so that My might and glory will manifest itself. And I Myself will be in the midst of them .... I will come in the clouds to bring them home and stay with them, because due to their demonstrated loyalty during the last battle of faith they will have become My children. For they will fearlessly confess Me, they will testify of Me without having seen Me. For this reason they will also be allowed to see Me in full glory before the very end. And what I proclaim will fulfil itself .... I will return, and you will live to see it ....

You do not yet believe that the time is so close at hand, that you will have to experience the horrors of the last days, and that this earth will be destroyed with My permission. You do not yet believe that the proclamations by seers and prophets concern the present time and that you humans of this time will experience significant things which no person can imagine, for this earth has never yet exhibited such. But humanity will soon watch the events with horror and bewilderment which will make an early

disintegration of earth believable, and then it will rapidly progress towards the ultimate end. Yet My chosen people will survive the time because it is My will, and because even this time shall have its witnesses who will be selected to speak of it, so that My might and glory will become evident amongst the human generation's descendants on the new earth. For it will have to be preserved as tradition for the descendants, because even then a time will come again when sin will be prevalent and I will be ignored. Then their testimony shall warn and remind people what fate will await those who completely forget about Me .... Then they shall be told about the downfall of the old earth and the Last Judgment which decided over life and death, over happiness and damnation ....

Amen

**Fellow labourers in Christ's  
work of Redemption ... 'Go  
ye therefore, and teach ...'**

***B.D. 5082 from March 10th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

The work you accomplish for Me and My kingdom always involves participating in Christ's work of Redemption. It is

a continuation of what Jesus, the man, started on earth, it involves the spreading of the Gospel on His instruction and leading people to Him, the divine Redeemer Himself, and therefore it is a return to Me, the origin of all that has been created. This participation in the redemption work is so important and so extremely beneficial because influencing people directly from above has become impossible. Hence mediators, who are in contact with the spiritual kingdom as well as with people on earth and are thus able to convey the spiritual knowledge from above to them, are required to spread the Gospel .... This is the task of those who want to serve Me, who place themselves at My disposal as co-workers and whom I therefore send into the world with the instruction 'Go ye therefore, and teach all nations', i.e., speak wherever the opportunity presents itself, inform them of Me and My direct working in all of you whom I send to cross your path .... Take your work seriously as there is not much time left. And I Myself will smooth your every way so as not to hinder your work, so that you will always have the opportunity to work on My instructions for the benefit of your fellow human beings. So far you can only do the groundwork, for the hour of your public activity has not come as yet. However, you should even do this preliminary work conscientiously and diligently, and you should always **want** to do it, then you will also have the strength and opportunity to work for Me. For many people are hungry and live in want, they thirst for nourishment for the soul, and I Myself direct all threads and convey the bread of heaven to those who desire it. I

give in abundance .... Hence you, too, should strive to distribute the delectable gift to those who do not approach Me directly and need to be fed by you if I don't want to let them perish. This is the redemptive work which, in a manner of speaking, makes you Jesus' fellow labourers, His followers and His helpers, for countless souls suffer great adversity. Whatever you do in order to spread My Word will be blessed by Me and will result in copious reward, even if, from an earthly point of view, it is not obvious to you. You must more or less feel like My labourers who only accomplish the Lord's will. But you will feel My will in your heart, and whatever your heart urges you to do, you should instantly comply with, for it is My voice which speaks to you, which impels you to work for Me and My kingdom. Do not fear earthly hardship or earthly disadvantage but always trust that I know your every worry and will remedy it at the right time. Anyone who works for Me is most reliably taken care of, it is just not obvious so that the work for Me is not done in a compulsory fashion but voluntarily instead if it is to be successful for eternity .... Someone who expects reward is not suitable for redemptive work which only requires profound love for Me and his fellow human being if it is to be effective. You don't have much time left, therefore you should ever more eagerly fulfil My will, which will forever consist of carrying My Gospel into the world .... of instructing those who lack knowledge and enlightening those who are misguided. For only the truth will have a redemptive effect, and therefore you should spread the truth which I convey to you humans from above because I

love you and want to deliver you from the bondage of darkness.

Amen

# **I need you ... The Custodian's concern for His servants ...**

***B.D. 5085 from March 16th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

I need you .... The adversity on earth is huge and can only be solved with your assistance, because I cannot influence people's souls with My omnipotence, instead, their free will must be stimulated and you should assist with that. There is immense adversity and I only have a few fellow workers on earth who want to steer this spiritual hardship. But these few are under My guardianship, they are cared for by My Fatherly love and will never be without protection. If you knew how I value your spiritual work you would no longer have the slightest doubt about My paternal care for you, you would not worry for a moment but, with complete confidence, always expect help in earthly adversity. Since you should constantly do your spiritual work I will also make sure that you can accomplish it, since the help for many souls

depends on this work of yours, which cannot be taken to them by any other means. This work for Me and My kingdom is very carelessly carried out on earth, for only rarely is the full extent of the spiritual adversity recognised. Only a few people possess realisation, only a few people know the meaning and purpose of life on earth and the meaning and purpose of Creation, only a few people are therefore capable of instructing their fellow human beings of this information and thus only a few people can be true proclaimers of the Gospel, because it is absolutely vital for this mission that the proclaimer possesses the knowledge himself. You can therefore assume that I exceedingly carefully watch over those who are suitable for this proclaiming ministry, because they have received this knowledge from Me Myself. Teachings which are already spoilt are not entirely effective as a means of rescue for the misguided souls, they can only profit from the pure truth, only the pure truth is the means to remedy spiritual hardship. And once a person has become a bearer of truth through his will and his love for Me, he will be a faithful fellow worker whom I truly don't want to lose, because I would not like to lose the many still misguided souls either but want to regain them before it is too late .... I need you, My fellow workers on earth, and I keep telling you time and again that I educate My bearers of light on earth Myself, because they are to restore the kingdom of God among people on My behalf, but that these bearers of light are in My service and, thus, will also be looked after by their Lord in every way. Consequently, anyone who works for

Me need not fear any earthly worries, anyone who works for Me should also hand himself over to Me with complete faith, he should look up to the Father like a child and always be certain that he will also be guarded like a child by the Father. And the strength of his faith will give him peace, even in every earthly adversity, which I will solve when the time is right.

Amen

## **Spiritual community ... Working together ...**

***B.D. 5091 from March 22nd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

A spiritual community can convey many blessings, for it distributes My Gospel in Words and deeds. However, I do not call members of an organised association a spiritual community but only people who, in spiritual unity, strive towards the same goal of coming close to the truth and thus to Me and who therefore also want to lead their fellow human beings to Me. For organisations can also exist without truly spiritually striving members, and I only acknowledge spiritual aspiration as the right desire for Me. An association of people who seriously discuss spiritual topics, whose hearts silently love Me and desire



a bond with Me, is a spiritual community which is pleasing to Me, My blessing will always rest on them and the very spiritual work they do will be blessed by Me. Wherever they are together I dwell among them and guide their thoughts in the right direction, I intervene in their conversations Myself by expressing Myself through a person who is particularly devoted to Me, who will then effectively instruct the others and also be acknowledged because the others will feel that I Am at work, because they will feel addressed by Me and will be convinced that what they hear is true. A spiritual community will always render Me a great service, for they will achieve far more than an individual person can achieve by only working for Me and My kingdom. Yet every individual person should try to gain followers for Me, every individual should strive to expand the spiritual community and always lead new labourers to Me because many reapers will be needed during the last days and the work that still needs to be accomplished before the end will require every effort. Together you can be very successful, for people will always look at a solitary person with distrust and lend little credence to his words. However, as soon as other like-minded people join him everything he says and does becomes significant. Therefore try to find like-minded people with the same striving to be of service to Me and to do redemptive work on earth during the last days before the end. By doing so you will gain very much yourselves but you will also gain new souls which you can lead to Me, which you can prepare for their mission of becoming co-workers for Me and My kingdom, to whom

**you** can proclaim the Gospel so that they will pass it on to all those who suffer spiritual hardship. What is not possible for an individual person can be achieved by many; they will find it easier to be believed and will always be strengthened by Me, for I bless all who are of service to Me ....

Amen

## **Christ's suffering ...**

***B.D. 5092 from March 23rd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

Christ's suffering on the cross cannot even be remotely made understandable to people on earth, since in their imperfect state they cannot comprehend what it means for a perfect human being to fall victim to sin, for people's iniquity effectively triumphed over Him Who had not caused them harm. The spawns of hell made the enlightened soul of Jesus, the man, tremble, yet it did not defend itself .... It endured everything; nevertheless it was horror-stricken by so much dirt and evilness from people. It suffered indescribably, even far more than the body, by what it had to endure. The soul was surrounded by darkness and its light was unable to bear darkness; all the same, it did not flee because it wanted to drain the cup to the dregs in order to redeem humanity. It gave up

its light, because otherwise that which the love of Jesus, the man, wanted to happen to it in order to offer God a sacrifice for humanity's sins could not have taken place. Thus it allowed its light to become ineffective and found itself in the midst of darkness which tormented and frightened it tremendously and increased its suffering a thousand fold, for the suffering of the soul exceeded the physical pain, which can only be understood by a perfect human being. Jesus, however, was as perfect as His Father in heaven is perfect .... and yet it was still on earth in the midst of sin .... His kingdom was the kingdom of light, the earth was Satan's kingdom, and in this kingdom the soul of light allowed itself to be violated. And the purest and most translucent Being Which ever lived on earth was horrified. It had to allow itself to be touched by hands it detested, because they extended from hell and took hold of it, it had to hear intensely hurtful words; it was effectively detached from its world and totally at the mercy of darkness, which had certainly been its own will for eternity in order to achieve the act of Salvation, yet it was nevertheless no less horrendous, for it was being terrified and tortured to the point of exhaustion .... This is why Jesus exclaimed: 'My God, my God, why have You forsaken me ....' At this moment in time it no longer remembered its mission, it only felt the separation from God, from light, for Whom it longed and for Whom it called in its distress .... It was the cruellest thing ever experienced by a person on earth, because He not only had to endure the body's suffering but also because the soul had suffered considerably more still, which humanity

cannot understand. For this reason no human being, regardless of how much he would have to suffer, will be able to reach the extent to which Jesus the man had to endure, Who already knew about it long in advance and in His human nature prayed: Father, if thou be willing, remove this cup from me: nevertheless not my will, but Thine, be done ....' It was also the will of His soul, which had completely subordinated itself to God, to accomplish the act of Salvation and it accepted its fate, for its love for the suffering human race was greater than great, but likewise the guilt of sin was so immense that only the most extreme pain and suffering could count as a sacrifice of atonement, which therefore was carried out by Jesus the human being. Yet the depth of suffering was as immeasurable as His love, which made Him take all suffering of body and soul upon Himself in order to redeem humanity from eternal death ....

Amen

## **Childship to God ... Conditions ...**

***B.D. 5099 from April 3rd 1951, taken  
from Book No. 57***

Nothing else can gain you childship to God than living a

life according to My will, a life of love, an assimilation and integration with the eternal order, which is based on love. Becoming My child with all the rights of the Father poses prerequisites on the living creation which, as a human being, shall acquire this privilege, and these prerequisites may be easily fulfilled but, on the other hand, may also be incredibly difficult .... I expect people to fulfil My commandments, the transformation of their nature into love, so that everyone coming into contact with the human being can recognise him as My child. This commandment of love **must** be fulfilled; otherwise assimilation with Me, Who is the eternal Love Itself, is impossible. Yet this always applies to the innermost stirring of the heart, for the layers surrounding the still struggling soul will dissolve or harden accordingly .... and this heartfelt stirring must emerge in the human being entirely without force, then it is valuable, both for oneself as well as for the needy brothers, which must feel true love in order to value its strength. Love is the only means of redemption, love is the only path leading to Me and love must be practised by every person who wants to become happy .... I cannot digress from this condition of Mine because contact with Me can only be established through love and because this connection belongs to the state of childship to God. One is the result of the other, therefore also the fact that love provides light and strength to the one who practices it unselfishly. But light and strength are likewise part of My fundamental nature, just as both were possessed by you, My living creations, when you were still in a state of perfection. You were full

of light and strength as long as you were permeated by love, but you lost them when love subsided. All these things are separate concepts for you humans .... light, strength and bliss .... yet they inevitably belong together, and a life of love, a compliance with My commandments, will return everything that you once lost back to you. And you can receive huge riches again if you adapt yourselves to Me as the eternal Love, hence, if you become again what you were in the beginning .... My children, who can delight in bliss because an abundance of light and strength dwells in them. The childship to God is the highest degree of bliss My living creations can acquire. I certainly make demands on you but they are not impossible to fulfil because I Am constantly by your side with My love and grace, because I do not expect anything from you which is **beyond** your strength; instead, I always adjust My demands to your spiritual state. Yet, as soon as you live a life of love, everything will come easily to you because love itself is strength and thus you can constantly increase your strength. Besides, through love you draw Me Myself to you, you draw the Father and the Father draws you .... And you will reach your goal for certain, you will become My children and take complete possession of My heart .... And I will not resist you, since I long for My children, they are the product of My love and I want to prepare immeasurable beatitude for them for all eternity ....

Amen

# **Matter ... Loss of earthly possessions ... Free will ...**

***B.D. 5100 from April 6th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

Everything you call your own on earth can be taken away from you if it is My will, and you cannot protect yourselves from it but have to accept it. But I constantly draw your attention to the fact that you should not grow too fond of earthly possessions because they do not last long. However, you can secure for yourselves spiritual riches which cannot be taken away from you and which you can constantly increase, particularly at the time of great adversity which will come upon you. Then you will be able to hand them out and those who allow themselves to be given treasures from the spiritual kingdom will receive many blessings. For they will help you attain eternal life .... Earthly goods cannot stop you from dying, but spiritual goods can indeed prevent your spiritual death. All worldly things will be ruined and you humans are likewise at risk of having to relinquish your physical life; then all your possessions will be worthless. If, however, you keep your life then you will be differently minded, for then you will realise the truth of My Word which constantly alerted you to this adversity. I know who will be affected by it through My will. Nevertheless, My intention is not to harm you but only to benefit your soul.

I know where every person is still vulnerable and I have to inflict painful wounds on him which kill his desire for matter, which cure him from the blight of this world. Many will indeed regard it as a cruel and harsh fate, yet one day they, too, will know better and thank Me for forcefully intervening in their lives which otherwise would have continued without achievement for the soul.

I see how humanity becomes increasingly more immersed in matter, how it only works and creates in order to add to it, oblivious to the near end. It is a completely pointless waste of strength, for very shortly everything will disappear before your eyes which you humans so greedily desire .... And you let day after day go by without acquiring goods for your soul, day after day you turn your eyes to the world and don't consider your soul's fate after death, which is so close to all of you, from an earthly as well as a spiritual point of view. Yet I can only ever warn and admonish you again, but I cannot force you nor can I give you such obvious evidence of the truth I reveal to you that you would change because of fear in order to escape the calamity. You must **want** to become blessed **of your own accord**, you must spontaneously desire to be united with Me, your Creator and Father of eternity, then you will also voluntarily fulfil My will .... you will turn selfish love, the love for the world, into unselfish neighbourly love; then you will strive for spiritual values and need not fear the end or the loss of earthly goods, which the coming time of adversity will entail. I know full well what I want to preserve or leave to the individual



person, but you don't know it and shall prepare yourselves so that everything will be taken away from you and yet you will keep the everlasting wealth which can never be taken away from you .... Only attend to these possessions and you will at all times receive My kindness and mercy, My faithful care and Fatherly love, which always gives you what you need; which never leaves you, who want to belong to Me, in adversity .... This is why you never again have to dread the coming events, for you cannot lose anything anymore because you have gained everything ....

Amen

## **School of the spirit ...**

***B.D. 5102 from April 9th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

You all have to complete the school of the spirit if you want to attain the eternal right to dwell in the spiritual kingdom as blissful spiritual beings permeated by light, who are able to create with might and strength in harmony with My will. This school of the spirit is your earthly existence, which frequently is an unbearably heavy burden for you indeed, but which then can also result in greater success if you only strive with good will towards your spiritual perfection and do not allow the tribulations of life to depress you, if you do not regard

earthly life as an end in itself but as a means to an end. You always have to remember that the period of time you live on earth as self-aware beings is but short, but that this short phase is decisive for eternity.

Bear in mind that you are expected to make the free decision of will during this short time on earth, and that you are only able to make this decision if you are influenced by two sides and one side becomes victorious over you .... This, understandably, will require a struggle which you yourselves have to settle as human beings. Thus, your spiritual perfection is entirely in your own hands but it will be supported by Me in every way, even if it is not obvious to you. After all, I want to win you over and not lose you .... Hence, you also have to be convinced that I will shape every human being's fate such that he will be able to reach his goal, his spiritual perfection on earth, if his will makes the right choice. And therefore I also know the dangers he could succumb to and will avert them from him as far as possible which, however, does not exclude the possibility that he can nevertheless succumb to them by virtue of his free will.

But his destiny is always appropriate to further his highest possible perfection .... Earthly life is but a short episode, and even if it entails a most arduous destiny his suffering will not offset the beatitude which he can create for himself with correct use of his will. I do not deliberately abandon any of My living creations to their fate, I will always and forever look after each one, for I want the school of the spirit to be successful .... And if the

person is always (consciously) mindful that nothing happens or is permitted without My will, which always aims to achieve spiritual success, then he will also always have the opportunity to enter into mental contact with Me to favourably dispose My will towards him, since I Am a Father to all My living creations, Who lovingly tends to His children if only a silent call reaches His ear, an appeal for help in spiritual or even earthly hardship ....

You are truly not alone .... Someone Who loves you is with you and only wants what is best for you .... Why do you not call on Him and confide your problems to Him? Do not allow earthly adversity to deter you from Me but allow it to push you towards Me, then it will truly no longer burden you so much, for I will help you carry the cross that destiny has placed upon you in accordance with My wise decision and in awareness of what serves your spiritual perfection .... Then the silent submission to My will is already your correctly undertaken decision of will, then you will no longer be opposing Me but you will have relinquished your resistance to Me and acknowledged Me .... Then you will have completed the school of the spirit with utmost success and your end on earth will be an easy one ....

Amen

## **God's language from**

# **Father to child ... Words of love ...**

***B.D. 5107 from April 18th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

I Am close to all of you, so close that you are able to hear Me if you carefully listen to My voice within. And it is understandable that I speak to you like a loving father speaks to his children, simple, plain and yet full of love, so that My children are familiar with Me and that they will also recognise Me as a Father Who loves His children. And because it is My will that they shall understand Me, My Words sound in their hearts such that they can be grasped by every child again, that they cannot be misunderstood and that they will make the child happy. My abundance of love would express itself quite differently were you able to endure it, but for as long as you still live on earth the sound of My voice is adapted to your state of soul, and depending on each individual person it sounds audibly in his heart or affects his soul like the breeze of a thought. I Myself Am with all those of you who can hear My voice, I Am present to you and speak to you Words of love, of comfort, of admonition, and I educate you .... For you will always feel My presence as a flow of grace and strength .... He who desires a lot will also receive a lot .... He who opens his heart to Me desiring My love will also receive its flow without

measure, and My love manifests itself in the Word .... The fullness of My love gives itself, the light of My fire of love shines into the heart of the one who opens himself to Me and wants to hear Me. Light, however, is wisdom, and the profusion of divine wisdom is inexhaustible and offers ever new treasures to the one who reaches out for them. Yet spiritual wealth will always be offered to you in such a way that you can grasp it, because I want you to understand Me when I speak to you. Therefore the light can shine in all places, I will make no distinction in the distribution of My gifts wherever they are desired from Me and the love of a child's heart appeals to the Father for them. And so My children will always understand Me, otherwise they would not recognise the Father, but He wants to be recognised by the child. This is why My Word is the living water which pours forth from the spring so clear and unclouded that each person can refresh himself with it, because each person will find which he needs for the development of his soul .... consolation and comfort, love and wisdom, grace and strength .... For as long as you live on earth you are still immature little children to whom I can and will only give according to their ability to receive My Word of love and wisdom. And thus you, too, should only ever consider yourselves as children and with gratitude accept everything you are offered by the most faithful Fatherly love .... Don't ask for spiritual nourishment you are as yet incapable of enduring, for spiritual knowledge you don't need on earth, you should not ask to ascertain the works of My omnipotence until you have gained the spiritual maturity

which enables your spiritual vision .... Be satisfied with what I give to you, what I deem beneficial for you and what My love has in store for the children who have established the right relationship with Me and therefore allow Me to be present Myself .... Pray to Me like children and gratefully receive the gifts which are bestowed upon you by My Fatherly love as often as you desire them ....

Amen

**‘I came to My Own and they did not accept Me ....’**

***B.D. 5114 from April 25th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

I came to My Own and they did not accept Me, they did not recognise Me .... I Am rarely recognised by people when I approach them on the way, hence they either do not accept My offering as a divine gift or they pay only little attention to it. But I want to be recognised by people so that they can utilize My gift of grace properly and apply it for the benefit of their soul. I often knock in vain at the door of their hearts which remains closed to Him, Who brings the most beneficial gift, Who wants to give them a gift of incalculable value. They do not grant Me entry, they do not want to listen to Me and thus reject

the most valuable gift although they are in urgent need of it. I came to My Own and they did not accept Me because they did not recognise Me ....

Many want to belong to My Own, many pride themselves about belonging to My church and yet do not know My voice when I want to gather them as a good shepherd and coax and call them .... They do not know My voice and stay away from Me .... But My sheep know the voice of their shepherd .... because I send to My Own Words of love from above, to those who open their heart and allow Me to enter as soon as I wish to enter. Only few recognise Me although every person would have the means to do so if they were willing to look for their eternal Father, because I would allow Myself to be found by them. But there is little longing for Me and thus they do not hear My Word either, which is the evidence of My Being and the visible proof of My love for human beings. And when it is made accessible to them by other people they lack faith and thus also comprehension for My love and mercy which give them the means to reach their goal on earth, to unite with Me by way of love.

It is easily comprehended by My Own who allow Me to speak to them and then make use of the gifts in accordance with My will. I can approach and reveal Myself to them and they will no longer doubt Me, they will accept Me anytime in their heart's abode and hear My Word directly. They will contemplate My Word in their heart and proceed accordingly .... And they will also understand My Word which I spoke on earth, that My

kingdom is not of this world.

Because they are now aware of the kingdom of God, they recognise the Father Who wants to come to His Own and Who is not acknowledged by people who live without love. But whoever lives in accordance with My Word has love within himself and is lead by it to realisation .... he follows My call because he has recognised Me ....

Amen

# **Battle of faith ... Fulfilment of promises ...**

***B.D. 5115 from April 26th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

You will also have to assert yourselves in the world which will oppose and persecute you. That will be the start of the time of battle I announced to you and which will launch the final phase before the end. You will not receive any worldly help either, for those who want to help are too weak but those who are stronger are against you. Nevertheless you will have protection you can indeed rely upon .... because I Myself will be with you and will give you strength to prevail in the most difficult battle. Anyone who merely calls upon Me will experience My presence, for I will not leave My Own, although I will



allow people to confront each other in battle. This final battle of faith must be visible because the spirits shall be separated .... because a separation must take place between My followers and the adversary's followers, and even the last people must make a decision, who so far had shied away from an open avowal due to weakness of faith or fear. They shall take heart in view of the strong faith displayed by My Own, unless they completely fall away for the sake of worldly advantages which My Own must relinquish for the sake of their faith. This decision will only concern the inner life of the individual, yet is insofar significant because this decision will also affect earthly life and, therefore, many people will fail. For anyone who still values the world too highly, anyone who loves his life on earth, who still pays too much attention to his physical comfort, will hardly be able to prevail because everybody will have to give up everything if they do not want to relinquish their faith in Me and My act of Salvation. Many will fall away from faith because they will have to profess Me publicly. But anyone who knows the truth, anyone with advanced knowledge, anyone whose life of love also provided him with My strength, will remain faithful to Me until the end, he will freely and courageously profess Me, he will speak on My behalf and even still be able to convince those who are weak in faith and yet of good will .... And despite the greatest hardship imposed upon him by the enemies he will not feel the adversity so much because I will stand by him and provide him with everything he needs for body and soul. The enemies will not be able to harm anyone who puts his

complete trust in Me, for what they take away from him I will return to him in a different form, yet always in a way that he will live for as long as I still need him on this earth. And My small flock shall testify to the kingdom of God and His power until the end .... and My promises shall come true so that a strong faith will be able to achieve everything and that My Own will receive what they appeal for in this faith. It will be a gruelling battle but My Own will survive it, for they have a commander-in-chief by their side Who will defeat every enemy, and anyone who belongs to His camp will be victorious and need no longer fear any opponent once the end has come, the Day of Judgment, which will separate the righteous from the unrighteous, the good from the bad, My Own from the followers of Satan .... the day when everyone's reward will be in accordance with his works ....

Amen

**Distance from God is a  
wretched state ... No  
separation ....**

***B.D. 5123 from May 3rd 1951, taken  
from Book No. 57***

You can certainly revolt against Me but you cannot

separate yourselves from Me, for you are a part of Me that can never ever get lost .... You, however, experience the distance like a separation and therefore think that you'll be able to detach yourselves from Me; yet the chains connecting us are untearable, they are merely shorter or longer but inevitably keep us together. All resistance extends the distance from Me, but every deed of love brings us closer together and unites us. If you therefore distance yourselves by resisting Me then My adversary will intrude and place himself between you and Me. Thereby you won't recognise Me anymore and comply with his will, for he lures you with that which you desire, with earthly goods which make My image grow increasingly fainter. Nevertheless you belong to Me and remain My possession, because I will not forfeit My claim on you. But My adversary and you believe yourselves capable of escaping My authority, yet then you will simply distance yourselves more and more from Me and find yourselves in a wretched state. For your distance from Me signifies a total lack of strength and light, it signifies the soul's death, it signifies a state of darkness which will also always remain a state of wretchedness. You, however, don't know the state of beatitude .... Hence you do not strive for it but content yourselves with earthly happiness which My adversary bestows upon you the more you turn away from Me. You don't know the true life, the life of the spirit which gives you light and strength in abundance .... you don't know the divine abilities you could possess were you associated with Me again ....

But I loved you from the very beginning and My love for you will not diminish; it wants to give and please, thus it also wants to lead you to the realisation of what you used to be, what you are and what you shall become again in order to be eternally happy. Yet whether you allow yourselves to be taught by Me is up to you, for I will not force any being to accept from My hand what makes it incredibly happy .... It can freely decide whether it wants to belong to Me or to succumb to My adversary's influence. However, since My love for you, My living creations, will never end, I will also pursue your love forever, and I will do whatever it takes to help you achieve beatitude, time and again I will come close to you and let you feel My love until, one day, it will beneficially affect you and you will turn to Me in order to receive more and more love, until you love Me too and voluntarily pull yourselves away from My adversary and strive towards Me. Then My and your happiness will be infinite, then there will be no more distance between us, then we will be firmly united by the bond of love and never ever separate again, for once something has found its way to Me of its own accord I will not let it go again, I will not let it fall again and the adversary will have lost all power, it is and remains My Own for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Process of development ....**

# Law of compulsion ... Stage of free will ...

***B.D. 5125 from May 6th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

Nothing is without purpose and goal .... Everything in existence was created by God and brought to life to fulfil a purpose. Consequently, everything also has its function; it has to serve in some way or other in order to fulfil its purpose. Even the smallest work of creation, the smallest living being, has its task which it has to comply with and effectively is forced to do so, because every creation is subject to natural law, thus it is unable to act unlawfully.

Nevertheless, even an accomplished task in the law of compulsion is effectively a service, for it will always benefit another work of creation, it is necessary for the emergence and preservation of same. And thus, nothing in the entire universe is without purpose, or was created for no reason.

The final purpose and destiny, however, is the liberation of the spiritual substance, towards which the whole of creation contributes in accordance with God's wise plan of eternity. The whole of creation only came into being for the purpose of liberating the spiritual substance, and every single work of creation complies with this destiny in the law of compulsion.

The human being, however, is an exception, he is indeed God's work of creation too, nevertheless, his thoughts, will and actions are **not** subject to the law of **compulsion**. The external human being, the physical body, is still subject to the law of compulsion, because this consists of spiritual substances which are still at the beginning of development. His soul, however, enjoys a certain amount of freedom, it is able to develop in line with its own will, thus God has not subjected it to this law. All the same, even the soul's development, its release from the constraint of earthly matter, depends on its will to **occupy itself in a helpful manner** .... thus, again, **service** is the actual purpose of its earthly life. And since it is not forced into a helpful activity, love has to develop within itself, which is the most certain impulse for helpful activity.

What occurred and was achieved during an infinitely long time in the law of compulsion shall now experience its culmination as human being, but of its own volition. The human being should serve with love in order to become completely liberated from the constrained state, which the soul regards as a limitation and restriction of its original abundance of strength and light .... The human being's soul **can** reach this goal on earth if it has the sincere will to do so, yet it does not **have** to attain it, because God gave it freedom of will to enable its free decision for Him or His adversary, who caused its loss of freedom and from whom it therefore has to liberate itself. Loving service is the key to liberation from this

infinitely long captivity .... What the spiritual substance had to do in line with God's will during the long path through all of creation, it should now, in the final stage, do of its own volition .... it should serve because of love .... Thereby it demonstrates its divine origin, for love characterises the divine being and it shapes itself again into its original nature, it accepts again what it had voluntarily abandoned due to arrogance. As soon as the human being serves with love his offence against God will be cancelled, he will have left the state of sinfulness and will have found his way back to God, from Whom he wanted to distance himself .... (had distanced himself) he has recognised his childship and desires to enter into the right kind of relationship with the Father, and through love he will become a true child of God ....

Yet it all has to take place in free will, and this is his test of earthly life which he absolutely has to pass. The human being is able to reach this goal since he will receive help from God in every way, but he may also have completed the infinitely long process of development in the law of compulsion in vain if he, instead of progressing in the stage of a human being, comes to a standstill or even slips back. Then he will misuse his free will again .... he does not use the many opportunities at his disposal to reach the goal, and then he will also have to accept the consequences .... a repeated path through all of creation. One day he will surely reach his goal, but it is up to the being itself to decide the duration of its captivity, for God gave it free will which He respects so that it can become

perfect ....

Amen

# **Pillars of the church ... Vineyard work ... Labourers - instruments ...**

***B.D. 5131 from May 14th 1951, taken  
from Book No. 57***

I have drawn you close to Me due to sheer love .... I have known for eternity who has surrendered his opposition to Me and whom I can therefore use to serve Me as an instrument in the last days before the end. As yet you don't know the hour of the end, I still spread a veil across the final things happening on this earth. Yet you, My loyal followers, shall be informed of My plan of Salvation; I will also let you know the time if necessary, so that you use the knowledge for the benefit of your fellow human beings without informing them of it, because the knowledge of the day and the hour would cause them harm, and thus I can only notify My most privy and loyal labourers and only in a way which will not restrict their faith and will. This is why I test My servants' hearts in advance, but I also give them the strength to pass every test, and thus the few will emerge who, in the end, will



have to render a great service for Me and shall also be capable of doing so. I know your hearts, I know your will and I Myself come to bring you what you desire .... light and strength. And thus you will become strong pillars of My church on earth which no earthly and spiritual power will be able to pull down because you will firmly resist those who want to attack its foundations. I will need strong-minded and staunchly faithful people at the end of this earth ....

And I know such people everywhere and prepare them for the final battle that will be waged against Me and everything of a spiritual nature. However, the preparation will take place by introducing them to My eternal plan of Salvation, in order to explain My reign and activity as well as all events to them for the first time and in order to thereby strengthen their faith in Me, which will afterwards enable them to work diligently and successfully in My vineyard. In addition I will convey light and strength to them, i.e., extensive knowledge which will qualify their work as teachers and also give them strength and inner conviction to prevail against all hostilities from the side of darkness. I will educate an army of strong fighters for Myself, but whom I will also sustain and support until it has completely fulfilled its task .... until it has gained victory over the enemy in the last battle on this earth. I know you and your will and bless you that you have submitted yourselves to Me, I take possession of you and will never ever let you go again .... I need you during these last days because I want

to influence your fellow human beings through you, whom I will send to you so that you can carry out your vineyard work on them .... And because I need you I will also take care of you until you have fulfilled your mission, until the end has come, which is imminent for all of you. I want to pour out My spirit over all of you so that you realise which time you are living in and My spirit will let you know when the day will come which is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **The working of the spirit ...**

***B.D. 5132 from May 17th 1951, taken from Book No. 57***

The great secret of divine love is His spirit which is poured out on you. It is not possible for you humans to penetrate this secret until you are imbued by this divine spirit, for it is precisely this which enables you to think right, to think in all truthfulness, and only then will you begin to also vaguely understand divine love, then you will have a faint glimmer of realisation, for something Divine has touched you and kindled a light in you, because the Divine Itself is Light. The spirit of God is effectively the expression of Himself .... an emanation of His divine light of love into infinity, and depending on the

state of maturity of the bound spiritual substance within His works of creation so will be the effect on it .... The expression of strength stimulates the spiritual substance which is still subject to the law of compulsion into constant activity, which takes place outwardly, i.e., it is visible to the human eye .... yet in the state of free will, when the spiritual essence is embodied as a human being, the effect of the divine emanation of strength is different .... Then it no longer affects the external, physical form but the spiritual substance bound within it, the soul of the human being, and thus awakens it to life, i.e., the spiritual strength impels the soul into an activity which promotes its perfection.

That is the **strength** of the spirit, the divine emanation of love, which irrevocably propels the soul towards God .... For it is light and strength, God's infinitely effective flow of love which has to deify that which is touched by it. God pours out His spirit .... The person who opens his heart to him, who simply **wants** to be touched by God's love, exposes himself consciously and voluntarily to His emanation of light, he enters His circuit of love, and God's strength, His spirit, permeates him, and depending on the human being's maturity of soul the **abundance** of the divine spirit will be recognisable in him. The less impurities are surrounding the soul, the easier it can be penetrated by God's light which reflects with an overwhelmingly powerful brilliance back onto the whole person, who spiritualises himself increasingly more the more he allows the flow of divine light and strength to

enter him. However, the spirit of God does not lose itself in infinity but actually draws everything to itself and thus unites the soul which exists outside of divine love with itself again as soon as the soul allows itself to be affected by it, hence, as soon as it turns **towards** the Eternal Love in order to receive Its gift. Then no distance will exist between the Creator and His created being anymore, then the strength of the spirit will have achieved the unity, then the spiritual spark which once emerged from Him will have been consumed by the fire of the divine spirit of love, it will have united itself with its Father-Spirit of eternity .... as an overjoyed being it will be in the proximity of the One Who is the Light and the Strength of eternity ....

Amen

## **Spiritual reception or mental work? ... Serious scrutiny ....**

***B.D. 5135 from May 22nd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 57***

An endless abundance of spiritual knowledge can be conveyed to Earth without it being recognised by people for what it is .... For spirits are working in all spheres

which want to communicate with people, and depending on people's degree of maturity are either received or rejected. No spiritual being is prevented from expressing itself if people are willing to listen. Yet people will likewise be granted protection if they don't want to be approached by evil forces. For force cannot be applied by the spiritual world, neither from below nor from above, and therefore it is always a matter of an individual person's own free will what **kind** of spiritual information he receives. However, you should know that spiritually awakened people, thus those who are in conscious contact with Me and appeal to Me for the pure truth, can never ever be deceived or wrongly instructed again .... For these people are surrounded by a protective wall of spiritual beings of light which only ever endeavour to deny entry to all impure spirits, because a spiritually awakened person belongs to the redemptive community once he has offered his services to Me and his redemptive work shall not be endangered by the darkness. But then it is a question as to what kind of mission the person intending to serve Me has and how far he has already penetrated the truth. A less informed person will be unable to grasp exalted wisdom, consequently he will not be able to judge its value either, to judge a truth which is as yet incomprehensible to him. In that case, however, his mission is not the same as that of a person who was instructed in the most profound knowledge should fulfil .... Furthermore, strict attention has to be paid as to whether 'spiritual **receptions**' or mental brain work are under discussion ....

You do well to remember that **spiritual recipients**, if they work on My instructions, will be spiritually protected from interference by impure spirits .... but that a person's own thinking cannot be prohibited when he uses his intellect in order to formulate his **will** and therefore 'spiritual reception' does not take place. This person can also have good intentions but he does not allow himself to be led, instead he takes the lead himself .... You humans should strictly criticise yourselves, you should remain profoundly humble and let **Me** work in you, so that you don't offer the adversary any reason to affect you negatively. You are being educated by My spirit of love if your thoughts aim towards higher spheres. But then everything that still relates to earthly matters will have to be left behind, that is, you must completely exclude yourselves if you pose questions you want answered. Only then will **those** spiritual forces which impart absolute truth to you be able to step into action. Then pure spiritual thoughts will flow to you and you will be certain that you are being truthfully instructed. But if you take earthly impressions along the soul will still be influenced by the intellect, in which case the intellect can gain the upper hand, and according to its wishes you can be affected by thought currents which are not emanations from the kingdom of light and yet are considered such, this is why contradictory contents should always be critically scrutinised, as not to confuse you. You should learn to move within purely spiritual thought currents, you should only desire purest truth and only want to be spiritually instructed .... you should in

profound humility desire to hear My Word .... then all earthly thoughts will step into the background, the beings of light will be able to take effect on you and educate you on My instructions. Then you will receive purest spiritual information whose content is consistent, and every one of you will think the same, because only one truth is sent from above to those who love Me and want to be redemptively active, who want to allow My working in them ....

Amen

## **Satan's power ....**

***B.D. 5136 from May 25th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

The one who wants to ruin you only has great power if you grant him this power yourselves, for if you resist him and turn to Me, you will receive the flow of My light of love which will completely disable him. For he is unable to endure love. And one day, when his time has come, love will conquer him too. Satan truly constantly endeavours to captivate, to eternally dominate, everything that had emerged through his will but nevertheless with My strength. And therefore he will put extreme pressure on those he fears to lose, who get away from him of their own free will, who strive towards Me in order to be

forever united with Me. He will spare no means to influence these souls, he will cause confusion wherever possible. He will always be present where My Own congregate, he will try to enter their thoughts in order to transfer his will onto them, even though he realises that he has lost control over these souls.

Nevertheless, he opposes Me as an enemy, for his immense ambition deludes him into believing that his power cannot be broken. He indeed recognises love as the weapon that will injure him and therefore he takes flight where it confronts him and stirs up unkindness at the first opportunity. He feels his power waning and yet will not let himself be conquered. For this reason his activity is usually instantly recognisable, because his method is always such that it will cause enmity between people who like each other, so that confusion arises where clarity used to be; and the fault is always due to people themselves that their minor unkindness lends Satan a finger and he tries to take the whole hand, that is, he spurs people into ever greater heartlessness. He has great power but only where it is granted to him .... because you humans do not use the weapon against him which will render him powerless .... because you do not practice love sufficiently .... because your selfish love is still predominant, which offers him a welcome opportunity. You do not recognise him when he crosses your path, you are short-sighted and you consider him your friend and trust him. He is not your friend as long as he is still My adversary .... and he remains My adversary as long



as he is without love. He has to be feared as long as you are without love yourselves, for in that case you belong to him and are still very distant from Me. But if your spark of love has been kindled in you then you will loosen the bond yourselves, then you will change your Lord, you will unite with Me and then he will have lost all power over you.

Therefore you, who became My Own due to your will which strives towards Me and rejects him, need not fear him. Then he cannot harm you anymore, yet you can still help him by gathering glowing embers onto his head, by extending your love even to those who are hostile to you, by responding to evil with love, because then he will have to recognise that you have deified yourselves, that you stand above him in brightest light and immeasurable strength. For when a being surpasses him he will feel its power and he will also set it mentally free, i.e. it will no longer be pressurised by him, because in unity with Me it is unattainable for him. All people are able to travel the path to the Father's heart, and the restraints which keep them bound can be loosened by all people with love, which is the means of release and unification at the same time, which turns you into My children, who will eternally experience the Father's reciprocated love and therefore be eternally happy ....

Amen

# Unjustified objection, being destined to be evil ...

***B.D. 5141 from May 31th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

Whatever will serve you as a blessing shall be given to you by Me, but whatever delays your spiritual development is not **My** will but the will of the one who wants to separate you from Me. Even so, I allow it to happen so as not to take people's freedom of will and belief away, and also to motivate you to test what comes forth from which spirit. Everything can be beneficial to you, for even evil can serve your development in so far as you learn to recognise and despise it and thus make a choice for good or evil, which also necessitates the knowledge of both. Yet evil does not originate from Me but from My opposing power, which thus also influences the human being's will in order to gain him. The human being, however, makes his own decision.

Where My adversary finds approval it cannot be said that it is **My** activity on the human being, because the human being is not forced into actions and thoughts but approves them voluntarily and because he has the ability to differentiate between good and evil. This is why he is responsible for the direction of his will, and therefore he also creates his own fate in eternity. And no-one will be

able to say that I didn't approach him, the destiny of every person's life provides him with ample opportunities which enable him to recognise a guiding and determining Might Which reveals Itself to him. If he ignores these opportunities or if he agrees to regress then he is abusing his free will and thus uses it in the wrong direction. He hands himself over to My adversary's power without having been forced by him. Hence it is an unjustified objection that the person, having been unfavourably influenced, was unable to do anything but to act evil and that this bad influence compelled him to be evil by providence .... The destiny of a person is always shaped such that opportunities for higher development prevail if he is of good will .... The human being need not fail if he himself does not want to fail .... For he is at all times at liberty to appeal to Me for help, which will always be granted to him .... And every sorrow, every stroke of fate shall encourage him to make this appeal, then the human being will never be at risk to fall, for I Am only waiting for his thoughts to turn to Me in order to seize and hold him to prevent his fall. The prayer to Me is the defence against the one who intends to harm him. The prayer to Me provides strength and fortifies the person in every temptation. The human being stands between two powers and has to choose one of the two. Both will understandably affect him and try to win influence over him. This is why I allow My adversary's activity, yet I do not leave the human being defenceless to his power, but through adversity and other strokes of fate I try to encourage him to call for Me, because only when his will

has made a decision for Me will I be able to intervene with My might and love.

He must turn to Me in absolute freedom of will, and if he doesn't do so voluntarily I have to prompt him through all kinds of serious difficulties which, however, can only ever further his soul's salvation and are therefore permitted by Me. But evil is caused by the human being himself by allowing himself to be controlled by the one who has turned loved into the opposite and who therefore will always act evil and unkindly and thereby can easily be recognised. But I will not stop him, for his activity also aims to achieve the decision of will .... But blessed are they who let themselves be driven to Me, who realise his intrigues and want to escape from him .... I will seize them and draw them up to Me, for they have used their will correctly and passed their test of earthly life ....

Amen

## **Hostilities ... Working in secret ... Greater activity ...**

***B.D. 5143 from June 3rd 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

As yet you are only opposed by a few people, however, the time will come when your will be attacked by many,

when there will only be a small number of you compared to the many who will fight you, some of whom will also call themselves believers but who will treat you with hostility for the sake of a true and living faith, for the sake of the obvious signs of the working of the spirit, which will turn them against you. As yet you have a small circle of supporters who are touched by My Word and consider it in their heart and acknowledge it; however, the time will come when you will even be separated from them, when everyone will have to rely on himself and realise that he is surrounded by enemies who want to destroy his faith in Me and My teaching. Then the fruits of the fact that they had been nourished by Me Myself with My Word and accepted the nourishment with complete faith will come to light. For they will stand firm against all the challenges of the world and will always find like-minded people again with whom they can exchange ideas and thereby strengthen their faith. Yet all of you will be prevented from being openly active, you will have no opportunity to spread My Word publicly. Nevertheless, I will strengthen everyone who longs for Me and My Word .... The hostilities against you will increase alarmingly and yet will fail to shake your inner determination, for then My spirit will also clearly manifest itself and My Word will come alive in each one of you .... External hostilities will be unable to make you inwardly waver because I will protect everyone who wants to remain faithful to Me. I recognise this will and will always give him the strength he needs in order to remain steadfast. Prior to this, however, there will be a time

which you can certainly use well for the distribution of My Gospel, and I want to draw your attention to this so that you will not let it pass by unused. For you will be able to talk everywhere without fear of being banned; you will also have the talent for talking and often come across the opportunity when you will be listened to and find understanding, when your vineyard work will not be in vain. Then you should be very busy indeed and not put off what you can do .... you shall preach love and draw people's attention to the end .... They will remember a lot once the final time of battle begins, the final battle of faith, and even if you are prevented from spreading My Word .... the seed you have sown will take root and grow and, during the last days before the end, also bear fruit. And you will continue your activity in secret, for your own and your fellow human beings' blessing, because I will bless all your spiritual work until the end of this earth and one day in eternity ....

Amen

**Development is a matter of free will and not God's arbitrary use of power ....**

***B.D. 5144 from June 4th 1951, taken***

## *from Book No. 58*

The divine spark in the human being is his signpost on this earth, for it impels the human being to do what is good and cautions him against evil actions and thoughts .... yet only gently so that it **can**, but need not be, heard and felt because it does not push itself into the forefront, instead, it expects a person to listen within in order to be perceived. Therefore it first requires the person's will again in order to become aware of the gentle voice within. Therefore the will comes first and all other blessings take effect accordingly, which also includes the manifestation of the divine spark in the human being. The will, however, is free, it is not forcibly influenced neither from above nor from below .... neither God nor His adversary determine the resolve of a person, yet according to his free will they exert their influence. This needs to be particularly mentioned because it entirely changes the eternal Deity's image, which is love in itself, when it is taught that the direction of will is determined by God, when it is taught that the human being cannot use his will freely but that the direction of this will depends on God's grace and mercy. The fact that the human being is offered the opportunity to test his will and to prove his God-inclined will at all is definitely an act of divine grace and mercy, yet of what use would the human being's life on earth be if his will were curtailed and his development on earth were entirely God's work, that is, if its success or failure were determined by Him .... A teaching like that gives rise to doubt in God's wisdom

and love and therefore can never correspond to truth. The human being undeniably always carries the admonisher within, God's mercy is always recognisable, for this gentle voice is a gift of grace too, a helpful means to impel the human being to where he should land according to God's will .... yet it is left entirely up to him how he uses the gift of grace, otherwise the admonisher within the heart would sound so loudly and perceptibly that it would **have** to be heard and the person would subsequently forcibly act as is demanded of him.

The **human being has free will** .... that is of greatest significance for his spiritual development and can never be denied; nevertheless, words can be misunderstood or misinterpreted if the necessary understanding is lacking regarding the human being's actual task on earth and which goal he ought to attain. Anyone who knows this also instantly recognises the error of a doctrine, even if it is advocated as being of divine origin. God's love and wisdom must always be emphasised, everything must demonstrate God's love and wisdom, and where this can be doubted the divine origin is missing from a teaching, for God, Who wants to be loved, does not present Himself such that He must be feared .... A God, Who courts His living creations' love in order to make them eternally happy with His love, will not present Himself as a God of wrath and tyranny and nip all love for Him in the bud. Try to find the right meaning and don't judge according to the letter, for the letter kills but the spirit gives life. But where the spirit of God is at work all veils are lifted and



every person filled by God's spirit will also understand His Word ....

Amen

# **Whoever is taught by God requires no further external knowledge ...**

***B.D. 5150 from June 13th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Whoever receives the remarkable grace of being taught by Myself, whoever receives and accepts this directly imparted teaching material certainly has no further need to find knowledge elsewhere, for I will completely satisfy him with the bread of life. He no longer needs to accept other spiritual nourishment; he no longer needs to draw from a cistern when the clearest water flows to him from the spring which is indeed far cleaner and better.

However, if fresh spring water is not accessible people should gratefully accept the water at their disposal and carefully protect it from pollution .... Do you understand what I mean by that? I do not, in any way, want to scorn what has been sacred to you since ancient times, the Book of the Fathers, which shall never lose its value to people who, in good faith of Me and for love of Me, try to

derive knowledge from it .... since it conceals profound knowledge, but it can only be found by someone whose spirit has come alive .... But when I instruct you Myself, I give you the teaching and the explanation at the same time, because I adapt all lessons to your degree of maturity, I give to you in accordance with your understanding. First of all I inform you of My will, since it is your task on earth to comply with it .... But I also reveal Myself to you as God and Father, as Creator of all infinity and as the most loving Father to My children, who ought to achieve the childship on earth and hence require help and support. The meaning of My Words has become incomprehensible to you, and thus I want to explain their meaning in plain and simple terms to you. Consequently I Am once again sending My Gospel to earth as I had proclaimed at the time of My life on earth.

I don't merely want to be present as God in your intellect, I want to live in your hearts, I want you to believe in Me with a living faith, and I want to teach you how you can arrive at this living faith .... not by means of much intellectual knowledge, even if you have taken it from the Book of the Fathers .... but only by means of a completely unselfish life of love. Your knowledge will become far more profound and your faith more alive when you fulfil My commandments of love for God and other people .... Then you will become knowledgeable and closely united with Me too, and you will also become able to educate other people in turn and inform them about the results of the right conduct in life. And then

you will be My true followers on earth, you will be preachers after My will, because then you will draw all knowledge from within yourselves, then My spirit will guide you into eternal truth and you can make use of knowledge which you do not receive from an external source but always because of My grace. Then the fountain of life will have opened up for you, then living water will flow from the source of My love for your refreshment, and you should also offer the revitalizing drink to other people, so that they, too, can taste the pure clear water and never want to be without it again. All people could refresh themselves at the source of life yet only few will find it, only the few who are not satisfied with what is inexplicable and therefore look for truth. And since they approach Me Myself for revitalizing nourishment I will not refuse it to them. Take from the source of life, accept with a thankful heart the contribution of My love and appreciate the immense grace to be taught by Myself .... For you still will need much strength which you can always extract from My Word, which comes to you from above, because I have blessed it with My strength ....

Amen

# **The souls' redemption from the abyss through Jesus**

# Christ ... Beyond ...

***B.D. 5153 from June 17th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

The cross of Christ is the sign of hope for all who have fallen, who are unhappy in their situation, be it on earth or in the kingdom of the beyond. The cross of Christ will show them that there is still salvation, a way out, which only has to be taken in order to surface from the abyss, from the kingdom of darkness, into the dawning morning. The cross of Christ points to the path of ascent which will never lead astray. For the One Who died on the cross due to His love for sinful humanity initiated this path, He paid the purchase price for the existing souls in the abyss, and every soul can utilise this privilege, the path of ascent is now open to every soul providing it has chosen Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer, as its goal, providing it wants to leave the abyss in order to reach Him. Then it will be entitled to redemption, then the divine Redeemer Himself will lift it from the abyss, then its sins will be washed away by His blood, the guilt of sin will be cancelled and the act of Salvation will not have been made in vain for this soul. Jesus Christ died for all human beings, for people past, present and future ....

He descended into hell .... He also made the blessings of the act of Salvation available to the souls in the abyss, and there is salvation for the souls even in the kingdom

of the beyond, yet never without Him, for only the blood He had shed for the sins can pay for the sins of a soul, and His forgiveness has to be consciously requested, He also has to be acknowledged as the 'Redeemer of sin' in the spiritual realm, or a deliverance from darkness will be impossible. An inconceivable act of love was accomplished by the man Jesus on earth, and this act of love is also effective in the beyond, His mercy even follows the souls who had passed away from earth without redemption. Yet, like on earth, the soul must willingly want to find salvation through Jesus Christ in the beyond too, that He should have mercy upon its suffering, that His love should seize it and raise it from the abyss. For this reason, the knowledge of Jesus Christ and His act of Salvation as well as the belief in both is vitally important and has to be conveyed to the souls, if they have not gained it on earth already. But this work is far more difficult than on earth, for the souls of darkness have little knowledge and power of perception and are therefore not easily taught.

Nevertheless, their state is not hopeless when they are in distress and appeal for help to be delivered from their present situation. Then they will not be completely obstinate, and knowledge can be conveyed to them through intercession and loving mental instructions which will enable them to direct their thoughts towards Jesus Christ, the divine Saviour, and call upon Him themselves .... And every call in faith and confidence in His help will be heard .... Then the path of ascent will

have begun and will be travelled step by step with His help. There is salvation from the abyss, but never without Jesus Christ .... This is what the souls in the beyond also need to know, otherwise they would never turn their thoughts towards Him, Who alone can save them from their hardship, Who, with love and mercy, is constantly willing to alleviate suffering and change an agonising state of affairs into a state of beatitude .... Nevertheless, it always requires the being's will, and to change this correctly requires a lot of intercession on the part of people with faith and love, who are therefore also able to help those who are still unredeemed ....

Amen

## **The right Father-child relationship ... Free will ...**

***B.D. 5155 from June 21st 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

I behave towards you in the same way as you behave towards Me .... I will allow you complete freedom if you want to withdraw from My influence, if you don't want to make use of My grace; and if you don't want to acknowledge Me and believe that you can live without My help I will not force you in this respect either .... Then

you will have to test your own strength and recognise how weak you are, unless you prefer to avail yourselves of the strength from below which, however, will pull you down for an infinitely long time. I will come to meet anyone who looks for Me, I will hear whoever calls My name, but I will not hold on to someone who turns away from Me, and the wretched state of My enemy is his own fault and he will remain in that state until he changes his mind of his own accord. You humans create your own fate with your attitude towards Me. I will shower you with love and grace if you establish the right relationship with Me, whereas you will go without completely if your relationship with Me is not right. For I do not determine your thoughts, intentions and actions, but I will help you if you want to let yourselves be helped. However, the **right** relationship also guarantees right thinking, and therefore it is most important that you enter into the right relationship of a child with Me, since then you will infallibly take the path which leads to the goal, to your perfection, which is the purpose of your life on earth. The right relationship of a child includes everything, the sense of your own imperfection, faith and trust in Me and My help, the longing for unity with the Father and thus also the correctly inclined will .... Then you will have an excessive measure of grace at your disposal, then you will no longer be weak and helpless beings, instead, My strength of love will flow to you incessantly and you will more or less mature psychologically of your own will .... You join Me because your desire for Me will also be granted as proof of My Fatherly love. But anyone who

isolates himself from Me, who does not acknowledge Me as Father and Creator of eternity, is still spiritually arrogant, he feels strong even without My strength and is nevertheless an unhappy being which allows itself to be deceived by appearances .... which regards the vitality of life as sufficient and which will recognise its utter weakness at the end of its life when it has lost its energy of life and is granted no help whatsoever from the One it had denied. I will give without measure if My gift is desired, but I will not force My gift of grace upon any being. I behave towards you in the same way as you behave towards Me, not because of a lack of love but so as not to endanger your free will, because My love is always greater than great and would never leave you in adversity if it is not detrimental for your soul.

Consequently, I must let every person keep his freedom of will and wait until he himself inclines his will towards Me. But then I will seize him and never let him fall again .... Then his resistance will be broken and I can grant him an abundance of help. Then he will establish the right relationship with Me and move towards perfection ....

Amen

## **Strength of intercession ....**

***B.D. 5161 from June 30th 1951,***



## ***taken from Book No. 58***

You should give the strength of intercession to all those who have departed from you, irrespective of the degree of maturity you may think they have, for they all still need strength and are grateful for any help. It is a happy feeling to have helped souls to ascend, which you will only fully realise when you have entered the kingdom of the beyond yourselves and see the hardship of many souls who are not remembered in prayer, because no one on earth will remember them lovingly and provide them with the necessary strength in order to ascend. Once these souls have experienced the strength of love they will work with immense enthusiasm and use this strength, but the first impulse has to be given to them by people's loving intercession, because this is what will affect them first and change the direction of their thoughts.

But this intercession has to be rendered consciously, i.e. with the intention of helping the souls to advance. You humans should know that your prayers are valuable, you should familiarise yourselves with the suffering of departed souls and with a loving heart pray for a gift of strength for these souls. They will surely experience this gift of strength and also gratefully feel the love intended for them which will cause them to love in turn, which will thus affect their environment like a small light that benefits all souls. You humans could do so inexpressibly much to release the souls if you have the will to alleviate hardship and suffering .... For this will motivates you to

pray from the bottom of your heart, and only this comprises redeeming strength. You should do everything consciously, external formalities or lip-prayers have no effect, because they exclude the conscious will to help. Only love is liberating ... this has to be said time and again.

You can achieve inconceivably much with love, you can send bright light into the darkness through loving intercession, so that many souls will gather there and be touched by this ray of light, always with the result that their feeling of love will also be awakened and will want to express itself. Loving intercession is a tremendous flow of strength the effect of which will never fail. Include all your loved ones in your prayer, mentally call them to you and tell them that you want to help them and that they should accept your help quietly and without objection; mentally instruct them that they, too, will be able to ascend if they want to use the strength they receive through your intercession. And always point them to Jesus Christ .... Only One can redeem them, and this One can only be reached through love. Therefore inform them that they should use their imparted strength to help other souls in turn who also suffer great hardship, that these deeds of love will bring them ever closer to Jesus Christ Who, with utmost mercy, will then draw all souls to Himself and guide them into the kingdom of light ....

Once you have helped a soul to use its given strength correctly its progress will be assured, then the weakness of will and lack of strength will disappear and it will

eagerly ascend and take untold souls along, for it then will also share its knowledge with them, and thus a single correct intercession will result in unforeseen blessings .... You humans on earth should not underestimate the strength of intercession, but always remember that it should be made with a loving heart in order to truly give strength .... And include all your loved ones, for they all are still in need of strength and will thank you forever if you increase their strength and remember them with love ....

Amen

## **Determining the time of the end - False prophets ....**

***B.D. 5162 from July 1st 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

The intention to determine the time of the approaching world judgment does not correspond to My will and My wisdom, which recognises full well that knowing the time and hour would not be beneficial to you humans, as it would influence your thoughts as well as your actions and therefore it will be kept a secret by Me, in spite of My constant announcements, warnings and reprimands. You humans have to conduct your life in free will, constant

references to the approaching end are certainly good but not the exact knowledge of time and hour. Indeed the end, the world judgment, is very close at hand and I will repeatedly mention it to you, nevertheless you all will be taken by surprise because no one will expect it with certainty and believe in the approaching end. But anyone who believes that he can specify the time and hour is not My messenger, and his words should not be trusted even though he claims to speak on My behalf, even though he wants to guide his fellow human beings to the right faith in Me. All the same, this claim can not have been imparted to him by My spirit, it can not have originated from Me, it is his own product of thought which he firmly believes to be truth and therefore he tries to spread it ....

'No one knows the day and hour ....' Remember these Words, which I spoke to My disciples on earth .... As God and Creator of infinity I Am well aware of this day and hour since eternity, yet My wisdom prevents Me from proclaiming this knowledge to you humans. For it concerns the human being's will which may not be infringed, but it would be infringed by any precise revelation of the last day .... The day itself has indeed been predetermined since eternity, but so are all events preceding it which aim to contribute towards the voluntary change of the human being's will. And thus I will do everything which helps and enables the human being to expect My judgment on the last day in the right frame of mind .... But if a person himself makes no use of it, his fate is already decided for an infinitely long time.

To know the day and hour of the end would then result in a compulsory change of his nature which, however, would neither entitle him to enter the kingdom of light nor the paradise of the new earth, but it would not result in eternal perdition either .... because anguish and fear determine his will and not love, which should be the only reason for a change of will. Thus his love would not be sufficient, and therefore one cannot speak of a change of disposition; nevertheless, the human being has to be given credit for his will to do right, he effectively would be obedient, not due to love but due to fear .... yet love is the crucial factor in the end .... For I want to separate the sheep from the goats, I want to initiate a purification process and thereby end one period of redemption before the beginning of a new one .... Hence a clear decision of will has to take place, for which people have ample time and opportunity, and in order to motivate them they are informed of the end.

But they have to make their choice entirely without compulsion. Therefore I will keep the day and hour a secret but it will come like a thief in the night .... it will arrive when no-one is expecting it, when people find their satisfaction in the enjoyment of life, when they chase one enjoyment after another, when they forget everything around themselves and are merry, when they experience utmost joy of life .... Then the day will dawn which brings everything to an end .... And then it will emerge who will stand by Me or by My adversary, who is lord of this world .... Everything will then be revealed, light and

darkness, truth and lie, love and hatred .... no-one will be able to hide himself or conceal his true nature .... Then everyone will show his true face, because the hardship around him pulls the mask off his face, and then everyone will receive his fair reward .... light or darkness, heavenly bliss or eternal damnation ....

Amen

## **Earthly life - illusive life ...**

***B.D. 5172 from July 17th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

Earthly life is but an illusive existence. As soon as you humans realise this you will have reached the point of ascent. Then you will live consciously, working towards the life which is true existence, which only starts when your body, your soul's material shell, passes away and the soul can rise unimpeded into the spiritual kingdom. Everything that arises on earth before your eyes, everything that is visible to you, is merely temporarily formed spiritual substance which has to serve its purpose on earth as matter to facilitate spiritual maturing. And earthly life itself is also a mere physical function as long as the soul within you still has no understanding of what it was, is and should be .... If the soul does not acquire this understanding during its earthly life it will indeed believe

even stronger in the reality of life, it will only regard earthly life as significant and thus strive to live as long and as well as possible on earth; and this desire will only diminish the moment it becomes enlightened, for then it will become conscious of the real life and earthly life will fade to the same extent as real life becomes more valuable.

Only then will the soul be able to distinguish between appearance and reality, only then will it live consciously .... It received life to enable it to prove its will during an illusive existence, to enable it to be active during a certain stage of strength, where it can utilise the energy of life in a God-pleasing way, and thereby become entitled in real life to receive an abundance of strength and use it in accordance with God's will. Thus it has to pass a test of life first to demonstrate that it is suitable to receive unlimited strength. For only the utilisation of this strength is the actual life, where the soul can be creatively active and also carry out extensive redemption work. If it fails the test of life, if it uses the energy of life at its disposal wrongly, it will forfeit the supply of strength in the true life, which it then would also use wrongly if the soul were to receive an unconditional flow of strength.

It must have attained a certain degree of maturity during earthly life, which will then make it a suitable recipient and steward of strength in the spiritual kingdom. And for this it received its earthly existence. Yet this is usually regarded as an end in itself, not as a means to an end and

is therefore also used wrongly ... it is deemed to be the only desirable life, even though every person knows that he himself cannot prolong this life by one day when his hour has come. And precisely this should make him realise the worthlessness and transience of what seems extremely important to him. As an intelligent human being he should make provisions for 'afterwards' and not be satisfied with things which are subject to the law of transience. Earthly life is but an illusive life, something on loan, which can be taken away again at any time ... But the human being should manage borrowed wealth well, he should use it such that it will earn substantial interest, not in an earthly-materialistic sense but he should use it to gain spiritual wealth, then the energy of life will be used correctly and the test of life will have been passed successfully, and then the person will be suitable for the spiritual life, for the true life, which will last eternally ...

Amen

## **Faithless humanity ... The end is near ...**

***B.D. 5173 from July 18th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

Each day takes you closer to the end. Time passes quickly,



yet the human race is not aware of what each day still means for people, what they could still acquire and how soon the time they are still granted until the end will be over. The human race does not consider the end and thus lives without worry or only worries about earthly things. Humanity is blind and does nothing to open its eyes; it is alive and approaches death even though it is meant to acquire eternal life while it still lives on earth. And yet, nothing else can be done than to proclaim to it the near end through seers and prophets, only the Gospel can be conveyed to it, and anyone who believes in it will be saved .... However, people live without faith; although they don't always openly reject what is presented to them by God, by Christ, by the beyond, they nevertheless don't possess the right faith, the inner conviction of it, and thus their belief is worthless. But if you humans don't want to go astray you must gain this faith. For without faith you will neither call upon God nor appeal for gifts of grace so as to be able to become suitable for the afterlife. Without faith you won't establish the connection with Jesus Christ, Who alone is the path to eternal life .... without faith you won't live your earthly life consciously with a spiritual goal, instead you will live purely an earthly life which achieves nothing for eternal life. Faith has to come alive in you or become convinced faith, if it is merely conventional belief .... Hence you must listen to what God's messengers proclaim to you; you should not instantly reject what you are preached but make an effort to think about it ....

If your will is good you won't find it difficult to believe, in that case you will already be consciously considering the end. You will take the possibility into account; you will try to change, for that is the effect of true faith .... If your will is good .... for good will also always develops the love within itself, because a good will always arises from a good heart.

And love helps you to gain a convinced faith. For this reason good and helpful people are more likely to believe in the end, for this belief **arises** from love and is constantly nourished by love. Just try to gain the right kind of faith, a living faith, which impels you to work at improving your soul .... And once you have gained it you will also confer it on your fellow human beings, for there is great hardship amongst humanity, precisely because you lack the right faith in Jesus Christ as the Redeemer, in eternal life in the spiritual kingdom. This concept is unreal to people, at best they merely profess it with their mouth while their heart is unaware of it; but then the human being lacks the knowledge and strength to transform himself, subsequently, earthly life comes to an end without having led to the goal, without having attained the maturity which assures him eternal life. And the end is coming ever closer .... Anyone who remains without faith is approaching a dreadful end, a fate which would horrify him if he knew of it. God's messengers, the servants He chose Himself, proclaim it to people and draw their attention to the near end. Listen to them if they come to you, and think about what they say .... and

take the possibility into account that they have told you the truth. Then you will strive towards changing yourselves, the earthly world will no longer seem so important to you and you will take better care of your soul; then you will not have to fear the near end either, for it will only be a transition for you into a new life which will make you increasingly happier because it can never be taken from you again ....

Amen

## **Characteristic of the church of Christ: The working of the spirit ...**

***B.D. 5174 from July 19th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

The church of Christ is not an organisation, it is the unification of all spiritually striving people from all denominations who believe in Jesus Christ and live a life of love, for not the creed provides the evidence of their belonging to the said church but the spirit which speaks through the people who are its members. Surely you will understand that it can never ever be enough for God that a person joins this or that school of thought, either because of its name or also due to being impressed by

the customs and traditions which every organisation and denomination exhibit, but that God only evaluates a person's attitude which can vary in every denomination, i.e., more or less corresponding to God's will, more or less heeding the divine commandments. And yet, the only decisive factor as to who may count himself a member of the church of Christ is whether a life of love has awakened God's spirit within the human being .... The church of Christ is a purely spiritual organisation which makes no concessions to the world whatsoever; it is only based on a human being's spiritual life, on the conscious will to attain the spiritual goal which is the human being's task on earth. The church of Christ unites all believing, that is, inwardly convinced followers of Jesus who accept the divine teaching of love as their law of life, who acknowledge Christ's act of Salvation and through conscious unity with Him know no other endeavour but to develop the strength of the spirit .... who thus are enlightened by the divine spirit, which will always be the evidence of belonging to His church.

The church of Christ needs no other external characteristic in order to be recognised as His true church, which He Himself founded on earth, apart from the spiritual rebirth, which is verified by the expression of the divine spirit in the human being. And this, in turn, is recognisable through enlightened thinking, through the realisation of truth, through realising the purpose of the human being's life, through strong faith and its resulting extraordinary working, be it by healing the sick, by

averting great earthly adversity, by the influx of the divine Word or the commanding of the elements for the benefit of other people. A power, which is of divine origin, will always emerge once the human being has achieved spiritual rebirth, and he will belong to the church of Christ, which is **outside** of every ecclesiastical organisation but which can number people from **every** denomination as its members. It is a spiritual community of profoundly devout people whose leader is Jesus Christ Himself, with whom every member must enter into heartfelt contact in order to be admitted to His church. For His church is something that is alive, it is not a dead structure which exists in the world by name yet lacks all spirit. His church is based on living faith which was brought alive through love .... This is why love and faith are the first condition in order to belong to His church, why people from all denominations belong to His church, whose living faith arose from their love for God and their neighbour. All these people are being united by Jesus Christ in the church He established on earth, and He also bestows them with the gifts of the spirit depending on their maturity, ability and purpose of activity on earth for His kingdom. Wherever God's spirit is working there stands a pillar of His church which is and will remain insurmountable for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Satan's work ... Heartfelt**

# prayer for protection ....

***B.D. 5175 from July 21st 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

Even you, who are awakened by My spirit, are not always able to recognise how Satan affects you because, particularly with you, he often uses means that intend to deceive you and tempts you such that you do not realise it as his work. He wants to cause your downfall, he wants to alienate you from Me, he wants to confuse your thoughts so that you start to doubt Me and My love, he wants to portray My Word as ungodly, he wants you to tear yourselves apart with self-reproaches in order to influence you even more successfully .... He wants you to abandon Me and follow him. And since he knows that you are voluntarily devoted to Me he tries to deceive you by portraying My will as being wrong, he tries to incite you into implementing actions in the belief that you are serving Me, although they are not My will .... Therefore beware and call on Me in prayer, turn to Me with all your heart ....

You should know that I listen to every plea you send to Me, but do not overestimate your own strength, that is, do nothing without praying to Me for My blessing. Then you will recognise perfectly well when the adversary is making a demand on you which opposes My will .... He counts on your imperfection, on your blindness, into

which he has plunged you himself. Prove to him that you have recognised him and that he has lost all power over you due to your conscious desire for Me ... and anxiously guard against unkindness .... For this is a trap he frequently sets for you and which you can easily fall into if you do not carefully watch your encounters. Then you are put to the test of practising love and stopped from doing so by the adversary who wants to win you over. The least amount of heartlessness is his advantage which he will use to tempt you.

If you become heartless you distance yourselves from Me, although you will never be able to separate yourselves from Me since you are permanently linked to Me, and I will not let anyone, who once has decided to belong to Me, fall into his hands. But he works with much cunning and force .... He spreads doubts into your hearts, and thereby you shall recognise his working and also experience My help from Me, by merely expressing a sincere plea in your heart which I will surely answer. He will indeed have much power before the end, yet My power is greater and he dares to question it. Therefore you need not fear him but be careful and scrutinise everything that approaches you. His power is truly slight as soon as you call on Me for protection and help, for I will step by your side and he will take flight, because he flees from every light which defeats him, as he does not want to lose. Hence, turn to Me at any time with heartfelt prayer for protection and he will not be able to harm you in the slightest, then you will be his master and you will

achieve the goal you aspire to on earth ....

Amen

# **Redeeming help for souls in the beyond through people ....**

***B.D. 5178 from July 25th 1951, taken  
from Book No. 58***

Untold souls in the beyond struggle to ascend, and these souls suffer utmost hardship, for their lack of strength makes their ascent impossible, and their realisation of weakness is immensely agonising for them since they don't know how to remedy their situation. This very lack of knowledge is their calamity, since due to the law of eternity they may only be given what they want, and they receive in accordance with their will. If they want light, then they will receive it, yet without having experienced the benefit of light they have no desire for it either. Their agony rests in the fact that they are in a constant state of suffering and no longer able to muster the will to change it, if they don't use their will to revolt against God and their fate and cruelly rampage through their environment. These souls are already in a state of hell, because they are constantly goaded by the forces of hell



and their change and endeavour to ascend still requires an incredibly long time. Even the souls which have lapsed into lethargy could equally have to endure their painful fate for an extremely long time unless they receive help from one side, since due to their weak will they are unable to help themselves.

And this help can only be given to them by beings whose love wants to release them from the darkness .... by people on earth or by beings in the beyond who are either already enlightened or just possess a slightly higher degree of knowledge which enables them to help. Thus countless souls experience this hardship and people should take pity on them .... but especially people will rarely help those souls, because people no longer believe in the soul's continuation of life after death .... People could have a vast sphere of activity on the spiritual level if they supported the suffering souls in the beyond and helped them to ascend from the abyss, and helping these souls in the beyond would in turn have an effect on people again when they suffer physical and psychological distress .... Yet people very rarely take part in this redeeming work, they even leave their loved ones in the beyond in great suffering, who should be particularly taken care of by them .... This is why it is welcomed with great joy when people gather on earth who have the will to do redeeming work and want to kindle a light for many souls in darkness.

For this reason beings of light also play a redeeming part in as much as they likewise appear where unhappy souls

in the beyond are remembered with loving thoughts, and their help is evident because they protectively surround the people on earth when the crowd of dark spiritual beings threatens to endanger the work of redemption. The souls in the beyond as well as the people on earth have their guardian angels who, depending on the will of the former, will intervene when danger is imminent. And the enemy will always lurk where people want to do redeeming work and try to confuse those who should offer enlightenment to the souls in darkness. Yet he will not be able to prevent the rays of light, which emerge from the redeeming love, from touching the souls of darkness, who feel their benefit and appear wherever people gather with the will to help them, and this work will be blessed .... For once a soul has been touched by a ray of light and love, it will never descend again, it will look for the light and also find it, because every soul will receive what it desires ....

Amen

**Serious admonition to  
consider the life after  
death ....**

***B.D. 5180 from July 29th 1951, taken***

## *from Book No. 58*

Once again I admonish you humans on earth: Consider your souls and your state after death .... For the forthcoming extremely difficult turn of events in your earthly life is merely intended to make you consider your physical death and what will follow afterwards. I want to draw your attention to it and lovingly inform you of the hard times which will befall you, so that you **then** will believe it if you are as yet unable to believe, if you still discard as a fantasy what is solemn truth. You are in great danger, for you live earthly life so light-heartedly as if it would last forever and yet, the time left to you is so short that you would be horrified if you knew of it. You gamble your life away, you are moved by trivial worries, and yet it is only important that you consider your soul, so that it will be able to calmly endure every adversity in order to start the true life in light and strength in the spiritual kingdom. Yet it is up to you humans yourselves in **which state** your soul will enter the spiritual kingdom.

I ever more urgently admonish you to change your attitude, although it doesn't have to be bad it is nevertheless too earthly minded to be suitable for the spiritual kingdom. Like a loving Father I call to My children on earth: Be concerned about your soul, consider your real purpose of life and hurry, for there is not much time left until the end .... Change your attitude before it is too late .... bear in mind what fate will await you when your earthly life is over, and believe that the

soul's life will **not** end with the body's death but that it will live on, yet in the state you have created for it in earthly life.

You are responsible for its fate in eternity, that is, you have to accept the consequences of your earthly life yourselves, which will be a fate in darkness if you have used your life wrongly. And you live wrongly if you live without faith and without love .... if you do not acknowledge Me as your God and Father and therefore do not observe My commandments either, if you only live for the world but not for the spiritual kingdom, which is your true home and which you inevitably will have to enter, albeit its spheres are so different that it can mean both supreme happiness as well as most bitter agony for the soul, depending on its state of maturity. And you humans are responsible for this state of maturity ....

This is what I call to you from above again, so that you will turn inwards and change, so that you will pay less attention to earthly life in favour of advancing your soul's spiritual life .... Listen to My call from above, take stock of yourselves, turn around before it is too late, for the day will come without fail which I have always and forever announced to you .... You don't have much time left, therefore make use of it and take care of your soul, so that it will not have to fear the end which is soon about to happen to you ....

Amen

# **Divine Word ... Psychic messages ... Disguise ... Mark ....**

***B.D. 5182 from August 5th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Anyone who wants to serve Me will be accepted by Me, and his work in My vineyard will be allocated to him by Me, because I alone know what kind of work each person is capable of doing. They will be able to serve Me consciously and unconsciously, that is, they will be able to know that they have been chosen by Me for a task but they will also be able, impelled by their heart, to do something which is considered vineyard work by Me as well without knowing themselves that they are loyal co-workers for Me in the redemption work of the last days before the end. However, they all need to have heartfelt love for Me and their neighbour, otherwise the work for Me and My kingdom cannot be carried out. And this heartfelt love .... the fulfilment of My commandments of love, will also provide My servant with the strength for his richly blessed work, because the work for Me requires particular knowledge which can only be acquired through selfless activity of love, and precisely this knowledge is the strength conveyed to the person which he shall subsequently use according to My will. And thus you will

also understand that a certain amount of knowledge about the eternal truth is a prerequisite for working in My vineyard, and this will also show you the mark of My true servants on earth, for you humans will always be able to obtain clarification from them concerning Me and My kingdom .... They must possess a certain amount of knowledge which makes them My true representatives on earth. How and in what way they will have received this knowledge always has to be checked, for only the origin determines the value and credibility of this knowledge. For My true representatives on earth must have been educated by Me Myself, because only I can dispense the truth and, as the primary Source of truth, also convey it to wherever I require people to proclaim My Word and where the conditions are in place for a loyal servant to enter into My service. It is and will remain a fact that I speak to those people who listen for My voice within themselves, who appeal to Me with faith and love to receive My spirit .... and that I will then present to them everything which they ought to pass on to their fellow human beings again, so that the truth shall be spread throughout the world .... Yet faith and love must be present, otherwise I cannot speak to a person, since only a devout person listens and only a loving heart is able to hear My voice. Thus I establish a heartfelt connection with such a person through the Word, which is the outpouring of Myself and thus testifies to Me ....

This Word is thus spoken by Me Myself, that is, the spiritual emanations of Myself shape themselves into

comprehensible thoughts for you or sound as audible Words within your heart. Yet I can also convey My Word to you in the form of a **transmission**, if I want to delight the blissful beings in the spiritual kingdom, to whom the conveyance of strength from Me signifies increased happiness. In that case you will receive My Word through My messengers of light which, however, will not diminish the Word in the slightest because it cannot be changed as long it originates from the spiritual kingdom, i.e., has not yet been changed through human will. However, it has to be noted that I Am talking about **My** Word, about the transference of the pure truth, which proclaims My will and imparts to people the knowledge about their relationship with Me and their earthly task. Yet not **all** transmissions from the spiritual kingdom can be called 'My Word' because this is the purest truth which can only be transmitted as My direct emanation by beings who are enlightened themselves. But beings also exist which want to communicate themselves, although they are not enlightened as yet or only possess a limited amount of knowledge but nevertheless have the opportunity to make themselves understood by people on earth, be it by way of thought transference or through a medium of whose will and also physical functions they avail themselves in order to speak to people. And these messages should not be confused with My Word, they should not be described as **My Word** and therefore should not be referred to as the working of My spirit in the human being. For My spirit can only be effective under certain conditions; these messages, however, can

be heard by all people who are merely prepared to enter into contact with the spiritual kingdom and listen to the beings' suggestions with more or less good intentions. These beings **can also** impart truth but there is no guarantee that their comments are pure truth, because the degrees of maturity of these beings differ considerably and the human being, as such, is unable to judge the level of maturity. Yet such comments can never be described as divine revelations, they are far more likely to endanger divine revelations if the human being does not possess a clear power of judgment which enables him to distinguish and separate proclamations from the spiritual kingdom. To receive My Word, directly or through messengers of light, requires first of all the will to hear Me, for I will not let My voice sound in the human being's heart **without** his willingness to receive it, because only this proves his belief in My working of the spirit within the human being .... Furthermore, a loving way of life must have prepared the heart to become a worthy vessel to receive My spirit .... And the human being who receives My Word must work with it for Me and My kingdom.

For My Word is the epitome of knowledge concerning My will, it is the impartation of realisation, it is profound wisdom, it is the formulated truth which shall be conveyed to humanity and cannot be conveyed by any other means but by way of revelations which are received by a person on behalf of all people who want to accept them.



Thus My Word is effectively the evidence of My contact with people .... And since through My Word people are offered the truth, the light from the heavens, it is understandable that the opposing lord will also find ways and means to darken this light, to falsify the truth and thus to prevent My activity. He will not shy away from expressing himself in the same manner where human will allows him to do so. **Yet only where** the human being's will facilitates his intention will he be able to try it. Often the slightest occasions will enable him to exert his influence .... if worldly thoughts occupy a person, which will then always be temptations by which Satan will try to push himself in. My kingdom is not of this world .... so anyone who wants to communicate with Me, who wants to hear My voice, must be able to completely detach himself from the earthly world, and what he wants must only be **spiritual** knowledge. If, however, he is still earthly minded My adversary will instantly interfere, and he is entitled to do so because the earthly world is his domain, yet you can always resist him yourselves by banishing the world from your thoughts. Anyone who desires to hear **Me** must have broken free from the world although he still lives in the midst of the world. And thus I can only ever caution those of you who desire to hear My Word from turning your sights to the world, because then you will be unable to perceive My Word in all its purity, instead the prince of the world will often intervene because he will seize every opportunity to counteract the truth and you will be providing him with this opportunity yourselves if you are worldly minded; then you will hardly recognise

him because he will also avail himself of My Word in order to deceive you, because he will disguise himself as an angel-spirit and use apparently noble words and yet cause gradual confusion by spreading doubt into human hearts, thus trying to prevent pure contact between a person and Me. This is why not everyone is suitable to work as a teacher, for this requires absolute truth and therefore a complete turning away from the world in order to be able to receive the pure truth from Me. And therefore you humans will also have to learn to differentiate between: My Word, the pure Gospel, the clear realisation, hence a higher knowledge which corresponds to the truth, and communications from the spiritual kingdom which may well be good and true but may also be interspersed with messages from the kingdom of darkness if the human being's own attitude towards the world offers the opportunity for it .... **My** Word guarantees purest truth, and My Word can also be imparted to you through My will by messengers of light and nonetheless remain **My Word** .... Yet psychic recipients who receive messages from spiritual beings and thus, to a certain extent, are their mouthpieces, should beware not to become exploited by lower forces .... They should not let themselves be deceived by lovely words, for this is the mask of the one who is an enemy of truth and also the means of gaining access to circles which genuinely look for Me yet have not entirely abandoned the world in order to be safe from temptations from below due to My constant presence. My Word is offered to you humans plainly and purely

because I Myself choose servants for Myself whom I know are suitable for the office of being a recipient and advocate of My Word and whom I will therefore also protect as long as their will applies to Me alone and as long as they want to serve Me as an instrument. For you humans shall never be able to complain that you are denied the pure truth .... I will always convey My Word to earth and also make sure that it is circulated, because people's salvation of soul depends on the fact that they will be instructed in the truth ....

Amen

**'The gates of hell shall not prevail against it ...'**

***B.D. 5186 from August 9th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

The gates of hell shall not prevail against My church .... which I Myself founded on earth. The gates of hell will open and spew out its inhabitants in order to increase My adversary's power and activity. All devils will fight against the small flock of believers who, in truth, constitute My church .... Hell itself will violently attack its walls yet My church will stand firm, for the believers will persevere with great strength .... The end is near, and that is why I

still try to affiliate those of little faith to My church so that their faith shall grow and become unshakable before the end arrives. Hell will have no control over those who believe, for they belong to My church and I, as the founder of this church, will truly protect them from the onslaught of hell. You humans are facing the end and you don't realise what this means, you don't know about the spiritual battle between light and darkness, between truth and falsehood, and you are unaware of the fact that the earth is completely engulfed by darkness, because the power of darkness predominates and you humans grant it this power yourselves ....

The battle of the spiritual world is not obvious to you as yet but very soon it will take on a shape which will reveal to you how close it is to the end .... The battle of faith will commence very soon, a battle which will be announced by the authorities against all who still have faith, against all those who belong to a school of thought, who acknowledge Me as their Creator and Father and who strive spiritually due to their inner realisation that life does not come to an end with physical death. All these people will be treated with hostility, severely put under pressure and brutally requested to renounce their faith. All of you are facing this battle, which not only concerns your body but far more your soul yet also requires your body's decision because you will be seriously threatened and it will be made almost impossible for you to stand firm .... And then those who belong to My true church, who acknowledge Me as supreme Lord and Ruler and who

fear Me more than the earthly power will reveal themselves .... Blessed is he who believes that he counts as a member of the church founded by Me .... Blessed is he who does not fear those who kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul .... blessed, who draws his strength for battle from the right commander-in-chief .... He will gain victory over the enemies, he will realise that hell achieves nothing where the Lord of heaven and earth stands, where His hosts fight, who will also gain control over the devils when hell is opened and its scum let loose on people .... My church will stand firm and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it .... The end is near and My Word will fulfil itself. Therefore prepare yourselves for the forthcoming time but don't be afraid of it, for **Mine** is the strength and the power and the glory ....

Amen

## **Blessing of illness and suffering ... Maturing fully ...**

***B.D. 5194 from August 23rd 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

The body's decline is often a useful warning for a person who is still too earthly-minded and thus endangers the

soul. Sooner or later he must learn to realise that nature can impose a limit and as a result of this realisation become aware of what will happen after the body has become completely unsuitable for this earth. As long as the human being fails to think about his soul of his own accord he must often be warned and admonished. Physical ailments, diseases and the loss of bodily abilities must therefore also be regarded as means for maturing the soul, since they can change a person's thinking considerably and consequently are often used as a remedy for the soul if it is at risk of succumbing to spiritual death. Yet they don't always serve their purpose .... then a state of obstinacy ensues, a complete avoidance of all divine-spiritual issues, and despite disease and misfortune affecting his body the human being tries to live life to the full.

Nothing that is inflicted on a person is without meaning .... the body's illness often achieves the soul's recovery; then it has been a blessing because the person learned to despise the world after he had to go without and looked for and found a substitute in the spiritual world. He will receive precious possessions as compensation for the goods denied to him by the world and which he now knows to be worthless. But that involves that he humbly submits to the fate imposed on him for the sake of his soul, that he obediently endures what indeed seems arduous to him but what can also be overcome. As soon as the human being gains just a little faith he feels the hand of God above him and humbly

submits himself to God's will; and then he can only win but never lose, thus he need not be pitied either because he owns infinitely **more** than someone completely healthy and full of physical vitality without contact to the kingdom which one day will also be his abode after the death of his body.

Only the degree of the soul's maturity on passing away from earth is relevant .... Everything that can contribute towards becoming more mature is used by God, even if the human being does not experience it as a benefit while he is without realisation .... One day he will recognise the blessing of suffering and illness and be grateful to God for using successful remedies without curtailing the human being's free will. A sick body is not as bad as a sick soul, and if it is to become healthy the body must endure illness until the soul has become charitable, until it looks up to heaven and has learned to regard the world merely as a temporary school of trials .... One day it will be able to soar freely and without hindrance up into high spiritual regions and be eternally grateful to its Creator for the grace bestowed upon it of letting the body suffer so that the soul can recover ....

Amen

# **Admonition to prepare for the end ....**

## ***B.D. 5195 from August 25th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

You should prepare yourselves for the coming time .... What My seers and prophets have proclaimed will come to pass, for time has expired and according to eternal law humanity is facing a radical change, which has to be understood in a spiritual as well as a material sense. It is the time of the end, the earth is changing and for the inhabitants of earth an era comes to an end and a new one begins. Yet only a few of the people who are presently alive will experience this new era, for preconditions have to be complied with which only those few will carry out. For this reason the earth will come to an end and countless people will die as a result because they cannot experience the new era anymore. I Am indeed lenient with those who will still come to Me in the last hour, who will call upon Me for mercy, yet only a few will suddenly change and realise their sinfulness and therefore still be accepted by Me in the last hour. But it is My will that the small flock of My Own shall reach the final goal, that they will survive the ending of this era and enter the new era where I will need them to uphold My law of order. And therefore I say to you:

Prepare yourselves for the coming time, for it will make extraordinary demands on you, on your will, your faith and your loyalty to Me. The approaching time enables you to achieve exceptionally high maturity but it will also lay claim to all your strength. For the closer it gets to the



end the more that which is actually reality will appear unreal to you, the more your faith will be attacked and My name dragged through the mud. But if you seriously prepare yourselves you will be above it all, for as soon as you belong to those who know, your faith can no longer be shaken. Knowledge, however, is the consequence of love .... therefore you should make an effort to live a busy life of love for then you will prepare yourselves well for the end .... This is My advice which you should not ignore .... Cultivate love .... and an abundance of strength and light will flow to you which will enable you to resist everything that will be inflicted on you in the last days and nothing will be able to incapacitate you in the final battle. Prepare yourselves and don't hesitate, for the time is approaching the end, this period of Salvation will be terminated because it corresponds to the eternal order that a change will have to take place as soon as no further progress can be achieved in the spiritual development .... No spiritual impetus can be found amongst people, only a few are striving towards the light and for these few I have a new task in mind which will only start after the change that takes place at the end. Hence they, My small flock, will once again be admonished to eagerly work at improving their souls, for the last great onslaught will happen soon, the last battle begins which shall find forearmed fighters who will enter the battle with Me and therefore will also win .... who will triumph in the end over the opponent and his followers ....

Amen

# Particles of soul ... Process of development on earth and in the beyond ...

***B.D. 5198 from August 27th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

Matter is judged spiritual substance which, in turn, shelters spiritual substance within itself that travels the path of development according to God's eternal plan of Salvation. This spiritual substance, which is detained by the material external form, always joins up with similar substances on its path of development and can be described as particles of soul which animate the individual works of creation again. Every work of creation, be it solid matter or the plant and animal world, contains such particles of soul which seek to unite with others as a whole in a new external form which more and more resembles the form of a human being. An infinitely long period of time goes by until, after passing through the course of the entire creation, all particles of soul have found each other again in order to then enter an external form as a human soul, which is given a specific task in order to gain complete freedom from any kind of outer cover. Thus, the human body is the soul's surrounding

outer cover whose task it is to help its indwelling soul reach maturity. The maturing process takes place in a way that the human being of his own free will, which is the sign of his divine origin, endeavours to guide all soul substances into God's right order .... i.e., by creating a God-pleasing basis for all characteristics of the untold tiny souls, hence by directing all instincts towards God. All cravings which are adverse to God must be changed into God-inclined emotions, which is the conscious work of improving the soul expected to be carried out by the human being during his earthly life.

In practice, this means that everything which still adheres to the soul from former embodiments has to be discarded, hence, animal instincts have to be overcome, just as the desire for matter has to be stifled, because all instincts came from the preliminary development and still cling to the soul as traits of the earlier stages of development. All inclinations from past embodiments must be discarded if higher development is to be successful, and everything that points to progressive development should be endeavoured towards .... spiritually-divine attributes such as humility, meekness, patience and compassion, peacefulness and righteousness .... For all these qualities originate from love, which should be developed into highest perfection during earthly life. Thereby a very clear guideline was given for the human being's task on earth, God's will is revealed to people through His Word .... The soul is, to a certain extent, still disordered spiritual essence which

should be guided into back into order, however, it can make its own decision because it lives in the state of free will. It certainly **is able** to return to order but is not forced to do so. But as soon as it has put itself in order the spirit of God will have access, which **cannot** penetrate a chaos of instincts and disorderly substances, or rather, it may not interfere by bringing order if the will is missing. Order will be established when the most prominent individual attributes, which characterise a prior embodiment, are reversed into the opposite, since all souls are imperfect at the start of their development and becoming-perfect is the purpose and goal of their embodiment. Thus, recognisable characteristics from past embodiments can never be in harmony with divine order, but they must be changed into the opposite .... until only love, kindness, humility, meekness, righteousness and compassion are the human being's nature and indicate his aspired perfection, until the divine order is recognisable and the human being's soul has reached its goal and can leave its outer shell in order to strive as a spiritual being towards ascent in possession of light and strength, which further its progress in the beyond surprisingly fast ....

My spirit is constantly at work in order to guide you into truth, but you must also allow yourselves to be guided without resistance, that is, you should not use your already acquired knowledge as a foundation which My revelations should fit in with, but you must hear My revelations **first** and then compare them with your

knowledge. If they concur then they will also complement each other, then this prior knowledge of yours will have flowed to you from a spiritual source and serves the same purpose of guiding you into truth .... And so continue: The higher development of individual souls in the kingdom of the beyond differs. Every soul effectively has other tendencies, other abilities at its disposal tending either upwards or downwards, which have to be developed or fought against and this is always the result of **realisation**, because as long as the soul does not recognise its state it will be unable to muster the will for change. For this reason it must already have been touched by a small ray of light so as to reach this realisation .... on account of which intercession for souls in the beyond is so tremendously important so that they will receive a ray of realisation, only then will they actively strive to ascend. A soul which already achieved a degree of realisation on earth, which thus tackles its work of improving itself on earth already, is surrounded by so many beings of light in the spiritual kingdom that it will always find help and quickly attain higher maturity. Hence it is particularly important that a soul gains realisation on earth, thus knows its earthly task and its own still inadequate state. For realisation is a big step towards perfection and allows it to rapidly move through the regions of the spiritual kingdom, whereas a soul lacking realisation often remains an incredibly long time below, because it is imperative that it must have the basic knowledge which it will reject for a long time before it is willing to be taught.

And this state of ignorance is extremely painful and can only be remedied by loving intercession. Even these souls are supported by beings of light, yet they remain close to them in disguise and cannot successfully influence them because the soul's free will has to be maintained. However, despite realising its own inadequacies, despite knowing its faults, weaknesses and cravings, the soul is unable to advance without help. And this help is Jesus Christ, on earth as well as in the spiritual kingdom .... If He is called upon with the serious will to ascend, success can be expected with certainty .... He helps where personal strength does not suffice, He not only forgives the sins of the person who appeals to Him for forgiveness, He is also the Provider of strength in the battle as a conqueror .... No being is able to lift itself out of the abyss without His strength, for an imperfect being is and will remain weak precisely because of its imperfection. Only the bond with Jesus Christ imparts it with strength and makes its struggle for perfection easier and also successful. Anyone who does not come to Jesus Christ on earth **must** rush to Him in the beyond, or he will forever remain below .... And, again, this has to be understood such that every soul **must come to love** .... For Jesus Christ is the embodied love. Thus **love** is the redeeming strength, love also acknowledges Jesus Christ, love has to be practised on earth in order to ensure a flight of ascent in the beyond. But it also has to be the driving force in the beyond, otherwise the soul would never be able to achieve a higher degree of maturity. And therefore love is the only means to discard all weaknesses and faults, for

anyone who has love recognises himself and consciously strives towards perfection, because he longs for the One Who is love Itself, and this One will always help him, because love strives towards love and the union in love is eternal bliss ....

Amen

## **Intellectual thought ... Truth from God ...**

***B.D. 5199 from August 29th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

You will always get into an inner state of conflict if you take your own paths, if you distance yourselves from Me in thought and don't think that you need My support. However, if you firmly unite with Me and look for Me in thought you will also be utterly convinced that you know the truth and are able to refute every doubt, because My presence only reveals the pure truth to you and you cannot fall prey to error in My presence. Bear in mind that when you are in doubt you yourselves allow these doubts to arise in you because you search intellectually and thereby render Me ineffective. For I never penetrate with My spirit if you yourselves don't want it. And this will be lacking as long as you only use your intellect. The

object of your research will become bright and clear if you hand yourselves over to Me in thought and appeal for My clarification. Every doubt will be swept away, because it cannot exist beside Me, Whom you call to you through your prayer. Try to dispel every doubt in you in this way and you will succeed as soon as you make heartfelt contact with Me and thereby give Me Myself the opportunity to take effect in you. It is so easy to receive an answer to all questions from Me, yet the intellect must be excluded until you feel the answer in your heart .... you must think less but listen within. This process is not comprehensible to any person who has not yet made the test that he **can**, with a sincere will and profound faith, hear Me. The unbeliever will never be able to hear My answer in himself, because he will never seriously listen within either .... Faith, however, makes him listen and he feels My answer in his heart. What seems unreal to the person is the actual reality .... to hear Me speak .... And thus a doubter need only make heartfelt contact with Me in prayer in order to dispel his doubts, whilst he can dwell on it for a long time and come to no certain conclusion if he does not approach Me for advice. Without Me you cannot know the truth, and neither will you be able to recognise the truth as truth without Me. And even if you accept the pure and unadulterated truth from a servant's mouth who was educated by Me, from a fellow human being who, in intimate contact with Me, hears My Word .... it will still seem doubtful to you as long as you only listen to it intellectually, as long as you don't enter into contact with Me as well, so that My spirit bestows an



understanding for the truth upon you. And therefore My representatives on earth can only mediate but not convince as long as the listener has not yet established a bond with Me. Nevertheless, My Word shall motivate him to look for Me, and I will truly and gladly allow Myself to be found and give to him what he is lacking, complete understanding for the eternal truth, which will mature your soul as soon as you consciously accept it from Me, as soon as you allow Me to be present through your will, your faith and your love ....

Amen

## **Help for poor souls ... Love redeems ...**

***B.D. 5203 from September 4th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Everything that helps the souls to ascend will be appreciated in the spiritual kingdom. The love given to the still immature spirit is the only means of redemption as long as it is unable to lift itself up, i.e. as long as it is still unable to be lovingly active itself, since it is without strength. Everything that will strengthen these beings has My blessing because it complies with the principle of love. The love people demonstrate to immature souls

somehow or other has to have a redeeming effect, be it on earth or in the beyond, for no spark of love is without strength, and thus all deeds of love always result in a supply of strength. You humans on earth can therefore help greatly if you are motivated by love to consider the poor souls in the beyond who are completely without strength and therefore dependent on help. And everything you do to strengthen them, everything you do to release them, will be pleasing to Me and never be in vain.

So little love can be found amongst people on earth already, and they consider the souls in the beyond even less, since they do not believe in life after death. And this unbelief also has bitter repercussions on the souls in the beyond, who languish unredeemed and without strength in dark surroundings and are unable to help themselves. Every kind thought, every loving wish for their well-being alleviates their torment and will be gratefully felt by them. Yet especially the souls who languish in darkness are rarely thought of kindly and lovingly, and thus they remain in utmost hardship. Thus you can understand that people who want to help them are surrounded by untold souls who all would like to make their presence known in order to be helped. All you humans are surrounded by such souls, yet only few of you will listen to them, only few of you have the willingness to help and the faith that you can help through prayer and loving thoughts .... Yet countless souls cannot find anyone to pray for them on earth and therefore also try to approach circles where

currents of strength manifest themselves. These souls, too, appeal for your help .... Grant their request, do everything that love inspires you to do and know that My blessing rests upon you as long as you are only motivated by love to help them.

You should only want to help, then you can loosen many chains, then you can free the tormented souls by initially giving them strength, which they will then use themselves by following your example, so that they too will want to help as you have helped them. Never forget that they depend on your help, even if My grace and mercy will not condemn any being forever; but first their hardened hearts have to be touched by a ray of love before they seize My gifts of grace .... And I Myself will guide these souls to you, who just need an incentive to start their path of development in the beyond. Yet without loving help they will continue to languish in the same state for an infinitely long time and cannot find the path of ascent. Pray for them and don't forget them, for their suffering as a result of their unbelief and unkindness is immeasurable; but if you want to help them I will always be willing to lift them with My grace and mercy from the night of death into life, for then I will not be able to resist the love you give to those unhappy souls in the beyond and I will forgive their guilt for the sake of your love ....

Amen

# God of love ... Not God of wrath ...

***B.D. 5204 from September 5th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

The God Who created you is not a God of wrath but a God of love .... He wants to give to you but not take from you. However, He wants to give you blissful happiness which will last forever. If He therefore seems to take something away from you, it is just something worthless which is only valuable in your eyes, but in reality it causes you harm. But you believe that the possessions you love so dearly on earth are taken from you by a God of wrath .... You don't know Him, you don't know the God of love Who is the Father of you all and also acts like a Father with His children, Who lets you suffer out of love because He knows that you can only attain possession of the highest and everlasting wealth by taking from you what you value on earth too much. His love for you humans is beyond measure and pacifies all anger which people's behaviour might well be able to arouse were His love not considerably stronger. He does not punish, instead, in His wisdom He recognises His children's love and thus He tries to help and lift them up when they fall. It is not wrath if He destroys what impedes His children from reaching their Father .... it is **love** which removes and clears the path to Him. A God of wrath is not a perfect

Being, for only love can lay claim to perfection, and therefore you humans can reject any teaching which tries to portray your Creator and Father of eternity as an **angry** Being Which sends an inexorable judgment upon you because you have done wrong .... The God of love even has mercy upon the devils .... for this reason He descended to hell in order to show them the path out of the darkness as well .... He extends His hand even to those who have fallen furthest away and wants to draw them up to His Fatherly heart. The God of love takes mercy upon humanity and He seeks to save them. A God of wrath, however, would destroy what does not comply with His will. Nevertheless, God's love does not exclude His righteousness .... He cannot guide those who are sinful into beatitude, yet He will not condemn them. He follows them with His love until they reciprocate it and voluntarily let go of sin, and thus His love is greater than humanity merits it; it is infinite and full of strength, and you humans will never appreciate its depth .... on account of which no wrath can exist next to it. Therefore you need not fear God, but you should love Him with all your heart and strength; you should love Him and thereby partake in His strength. You should love Him so that He can provide you with the highest bliss, which is to be found in the unification with Him, Who is the eternal Love Himself. He looks upon all of you with eyes shining with love, full of affection He extends His hand and calls you with a loving voice, He want to regain the children who once left Him of their own free will .... Yet He will always try to attract you with love, but never try to achieve something with

wrath, which is unthinkable without love. He will lift you up to Himself .... His love is a power which will not lose its effect. Wrath, however, would obliterate and destroy and make a return to God impossible .... If, however, the **wrath** of God is spoken of, it should only be understood as His firm will of binding the spiritual beings striving away from Him in His works of creation, but this will ultimately only facilitate their return to him and this wrath is therefore only an act of love by God in order to regain the resisting spirits one day, so that they will become blessed ....

Amen

## **Fighters for truth ... Misguided teachings ...**

***B.D. 5205 from September 5th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

You task is to teach .... to spread the truth amongst people, to disperse the darkness which engulfs and prevents them from feeling the benefit of the light. As long as his spirit is still in the dark the human being is taking the wrong path, for the right path is called truth .... Truth only comes forth from Me and leads back to Me again. You humans should understand that I cannot make any concessions concerning your beatitude ....

Understand that I, the Eternal Truth, cannot be tolerant of lies or errors .... Understand that I transmit the truth to earth because you need to know it, because every day lived without truth is lost to you. Only truth portrays Me as I Am, and only a true representation of Me enables you to love Me and thereby attain beatitude. Every wrong teaching is My adversary's attempt to distort My image and lessen your love for Me. Every wrong teaching is a good foundation for new misguided teachings, and soon you are faced by an inextricable thicket which no longer lets the light shine through to illuminate your spirit.

And therefore I prepare bearers of light for Myself who are to bring the truth to you humans, thus I first guide them into the truth and instruct them to bring illumination wherever it may be. I frequently confront misguided teachings with the truth so that they can oppose each other, because I want to raise doubts in people's hearts, because only a doubter will start to think and look for truth. The teaching I gave to people on earth has been so infiltrated by error from the human side that it no longer has a healing effect on people .... And therefore I want to purify it; therefore I give it to you in its purest form again and make sure that this teaching is conveyed to people of good will. Anyone who wants to accept it will gain utmost blessing, anyone who rejects it also has to accept the consequences ....

Nevertheless, I need messengers to spread My pure truth on earth, I need disciples to whom I can say once again: go and teach all nations .... Thus I need apostles who

speak in My name on earth and proclaim My Word to people. And these should courageously confront the representatives of misguided teachings, because the office to which I have called them is to unhesitatingly confront error with truth, to freely explain what damage is caused to the soul as long as it is wrongly educated, as long as it is not living in truth which alone leads to Me. Although you humans can certainly strive to attain Me in spite of misguided teachings it is, however, a futile effort, for you need to understand that error and lie are not Mine but My adversary's doing and that every ascent is therefore prevented (made impossible). Furthermore, My adversary's works can never result in progress, only truth will help you to ascend.

I cannot make concessions and assess the error the same as the truth, I can only acknowledge good will and bless it by making the truth available to you, but then you will also have to be receptive, you should not close your eyes to the truth or your will is going to fail .... You have to long for Me and thus for truth, and then you will surely receive it. But do not assume that I agree with you if you want to hold on to your misconceptions. Anyone who receives the truth from Me is also able to examine and recognise it as truth, for I do not demand the impossible from you. But anyone who receives it from Me should also support it and not shy away from upholding it, he should not fear to appear too harsh since error cannot be emphasized harshly enough since it is My adversary's work who is manifestly turning against Me ....



Error and lies cause hopeless confusion and strip a person of all realisation; they are not light but come forth from intense darkness. Therefore you should proceed boldly against error and untruth, because you have a weapon in truth which will assure your victory. I have chosen you as My fighters, and you should fight with the sword of your tongue, you should not be afraid to remove your fellow human being's childish faith .... as it will not help a person to attain perfection as long as it is wrong. But you can replace it with something good, pure and extremely effective, the truth, which you have received from Me Myself. You will be able to give them more than you take away, you will seize their soul from My adversary's power and lead it back to Me ....

Amen

## **God is good and righteous ....**

***B.D. 5212 from September 15th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I Am a good and righteous God, and time and again My kindness and mercy will be experienced by you humans if you have done wrong, although I cannot disregard anything sinful .... yet I take all your weaknesses into

account, I do not judge you humans as I **once** judged you when you had been perfect; for now you are imperfect creatures without correct realisation and of weak will. Nevertheless, I must urge you to regain your perfection. I must reproach you for your sins, I must inform you of what is right and what is wrong, what corresponds to My will and what you should do in order to become perfect again. And therefore I cannot ignore any transgressions either, although I look upon them through the eyes of clemency and mercy. For you **need** not sin even if you are weak, because you can use My strength and grace which is at your disposal. Thus I have to remind you to always request My strength, to appeal for My gifts of grace and not to go through life without imploring Me for support. I Am good and righteous .... therefore I cannot abide you acting wrongly but have to confront you with injustice until you have recognised it as injustice and endeavour to think and act righteously. You must recognise sin in order to avoid it and I want to help you in this, for I Am a good God, a God of love and not a God of wrath Who punishes when His living creation has transgressed ....

I Am a Father of My children, and a father wants to win his children over with love. All the same, He cannot overlook the injustice due to false love, because this will not lead the child to perfection; perfection, however, is the human being's ultimate goal on earth. Let yourselves be drawn and educated by Me, also humbly accept a reprimand, for it is just a means of making you realise a wrong action in order to subsequently avoid it. And always keep to My

commandment of love .... Then you will also conduct yourselves in a good and right way .... be kind and merciful yourselves and don't judge heartlessly; try to emulate Me in everything, My patience, gentleness, humility and peacefulness, and if you are at risk of failing call upon Me for help, for strength and grace. And you will receive it whenever you appeal to Me for it. Only I know your weakness, your spiritual hardship and also your will .... I Am a God of love, I Am a Judge Who is full of forbearance and tries everything in order to change you before His judgment of you .... You only need to direct your will towards Me so that I can help you if you become weak .... Then I will always let kindness and mercy prevail, even when you have done wrong ....

Amen

## **Serious reference to the end ....**

***B.D. 5219 from September 26th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Your days are numbered .... You won't live on this earth for long anymore, your lives will be shortened because the time I granted humanity for its salvation has come to an end, and you, who are presently alive, belong to those

who will live to see the end .... I will certainly still recall many beforehand whose souls would not survive the last battle for Me and My kingdom, and many will die far and wide, and the various reasons will not make you humans aware of the fact that the last action has already started, that it is already an act of mercy, because I give those souls the opportunity to continue their process of development in the kingdom of the beyond, which will no longer be possible once the last day has come .... You all have not much time left yet none of you know if he will not be snatched from the midst of life earlier, no-one knows when his hour has come .... Don't mourn those who go before you, for they are recalled by My love; but often remember them in your prayer so that they will make use of the blessings which will also be granted to them in the afterlife. I seriously admonish you all to prepare yourselves for your last hour, for you don't have much time left. I urgently warn you through the events in the world, and if only you kept your eyes open you would recognise the gravity of the hour, for I clearly speak to you through the signs of the time.

However, you humans only have eyes for the world, you give the world your every attention but fail to think of Me, and irritably you shrug everything off what could draw your attention to Me and the end .... You don't want to believe and therefore remain untouched by all happenings which only too clearly demonstrate the truth of My Word to you. It is high time .... yet not in a worldly sense but for penance, for a change of will, for turning

back and for reflection .... Don't remain indifferent when I admonish you for whatever it may be .... Ask yourselves in what state you are in when you are being called to leave the earth and to enter through the gate of death into eternity .... Ask yourselves as whether you will be able to stand before My eyes and believe that the hour will soon arrive when your earthly life comes to an end ....

Therefore, only take care of your souls and turn your eyes away from the world, for it will perish, the soul, however, is everlasting and its fate in eternity will be according to your way of life on Earth ....

Amen

## **Knowledge about goal and purpose ... Childship to God ...**

***B.D. 5222 from September 29th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

You are destined to become children of God and can indeed reach that goal. However, are you humans at all aware of your goal, your purpose on this earth? And is it not your own fault that you don't know anything about it? Are you not living a way of life which cannot result in any kind of realisation for you? Are you not spiritually blind?

And thus you seriously ought to ask yourselves why you are ignorant and I will give you the answer: You lack the love which guides you into realisation .... For love is the key to wisdom, love is the light which illuminates your spirit .... Love guides you into truth and, as soon as you live in love, the goal and your purpose will come clear to you. The knowledge of it can certainly also be conveyed to you if you live an earthly life without love .... It will also be conveyed to you in order to awaken your sense of responsibility, yet you will never believe what you are told even if it is the truth, because without love you lack the power of realisation .... This is why My Word, if it is preached to you, will remain unsuccessful and not be taken seriously by you until you become lovingly active of your own accord .... Consequently, love must be preached first and anyone taking this sermon to heart will grow in realisation and also be able to believe what he is taught. You are all destined to attain childship to God, to attain an exceedingly blissful state in an abundance of light and strength .... You are destined for this, but you can never be forcibly placed in this state by Me, because it requires your free will to become a true child of God, My image, which can create and shape like Me in blissful happiness. For this reason it is so extraordinarily difficult to persuade you humans without forcing your will to aspire towards this highest goal. This can only be achieved if you live in love, because then you will also know about your origin, your imperfect state and your ultimate goal, for then you will recognise what you had been, what you are now and what you shall become again .... You can create

an inconceivably blissful state for yourselves if you live a life of love on earth. And therefore I send My disciples into the world again in order to preach love to people, for they have only a short time left in order to reach their goal on earth. My love constantly endeavours to lead people into realisation, but they must voluntarily, of their own accord, transform themselves into love. And blessed is he who ignites his indwelling spark of love, blessed is he who thereby comes closer to Me and can avail himself of My strength of love .... For he will reach his goal, he will make contact with Me and not rest until his spirit has united itself with the Father-Spirit of eternity, until his love has merged with the eternal love, until he has become and then remains My child for all eternity ....

Amen

## **The spirit of the Antichrist ....**

***B.D. 5223 from September 30th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

The spirit of the Antichrist reigns wherever I Am not recognised. That is where he has already caused his work of confusion, he has weakened people's power of realisation, he obscured everything, he has displaced the

truth and deluded people with his deceptive light, having used his power as My adversary and thus worked against Me. His favourite weapon is to tear the image of the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ from people's hearts and thus he works **against** Christ, and this to an ever increasing extent the closer it gets to the end. It is his achievement that people distanced themselves from Me, that they no longer believe in Jesus Christ and therefore don't find the way to Me anymore; and yet his activity is only possible because people do not resist his onslaughts and the beginnings of his activity. For they **can** defend themselves if they **want** to .... They live on earth as completely independent beings and have absolute free will. They are far away from Me but at the start of their embodiment as a human being also so far away from My adversary that he cannot force them to become subject to him. I gave people the means to absorb the impressions surrounding them with heart and mind and to think them through in their heart and with their intellect, for I did not create automatons who must carry out their activity according to the Master's law; I externalised you as free beings, gave you intellect and reason and constantly influence you through all events in a helpful sense ....

However, he, too, will not let his power go to waste. He will likewise try to influence your will but the final decision rests with you humans yourselves ....

Nevertheless, you only need to use the means at your disposal .... you only need to ensure that you receive My



spirit of love, My strength, which will enable you to resist all your enemy's onslaughts. You can always gain this strength by merely practising love yourselves, thus by acquiring My strength of love, which you can use without limits but which can only be gained through activity of love. My adversary is an enemy of love and you will always be able to conquer him if you stand up to him with the weapon of love. Then you will take the path of Christ, you will take the path of love which He travelled too, then you will follow Him and He will be your patron, your leader, He will have become your Redeemer as a result of your will which has joined Him through love .... However, as long as humanity lacks love it will not recognise Him, and this is caused by My adversary who believes he can increase his power by reducing the power of Jesus. He conspicuously directs his activity against Him, and every person who turns away from Jesus Christ, who renounces Him, who rejects Him when He confronts Him in the Word is controlled by the Antichrist; he is an antichrist himself who willingly carries out what Satan impels him to do .... Beware of these antichrists, even if they pretend to strive for the same noble goals .... They are in his power and are therefore also My adversaries and will have to pay for their antagonism on the day of Judgment, which is very close ....

Amen

## **Fighting against oneself on**

# earth ....

## ***B.D. 5224 from October 1st 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

My life on earth was full of struggles and temptations and it is wrong to assume that My divine soul had protected Me from it, that My way of life **could not** have been anything but good because I was the Son of God, Who had descended from earth to redeem humanity .... My earthly life as a human being differed in no way from that of any other human being, yet I was exceptionally and severely bothered by temptations because Satan used every means to prevent My mission. Furthermore, My soul was so profoundly sensitive that it was both deeply affected by beauty as well as exceptionally tormented by evil and impurity. It was receptive to every impression, which is also the reason why the world with its attractions and enticements tempted Me so frequently before My real mission began. I had to endure a tough fight to stay victorious over the one who wanted to own My flesh in order to render the soul incapable for the act of Salvation. And thus My suffering started a long time before already, the body had to be deadened to achieve spiritualization with the soul. I was a human being in the midst of people .... And My state as a human being meant as much as being afflicted by human passions and longings which I had to fight in order to become an abode for the Divinity, Which could not allow any base passion

to exist within Itself. I was a human being .... nothing testified of My Divinity during the years before My work as a teacher. Being **just human** I had to struggle to shape Myself into the receiving vessel for the most delectable a human being may ever possess .... for the eternal Deity Itself, Which wanted to manifest Itself in Me in order to become a visible God for people. And I was victorious over the one who endeavours to control you humans, whom I fought against in order to set you free from his aggression .... It was truly an arduous battle, for the human being in Me was receptive to everything beautiful and not allowed to possess it; the human being within Me loved life for he loved his fellow human beings and did not want to leave them. I was in full possession of strength and able to make everything subject to Myself if I wanted to, and I voluntarily gave it all up, I defeated Myself, My body and even the soul, which occasionally wanted to arise when it felt how I suffered .... I defeated Myself as a human being and thus demonstrated that it is possible for every person to become master of his weaknesses and longings, and that it was not **divine** strength which accomplished My victory, which then could never be expected from you humans if I had failed in the battle against evil and against lust.

For this reason you humans are also able to achieve the same; indeed, you even have My additional support as soon as you call upon Me for help, as I have promised .... No temptation is too great and the tempter never insurmountable if you make use of My mercy .... For the

sake of your strength of will I died on the cross, what you are lacking in strength and will you can receive from Me if you want to fight against the one who is your enemy and overcoming it was the most difficult battle I ever fought ....

Amen

## **Spreading the Gospel ... Endtime disciples ...**

***B.D. 5226 from October 4th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Spreading the Gospel is the task for which I employed those of you who were willing to work for Me. Spreading the Gospel means taking the truth to people in the same way as it originates from Me. However, I Am faced by an adversary who will always fight against the truth. And therefore he will also fight against those who want to advocate the truth before the world. My disciples will therefore always encounter opponents, people who are enemies of the truth and who make an effort to demean it, hence to denounce it as untruth. It will often not be easy to discard their points of view since My adversary fights with great cunning and dexterity, he knows where a person still offers room for attack and he knows that his

starting point in order to be successful has to be .... lack of knowledge, the inability to differentiate between truth and error. And since I know his intention and how he works I have personally educated fighters for Myself, whom I was able to completely instruct in the truth and whose intellect is equally sharp that they are able to logically refute every contention wherever necessary. They will not remain unmolested by the enemy of truth, because he is especially at risk of being unmasked by a bearer of truth since the latter works with My strength. There is immense confusion among people, they no longer recognise My pure Word, they try to interpret My Word according to their own will and discretion and increasingly divert from the truth because intellectual thinking only ever results in greater confusion and leaves the heart as the doorway to wisdom closed. My Word is no longer known to people, for this reason I want to convey it to them anew; it shall be offered to them by My chosen ones, by disciples who I instructed and introduced to the same knowledge as My disciples when I lived on earth. Time and again it is offered to people by My great love in order to enlighten them, because their realisation grows constantly weaker in the darkness they live in. The spoilt Word has not much strength left and only a few are capable of finding the true meaning of My Word when it is offered to them.

And so I present the eternal truth anew to those whom I instruct for the sake of their later teaching ministry, so that they can pass on what they received from Me Myself

to their fellow human beings in its purest form. But these servants of Mine who shall instruct their fellow human beings must completely subordinate themselves to **Me** .... They must not listen to what people say, they must only pay attention to **My** Word and also uphold before the world what they have received from Me, from the spiritual kingdom. They must possess strong faith and a firm will, and this will must solely relate to Me .... Then they will be suitable for the teaching ministry and truly carry My Gospel into the world. However, the closer it gets to the end, the more vehemently the wall of your faith will come under attack .... For even if a person is clearly taught by God, worldly people refuse to acknowledge it and Satan's working can even be recognised where merely a hint of light from above might have spread brightness .... He also tries to cause confusion among the ranks of My Own and therefore I caution you to be careful, so that he will not be successful and extinguish the tiny light .... Anyone who spreads the Gospel in My name will be protected by Me from error once he has been chosen by Me for this mission; but someone who elevates himself to a teacher without having been called by Me because he lacks the ability for it, will hardly recognise Satan's working and then run the risk of looking upon error as truth. During the time of the end Satan will have great power which I shall not curtail, but which you humans can invalidate yourselves if you turn to Me in your heart and choose Me as a fighter against him .... Then he will be unable to mislead you since you, being brightly enlightened, will

recognise what is truth and what is error.

Amen

# **Reply to unpleasant messages from Bietigheim ...**

***B.D. 5228 from October 6th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I want light to be brought to humanity and therefore I have prepared bearers of light for Myself who shall contribute to enlightening people's spirit with their abundance of light, with knowledge they received supernaturally and which completely corresponds to the truth, since I Myself Am the Provider of this knowledge .... I Myself transmit this knowledge to earth so that you humans can find your way out of spiritual darkness and enter into the bright light. I Am a God of love and mercy .... I know your weakness and sinfulness, I want to help you and with much forbearance and patience try to make you understand and change yourselves.

Nevertheless, one day the time will have passed which you were granted for your transformation. And therefore I will constantly inform you humans as to what you should do, how you should live and what fate will await you if you

act in opposition to My will .... I tell you all this by sending you My messengers, who thus proclaim Me and My will on My behalf ....

I Am a God of love, but also a God of justice, and I will keep My Word .... Do you humans know what that means? .... That everything I have promised you if you live in accordance with My will shall come to pass, but that everything that I announced as a consequence of your resistance to Me will also infallibly fulfil itself .... Eternal order has to be upheld, and the law of eternal order also includes the fact that a specific cause will bring about a specific effect .... Everything takes its time, but once time has run out the law will unfailingly fulfil itself ....

You humans do not have much time left, thus you would do well to get used to the thought that you might suddenly get called away or, if you are exceptionally blessed, that you will experience the end. Whatever arguments you use against it .... they are misguided and will not change the eternal plan of Salvation, which is known to everyone who seriously endeavours to grasp My Word and understand it. What I proclaim through My messengers to you humans is nothing new, references and warnings about the end have constantly been given to seers and prophets since the beginning of this period of Salvation, which must and will sound ever more urgent the closer you get to the end. It is not due to lack of love on My part when My Word fulfils itself, for even this final event has its foundation in My infinite love .... to enable and support higher development of those who failed of



their own free will. I would not be a just God if I did not create a balance in a world which is more and more governed by the prince of darkness although it is destined to be a school for the spirit .... and must become it again in accordance with My eternal plan of Salvation ....

Amen

## **Has the infinitely long path of development been in vain? ....**

***B.D. 5230 from October 8th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

You have travelled an infinitely long path and only a very short stretch of the way is ahead of you, then the time of grace will be over for you, an endlessly long period of Salvation will have found its conclusion and its success will reveal itself on the last day, on the day of Judgment. This day is approaching all of you, the day of which it is written, which countless seers and prophets have proclaimed would come when the time is fulfilled. You humans have so often been reminded of the last Judgment, when everyone will be punished or rewarded according to merit. How often have I offered Myself as a

Leader on the final earthly path, when you as human beings need guidance, how often did I send help to you from above when you were at risk of failing; how often were you given guiding principles so that you would take the right path, so that your soul would mature fully and thus higher development would be promoted. I tried with love and with firmness to push you onto the right path, time and again I spoke to you in My Word, as a good shepherd I constantly protected you from the wolves, from the intruders into My flock of sheep; I sent messengers to cross your path who repeatedly proclaimed My will to you; I endured your weaknesses and faults with much love and patience and revealed Myself time and again to you humans in order to attain your love; I Myself descended to you in the Word to advise you in My direct speech that you urgently ought to change for the better .... I tried everything and yet achieved so little .... for people are not concerned about attaining Me and My affection. They live their lives for themselves and no longer acknowledge Me .... And the time flies towards the end ....

The infinitely long path of development before the embodiment as a human being, which you all had to cover, will have been travelled in vain by many people, for the human being has not achieved the culmination of his earthly life. The final stage of development has not been travelled, and at the end of this period of Salvation a last decision will be demanded, because a new era for the purpose of salvation will start again and every

spiritual being capable of development will be bound again into the external form which befits its state of maturity, but hard matter will serve as an abode for the spiritual being which failed as a human being. And this decision will still have to be taken before the conclusion of the epoch .... Humanity is at risk of being banished into hardest matter again .... You humans cannot imagine what that means, yet it is the fair compensation for spurning a blessing which could be used by all of you humans and which you disregarded. There is an awful lot at stake for you humans, and all My admonitions and warnings are to no avail, for you don't believe in an end, nor do you believe in a righteous Creator, Who one day will call you to account for your way of life, for your spiritual attitude and your neglected earthly life, which truly could result in your complete release from the form if you would comply with My Words and change for the better. You spurn My grace and thereby create an appalling fate for yourselves .... And even if I speak to you through the mouth of an awakened servant .... you don't believe .... that the end is near and with it the last Judgment .... And thus you will have to accept the consequences, for My love and mercy can indeed give to you, but not force upon you, what you spurn of your own free will .... light and strength and realisation of your hardship ....

Amen

## **Deifying the beings into**

# children ...

## ***B.D. 5233 from October 12th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

It is a law of eternity that I rule over all spirits in heaven and on earth, over all beings in the kingdom of light and darkness, over everything I have created out of love, wisdom and fullness of strength; it is a law that everything is subject to Me and thus I Am the Lord, Whose power is infinite and Who can just as easily destroy what His will had called into being .... Yet wisdom has always been as much a part of creation as love, and therefore I do not destroy arbitrarily, rather, I let all beings under My rule exist forever but try to change them into beings who can create and shape in unison with Me, who thus become My image, for I Am imbued with immense love for My creations. I want to be able to work in these beings Myself, so that they become aware of their divinity and eternally live in radiant bliss. I Am a God of love and approach all My living creations with love; but I also know of each one's willingness to accept My love, and thus My love affects living creations accordingly.

Where there is love the being comes to meet Me, but where love is absent it will turn away from Me and My love will remain ineffective, i.e. it will not demand a response. But as soon as the living creation in a state of free will, as a human being, looks for Me, strives towards

Me, thus longs for its Lord and Creator, it will have reached the stage of love. Then My love can shine into this being and it will find a response .... The human being will contact Me consciously, he will be knowingly subject to Me, and then the transformation can start, that is, the education into a being like Me, the deification of the works which had come forth from My hands as works but which shall become 'divine children' .... which, however, can only be achieved by the human being's free will itself. Anyone who comprehends this enigma .... the development into Gods from emerged works of My might .... already belongs to those where this process is happening, for then the person has a certain degree of awareness which, again, is a sign of divine strength that is already inherent in the human being.

And this degree of awareness will increase as the process of transformation continues, as he gains more divine attributes by transforming himself to love, for the Divine is and always will be love .... The beatitude of a divine being, of My image, consists of the fact that it is permeated by light and strength .... that it has an abundance of wisdom and might, which it will always use in the spirit of My love, because it has become pure love itself, or it would remain without light and strength. A divine being is a perfect being which lacks nothing .... Every restriction, every limitation, is a sign of imperfection. Yet whatever degree the being has achieved .... its awareness will always increase in proportion to its growing love, for both go invariably hand

in hand. Thus only what was caused by love signifies spiritual ascent, for this is also accompanied by understanding, by knowledge, which is accepted by the human being's heart and intellect. Loving activity is the ladder to the pinnacle which the human being climbs step by step as he changes himself into love and thereby conforms more and more to the divine fundamental nature.

The fundamental law of eternity rests in the fact that love was the strength which brought everything into being, thus it enabled the act of creation, but likewise it is also the strength which deifies the creation, which is a process My living creations have to accomplish themselves .... and are able to do so, because the fundamental strength rests within them as a spark which only needs to be ignited in order to display the same omnipotence demonstrated by My fundamental nature. My living creations are able to deify themselves through love ....

You humans will not understand this phrase until you have reached a degree of awareness as a result of your life of love .... when all correlations will reveal themselves like a radiant light, when your spirit is enlightened which, however, can only happen through love. Then you will steadily approach My fundamental nature, then I will no longer be your Creator, your Lord, to Whom you are subject, but I will be your Father Who lovingly draws you, His children, to His heart, Who will find His will in you again and experience an indescribable

happiness, which will also shine on you, then the law will have fulfilled itself which is the foundation of the entire material and spiritual creation ....

Amen

## **Faith without love is dead ....**

***B.D. 5234 from October 13th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

It is essential to live up to the commandment of love in order to attain profound faith. Proof is not necessary to believe, rather, you have to become convinced of something that cannot be proven so that you can wholeheartedly support it, so that you can endorse what you now believe in. Only this kind of faith is assessed by Me as living faith, for I do not regard mere words and assurances as belief but merely as an agreement to avoid an objection, since you cannot substantiate an objection. In that case you blindly believe, you accept without scrutiny, without personal opinion, what is imparted to you from outside. But this kind of faith will never emanate strength, with this kind of faith you will never be able to achieve remarkable effects .... for only a living faith can give evidence of the strength of faith. But living

faith is faith born by love, because love is the strength which then expresses itself in faith. Faith without love is dead, it is something inertly formal that has no effect. An active intellect can certainly come to a conclusion which the person then calls 'belief' but this belief will be more an assumption which will neither please nor elevate him .... as long as the love in him has not been kindled. For only love will give life to such faith. A loving person, however, does not need to activate his intellect exceptionally, and yet he will nevertheless be able to endorse his knowledge, for he is enlightened by his inner spirit, and thus he can believe with conviction because he has the evidence within himself.

Hence, what should be believed cannot be proven, or one could not talk about 'faith', and yet no doubt exists for the person who lives with love, because the spirit within him will give him explanations which justify profound faith. But these cannot be conclusively transferred to another person because every human being has to arrive at faith himself, which he is able to do if he does not ignore love .... love, however, is the unification with Me .... Consequently, I Myself also have to be recognised by those who love, and therefore faith in Me can no longer be doubtful .... for where I Am present through love I give evidence of Myself to the person, and then he is imbued by a living faith which can never be without strength. I Am the source of everything .... love and wisdom, light and strength originate from Me, and one without the other is unthinkable .... Thus anyone who is intimately connected



to Me through love will necessarily also have living faith and thus full knowledge. But where love is lacking the latter does not exist either. Then it is a dead faith without awareness, for I Am love Myself, without love there is no strength and no light .... without love you humans still live in darkness, and without love you are frail beings, for only love will make you strong ....

Amen

**Behold, I make all things  
new ....'**

***B.D. 5235 from October 14th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I make all things new .... Those of you humans who are as yet unenlightened, who have not yet awakened the spirit within you, do not know the meaning of My Words, for you do not believe in a transformation of this earth, you do not believe in the Last Judgment, in the end of one period of development and the beginning of a new one .... You do not know anything about My eternal plan of Salvation and therefore do not understand My Words either: Behold, I make all things new .... Each of My Words has several meanings which are not even known to My enlightened Own, for this understanding is still too

profound for the people of this earth, yet they are aware of the simple meaning, that I will renew what has left My eternal order ....

I want to make a change, since the people of this earth are no longer striving for one and therefore miss the purpose of their earthly life. They have failed by not using their lives for eternity. Nevertheless, I will not let them get lost and therefore will give them the opportunity to cover the neglected process of development again, yet not as a repeat but in a completely different way .... For another process of development is an increased bestowal of grace and has to be acquired through increased effort, the opportunity of which is offered by completely new creations. Thus, first I will renew the school for the spirit, My earth, which shall support the development up to that of the human being.

I will provide it with entirely new creations of such diverse kind and shape that extremely large numbers of spiritual substances will have the opportunity to prove themselves therein. And I will let a new human generation arise, which will emerge from people who are blessed by Me, who will have completed their spiritual development with love and loyalty to Me, who will have attained a degree of maturity which permits exalted spiritual care, so that the new human generation will have every guarantee to achieve the highest possible spiritual perfection and the bound spirits, too, will be able to achieve maturity quickly, due to the exceptionally good influence exerted by people on all nearby

creations .... I make all things new; I will also ease the conditions to release the spiritual substances yet without deviating from My law of eternal order, only caring for what is still living in constraint with profound love and mercy. Everything depressing will leave people, they will strive to ascend with full strength, because I alone will be the most Desirable for them and they will not be able to be pulled into the abyss by My adversary, who will be bound for a long time ....

I shall make a new heaven and a new earth .... that is, spiritually and earthly I will give happiness to the people who then will belong to Me and who shall also smooth the way for those who will follow them .... Which one of you humans can comprehend this? And which one of you humans believes firmly and without doubt that the old things will cease to be? That even people who are still distant from Me will cease to exist, that only the small flock which faithfully follows Me as their shepherd will not lose its life, because I have blessed this small flock and destined it for a continued life in the paradise of the new earth .... that a new period of Redemption will begin in accordance with My eternal plan of Salvation, which My love and wisdom have determined in order to ensure eternal life for the spirits? Behold, I make all things new .... Those of you who believe in Me remember these Words, consider them in your hearts and know, that the time has come when My Word will fulfil itself .... Believe firmly in it and be hopeful, and endure all difficulties you will still encounter until the end with patience and

submission to My will. For the day will come very soon when I will fetch My Own to reveal the paradise to them of which it is written: 'I will make a new heaven and a new earth ....' and I Myself will dwell amongst My Own and will guide and teach them, as I have promised ....

Amen

## **Expression of the divine spirit ... Satan as an angel of light ...**

***B.D. 5240 from October 25th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

'I Am with you always, even unto the end of the world ....' These Words of Mine shall be your confirmation that I will stay amongst you wherever you allow Me to stay. Although I Am not visibly with you, My spirit is nevertheless your constant companion, yet you yourselves open the door for it or you keep it closed, but then you cannot say that I Am with you. You all can certainly let Me be present if you want to draw Me to you with your love, indeed, with a high degree of love you would even be able to behold My image in you .... Yet how few desire Me and prepare an abode for Me, how few shape their hearts such that they can receive Me therein.

Even so, I also come to meet those who feel no desire for Me .... I come to meet them in the Word, because only the Word can awaken love in them if they listen to it, think about it in their heart and act accordingly .... This path to Me is not difficult and yet it safely leads to the goal .... of experiencing My presence so that every person would then be able to say: The Lord is with me always ....

Nevertheless it requires profound faith to be convinced of My presence, and this faith can only be gained through love again. Consequently, love always comes first ....

Without love no contact whatsoever can be established with Me, without love everything that intends to make My presence credible are lies or formalities.

**You all should remember that no-one can become aware of Myself if he is devoid of love, but that everyone who lives in love will have Me as a constant companion ....**

However, My presence will always reveal itself in some form or other .... through exceedingly strong faith, through a variety of spiritual gifts, through missionary work and the appropriate aptitude, through hearing My voice in the conscious state, through all kinds of helpfulness which require exceptional strength .... Then My spirit will always and forever be at work, which is the obvious sign of My presence and can therefore not be denied by people who are unselfishly and lovingly active. You humans should pay particular attention as to whether and how the love for Me and fellow human beings shows itself, then you will be able to test the origin of every such spiritual expression. But the right kind of love also

guarantees the human being My protection against impure spiritual forces, which will indeed always encroach on you humans but due to your nature, your will for truth and your urge to love will always be deterred, because they effectively sense My presence and retreat.

However, occasionally they will find access if the person himself does not exercise strict discipline, that is, if he, with only the slightest unkindness, entitles them to do so .... For unkindness embodies the one who lacks all love but who also has power where it is granted to him. And that is why only love is the guarantee for My presence, and you are all entitled to examine this love if you want to convince yourselves of the truth of what is upheld to people as the working of the spirit. I truly only face you with beneficial gifts, I will not offer you anything which might offend your heart. I Am a God of love and loyal Father of My children, and if I speak to you, you will also be able to recognise the Father's voice, and you need not be afraid that you will fall prey to deception if My Words affect you in a Fatherly way. But you must likewise come to meet Me like children, you must approach Me full of love .... otherwise you will not be able to hear Me or you will fall prey to My adversary, who wants to win you over with misleading words, who deceives you, at times even as an angel of light if he can thereby accomplish success. Love is and always will remain decisive, and My adversary will never be able to draw near to a loving human being because I will stand between him and the adversary since I Am love Myself. A good and kind-hearted person can

therefore never be deceived by My adversary, yet he can always approach those whose nature lacks love, whose selfish love is still too great, who want to be important in the world and try to make an impression, who lack true humility. I know the human hearts and keep away from those who are devoid of love, yet I will give pleasure to My children with My presence .... And they can always rest assured that their love will invite Me, that they then can entrust themselves to Me, that I will take abode in them and remain with them because love strives towards love and inseparably unites ....

Amen

## **Forgiveness .... Atonement .... Justice .... (Law of cause and effect)**

***B.D. 5243 from October 27th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I Am a God of love and mercy yet justice is also part of My Being, otherwise My perfection could be questioned and therefore also My Divinity. Do you understand what I Am trying to say? .... That I incorporate every characteristic to the highest degree, and therefore everything is effectively subject to the law of eternal order, whose

originator I Am Myself, that is, out of My very perfection I have created irrevocable laws .... Thus every guilt of sin has to be removed, every sin has to be atoned to satisfy My justice. But how does this relate to My love and mercy, which is so infinitely profound that it would like to remit every sinners' guilt? ....

My love found a way .... Love Itself wiped out the guilt of sins by making the atonement Itself in order to satisfy justice .... A human being accepted the guilt and made Amends for all of humanity's sins. I Myself did not stop this man, for He was motivated by love and love may never be prevented if it wants to express itself. I would never have accepted the substituted atonement had it not been offered to Me on account of love, or the law of eternal order would have been violated, since justice would not have been upheld, whereas an act of love had to be accepted by Me since I could not reject love. Thus a human being atoned humanity's immense guilt of sin through an extremely agonising pain and death on the cross. This person was without sin and nevertheless suffered unspeakably for the guilt of others .... because He wanted to appease Me with His sacrifice, which overwhelming love caused Him to make. And I accepted the sacrifice, and for the sake of His love erased the guilt that had burdened all of humanity .... which thus means that people who fully and consciously avail themselves of the sacrifice by the human being Jesus can become free from all guilt, who lay their burden of sin at His feet and for the sake of His crucifixion ask for forgiveness ....



Acknowledgement and the conscious confession of sins are necessary in order to find complete forgiveness of sins. The sacrifice of the human being Jesus was so immense and His love for humanity so powerful that My justice was served and My love and mercy could emerge .... Thus people who acknowledge the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ and repentantly step under His cross are free from all guilt .... which means that all sins they were burdened with are forgiven .... Forgiveness of sin, however, means settlement, a complete deletion of what actually should have been done .... Forgiveness means erasing, unburdening, restoring the condition prior to committing the sin .... and every consequence of transgression is carried by the person who accepts the guilt. Thus Jesus Christ took upon Himself all sins and offered the atonement for them to Me. Every result of sin will be negated by Him ....

My love and mercy make everything right again, and can do so now because the sacrifice on the cross satisfied justice first, thus it was not by-passed. The sacrifice on the cross was effectively the consequence of all of humanity's sins. All unrighteousness that is committed on earth, as well as the sin of the past rebellion against Me had to have an unlawful effect, therefore it had to fall back on beings who absorbed these effects and had to suffer them .... The human being Jesus made Himself voluntarily available to absorb the concentrated burden of sin and by way of superhuman suffering and agony diminish the effects of the sins, and through His death

finally wipe them out completely. Thus the law was not cancelled, it was merely fulfilled .... For this reason the human being can be granted full forgiveness of sins through Jesus Christ and be delivered from all guilt, for this reason My love and mercy can rule without excluding justice. For Jesus Christ redeemed the world from sin, because His love for humanity was overwhelming and through this love I was fully reconciled ....

Amen

## **Not inclination but love determines the will ....**

***B.D. 5257 from November 19th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

It is left up to all of you in which direction you turn your will, even though you are indeed advised by My Word what end result you will achieve by any direction of will. Yet My Word does not force you either, since you can also accept or reject it again depending on your mentality and your love. For **love** determines your will .... You will always love whatever it is you strive for, irrespective of whether it is good or bad; your desire is directed towards it, and this is how your will is .... good or bad. You will always feel love for what you desire, but whether this love is rightly

or wrongly directed is determined by your spiritual development. Now you can certainly raise the objection that love has been placed into the human being, that even love for evil arises from the heart and that the human being is thus a victim of dormant cravings within himself. And up to a point this objection is justified .... that all instincts and cravings which during the individual preliminary stages in the law of compulsion had not yet been overcome are latent in the human being, that the human being therefore brings them into his earthly life in order to then defeat and completely discard them. These characteristics are thus present in the human being and therefore also arouse the cravings. They want fulfilment and often become so powerful in a person that they completely control him. The fight against such cravings is often difficult, but this is why I endowed the human being with intellect, so that he can think about his feelings in order to take appropriate action against them.

It is wrong to say that the human being **must** act in accordance with his inclination .... admittedly, if he had been created without intellect and felt instinctively impelled. But since he is offered ample opportunity in earthly life to acquire knowledge, since he has a guiding principle in My commandments of love, since he has a still, small voice within himself which admonishes and warns him, which always draws his attention to My will, and since he is now able to think about everything, it is solely up to his will to wage battle against himself when necessary, when his cravings resist what he, according to

his inner realisation, should do .... The fact that he is unable to do so is not applicable, for a sincere will also guarantees him a gift of strength, nevertheless, a weak will is unsuccessful .... And only one thing is necessary again in order to strengthen a weak will .... faith in Jesus Christ .... It is true that especially people who are still badly afflicted by characteristics from their preliminary stages don't believe in Jesus Christ, however, by merely rationally thinking about it they already express their will to ascertain the truth, and they will be helped to find a correct solution .... However, where the question about Jesus Christ is unhesitatingly dismissed, where no effort is made to find an answer, that is where the will is obviously turned downwards, and that is where the human being indeed falls prey to the forces from below, yet it is his own will and not the fault of his inclination. For the human being can direct his will in both directions or one could not speak of free will. And every person can and should sooner or later question his task in earthly life .... This is why he was given his intellect ....

Amen

**God requires many  
labourers in the time  
before the end ....**

## ***B.D. 5259 from November 25th 1951, taken from Book No. 58***

I will take all of you who are willing into My service, for I require many co-workers during the last days before the end who shall do redeeming work. If you declare your willingness to Me then your destiny will also proceed according to your will, that is, you will always have the opportunity to work for Me and My kingdom according to My will. You will feel My instruction in your heart and, once you have offered your service to Me, will sensitively represent Me to your fellow human beings, you will feel inwardly impelled to speak on behalf of Me and My name and proclaim My teaching to all those who cross your path, with whom you will be able to have spiritual discussions and who require your help, or I would not send them on your way. The work for Me and My kingdom need not be externally recognisable as missionary work, it can be carried out in everyday life, unobtrusively and yet beneficially, for precisely **those** people shall be won over who have no religious connections whatsoever, who are not affiliated to any church organisations or still belong to them as a mere formality. My Gospel shall especially be made accessible to these people, and this is far more effective during an exchange of ideas where everyone can express their own point of view.

Once people are stimulated to think about it success is more likely to be expected, this is why My representatives, My labourers on earth who want to serve

Me, must be convinced of Me and My teaching themselves, so that they will also be able to speak with conviction to their fellow human beings. Anyone who has accepted the truth himself is also permeated by it, and he is a suitable co-worker in the last days before the end, for he will always and forever feel urged to offer the truth where it is missing. This is why you won't need any particular instructions from Me, because I will tell you through your heart what you ought to do and this heartfelt expression will be felt as your own will, as an inner urge .... Therefore act according to your inner impulse once you have informed Me that you want to work for Me and My kingdom. I accept **all** of you and give you My blessing for this work, because the immense spiritual hardship necessitates much help and this has to be brought through a human mouth if fellow human beings are to keep their free will but nevertheless be shown a way which leads out of the great hardship. I bless every good will which applies to your fellow human beings' souls and help you to accomplish it ....

Amen

# **Transformation of nature ... Deification ...**

***B.D. 5264 from December 2nd 1951,***

## ***taken from Book No. 58***

I cannot shape you according to My will, instead, you must accomplish the work of transforming your nature yourself, for the purpose and goal of My whole plan of creation rests upon the fact that My created works will shape themselves into My children, into divine beings of their own free will .... Each one of My living creations has so much strength that attaining the goal is certainly possible, yet the strength can also remain unused and not even My omnipotence can change that if I don't want to infringe against My law of eternal order Myself and enslave their will. You can, if you so want, shape yourselves into gods, into beings like Me, who, having completely merged with Me, are full of strength and yet think, want and act as blissful **individual beings**. You are **able** to do so, however, whether you **want** to do so must be your own choice .... Your intentions, thoughts and actions are entirely free in the state of imperfection but they can develop in **any** direction. Although the fact that you are entirely free can also result in your renewed fall into the abyss, it can nevertheless also procure you unlimited beatitudes which a bound will could never attain. You can fall abysmally low and lift yourselves to inconceivable heights, but at all times you are offered the support to hold on to or to make your ascent easier .... I Myself Am always willing to be this support for you, I Am always willing to stop you when you are in danger of falling, and I Am always willing to pull you up when you appeal for My help. You are never defencelessly left at

the mercy of danger, you are never so weak that you cannot appeal for help .... but this, in turn, requires your will again, and you must believe in Me if you want to request My help. However, this belief in Me is already the first change of your will .... Hence it also signifies assured help .... It is this faith I want to awaken in the beings which, embodied as human beings, don't use their will correctly, which constantly strive downwards and are in grave danger of falling into the abyss. A tiny spark of faith in a Power can stop their fall, and I try to make Myself known to people so that they will gain this faith. There is so much evidence of intervention by My power and love in every individual person's life, that every individual could easily win this faith by merely paying attention to these small proofs. Yet the human being's thinking is taking wrong paths and this, again, because he lives without love .... for he can only believe if his thinking is right, and he can only think right if his heart is willing to love .... Every person is indeed able to love, except that he himself is the goal of his love and this love of self has to be changed into love for one's neighbour first before the word 'love' is appropriate, which results in faith. The human being constantly lives in an environment where he can practise neighbourly love, yet he will never be forced to do so; even so, everything depends on whether he kindles love within himself and fans it into a bright flame .... Everything depends on it, realisation, faith, correct use of his will and eternal bliss .... However, he cannot be forced to love, he can only ever be admonished and encouraged; love must ignite itself in him and



thereby effectively also accomplish his transformation of nature, as this is the purpose and goal of his earthly existence as well as the completion of My eternal plan of Salvation, which intends to deify what came forth from My hand as work of creation but shall attain the highest bliss which I **cannot give** but must be acquired by the being itself.

Amen

## **World clock ... Final hours ...**

***B.D. 5266 from December 6th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I want to inform those of you who believe in Me and have personally experienced My working that the world clock will soon run out, that the last hour will strike almost immediately and that My coming is imminent. People do not give credence to My relevant proclamations and only a few attach importance to them. Nevertheless, I keep telling you time and time again: The Day of Judgment is near and every person's life is at risk. However, I do not refer to your mortal life, instead, your spiritual life is at risk, for if you are unprepared when the day comes upon you, you will succumb to spiritual death and this is far

worse than mortal death which only affects the body. You are only minutes away from the Day of Judgment and although I use a different measurement of time ... the time will pass by at a frightening rate and the end will arrive alarmingly soon. My faithful followers will feel it and, with increasing eloquence, draw their fellow human beings' attention to the Day of Judgment, but they will still not find any credence even when it becomes obvious that Satan is raging with all his might ... when the signs of the end are unmistakable and constantly increase .... The human race will cling to the world and refuse to believe that it will come to an end; even My voice from above will be ignored by them and that will be their downfall. Nevertheless you should speak to them and inform them of My admonitions and warnings even if they don't want to accept anything. They shall be warned so that no-one can say that they did not know anything .... because I Myself still want to draw every individual person's attention to it through personal indications, signs and events which affect him directly. Everyone shall be addressed by Me, even the greatest sinner and scorner of an eternal God .... They shall all still receive My grace beforehand so that they will not go astray if only they listen and make use of My gift of grace. And everyone will find the confirmation of My servants' Words, everyone will be forced to think about it .... but the result will be determined by his own will. But then the last Judgment will come without fail .... so that what I let seers and prophets proclaim to this day will come to pass. Yet woe to those who ignore My every admonition and warning ....

Woe to those who have rejected My gifts of grace from above and live an irresponsible life on earth. My Word is truth and must come true, and thus you humans can expect this day with certainty, regardless of whether or not you are prepared .... Once the world clock has run out everything on earth will come to an end and I will only fetch My Own into My kingdom, My Own, who believe in Me as the Creator and Father of eternity and also courageously profess this faith before the world. The secular world, however, is a part of the one who will be bound again and, with him, everything that still adheres to him .... they will be judged on the last day and their fate will be profound darkness.

Amen

## **Life energy - Spiritual energy ....**

***B.D. 5269 from December 10th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Never rely on your own strength. Although you have to activate your own will, i.e. you should not stay immobile and wait for help, you should always act in unity with Me and request My help and blessing and you will succeed. Your life energy entitles and enables you to be very busy

indeed. But My will is in charge of everything and you cannot force My will; I, however, often find Myself compelled to oppose your will if this benefits your soul. Consequently your destiny also includes failures, futile plans and lack of success which you cannot avoid by using your own strength. Even your life energy is not of much use to you then and you frequently realise how little you can do by yourselves. All failures, all futile efforts, all sudden weaknesses are an indication that you should turn to the eternal Provider of strength, to appeal for His blessing and in recognition of your own inadequacy ask for an increase of strength and the success of every action.

Don't forget Me, that is why I often allow you to experience situations where your own strength fails; I have to show you that your own efforts are futile without My blessing, which you should request first so that you won't forget Me .... Cooperation with Me guarantees success; however, if you withhold yourselves from Me your efforts will be far more laborious and even then often unsuccessful. Nevertheless, you can enforce success but only with support of the strength from below which will always makes itself available to you in exchange for your soul .... Then you can be powerful on earth, then you will succeed in everything, then you can amaze your fellow human beings with supernatural works .... but then you will part with your freedom, then you are chained and completely in his, in Satan's, power ....

Don't ask for this strength from below even if it promises you an attractive earthly life .... Come to Me in heartfelt prayer, and call upon Me for strength and mercy and you will truly gain more than My opponent can offer you. But then you won't take possession of worldly goods, instead I will bless every earthly beginning you undertake. I will also bless you spiritually, which means, that your close bond with Me enables Me to endow you with spiritual strength which is far more valuable than your life energy, because working with spiritual strength is always successful even if you don't always know it. Don't ever exclude Me whatever you start because I always want to be your adviser, leader and helper, Who directs everything for the benefit of you souls ....

Amen

# **Large numbers of deaths .... Recalling the weak .... Decision ....**

***B.D. 5271 from December 13th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

And it will come to pass as I have proclaimed .... A large number of deaths will happen prior to it, and you will look upon it as a coincidence, as an accident, you will accept

any other explanation but the right one, that I Myself recall people in large numbers who would fail in the last battle on this earth, who are too weak to offer resistance and who nevertheless shall not fall into My adversary's hands either .... For I know the hearts of people and will never ever let anyone become a victim of ruin who still carries a small spark of love within himself and can still revive this spark, if not on earth then in the kingdom of the beyond, to where My love and mercy also reaches in order to bring help. It will come to pass as I have proclaimed. The scale of adversity and unhappiness will be such that everyone can recognise the time of the end if he wants to. But there will only be sorrow where My Own can be identified, for their sorrow will be caused by their fellow human beings in order to destroy My Own's belief in their God and Creator of eternity in Whom they see their Father and to Whom they want to remain faithful. My opponent works against Me and uses people belonging to him to accomplish most disgraceful actions against My Own .... He wants them to desert Me and thus proceeds by using brutal means against which My Own are barely capable of standing up to. Yet the strength of My love supports them, the strength of My love prevails, even if My Own outwardly suffer greatest adversity .... they remain firm and surmount everything that is hostile, because My strength enables them to do so. The time draws to a close ....

What does not seem believable to you today you will soon experience, there will be a momentous change in every

respect which will adversely affect all people and demand of all people an attitude towards Me, the Creator and Provider of eternity. And this attitude can only consist of acknowledgment or rejection. That is the decision which will still have to be taken before the end. I will powerfully intrude into your thoughts and you can accept Me or reject Me .... yet the decision you then make will be for eternity .... And this is why My adversary's evil activity is being allowed, because he contributes towards the final decision for Me or for him .... he far exceeds his designated limits of authority, he presses My Own extraordinarily hard and gives to his followers in abundance .... earthly possessions, honour and fame, and therefore they would rather acknowledge him as their lord and renounce Me. Yet I will only allow those who are strong to experience the end, who are and will remain faithful to Me and constantly accept My strength of love. However, I will take care of the weak by recalling them before the end arrives, so that they will not fall into My adversary's hands and have to do penance for an infinitely long time. But those who are strong in doing evil will suffer death on the day of Judgment, for they, too, receive My grace often enough yet they take no notice of it and consciously join My opponent's camp, and thus they shall also share his fate when the end has come .... for everything will fulfil itself which was proclaimed through seers and prophets ....

Amen

# The helping hand of Jesus Christ ... Deliverance from the abyss ....

***B.D. 5277 from December 20th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

On earth as well as in the beyond the Saviour's saving hand reaches out to the souls in the abyss to aid the ascent of those who seize His hand. God's love and mercy is constantly at work to bring redeeming help; but the souls themselves must want to be helped or every gift of grace from God will remain ineffective. But only a desperate situation can persuade someone to appeal for help. Every immature soul in the kingdom of the beyond suffers and is tormented, whereas the soul on earth seeks to numb itself with earthly pleasures and thus finds it far more difficult to appeal to God for help. Yet the spiritual hardship is just as severe but it has a perceptible effect in the beyond. The soul on earth could certainly advance with ease, since the person can use his energy of life for God-pleasing actions, whereas the soul in the beyond is powerless and depends on help, either from the beings of light or from human beings.

However, there is far less willingness to do good on earth than with the souls in the beyond, whose will is only weak



as long as the soul lacks strength, but after its first gift of strength it constantly gets stronger. The torments in the beyond can bring about a change of will, and then the ascent is also guaranteed. But even on earth spiritual progress is impossible without a change of will, and since the world always has a numbing effect on people they occasionally have to be placed into a state of distress to instigate a change of will. In that case, however, the helping hand of Jesus Christ, the divine love, is always ready to elevate a person, and there is hope of redemption for every soul, yet the soul's will, which inevitably has to aim upwards, decides the moment in time itself .... One day even the strongest opposing will shall be broken, yet not force but divine love will achieve this, which time and again will approach the being until it is recognised and reciprocated, until the being's will overwhelmingly wants to give itself to God as His Own ....

Amen

## **End of the period of Salvation ... God's plan of Salvation ....**

***B.D. 5278 from December 21st 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I have set a goal for you and granted you humans a period of time in which you certainly could have reached this goal. And even now it is still possible for you to attain this goal if you genuinely wanted to do so. Yet the limit given to you has passed, only a short time separates you from the end, and anyone who hasn't reached the goal by then will have squandered his spiritual life, he will have forfeited it because he didn't want to live, and his fate will be death .... One period of Salvation comes to an end and a new one begins; yet the spiritual essence which is presently embodied on earth as a human being has definitely reached the end, and if it fails it must start the cycle of evolution once again, so that My law of eternal order shall be fulfilled. The deadline has expired, you are just minutes away from the hour when the old earth will be destroyed, when its creations will be disintegrated in order to arise anew, in order to provide again new opportunities for the development of the still immature spiritual beings. And although I repeatedly inform you of this hour .... it bypasses your ears without leaving any impression, you don't believe it .... Yet your unbelief will not deter My eternal plan, it just induces Me to send you ever more distinct signs to make a near end seem credible to you.

Your unbelief causes Me to inflict extremely painful wounds on you in order to make you consider what your life is about and how you have used it. You cannot be spared hours of adversity and misery since they can, after all, still contribute towards leading you to the goal, which

you really can still reach if you have the serious will to do so. I will noticeably help you and give you strength, yet your heart must appeal to Me for help to demonstrate your will. I can and will do anything to make you happy yet I cannot change My eternal plan of Salvation, it has to be carried out in accordance with the law of eternal order and within the preordained time, which is now coming to an end. Humanity's spiritual state had already reached its lowest point some time ago which necessitated the end of the earth, yet I still wait for the sake of the few who are weak and undecided, as I can still win them over before the end of the deadline. But then all options will have been exhausted, then everyone will have to accept the consequences of their attitude towards Me, and Judgment will categorically take place, and everyone will receive the fate he deserves .... eternal bliss or damnation .... life in paradise on the new earth or renewed banishment into the creations for an infinitely long time again ....

Amen

## **Saviour and Physician ...**

***B.D. 5279 from December 24th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I brought you Salvation from utmost adversity when I

descended to earth .... The Saviour was truly born to you, the Physician of your souls, Who wanted to help you recover from a serious illness, Who knew your ailment as well as how to cure it .... I came as Saviour, for humanity suffered great hardship. But even today it experiences the same difficulties; people are struck by a disease which will lead to death if nothing is done to stop it, if the Saviour is not made use of again, Who alone can help them attain life. Yet people don't recognise their ailment, they don't call for the Physician, they are incapable of living and don't have faith while they still live their physical life, which is the only one they deem desirable .... The adversity is far greater now than it was when I came into the world, for people know Me and forgot about Me, people know about a Physician Who is able to cure them but they don't call on him, people don't call upon a Saviour and yet they stand on the brink of the abyss ....

The night is dark and people don't see the light shining for them. Their thoughts certainly drift back to this time because it is tradition to think of Me just once, Who laid as a Babe in a manger. Yet they don't consider the significance of My arrival, because this requires a serious will and the realisation of spiritual hardship. I want to be a Physician and true Saviour again to anyone who calls upon Me in his heart; anyone who carries his sins to Me shall be forgiven by Me, to anyone who offers Me a loving heart I will bestow My blessing, with light and strength to recognise Me and to understand My act of Salvation, so

that he can make use of it and so that I did not die on the cross in vain for him .... I came into the world .... Time and again I come to My children if only they accepted Me, if only they prepared the manger for Me in their hearts, if love enabled their heart to accept Me .... Like a true Physician and Saviour I would take effect in those who come to Me ailing and burdened by guilt, I want to release them from sickness and suffering, from darkness and sin, as soon as they merely consider Me and My mission on earth, as soon as they only believe in Me as the Redeemer of the world, Who took a tabernacle as His abode because He came to the poor, sick and weak who needed help in their adversity. Again I want to help and heal where I Am faithfully called upon as Saviour before the time is fulfilled, because it approaches its completion. Yet anyone who allows himself to be healed by Me need not fear the end for he will live in eternity ....

Amen

## **Our Father ....**

***B.D. 5280 from December 25th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

Children of My love, I will never let go of you .... even if an infinitely long time passes by before you become aware of Me, My love nevertheless remains unchanging and will

not rest until it has won you over. This is why I descended to earth, this is why I allowed Myself to be nailed to the cross as a human being, this is why I come to you in the Word time and again and try to make you understand what you are and what you should become. Everything came into being for your sake, every work of creation is a means through which I want to win you over for good, and everything that happens on earth and in the whole of the universe was decided from the start for the sake of your former bliss .... For those of you humans who are not yet consciously My children I Am merely the distant God, providing of course, that you believe in a God at all. However, only when I have become the **Father** for you will the goal have been reached so that I can draw you to My heart as My children. But it often takes a long time before you recognise God as Father. And therefore I came into the world as an infant in order to kindle your love for Me; given that you don't grant Me the love of a child for its Father I wanted to be loved by you as an infant, in order to first kindle love in you, the blissful feeling that lets you become like Me, if you increase the degree through your will.

As an infant I came close to you, I wanted to be recognised and thus also be loved as a divine infant, and as an infant I wanted to gain your hearts forever. The love you show for the infant Jesus is already a step towards realisation, it is the degree of a child's love for Me, since it can be fanned into brightest radiance if you follow this infant's life on earth which ended with the most bitter

suffering and death on the cross .... This love for the infant Jesus is bound to increase if you know of His mission, of the act of Salvation for the whole human race which was the reason for His coming to earth. Anyone who is able to love the babe in the manger is also capable of the right love of a child towards Me, for love does not stand still, love is a fire which consumes everything within its reach and therefore takes on gigantic proportions. And thus love, once it has been aroused in a human heart, will constantly try to find more food, and heightened love will indeed find Me as the eternal Love .... For love will always strive towards love, the child will surely recognise its Father and give Him its heart completely .... And My love is waiting for it and draws it entirely to itself .... for love has merged, it has united the child with the Father and made it indescribably happy ....

Amen

**Jesus came to the weak,  
sick and needy ....**

***B.D. 5282 from December 27th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I came into the world for the weak, sick and needy, for the strong and healthy did not require Me, they found

their own way, at least they believed they could, and only when they went astray did they recognise their weakness and called for Me .... when their own strength did not suffice to master their lives. All those who call for Me, who need Me, are weak and their souls are ailing, and all those will be helped by Me, because by calling for Me they acknowledge their distressed state, from which they hope to be rescued by Me. All you humans are weak and ill, and good for those who recognise it .... However, those who feel strong and healthy are in a bad way, for they cannot be helped .... And there are many who believe that they don't need help, there are many who are convinced of their own strength and very easily use the strength of the one who wants to gain them for himself, who increases their arrogant belief and therefore gives them strength, but not without a service in return .... He wants the soul and in exchange gives the body what it wants ....

I, however, Am the physician of the sick and weak, I Am the comforter of the sorrowful and the hope of the disheartened .... They all come to Me and they will not ask in vain, I agree to help them all even if they do not experience it immediately. But in that case I also know why, and yet you are not abandoned, for no one who calls to Me for help from the bottom of his heart will ever call to Me in vain. Come unto Me, all you who are weak and heavily laden, I will refresh you .... Thus I have promised you My help, and so you will certainly receive it .... Always remember this when you are confronted by hardship, when you feel physically or psychologically distressed,



when earthly life is a heavy burden to you, when you need help. Then remember that I once and at any time came to the poor, sick and weak and only await your call to reveal Myself to you, but that I want to be called upon, so that you freely recognise your weakness and ask for Me, your physician and helper, that your call demonstrates your faith that I can and will help you .... and I will never allow this faith to be destroyed ....

Amen

## **Battle of faith ... Time of adversity ... Strength of faith ....**

***B.D. 5285 from December 31th 1951,  
taken from Book No. 58***

You must prove yourselves in the time ahead. Those of you who believe in Me will survive the time of adversity, for you will turn to Me for help; however, without assistance you will find it difficult to cope with life unless you receive strength from below, from My adversary, who will support anyone who is a servant to him and the world. Yet someone who finds the path to Me, who joins Me and prays for My assistance will have surprising strength in order to endure even the most difficult event if it also

affects him for the sake of his unbelieving fellow human beings. But he will also remain visibly protected and unharmed, if this is My will because the person's relationship with Me is that of a child and faithfully expects My assistance. It will be a tough struggle, both in an earthly as well as a spiritual sense, for the earthly adversities will distress the spiritual aspirant as well, yet only until he has established heartfelt contact with Me and the strength of My spirit can permeate him. Then he will boldly confront every adversity and danger since he will feel My presence and nothing can frighten or depress him anymore. The end is drawing ever closer, the signs and indications are becoming ever more frequent, the battle between light and darkness is getting increasingly more obvious, the labourers in My vineyard work increasingly more diligently and the danger posed by the Antichrist, to whom the believers are exposed, becomes constantly more threatening. For Satan knows that there is not much time left and his activity will be evident in the time ahead. Yet time after time I draw your attention to it, so that your faith will not waver when it is demanded of you to renounce Me in exchange for assured worldly prosperity .... Don't let yourselves be tempted, for this exchange would be disastrous for you .... Don't forget that the end is near and that nothing of the world and its possessions and pleasures will remain .... But if you have sold your soul to My adversary for these possessions, you will have nothing else at the end but eternal ruin .... a time of infinite torment and hardest captivity .... Relinquish gladly and voluntarily everything that is taken

away from you but remain faithful to Me until the end ... your loyalty will be regally rewarded and you will be assured of My assistance during the forthcoming time of need, so that you will be able to endure all difficulties. Besides, this time will not last long .... for I will shorten the days for the sake of My Own .... Everything that is proclaimed in Word and Scripture will happen in quick succession .... Admittedly, the adversity will become worse once you are demanded to make a decision for or against Me but then you may anticipate My arrival any day, then the earth will be approaching its end and your hardship will also soon be over, then the time will have come when My adversary and his followers will be bound, when the creations on the old earth will be disintegrated and a new earth will arise, then I will come in the clouds and fetch you home into the paradise on the new earth .... Then all adversity will be over and your life will be a peaceful and happy one ....

Amen

## **Last Judgment ... Prior wake-up call ...**

***B.D. 5291 from January 8th 1952,  
taken from Book No. 58***

I will always warn humanity of an impending judgment, to offer people the opportunity to prepare themselves .... The judgment nevertheless comes suddenly and unexpectedly .... Suddenly, because I will never announce the time, and so it comes suddenly and unexpected even for the faithful, because people always relegate a judgment to the future and never expect a speedy fulfilment of the predictions. For everything conveyed to people from the spiritual kingdom requires utter faith which, however, is rarely mustered by people. Only few will not doubt when I announce a forthcoming judgment through seers and prophets, but these few are unable to convince their fellow human beings and will therefore always be few and far between until the event has occurred. The signs and predictions of a colossal judgment will accumulate during the last days. It will be announced again through seers and prophets on My behalf, various signs will make a final Judgment credible, contacts will be established from heaven to earth for the purpose of alerting people, for I do not want them to rush headlong into disaster .... Yet people will not believe Me .... And thus they do nothing to improve the state of their soul, they do not live taking the end and their physical death into account but reject everything that could remind them of it. And yet the Judgment will come ....

The day will come without fail when Judgment will take place of the living and the dead, of the believers and of the unbelievers, who are spiritually completely dead and

therefore cannot expect to go on living. I speak often and clearly enough to people, but I always have to do so through a human mouth, through natural events or other natural signs, so as not to render people's faith, will and actions unfree .... It would certainly be easy for Me to speak to them from above, to instil fear and terror in them, in order to effect their change .... Yet it would not benefit their progress, I would achieve nothing else but an enforced faith in Me and My might which, however, would not result in love but in fear of Me and could never enable you humans to become perfect. And yet I constantly speak to you and remind you of the impending time, of the end of this earth and the Last Judgment. Anyone who believes it and lives accordingly is blessed, and he can expect the last day without fear .... But woe to those who do not believe .... who turn a deaf ear to My admonitions and warnings, who do not want to hear because they love earthly life and therefore will lose it for an endless time .... My final wake-up call before the end will reach everywhere .... Do not close your ears to this last warning, for then there will not be much time left .... for what I have proclaimed through seers and prophets will fulfil itself, and everything will come to pass as you were told through Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Free will is fundamental**

# eternal law ... Attaining beatitude ...

***B.D. 5301 from January 22nd 1952,  
taken from Book No. 59***

I cannot redeem people's guilt against their will; I cannot make them blissfully happy as long as they are imperfect of their own volition. I cannot grant them eternal life as long as they prefer spiritual death. I can do everything apart from enslaving the will of that which I created out of My strength of love. For I created perfect beings which are inconceivable without free will. However, the fact that they gave up their perfection, that they therefore also lost their realisation and strength, was the result of their free will, which could just as well have increased the perfection insofar as that My **created** being could have striven **freely of its own accord** for light and strength, thus demonstrating its perfection lawfully, i.e., of its own free will. Freedom of will allows for moving upwards as well as downwards .... Hence, the fact that the spiritual being fell was its own fault .... Now it must voluntarily strive upwards again in order to attain the original state, and I can never take this free will away from the being again, otherwise I would offend against Myself, against the fundamental law of eternity. Do you now understand why I cannot arbitrarily help you humans to ascend? Why you must achieve the transformation

from the abyss into higher spheres yourselves? Do you now understand why I can only ever influence your thinking so that you direct your will towards Me and thus consciously strive to reach Me? Do you understand why My love is constantly concerned that you, who had already spent an infinitely long time before you were allowed to embody yourselves on earth, will finally reach your goal?

You were truly granted an extensive period of time in order to achieve this change of will and nature, yet one day even the longest space of time comes to an end, and you are facing this end .... I cannot arbitrarily shape you such that you can enter eternal life, you must lend a hand yourselves, for it is always My will to accept you into My kingdom, My will would never reject your will if it desires to reach Me, just as it once turned away from Me and pulled you into the abyss .... Worlds will vanish before the last spiritual being has accomplished this transformation of will .... Nevertheless, My love wants to help you humans so that you will not remain distant from Me for eternities to come, so that you will not remain for eternities in a material form, which either keeps your will bound or, as a human being, gives you the final opportunity to reach your goal of uniting yourselves with Me again .... You should know that you, as a human being, are at the last stage of your development on earth, that you can release yourselves from the material shell in order to then enter eternity as a blissful spiritual being. Know that you **can** become blessed if you **want** it, but

that I cannot help you attain beatitude **against** your will .... Let yourselves be admonished and warned by My Fatherly love, take advantage of this short time and shape yourselves such that you can unite with Me, that you become what you were in the beginning, blissful beings who were able to be work in an abundance of light and strength .... Consider your purpose and seriously strive to reach your goal as long as you live on earth, for the day will come which concludes your earthly course of life, the day will come when the time has expired which you were granted for your complete redemption, for your ascent into the kingdom of light .... Use the time before it is too late ....

Amen

## **Purpose of earthly life: Change of will and character ....**

***B.D. 5303 from January 26th 1952,  
taken from Book No. 59***

You humans have to go through a process of revival or you will be unsuitable for the spiritual kingdom, for the spheres of light. This means that you humans, the way you are in earthly life, don't have the necessary maturity to



reside in the kingdom of light. You need a completely different attitude in order to become an acceptable occupant of the spiritual kingdom, and you are meant to achieve this state on earth, which is indeed possible. Hence you have to go through a certain process of transformation, and you have to undertake it of your own accord.

Your character cannot be forcibly changed, thus your state at the end of your earthly life is determined by yourselves, and corresponding to your willingness to change your soul will leave your body ... either receptive to light or still surrounded by dense layers which cannot bear any emanation of light .... But who knows this, which person ponders this when he is informed of it and takes changing his character seriously? ....

Every person has to refine himself, he has to discard faults, weaknesses and bad habits and teach himself humility, gentleness, peacefulness, patience, compassion; every person has to shape himself into love in order to combine all these virtues within himself, then he will have shaped himself such that he can be admitted into the kingdom of light, then his nature will be deified, then he will have adjusted himself to My fundamental nature and thereby will have enabled Me Myself to enter into union with him, for everything that had separated us will have been consciously removed. The transformation of his character is the path which leads to Me, he will have achieved his earthly goal and discarded the last heavy cover as soon as he leaves his body in order to then

live eternally as a blissfully happy spiritual being. Only then will the real life begin .... Let these words come alive in you: Real life begins for you when you enter the kingdom of light .... Everything prior to this has only been the ladder, the preparation time for the actual life which, however, has to be acquired during this preparation time. You humans eagerly and undauntedly work for earthly life since you consider this alone important, and you regard it as an end in itself. Yet you do not consider the actual life because you do not believe in a continuation of life after the death of your body.

Oh, you are fools .... Your purpose of life is an entirely different one than just working for your body's well-being. You are informed of this time and again yet you don't believe it, and therefore you don't change your character either, and that is your downfall .... For if you are not suitable to enter the kingdom of light, but I neither can nor want to destroy you since you originated from Me, you will have to carry out your transformation elsewhere, and that can also mean a great fall and a gradual ascent corresponding to My eternal plan, if the opportunity of attaining maturity in the beyond is not available to you .... **Sooner or later** you will **have** to undertake this change of character in the stage of a human being, not even My love can release you from **this**. The stage of a human being is, however, the final stage in an incredibly long process of development through all creations on earth. As a human being you will have to accomplish a conscious change of will and character if

this process of development is to reach a successful end with your physical death on earth .... Then your earthly course of life will irrevocably come to an end ....

Nevertheless, progress can continue in the spiritual realm, the soul can still recognise its wretched state in the spiritual kingdom and try to improve itself, but this necessitates much help from the beings of light or through human intercession. But the being can also slide down again into the deepest abyss because it did not recognise and try to change itself .... Then it will have to accept an appalling fate in order to join the process of change after an infinitely long time again, when it has to prove itself once again ....

Amen

## **The last day will come suddenly and unexpected ....**

***B.D. 5305 from January 28th 1952, taken from Book No. 59***

A sudden end is being announced to you .... This has to be understood in a way that no-one is able to determine the day, that no-one knows the day which only My Own will be

able to discern in view of the immense, almost unbearable adversity that has also been announced as an event occurring before the end. Many people certainly know that the time of the end has started and that it, sooner or later, will finish with this day .... they know this because it is talked about everywhere but they don't believe it so firmly as to prepare themselves for this day. Worldly people will be seized by a tremendous craving for pleasure, ever more greedily they pay homage to worldly pleasure and unscrupulously enjoy themselves at the expense of others, their wishes and demands become ever greater, and they sneeringly laugh at those who, in their belief in Me, ignore worldly pleasures, and cause them harm wherever possible. The world lives in sin .... And this shall be your certain sign, for you will experience things you wouldn't believe possible .... The evil conduct of your fellow men will reveal the hour on the world clock ....

And despite the fact that you will be able to observe everything and that the signs of the time are completely obvious, you, too, will be taken by surprise, for the end will come sooner than you think .... The end will come from one day to the next, that is, the activity of the world will pulsate extraordinarily sprightly and make people believe that they are on top of life, that **they** are in control and can shape their life to their liking .... My Own will closely watch this commotion and anticipate the downfall, yet they, too, believe that the Judgment will still be delayed in view of people's seething joy of life

although their nature is appalling and heartless. However, the harassments by the latter will grow and I Myself will stop them .... For this reason I will come suddenly and unexpectedly even for My Own, for the sins of worldly people are disgraceful, Satan oversteps his authority and therefore his hour has come .... When no-one expects it the day will come which has been determined from the start .... the last day on this earth, which brings fear and horror for those people who belong to Satan, but which also signifies deliverance for My Own from utmost adversity .... the day of Judgment, when it will come to pass what has been proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

